THE HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES ARMY

WILLIAM ADDLEMAN GANOE

6

The History of the United States Army

The History of the United States Army

BY

WILLIAM ADDLEMAN GANOE

MAJOR OF INFANTRY, U. S. A.

E
181
G17

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
NEW YORK :: MCMXXIV :: LONDON

134524

COPYRIGHT, 1924, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

"THESE ARE THEY——"

GEORGE WASHINGTON
FREDERICK VON STEUBEN
SYLVANUS THAYER
WINFIELD SCOTT
EMORY UPTON
ARTHUR WAGNER

FOREWORD

What follows is meant to be neither a study of campaigns and battles nor a treatment of military policy. Those subjects have been covered thoroughly under their own titles. The coming chapters strive to tell a plain, straightforward story of those of our people who have answered our country's voice in its many cries for help and protection. The tale records the homely and the heroic service of the soldier in the sweat of peace as well as in the ruck of war. And there results a life history of that institution which has been the greatest single factor in the building of our nation—the United States Army.

Other countries have long ago told with care and affection the histories of their armies. For us, up to this time, there have been no collected sketches and few authoritative accounts. No chronological record of the soldier's existence from 1775 to 1923 has ever been set down in any one place.

When the publishers of this book first approached the author with the suggestion of such a work, the prospect, frankly, did not look inviting. But, as the five years of research went along, so much unexplored matter and so many amazing episodes came to light that interest increased in spite of obstacles. As a consequence, there are statements in this volume which have heretofore found little publication; some which have been purposely withheld from general knowledge, and others which have never been published at all. In releasing this material the author has not scrupled to tell the truth, both pleasant and unpleasant, wherever the telling might be constructive.

Naturally, in the limited size of this narrative, many interesting details had to be discarded in order to preserve balance and perspective.

Page references to authorities consulted have not been used because of the fretting interruption to the reader. Instead, the bibliography and dates are carefully given. If there be a desire on the part of any one for more specific authority, the author will be glad to furnish any information desired.

W. A. G.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER PAGE
I. Drab Beginnings (1775–1776) 1

II. The Army Learns to Walk and Run (1776–1777) 24

III. The Army Finds Discipline and Success (1778–1781) 50

IV. The Army Flung Aside (1781–1811) . . . 79

V. The Army in Name (1812–1820) 116

VI. The Army Blazes the Trail (1821–1844) . . 158

VII. The Army Wins and Widens the Boundaries (1845–1859) 196

VIII. The Army Divides and Multiplies (1860–1865) 244

IX. The Army's Dark Ages (1865–1880) . . . 298

X. The Army's Renaissance
First Phase (1881–1898) 355
Second Phase (1899–1916) 397

Epilogue (1917–1923) 463

APPENDICES

PAGE
A. Containing Names of Incumbents of all Principal Offices in the Army since its Creation 491
B. Showing Tremendous Number and Distribution of Labor Strikes which the Army was called upon to put down between 1886 and 1895 501
C. Showing Large Number of Troops Engaged in Philippine Hostilities between February 4, 1899, and July 4, 1902 506
D. Showing Pay Scale in 1867 508
E. Showing Organizations of Regular Army Necessarily Used in Philippines from 1899 to 1912 510
F. Statistics of the Punitive Expedition under Brigadier General John J. Pershing, 1916 512
G. Tremendous Distribution of Units of the Army, September, 1872 517
H. Schools in the Army in 1920 520
I. General Organization of the Army, 1879 521
K. Actual Dispersion of Army, Fall, 1865 523
L. Great Dispersion, Fall, 1866 525
M. Organization of Army, 1867 528
N. Organizations and Commanders of Cuban Expedition, 1898 529
Selected Bibliography 531
Index 567

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FACING PAGE
George Washington . . . . *Frontispiece*
Frederick von Steuben 60
Soldiers with Arms 164
Sylvanus Thayer 172
Winfield Scott 228
Emory Upton 356
Arthur Lockwood Wagner 422
Army of the United States 463

The History of The United States Army

CHAPTER I

DRAB BEGINNINGS

(1775–1776)

July 2 1775

WHEN Washington, accompanied by the uncertain Charles Lee and Horatio Gates, entered the American lines besieging Boston, he unconsciously marked the start of the United States Army. Although the groups of armed countrymen, scattered in a semi-circle from Charlestown Neck to Boston Neck, were not then known by such a name, they were nevertheless by his coming transformed from separate New England militia into a single force fighting for the rights of all the colonies. The thirteen little governments by this move abandoned their previous rôles of independent pioneers and for the first time united for defense under one properly constituted leader. His arrival, then, is bound up with our first national military establishment, whose growth for the next eight years is a part of him and to a great extent a result of him.

It had taken eleven days for him to make the journey on horseback from Philadelphia, whence he had set out four days after the battle of Bunker Hill and five days after the Continental Congress had selected him as commander in chief.

His election had been a queer one, where violent prejudices had swept aside sound judgment. John Hancock, a wholesale merchant of no military experience, desired the command of the forces. Artemas Ward, a former officer of the French and Indian wars, was, since he was already in charge of the Massachusetts troops, a rival for the office. Hancock, President of Congress and an ardent patriot, appealed to the people of New England. Ward was pushed by Paine, who had been a fellow student at Harvard, and by another member who volunteered the pleasant argument that the soldiers seemed satisfied with Ward. But the southern delegates objected, not because Hancock was a flabby merchant nor because Ward was too fat to mount a horse, but because they would have none of a New Englander. Besides, Hancock was a bit too anxious for the position in the presence of John Adams, whose natural antagonism to the wishes of others was acutely aroused. It was soon felt that the new incumbent would have to be a person who could unite the north and the south, the puritan and cavalier, the forces engaged and not engaged. Washington, a man of quiet manners, a resident of the borderland between the two parties, and the husband of the wealthiest woman in the country, answered the trifling qualifications imposed by the legislators. The more he was mentioned, the more negatively prominent he became particularly because he did not blight any one's whims. He was finally unanimously elected without the slightest question having been raised concerning his fitness as a soldier or commander. It is doubtful if many of the members knew that he had been an expert scout, the hero of Fort Necessity, the aide-de-camp to General Braddock, and the head of the Virginia militia. It is certain they did not care, any more than they had been interested in the fitness of Ward and Hancock, who possessed none. So, at the very birth of our government, feeling supplanted wisdom, pettishness crowded out calculation, and hot favoritism overruled cold reason. The ominous sound of such legislative talk is going to echo disastrously through the succeeding pages of this story. At this point it remains for us to be thankful that Washington was a meritorious accident. In spite of sewing-society methods he, the preëminent military leader of the country, became commander in chief.

June 21 1775

He accepted the honor with expressions of his unworthiness, refused a salary, and set out for Cambridge to meet his command and to attempt to bring order and discipline out of irregularity and insubordination. One year and one day before the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, under the elm which afterwards bore his name, he drew his sword in the presence of his heterogeneous army and formally took command.

Was ever a commander presented with a more motley throng? In the same companies were blue coats faced with buff, black coats faced with red, and hunting shirts of brown trimmed with fringes, streamers and scarlet needlework. The townsman, clad in gay hues and covered with coat or blanket, touched elbows with the woodsman wearing his dull homespun. A company of Stockbridge Indians in feathers, paint and nakedness vied in color with the Connecticut dragoons in vivid red coats not unlike the British. There were long trousers, overalls, and breeches with or without gaiters or with fringed leggings of deerskin. Stuck in the triangular hat were gaudy sprigs of various sizes and shapes. Irish, German, Scotch, Puritan, and Quaker contrasted their Caucasian faces with the shiny African in his powdered wig, while graybeard and child stood side by side. Even the officers had no distinctive uniforms.

Nor did this sundry collection of male beings live in a true camp. That term implies to us regimental blocks of company streets in straight, regular rows, with officers' tents at one end and picket-lines at the other. The soldier of the Boston Siege lived in the open or in a kennel of his own making. The higher officers billeted themselves in near-by houses, Washington being accorded a deserted Tory mansion. Save in some companies of Rhode Island regiments where tents had been secured, the rank and file contented itself with rolling up in a blanket under the trees or stars. When the elements compelled some sort of shelter, it was built according to the caprice and choice of site of the occupant. There were structures of linen, sailcloth, boards, stones, brush, and turf, and all possible combinations of these. There were booths and huts of varying shapes and sizes, with or without windows. Such shacks clung in scattered patches about the various earthworks to be defended.

Cooking was an individual or club performance undertaken at such hours as the stomach dictated. So long as duties were attended, it little mattered how or when nourishment might be prepared. Habakkuk Simpkins, being a reclusive puritan, broiled his steak alone meal after meal, and drank his mug of beer in holy thought; whereas Patrick O'Brien messed in company with a dozen Ezras and Ezekiels and with loud oaths smacked his lips over the savory stew concocted by one of the number.

Everything bespoke irregularity, especially the organizations. Previous to Bunker Hill the barest fractions of commands had reported for duty. The shortages were accentuated by casualties in that battle and sickness afterward. Even had the organizations in the beginning been thoroughly complete, the rolls would have differed remarkably in effective strength, for each state added to the chaos by having its units independently constructed. Massachusetts varied from 590 to 649 men per regiment, whereas Connecticut authorized 1,000. Steuben later declared he saw regiments ranging from 3 to 23 companies. A Massachusetts company consisted of a captain, a lieutenant, and 59 men. A Connecticut company added 11 men, 4 corporals, and a second lieutenant. A Massachusetts general was also a colonel of a regiment. Rhode Island field officers were also captains of companies. When a colonel was absent from his company, it was commanded by a captain lieutenant. The scheme was evidently devised to reduce the number of officers, but it produced discord and placed double responsibility upon officers incapable of handling one organization.

Added to the discouragements attendant upon this conglomerate mass of men, which resembled in discipline, uniform and organization more nearly a Greek ekklesia than an army, was the low type of commissioned officer. The pernicious system by which he was obtained explains his inefficiency. Any popular member of a community who could enlist the necessary quota for a company became a captain; likewise for a regiment, a colonel. The remainder of the company officers were generally elected by the privates; and the field officers, by the company officers. However, in Maryland all the officers were elected by popular vote just as municipal officials at a town meeting. Everywhere rum and bribery played important parts in recruiting and electioneering. By these methods the commander was beholden to the commanded, and the qualifications of an officer were confined to popularity, zeal in raising men, ability to pay the tavern bills and, perchance, some questionable inducements. Just how little military knowledge or training influenced selection can be seen from the account of a New Jersey private:

> "After this we chose our officers. When on parade our 1st Lieutenant came and told us he would be glad if we would excuse him from going, which we refused; but on consideration we concluded it was better to consent, after which he said he would go, but we said: 'you shall not command us, for he whose mind can change in an hour is not fit to command in the field where liberty is contended for.' In the evening we chose a private in his place."

This prudish picture of democratic punishment for vacillation is no less that of the private controlling the officer. Stock-jobbing, insubordination, desertion, and mutiny flowed naturally from such a source. It was difficult for Obadiah Perkins to take orders from Israel Hampton on parade in the evening, after Israel with jollified flow of spirits had lured Obadiah with blunted senses into signing the enlistment blank in the morning. It was easy to slip from under Israel's authority and to go home when the hay was to be put under cover. Who was Israel to instruct him? A creature of his own contrivance. No wonder Obadiah, when on sentry duty, allowed the British to purloin his rifle, or failed to show any courtesy toward his superiors. Scarcely able to read or write, he easily confused the new national freedom with personal liberty, and resented any inroads upon the abandon that had been his with his own dog and gun, in his own woods. Nor was his officer prone to reprimand or punish him when there was a vote to be lost or popularity to be curtailed.

Not stopping in the regiment, this method of election crossed the threshold of Congress and controlled the choice of general officers. Already Washington's election has suggested the personal whims and petty jealousies prevalent in the proceedings of that body. The attributes of the major generals first chosen will reveal somewhat the success of its methods.

They were in order of rank: Artemas Ward, already partially described, but in addition accused of cowardice at Bunker Hill; Charles Lee,[1] former British officer with service in many European campaigns, who turned out to be more despicable in treachery than Benedict Arnold; Philip Schuyler, politician, delegate to Congress, with former service in the French and Indian wars, a loyal officer but possessed of a demeanor which operated against him; Israel Putnam, a farmer, a former private in the French and Indian wars, of great energy but meager military ability. Not a very promising collection of right-hand men. But Congress afterward, more on account of the inefficacy of its system than any inherent malevolence, accustomed itself to supplanting the worthy with the unworthy, withholding praise from the meritorious and bestowing it upon the inglorious, and even plotting against Washington himself. Little doubt is left that he would have been removed before 1777 had it not been for the universal regard in which the army held him.

So absorbed was he in his huge task, however, that he had little time for self-consciousness or sensitiveness to criticism. The quality and quantity of his supplies, as well as of his men, gave a determined check to any immediate offensive and turned his efforts into channels of desperate reconstruction.

Powder was short. It is estimated that at the beginning of hostilities there were on sale not a hundred pounds in all the colonies. Thirty rounds per man in the American camp is a high estimate. Washington himself mentions the exploit of maintaining around Boston, within gunshot of the British, a thirteen-mile chain of sentries who had not an ounce of powder. Even salutes with the cannon were forbidden on account of the waste.

Lead would have been as rare as powder had not the statue of George III, on Bowling Green, New York, been handily melted down, cooled, dissected, and dealt out in small quantities to the soldiers. They, in turn, during dull afternoons in camp, remelted their weighty allotments in melting pans, poured the contents into bullet molds, and saved the product for individual use. The bullet thus fashioned by hand was suited to the particular caliber of firearm by means of different-sized holes in the bullet mold.

---

[1] Not of the Robert E. Lee family of Virginia.

These missiles at close range were possibly as deadly as any small projectile ever contrived. In their construction the junction of two hemispheres of molten metal left a ridged seam which operated much as does the soft-nosed or "dum-dum" bullet of to-day. It tore out whole muscles, smashed bones and rent the flesh, leaving large ragged wounds from which where were comparatively few recoveries. Aside from the tearing effect, the impact of the bullet was enough to stop a man in motion more effectively than the modern high-velocity projectiles.

During the hot July afternoon, when the soldier had completed molding the bullets for his or his mate's use, he had to turn his attention toward the personal manufacture of cartridges. It was found quite early in the war that there resulted greater speed and safety in loading with a previously prepared casing for the ammunition than with the loose powder and ball. Accordingly, the private rolled, as the cigarette maker does his tobacco, each one of his bullets and an inch or so of powder into paper cylinders about the diameter of the bore of his piece. These he stowed carefully in a leather pouch or box which usually contained places for twenty-three cartridges.

The remainder of the equipment of the individual was mostly what the recruit could bring with him. An enlistment blank enjoined the soldier to "furnish a good firearm, cartouch box, blanket, and knapsack." In lieu of the firearm he was directed to bring a good cutting sword, cutlass, or tomahawk, and later a shovel, spade, pickax, or scythe straightened and made fast to a pole. The powderhorn was included without the saying, for its delicate legend usually revealed the strong personal attachment of the owner. His "cartouch box" slung on one hip, and his powder horn or flask on the other, both suspended by broad straps of leather or web, gave to the Revolutionary volunteer his well-known, cross-belted appearance. Some were fortunate enough to own a wooden canteen resembling a small truncated barrel, or a bayonet fashioned by the nearest smith into a long bulging knife and attached to the individual rifle in the simplest way. During this stationary warfare very few of these awkward drinking vessels or sheathed short swords dangled from the persons of the Americans. Later on, marching and fighting brought about a natural increase.

The main weapon of the Revolution, however, was the firelock or flintlock as it was indifferently called. Its mechanism and peculiarities account largely for the parts played by both sides in subsequent fighting. The fact that Washington lacked from three to four thousand, in order to arm his force completely, reduced his effectiveness to the equivalent of less than twelve thousand.[2]

The question naturally arises as to why there should exist this lack among people dependent in a great measure upon a firearm for protection and sustenance. The answer resolves itself into that of expense. A townsman looked askance in those days upon a luxury that cost from two to five pounds and represented to him what the purchase of a piano or an automobile means to the average citizen of to-day.

Those who were the proud owners of a musket or rifle appear to us as scarcely to have possessed a defensive weapon. Its firing device consisted of a three-and-a-half to four-foot barrel along the under side of which ran a steel ramrod; a hammer into which a piece of flint was inserted; a "battery" or upright piece of steel against which the spark was struck; and a flashpan containing loose powder which, upon receiving the spark from the battery, ignited through a small hole the charge in the chamber. Such were the clumsy means of projecting an ounce ball through a short and highly curved trajectory.

---

[2] "In 1744 a Philadelphian wrote to a member of Parliament that there were sufficient gun makers in the colonies to make 100,000 stand of muskets per year at 28 shillings each, and powder was already made. Yet, although the Revolution was imminent, and the need of a store of firearms apparent, the home consumption was such that the outbreak of hostilities found the colonists poorly provided. This negligence on the part of the colonists seems inexcusable.

"For more than a year the outbreak of hostilities was expected daily. Committees of correspondence had been active, and a union of the thirteen colonies against the mother country was assured; there was no national government, no executive, yet each colony for self-protection should have established armories—and did not. In New England small stores of ammunition and old guns were collected from the people and from old town supplies stored since the French wars or before, but the main reliance seems to have been upon the personal property, arms which existed in almost every household throughout the land."—CHARLES WINTHROP SAWYER, *Firearms in American History.*

Yet the undisciplined woodsman with his seven-foot, fourteen-pound mass of wood and steel would deliver a bulls'-eye hit in the face of a smashing kick. The farmer was not so accurate at long range, and the townsman very little better than the present generation as a whole. But as a rule the Revolutionary Army shot well.

Shortly after he took command Washington arranged a spectacular review for the purpose of showing the New England militia the effect of accurate shooting on the part of the woodsmen. A pole was set up and a marksman stepped off 250 paces. The farmer or townsman would scarcely have wasted powder at such a range. But the riflemen from the forest, firing singly, rarely missed the pole.

In one early battle the farmers with their muskets (usually the Brown Bess) finding themselves without bullets, loaded their weapons with scrap iron, nails, or jagged odds and ends of metal, waited until the enemy was within easy range, aimed at the foot or knee, and let the jump of the piece disembowel the victim. Many a Revolutionary soldier was certain to hit a small target at 60 yards. There is one instance of a soldier who at that range, while his brother held a board 5 by 7 inches between his knees, fired, without a rest and from the standing position, 8 balls through the target without touching his kinsman. A British officer at Bunker Hill noticed such a person to have brought down 20 epauleted redcoats before the expert rifleman himself fell. But at the same battle it took the American so long to reload that the British rushed in with the bayonet and forced a retreat.

The disadvantage was due to the impossibility of reloading quickly and the lack of bayonets. After his piece was discharged, the soldier, instead of merely pulling his bolt, had to execute tedious motions. He reached in his box for a cartridge, bit from the end enough paper to let out the powder, a small portion of which he shook into the pan, and poured the remainder into the barrel through the muzzle. He then rammed home the bullet and paper sheath. Replacing the ramrod he was again ready to fire.

The proceeding was all the more delayed in the early days of the Revolution when the powderhorn was used instead of the handmade cartridge. If the wind was blowing, it was almost impossible to place any powder in the pan, and if the uneven mixture of sulphur, carbon and saltpeter was damp, there was little reason for putting it into the rifle at all. The barrel, even after a few discharges, became so hot that the weapon was most uncomfortable to hold. The flint, too, was good for an average of only sixty firings.

Added to these handicaps, there were in use in the beginning of the war, no less than thirteen different kinds of muskets, three kinds of musketoons and as many kinds of rifles as there were gunsmiths to make them. The calibers varied from thirteen-gage to thirty-gage (gage meaning the number of spherical balls to the pound). There were master armorers and private factories at Westfield, Massachusetts, at Rappahannock Forge, Virginia, and at Philadelphia, but no manufacturing arsenals in the present sense of the word. Soldiers side by side in ranks could scarcely use one another's weapons and could not load with one another's bullets.

Necessity naturally led to some sort of precision and uniformity in handling the weapon, if for no other reason than the prevention of accidents.

One soldier forgetful of the proximity of his uncorked powderhorn started a conflagration that burned for several hours and caused him discomfort for several weeks. Another having snapped his piece on a "delayed" charge was, upon recocking and firing, promptly kicked to death. John M'Murtry, not realizing that there was a load in his rifle, sent a bullet through a double partition of inch boards, a single board of a berth, the breast of a man named Penn, and left a mark against a stone chimney. Nowadays, we are prone to forget the force of black powder close at hand, and the fact that the Continental developed as great respect for his own rifle as for the enemy.

The drill of the time attempted to systematize loading and to familiarize the enlisted man with the proper use of his savage weapon. But there were as many regulations as there were methods of putting the same regulations into effect. No two companies drilled alike, and all drilled badly. A Marylander in 1776 watching the home contingent on parade remarked that it was the finest body of men he had ever seen out of step. The "Sixty-fourth" edition of the *British Manual,* the *Norfolk Discipline,* Timothy Pickering's *Easy Plan* and Colonel Bland's treatise were all used indiscriminately. They differed to a great extent from each other and were taken up at the whim of the locality. The commands for firing and loading in one set consisted of 19 separate motions as follows:

1. Half-cock your firelocks! (1 motion)
2. Handle your cartridges! (1 motion)
3. Prime! (1 motion)
4. Shut your pans! (2 motions)
5. Charge with cartridge! (2 motions)
6. Draw your rammers! (2 motions)
7. Ram down your cartridge! (1 motion)
8. Return your rammers! (1 motion)
9. Shoulder your firelock! (2 motions)
10. Poise your firelocks! (2 motions)
11. Cock your firelocks! (2 motions)
12. Present! (1 motion)
13. Fire! (1 motion)

It is hardly remarkable that the British routed the dependable Revolutionary marksman while all this was happening. With our overwrought sense of fire effect from magazine rifles, automatics and machine guns capable of deluging the enemy in an instant with mortal sleet, the enforced slowness of the soldier of 1775 is hard to conceive. If we are apt at times to criticize the vigor of Washington in not overwhelming his opponents with a ponderous volume of fire, let us remember the heavy technic through which he had to labor.

The larger weapons of artillery were fewer and less effective than the small arms. At the time of Washington's arrival there had not been much effort to obtain an adequate supply of big guns. Brass and iron cannons were so uncomfortably absent that he, until the few days preceding the British evacuation, was unable to contend with the fire of the enemy. Congress made a mild legal attempt to manufacture a uniform type of these weapons, but the records fail to show any enforcement of the law. Colonel Richard Gridley, left in command of the artillery of Massachusetts, was on account of his senility disinclined to exertion in obtaining cannons and balls elsewhere. The hard service of the "gun pointers," "bombardiers," and "mattrosses," as the enlisted artillerymen were styled, made the work as distasteful as that of a stevedore. In fact the besieging force had to sit calmly exposed to the fire of the besieged. So common did the sprinkle of heavy projectiles become that an order had to be issued to keep the American soldier from attempting to stop the rolling balls with his feet. It appears that more casualties occurred from this characteristic performance than from the accuracy of the enemy.

Beyond the material lack of firelocks, ammunition, equipment, and cannon, that which essentially distressed the commander in chief was the immeasurable deficiency in trained and disciplined manhood.

Peculation and stockjobbery were rife among the officers. Little conception of the dignity and honor necessary to inculcate discipline was found in them. When captain, lieutenant, and ensign placed their salaries in a common fund with the enlisted men, drawing at the end of the month each the same share, the official intent was doubtless generous and democratic, but such officers commonized themselves and made it easy for Lieutenant Jones to filch Private Smith's blanket.

Mediocrity and cowardice were more common than theft and embezzlement even among officers who had never before been intrusted with funds. It can safely be said that a distinction, especially in the New England regiments, between officer and men did not exist. Lieutenant Whitney was tried and convicted later for "infamous conduct in degrading himself by voluntarily doing the duty of an orderly sergeant." A cavalry staff officer was found unconcernedly shaving one of his men while visitors were present in camp. Others were tried for undue brutality in beating their men into insensibility. The attempt at discipline manifested itself either in extreme familiarity or brutality and often both. Cowardice also had been especially manifested at Bunker Hill. One officer before the battle informed his company that he would overtake them directly. He did—the next day. On the authority of General Lee and Captain Chester it is known that during the action many companies had not so much as a corporal to command them. The captain goes so far as to say that "the most of the companies of this Province are commanded by a most despicable set of officers." No doubt he was right but he was scarcely allowing for the fact that much of courage comes with discipline, the self-confidence accompanying the skill, as was demonstrated many times later.

With such a set of officers it is not astonishing that the enlisted men were expressions of a misconstrued liberty or freedom. Men departed to their homes at will after Bunker Hill, often having obtained a substitute from home, more often having omitted that courtesy. Washington stated of them that "they regarded their officers no more than broomsticks." Any direction or interference emanating from above was a violation of their personal liberty for which they were fighting. They had come out of their own accord to drive the British from Boston. That work had better be accomplished before December, for then their enlistment would run out and they would depart willy-nilly.

In the face of Washington's earnest entreaty, his appeal to their manhood and patriotism to stay with him only one month longer in order to save the Revolutionary Army from extinction, the Connecticut militiamen callously walked home in a body when their enlistments expired. A large part of the other militia did likewise.

It was not because they were in need that they forsook the cause. The privates of Massachusetts militia were receiving $36 every lunar month as pay, an equivalent of at least $150 in modern purchasing power, and, in addition, the following ration authorized by the Third Provincial Congress:

> "One pound of bread, half a pound of beef, and a half pound of pork, and if pork canot be had, one pound and a quarter of beef; and one day in seven they shall have one pound and a quarter of salt fish instead of one day's allowance of meat. One pint of milk, or, if milk cannot be had, one gill of rice; one quart of good spruce or malt beer; one gill of peas or

beans, or other sauce equivalent, six ounces of good butter per week; one pound of good common soap for six men per week; half a pint of vinegar per week per man, if it can be had."

Conceding what he provided for himself, we learn that the private at the outset of the Revolution was receiving more from the states than in 1918 before Château-Thierry. It is a curious fact that these very patriots who resented so thoroughly the mercenary troops sent against them from England were themselves but highly paid hirelings of their own government. Indeed, where a private citizen had been drafted by his own municipality it was common for him to be excused by paying a stipulated sum. Either in shirking or enlisting, the soldier was a commodity. In the average case he appears to have been actuated less by zeal in defense of his country than by greed for reward. His pusillanimous conduct became so common later that Congress could enlist very few recruits in competition with the states which generally paid higher wages and bounty. In an address to the soldiers in November of '75 the General said:

"Never were soldiers whose pay and provision have been so abundant and ample. . . . There is some reason to dread that the enemies to New England's reputation may hereafter say it was not principle that saved them, but that they were bribed into the preservation of their liberties."

Something is to be said on the other side. The Middle States and Virginia responded nobly to a call for volunteers by sending 12 companies of riflemen who enlisted for one year and marched in some cases 800 miles to the siege. These first troops raised by continental authority became the backbone of the force which finally achieved independence. Massachusetts itself furnished more men than any other state during the war. If there was reluctance, much of it can be attributed to the lack of system in these dim beginnings and to the small assets of a people who had not yet become rich by manufacture. Back on the farm there was very little laid by for Mollie and the children. And many of the higher officers who had means and an old-world intolerance of the lower caste were inconsiderate of a private's position.

The discouragements which beset Washington were of greater magnitude than those General Schuyler, in the North at this time, described as being such that if Job had had to bear them his "name had not been so famous for patience." Ill-disciplined and cowardly officers, deserting soldiers, and lack of every supply necessary for campaign, placed the commander in chief in the position of a hunter with an empty rifle confronting a grizzly. But to heighten his difficulty telling troubles arose in other quarters.

Sickness was breaking out in camp. Already smallpox was scourging the troops in Boston, and it was a question as to how soon it would enter the American camp. Sanitation was foreign to the militiamen. Dirt and filth were kept down at home through the natural instinct of womanhood, but away from that environment the soldier took little care of his person and personal surroundings. The medical department mainly consisted of a number of jealous, bickering doctors with no chief. Hospitals were but pesthouses where the stricken victim was dropped upon the floor or straw to die or recover at the pleasure of Providence and with the annoyance of quackery. It had not yet become fashionable for women to nurse the soldier. No comforting attentions of feminine care reached his cold, bleak shelter where he groaned through torturous days and nights, awaiting death as a restful deliverance. The effective strength of Washington's army kept dwindling and the attractiveness of the soldier's life before Boston kept diminishing.

In the meantime, Quebec added another loss to the army. *Sept. 1775* Washington, shrewdly estimating Arnold's brilliant ability, gave him 1,050 men for the surprise of the Canadian stronghold. Arnold had pleaded his power to duplicate the surprise of Ticonderoga. The little force started out with great hopes, *Sept. 11 1775* crossed Massachusetts and New Hampshire and struck through the Maine wilderness. The unbroken country, inconceivably thick, impeded their march. Supplies gave out, bateaux of provisions were lost, and hunger became so frightful that three dogs, entrails and all, were eaten in one afternoon. Swampy ground, limited shelter, and frozen clothing brought sickness and death. The progress for 83 miles up Dead River is one ghastly tale of misery. The band of about 700 which emerged two months later on the St. Lawrence had undergone frightfulness only to meet defeat. Arnold's message, which should have apprised Montgomery of his presence, fell into the hands of the British commander at Quebec. In the attack the noble Montgomery was killed, Arnold was wounded, and the American force repulsed. Although Arnold showed masterly skill in drawing off his men and escaping to safety, the expedition was none the less a disaster numerically and morally to the incipient Revolution.

Washington felt this defeat acutely, especially since the undertaking had met with his sanction. But long before the news of its result had reached him he had been met with misunderstandings from a more hectoring source.

Congress, two hundred miles from the seat of activities, at a time when mails were slow and telegrams unknown, questioned the wisdom of a commander who lay with a superior force inactive for months before the enemy. They could not realize that the largest part of his numbers existed only on paper. Neither could they visualize the hampering effect of his disorganization and needs. The populace was crying "On to Boston!" So this little body of delegates, who made laws that could not be executed and raised money that could not be collected, undertook to tell him not only what to do but how to do it. One member suggested, when there was scarcely enough powder all told to fire a full-fledged salute, that he bombard the British ships in the harbor.

Above the calumnies of people and lawmakers Washington kept his temper serene and his energy unflagging. All his efforts bent toward the correction of evils for the sole purpose of taking the offensive. He raised the standards of discipline throughout the command by the establishment of courts and the trial of offenders. In general orders he announced that bravery would meet with reward and cowardice with certain justice, no connections, interest, or intercessions, availing to prevent the strict execution of punishment. He dismissed colonels and captains alike, and brought to time enlisted men as well. The simple process of the martial law of the period possibly gave quicker returns than modern technical methods.

Although the punishments of drumming out of camp, the wooden horse, the pillory and flogging by rawhide on the naked back seem to us now to be severe, they were in vogue at that period of the world and seemed proper to the men of that time. Unusual punishments, such as branding on the hand and pouring salt and water on the lacerated back of the victim who had a few hours before received fifty lashes, were other delicate attentions of the law. Washington seems, however, to have discouraged the wooden horse, a peaked device on which the culprit in a sitting posture was strapped so that the end of his spine supported rigidly the weight of his body against the sharp edge. After a very few minutes he fainted and in most cases was injured permanently. Reprimands, extra hours of labor, riding on a rail, and apologies were used for lesser offenses. Sometimes a culprit was made to walk slowly at the point of a bayonet between the lines of his comrades while they smote him with belts, switches or any handy implement on the naked back. Naturally, the stricter enforcement of discipline on Washington's part induced among men, whose previous lives had been expressive of personal liberty, more desertions than before. On the other hand, those who remained were receiving the schooling necessary for the soldier and the future of the Revolution.

Oct. 1775 Of bringing the besieging force up to adequate strength, Washington finally showed Congress the necessity. A Congressional Committee visited him with the avowed intention of giving him enough men. With representatives from the northeastern states it came to the conclusion that 20,370 were required to man the lines adequately. Accordingly, 26 regiments were requisitioned: 16 from Massachusetts, 5 from Connecticut, 2 from Rhode Island, and 3 from New Hampshire, with the hope that most of the necessary levies might be obtained by reënlistment of the troops then around Boston. *Nov.–Dec. 1775* One month later the new force totaled 966 men; two months later, 5,917; and three months later only 10,500 of the required 20,370. *Jan. 14 1776* In the meantime, 50 men of each regiment had to be granted furloughs in order to induce them to reënlist. *Dec. 1 1775* Thus, Washington lost immediately the use of a large proportion of the 10,000. Besides, nearly the whole of the former army around Boston would vanish because of the completion of enlistment at the end of the year. After all this effort to get men, Washington was compelled to call out 5,000 militia and minute men from the adjacent colonies. Many of these refused to come and those who responded would do so only on condition that their service would expire early the next year, or after less than one month's service. Thus at the beginning of the year Washington had practically no army.

Jan. 15 1776

Nov. 11 1775

In collecting what he had, his task of selection seemed impossible. He told the President of Congress early in the fall that

> "they (the privates) will not enlist until they know their colonel, lieutenant colonel, major, and captain, so it is necessary to fix the officers the first thing."

Here Washington had to turn aside from organizing his rank and file in order to determine what officers should be chosen. Congress had sent him blank commissions to be filled out and returned. Before he could make up a single unit he must attempt to sort out a few possibilities from the mass of the unfit. Evidently he called upon his general and field officers for this purpose, as regimental rosters afterwards showed. As a matter of fact these men were scarcely superior to their juniors in character and ability. Some of their remarks foreshadow the "Efficiency Reports" and "Qualification Cards" of the present day, and reveal largely that partiality and animus were not eliminated from the recommendations. First Lieutenant Joseph Youngs is described as "a very low-lived fellow"; Captain David Hobby, "a bad officer and at present under an arrest and will, in all probability, be cashiered"; Second Lieutenant Elihu Marshall, "a good officer, will make a good adjutant"; Captain Ames Hutchins, "of a low-turn and had better be dismissed the service." Washington in this way, although possibly by imperfect means, gained some idea of who should be commissioned.

To improve the artillery he succeeded in having appointed Colonel Henry Knox as its chief. That aggressive officer transported, on sleds and trucks over the hills of Vermont and Massachusetts, more than fifty cannons, including mortars and howitzers, captured at Crown Point and Ticonderoga. Shells were obtained from the plundered King's store in New York.

The powder shortage was more distressing and less easily remedied. Washington's reluctance in acknowledging the scarcity is shown in his correspondence where, lest the communication fall into the hands of the enemy, he omits the name of the coveted article in describing its absence. No powder plants turning out tons of ammunition, nor laden trucks of shot and shell to be kept sedulously from the prying eyes of spies, existed then in the colonies. Explosives came from abroad or were crudely mixed together in the private home. One countryman brought to the hall of Congress a whole barrel of powder he had himself manufactured. The Committee of Safety in Philadelphia published a description of the process of making saltpeter and sent trained men from town to town to instruct others in the art. Washington called upon the adjacent states for as much as they could furnish and kept beseeching Congress incessantly. One Governor, in answer to his request, complained that he had not enough powder to repel even a short attack upon his town. But the uninterrupted pleas began after a time to meet with more response.

The increase of firelocks was not so rapid. This coveted treasure would be carried away by the deserting men and left at home as an asset to the family store along with the spinning wheel and harpsichord. If the soldier by chance felt inclined to reënlist he would do so in another regiment, thereby acquiring a new weapon. Some are said to have accumulated as high as eight rifles in this thrifty way. Washington in the autumn of '75 issued an order for the prevention of this practice by seizing the firelock of the departing soldier and purchasing it if it was fit for use. In spite of his efforts to retain these weapons, two thousand men in the following February lacked arms.

The health of the army was keenly desired by Washington even at that early stage of medical science. He repeatedly issued orders for the cleanliness of the camp and men, and forbade the unlicensed sale of liquor to the soldiers. He requested Congress to regulate the hospitals. The legislators responded by providing him with a medical staff under a director general.

Even the matter of uniform as an aid to military respect was of moment to the Revolutionary leader. Since funds were lacking for the adherence to any widespread order in this regard, he contented himself with the announcement that the commander in chief, generals, aides, field officers, captains and subalterns would wear ribbons and cockades of an appropriate color for each grade.

Congress had actually placed on Washington the burden of making an army as well as manipulating it. He was compelled to build when he longed to fight—to settle the issue. He was forced to be a collector of supplies when he hoped to be a leader of men. He was urged to wage hot war against a well-trained army, while his means were transient bodies of irregulars who went more than they came. The months of '75 passed away in dismissing and commissioning officers, begging for powder, arms, and men, and disciplining those who stayed long enough to be organized.

Jan. 1 1776

At the very beginning of the next year Congress made a move which, though not immediately fruitful, was to have a decided effect upon the final outcome of the Revolution. It decided to govern apart from the militia and minute men the little handful of soldiers it had directly raised. Because it made the term of enlistment longer for these continental troops than that which the colonies prescribed for their men, Washington was to have a small, stable nucleus about which he could congregate the constantly changing recruits sent by the governors. In the dark hours to come, it was this constant little band that was to make possible the continuance of the Revolution.

It is interesting to note that on the very day Congress determined upon such a course, there was raised over Boston camp the single flag of the colonies. It consisted of the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew and thirteen alternate white and red stripes. This fluttering hint of unity and autonomy supplanted the various banners of the different localities such as the "Pine Tree" emblem and the British banner on which was written "Liberty and Union."

Such a bright omen of the first day of the year of Independence was touchingly in contrast to the real state of affairs. While the country was face to face with a stout invader, one

American army had casually disappeared from the front, while barely half of the other had reluctantly assembled there. It was fortunate that the enemy remained astonishingly inactive of its own apparent volition. It was also a blessing for the Revolutionists that Howe was so charged with Whig sentiment that he would not attack the untrained, ill-supplied fragments of provincials whom he could easily have defeated. The 5,000 New England militia called in December would be gone on the 15th of January. The 10,500 of the new force were decimated by furloughs. The man-power was at a lower ebb than at any period since Washington had assumed command. To add to the tension it was understood that spring would bring reënforcements from England into Boston harbor. The commander in chief beheld six months' anguish and appeals to patriotism consummated in a product of impotence.

Jan. 16 1776

Notwithstanding his discouraging outlay, he called a council of war with the hope of some aggressive action. The generals agreed that an attack should be made, but could not conjure up any visions of success. It was finally decided to ask the New England colonies to raise 13 regiments for three months. In response to Washington's call only 10 of those organizations arrived about a month later, 3 being dispatched to lessen the imminent danger of Schuyler in the north.

Early February 1776

Slight activity began to express itself along the lines in the shape of sharp skirmishes. But Washington was waiting for powder and ice. With the support of the latter he would cross the harbor and with enough of the former he would deal a hard and unexpected blow. Again he called a council of war, but his project for attack was vetoed because it was thought to be too hazardous. Instead it was decided that Dorchester Heights, which the vacillation of Howe had left unoccupied and whose possession would render Boston untenable, should be seized and fortified.

March 2 1776

At once Washington notified the near-by towns that they should have their militia ready to march at a moment's notice for three days' service. He collected fascines, gabions, hay, barrels, bateaux, floating batteries, bandages, carts, and intrenching tools. In spite of deserting soldiers and quarreling officers he felt several weeks later that he had enough powder

134524

and men to warrant operations. To disguise his scheme he kept up for several hours on three successive nights a heavy artillery bombardment. So furious did the cannonading appear to one excited spectator that he declared he had seen as many as seven cannon balls in the air at one time!

March 2, 3, 4 1776

March 4 1776

Late in the evening of the third day General Thomas with 2,000 men went forward to occupy the heights. Working with approximately 800 men in the darkness, he succeeded by silence and exertion in completing two redoubts before dawn. For the expected assault he prepared barrels filled with earth and stones to be rolled from the fortress down the hill upon the enemy. But this device of the days of Xenophon was not to be used.

March 4, 5 1776

The British awoke on the morning of the fifth to see a phantom fort in the place of the pastoral hill of the night before. Howe, in speaking of the occurrence later, stated: "It must have been the employment of at least 12,000 men." He realized that this mirage or reality spelled attack or evacuation for his idle troops. Storms for several days prevented his crossing the harbor in boats to the assault. The delay let the American force so strengthen its works that the British commander assured himself of their impregnability, whereupon he, in turn, called a council of war which came to the conclusion that the evacuation of Boston was the only alternative. A fortnight afterward that decision was converted into action by Washington's fortifying Nook's Hill.

March 17 1776

Curious things have happened to troops in their rounds of striking diversities of campaign, but it is safe to say no spectacle in a similar situation ever presented itself to a commander quite like the one Washington viewed from his threatening hill on St. Patrick's Day, 1776. After having impersonated for eight months the part of a bold and harmless menace, like a child with outstretched arms barring the sidewalk to a man, he witnessed 11,000 hostile troops in neat red uniforms, with bulging knapsacks and polished cartridge boxes crammed with good ammunition, marching peacefully towards their commanding ships lying off shore. No gun disturbed the quiet; nor confusion, the repose. A few silent cannons pointed from a fortified eminence were literally pushing Howe into the sea.

March 20 1776

So it came about that after the British had sailed ostensibly for Halifax, the American commander found in the city large stores of wheat and ammunition together with 250 pieces of artillery. He discovered also that during the whole siege extending over two thirds of a year he had actually lost by death in action less than twenty men. In spite of the desertions, dishonesty, strolling and ill-disciplined troops, losses by sickness and disaster, the veritable quicksand of disappearing soldiery and lack of the commonest essentials for decent defense, this first venture of the Revolution was such a miraculous success that the Congress voted a medal to the commander in chief. It also gave thanks to God.

CHAPTER II

THE ARMY LEARNS TO WALK AND RUN

(1776–1777)

March 17 1776

AFTER Howe had put to sea, leaving Boston to Washington and his curious following, the American commander turned his attention to the central avenue of the country, the Hudson. He felt that the next place of attack by the enemy would be New York City. Having provided a holding force of about 5,000 against a possible return of the British to Massachusetts, he hastened south and west with the remainder. Except for the numerous armed journeymen who had oscillated at will between the siege and their firesides, the Revolutionary army for the first time became a mobile force. The hardships of march, bivouac and temporary camp—the true rigors of war—began to settle their dampness upon the ardor of the patriot soldier.

Over the primitive roads, narrow trails and grassy lanes of New England, the long line in Indian file threaded its straggling way to New London. Behind each company of musketeers followed the fifer and drummer giving vent to such enlivening strains as "The Pioneer's March" or "Roslin Castle." Banners of red, brown and yellow bearing homemade legends preceded the battalions. Gaps of varying sizes opened and closed within and between companies. Cannons mounted on rickety carriages rumbled along on awkward and noisy cart wheels. Farmer Stout going into the fields in the early morning beheld the epauleted generals in the van of the column; returning to his dinner he watched the progress of the multiform companies; and walking between the furrows in the dusk of the evening he heard the loud cries of the cart drivers and tinkling bells of the cattle bringing up the rear.

Impressed by this big display of a small force, the gawking yokel and adventurous townsman took down their fowlingpieces from over their fireplaces, and fell in behind their kinsmen or friends in the hope that they too might take part in the general excitement of bagging a few redcoats.

Where the eager came by ones, the disheartened left by twos. The Massachusetts militiamen grew timid at the sight of the strange wilderness of Connecticut far from home. He was physically uncomfortable, too. His feet, bound in low, ill-fitting shoes and unused to the long stretches and rapid, even gait of the march, were hot and blistered. Added to the twenty pounds of lead, steel, wood and leather on his person, he had accumulated at some recently visited farmhouse a frying pan, salt pork, dried venison or a coffeepot with which he had carefully bulged his homely hunting shirt. Had he not done so he would have lacked nourishment at the end of the day's march, for under General Mifflin's service of supply the wagons either dumped their contents far from the hungry or did not arrive at all.

In consequence of such discomfort, the near-by thicket, the wayside tavern, or the smiling face of a maid was an attraction too strong to be withstood by the young soldier, especially when his officers and noncommissioned officers had neither force nor semblance of disciplinary power to call back the truant. After the long line had passed from sight over the next hill, he slowly drifted homeward and was gathered unto his people. At his own threshold he was met by the saintly mother, the good wife and the village smith who agreed they could not exactly see why a Massachusetts Bay man should fight under a New Jersey officer for the sake of New York settlers.

April 13 1776

Washington finally arrived in New York, where he found that Lee, who had been sent ahead from Boston and was then in the south, had well begun the work of defense. Kingsbridge at the northern end of Manhattan, redoubts around the southern end, and earthworks at Brooklyn Heights on Long Island were under way. At once the American commander set to work to complete these widely separated fortifications, in which task he found his soldiers most skillful. Sapping, like shooting, was an art in which the American was expert. The frontiersman and Maine woodsman proved to be ready with the ax and dextrous in matting revetments out of the tangle of wildwood infesting the Bronx and the Battery.

To gain recruits Washington marched and countermarched his ragamuffin collection up and down the Island. But the wavering loyalist, instead of being enraptured, was inclined to be disgusted at the sight of the ill-clothed soldiers and coarse officers. With his mediocre official family Washington was hampered by sporadic drills, puerile instructions and lamentable ignorance of discipline. Colonels were repeatedly instructed in orders that unless they broke sentries of the practice of sitting down on post, the delinquents could not justly be shot for sleeping thereon. Captains had to be directed to see that every man when he came into action had twenty-four cartridges in his pouch and a good flint in his piece. Subalterns were desired to salute at ceremonies by doffing their caps until they could master the intricate operation of presenting their fusees.

Such was the summer's work of the dwindling force. Its play was that of Tory-baiting, a mild pastime which consisted in catching a luckless loyalist, stripping, tarring, feathering and riding him on a rail or in a cart as an object of ridicule and missiles. In many cases the victim was permanently injured. Another expression of this sport was that of collecting about the house of some British sympathizer in the dead of night and of raising a sudden cry of "Fire"! In that period of the world when no snorting engines or convenient hydrants played their prompt parts in the quenching of flames, such a sinister sound meant to those within the wooden dwellings suffocation or cremation. Naturally, the occupants came pouring forth in scant attire only to find themselves objects of indignity on the part of a heterogeneous soldiery, some of whom immediately began looting the house.

Washington found himself powerless to check these misdemeanors or to enforce discipline in general on account of lax officers and floating recruits. He was so distraught by the weak character of his personnel that he recommended to the Committee of Safety that Congress provide a proportion of two to one against the British in order to make up in numbers for the American deficiency in quality.

On account of the limited powers of the delegates, Congress was then busy making laws it could not enforce, voting money it could not raise, and making armies it could not assemble. It called out 13,000 militia from Connecticut, New Jersey, New York, and Massachusetts, and provided for a "flying camp" of 10,000 in New Jersey to be enrolled from Pennsylvania, Maryland and Delaware. As to the militia they were slow in coming and the "flying camp" really never materialized. Though the name of the latter has a brisk, American sound, it should more appropriately have been termed evanescent or fleeting camp. The idea was to collect the armed inhabitants into a large reserve without having regular enlistments. But when the majority of those who were regularly enrolled would not stay, it is easy to see why those who had to take no obligations would not come at all. In gaining troops, Congress was truly in the position of calling "spirits from the vasty deep." *June 3 1776*

The fact that the recruit was hard to get should have convinced the members that once he was obtained his term of service should be for a relatively lengthy time, if for no other reason than the training derived from experience in the field. It does not seem possible that reasonable men should repeat the mistakes of the previous year by limiting enlistment periods to six months and less, in the face of Washington's entreaty to the contrary. But that was exactly what the delegates did.

On the other hand, they framed a resolution for a permanent committee of five to form a Board of War and Ordnance. This body, to which all military questions were to be referred, was the first suggestion of a War Department. But such organization was unimportant in comparison to the Declaration of Independence. The formal separation from the parent country should have shown the civilians and the army that they were officially alone and self-reliant. Whether the soldiers realized the added burden placed upon them is difficult to infer from Washington's description of the reception of this daring document which he ordered to be read at the head of each brigade. "The measure" he wrote, "seemed to have their most hearty assent." *June 12 1776* *July 4 1776* *July 8 1776*

Following the Declaration, however, Congress found it necessary to increase the "flying camp" because of the quick efflux and slow influx of recruits. As one would raise his bank account by merely adding figures in his check book, so the lawmakers created four battalions of militia from Pennsylvania, three from New Jersey, and two of continentals from Virginia. The colonies made it continually more difficult for the central government to obtain soldiers. Connecticut and Massachusetts began offering to their recruits $33.33 over the bounty allowed to the continentals or regulars enlisted by Congress for the duration of the war. New Jersey bid $53.33, whereupon Massachusetts and New Hampshire raised their offers to $86.66. No wonder the soldier went to the highest bidder, especially when that bidder, the commonwealth, required only a "few months' walk" in return for this enormous gift. It was too much to ask of human nature that a man serve ten times longer for far less bounty. And to add to the temptation for militia service, the states were paying in sound money while the Congress, if it remitted at all, was dealing out depreciating notes. Miraculously the Amos Farnsworths stayed with the continental colors despite the poor profit and lengthy discomfort, but they were of the handful who believed independence to be a vision of God and the fight for it beyond the vanities of this world.

July 19 1776

Aug. 9 1776

Congress indulged itself also in making four new major generals: Heath, Spencer, Sullivan and Greene. It passed over Pomeroy, Wooster and Thomas, for apparently no reason other than that described by Chase of Maryland when he stated that the delegates were persisting in the error of recommending "persons from personal friendships who were not suitable." John Adams, who, as Belcher asserts, was "unhappily incapable of seeing conspicuous merit in any one but himself," stated there would be "less danger in vesting the power (of appointment) in any assembly than in giving it to a general." On the other hand, Duane of New York declared he would "rather take the opinion of Washington than of any convention." It afterwards transpired when the commander in chief took over the appointing power that subordinates were selected because of their familiarity with the business of arms.

Howe, whose army had landed on Staten Island the day following the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, finally determined to venture over to Long Island. He took with him at least 20,000 effectives from his total force of 35,000.

The American army was in the incubation period of its chronic complaint—torpid enlistment. Congress had legislated over 50,000 men into the service, yet Washington in order to oppose the British general could collect barely 8,000 fit for duty. *Aug. 22 1776*

It is not remarkable that Howe by an admirable turning movement overwhelmed the little outpost of 2,500 near Flatbush, as one would pinch a piece of pulp between the thumb and forefinger. *Aug. 27 1776* According to one captured American, who confessed after the battle that his duties had been to "flank a little and carry tidings," it would appear that the service of security and information had been carried along very well. As a matter of fact the Americans had no cavalry, nor had they much idea of the use of patrols. The five officers who had been employed for that purpose over the Jamaica road, the forefinger of the British attack, were easily captured as the enemy's column came along. Putnam, in his usual zealous blundering, sent more troops into the trap after he was made cognizant of the force on the flank. Another American leader ingenuously stated that the Jamaica road was a "route we never dreamed of." Stirling and Sullivan were captured, the latter while hiding in a cornfield. One brilliant colonel, outstripping the others in the general retreat, destroyed without authority a very necessary bridge, thus aiding the British in scooping more successfully the flying Americans. About 2,100 were killed or captured, some few making their way back to Brooklyn Heights.

How little the private realized the results of the battle is to be gleaned from one diarist who set down this effective epitome:

> "Our Army on Long Island Have ben Engaged in battle with the Enimy and Killd And taken a good many on Both sides."

That afternoon six hours of daylight remained for Howe to exterminate not over 5,500 disheartened Americans and so end the Revolution. Being immersed in Whiggish thought, he did not move. The next morning rain rendered the American *Aug. 28 1776* powder useless. Again the British opportunity for easy victory with cold steel must have impressed Howe. And again he ignored the invitation. Certainly the scattering fire encouraged by Washington among those who could keep their powder dry did not deceive a tried soldier like the British commander.

Taking advantage of Howe's hesitancy, Washington ordered Mifflin, his quartermaster general, to "collect every flat-bottomed boat and other craft . . . fit for transporting troops." The little army had at its back a deep channel and in its front an overwhelming number of the best trained soldiers of Europe. A large percentage of the colonial troops had left their blankets and equipment on the battlefield several miles away. Their powder was wet with rain and their spirits dampened by defeat.

Aug. 29 1776 Under cover of a fog Washington completed the transportation of this entire force to the Manhattan shore. Thanks to its sagacious leader, London weather and a British general, the American army lived to fight another day.

Sept. 15 1776 But that day, as will be seen when Howe arrived in pursuit several weeks later, adds no brilliant luster to American arms.

In the meantime, Congress received from Washington the description of the effect upon the troops of the disaster of Long Island:

Letter Sept. 2 1776 "The check our detachment sustained on the 27th ultimo has dispirited too great a proportion of our troops and filled their minds with apprehension and despair. The militia instead of calling forth their utmost effort to a brave and manly opposition in order to repair our losses, are dismayed, intractable, and impatient to return. Great numbers of them have gone off—in some instances almost by whole regiments, by half-ones, and by companies at a time."

John White, writing from Rhinebeck after these parties had time to arrive home, confirms Washington's statement by saying:

"I suppose there are not less in this and the Northeast Precinct than thirty (deserters) who keep in the woods and are supported by their friends."

When Howe landed at what is now East 34th Street, the effect upon the untrained colonial levies was what might have been expected. Washington again records, in characteristically conservative style, this pitiful event:

Sept. 15 1776

> "As soon as I heard the firing, I rode with all possible despatch toward the place of landing, when, to my great surprise and mortification, I found the troops that had been posted in the lines retreating with the utmost precipitation, and those ordered to support them (Parson's and Fellow's brigades) flying in every direction and in the greatest confusion, notwithstanding the exertions of their Generals to form them. I used every means in my power to rally and get them into some order, but my attempts were fruitless and ineffectual, and on the appearance of a small party of the enemy, not more than 60 or 70, their disorder increased, and they ran away in the greatest confusion without firing a shot."

"Every means in my power" consisted in riding in among the fugitives and beating officer and man unavailingly with the flat of the saber until the scourger himself was barely rescued from the enemy. The one defect that aroused the anger of the Father of his Country was cowardice.

Sept. 16 1776

The letter quoted had no more than reached Congress before that body made two enactments affecting the army. One was the completion of the "The Articles of War" with the injunction that they be read every two months at the head of each company, troop and regiment. Two hours were required in mouthing this legal recital of offenses and penalties, fourteen of which prescribed death. The unlettered soldier, knowing how few of the punishments were actually executed, was far from being impressed. The other act promulgated after great reluctance on the part of the delegates was fully as fruitless. It called for the creation of 88 battalions of continentals or regulars to be taken proportionally from all thirteen colonies. If the soldier engaged for the entire war he was offered $20 in money and from 500 acres of land for a colonel to 100 for a private. The weak central government now raised its inducement and began to bid against the powerful colonies. But it gave to the states the right of naming the officers of this force, Congress perfunctorily issuing commissions.

The 88-battalion measure showed advancement in the attempt to establish a regular continental army for which Washington had contended through so many months, but the bounty system was the inauguration of wasteful legislation. Further, in delegating to the states the appointment of officers, Washington's plans of organization were frustrated. He could not advance or appoint a single subordinate without first consulting the governors who were in many cases several months' journey away. Invariably it turned out that state preference lay with the influential novice rather than with the able veteran.

The day Howe, by the very appearance of landing, put so many Americans to flight, he could easily have entrapped Putnam at the southern end of the Island by merely moving onward. Although he was conversant with this fact, he chose to accept an invitation to dine at the Murray House on Murray Hill with some charming ladies. Putnam being unopposed was extremely successful in making his escape.

The next morning, Washington, finding Howe still inert, determined to develop his whereabouts. Selecting a body of 120 rough and ready mounted men known as Knowlton's Rangers, he sent them forward to gain contact. In a skirmish known as Harlem Heights they acquitted themselves nobly by pursuing the foe and giving more blows than they took. Although from a military point of view the engagement was indecisive, it did much to restore the failing courage of the Americans.

Yet it did not check desertions enough to show any effect upon the dwindling force. Signs of absenteeism were particularly noticeable in the service of supply where great quantities
Oct. 8 1776 of beef were left to putrefy on the ground. Congress acknowledged the general disintegration by adding to its bid for continental troops an annual gift of two linen hunting shirts, two pairs of overalls, one leather or woolen waistcoat with sleeves, one pair of breeches, a hat or leather cap, two shirts, two pairs
Oct. 12 1776 of hose and two pairs of shoes. Nevertheless, Washington's backing fell off so materially that he was forced to retreat to White Plains or be cut off.

The British, in following him, were met by Glover's brigade at Pell's Point, where the red-coated ranks in the open were mowed down by the Americans behind stone walls. The untrained woodsmen again demonstrated their ability to hit the target as long as there was a sufficient barrier between the enemy's bullet and their bowels. In this uneven action the Americans had 16 casualties against some 800 of the British, so that the morale of the retreating army received another slight pulsation. *Oct. 18 1776*

When the actual battle of White Plains occurred, however, nothing but a rainstorm which wet the ammunition and stopped temporarily all hostilities, saved Washington's puny force from decisive defeat. In his disadvantageous position he was compelled to withdraw to the heights of Newcastle for safety. *Oct. 22 1776*

Then came the disaster of Fort Washington, which gave Long Island, Manhattan and New Jersey to the enemy. Over a month previous Washington had sent word to Greene, the commander of the fortress, that the place was untenable and should be abandoned. Here Congress intervened by directing Greene not to relinquish it except under dire necessity. In consequence, Howe surrounded and captured it with an overwhelming force and by a well-planned maneuver, taking 2,600 prisoners with many stores and provisions. Not only was it a serious loss in itself, but its fall necessitated the precipitate evacuation of Fort Lee across the river. In all, Congress by its interference in a business to which it was an absolute stranger and from which it was far removed, contributed to the British 146 pieces of artillery, 12,000 shot, 2,800 small arms, and 400,000 musket cartridges. *Nov. 16 1776*

A regimental adjutant before the assault, becoming an "old countryman" (deserting to the enemy), with all the plans of the fort, furthered congressional effort. In taking over the prisoners the British were highly amused at the "butcher and baker" who made up the commissioned personnel, and especially at one captain who insisted upon styling himself "keppun."

The campaign of New York was ended with Washington fleeing south. As he crossed the Hudson, the New York and the New England militia of four states left him almost in a body. He was pushed so rapidly across the Hackensack that *Nov. 20 1776*

Nov. 28 1776 he had to abandon much of his commissary stores, baggage, and over thirty cannons. As he moved out of Newark, Cornwallis on his heels entered the other end of the town. Indeed, if the British had not been retarded by Howe, the patriot remnants could easily have been swallowed up or put to flight. *Nov. 29 1776* The colonial troops were only too anxious to depart. The New Jersey and Maryland militia, finding that their terms had expired, left the colors forthwith in the face of Washington's most earnest entreaties. Only the sturdy continentals remained. Winter was coming on. Clothing was ragged and scant. Many a man was marching in his bare feet so that lameness and sickness resulted.

The soldier blamed the colonial assemblies for neglect. The assemblies blamed the people at large, where the onus seems justly to lie. For it is proved by several authorities, among whom is Dr. Benjamin Rush, that the townsmen were not pinched but rather were living in a prosperous and well-fed condition. In their complaisant and ignominious apathy they heeded neither the Revolution nor the suffering soldier. So *Dec. 2 1776* low did the hungry, footsore, cold tatterdemalions sink in numbers that it was seriously projected, when they had crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania, that they retire to Augusta County, Virginia, in order to conduct a lawless, predatory warfare wherever and whenever they could harass the British. Such a course would nominally have ended the Revolution.

To add to the losses by desertion Washington had to suffer from those of defection. Lee who had been left behind in the north did not move after repeated orders from his commander in chief to join the main body. Already he had begun his insidious plotting. Being second in command he felt that, with a little success on his part, say, cutting the British line of retreat in New Jersey, he could supplant Washington. After inexcusable delay he moved out at the speedy rate of 40 miles in 8 days! While at a farmhouse, three miles outside his own *Dec. 13 1776* lines, where he had been engaged in writing disloyal notes to Gates, he was surprised and captured by a few British. The enemy felt that it had spirited away the brains of the Revolution. Nothing could have better promoted coöperation with the commander in chief than the removal of this despicable conspirator, unless, perhaps, Gates had also been taken. As it turned out Stirling,[1] next in command, immediately marched to Washington's aid with all dispatch.

Panicked by the British advance through New Jersey, Congress packed its portmanteaus, hoisted its printing press aboard a wagon and fled to Baltimore. There, before any news of Washington's coming successes could reach it, it breathlessly "vested him with full, ample, and complete powers to raise and collect sixteen battalions of infantry . . . to appoint all officers below the rank of brigadier general . . . to take, wherever he may be, whatever he may want for the use of the army." In addition to this plenipotentiary arrangement it allowed him to raise 3,000 light horse, 3 regiments of artillery, and a corps of engineers, and to establish their pay. Congress was not averse in times of great extremity to unloading responsibility on the already weighted shoulders of Washington.

To his lot little beyond the blackest cowardice, desertion and defeat had fallen since the Declaration of Independence. After having been despoiled of means, he was rudely saddled with complete authority. The force at his immediate disposal was not more than 3,300, half of whom were volatile militia. At the existing rate of dissolution ten days more would end the army and make freedom a byword. Under this yoke the heart of a man and the soul of leadership alone changed the course of events. Singly and without show, while shattered and all but forsaken, Washington determined upon an offensive. Since he had collected all the Delaware River boats, he was unassailable until the enemy could construct rafts. His information from patriots in New Jersey showed that the British were scattered throughout the state in small garrisons. Rall was at Trenton with 1,500 men, and Dunlop at Bordentown with a similar number. The Hessians had thrown up no intrenchments and Christmas day would be an occasion of feasting and drunkenness. Besides Sullivan and Gates had joined Washington with their northern reënforcements.

The plan was simple and audacious. Christmas night Gates was to cross the river against Dunlop. Ewing was to cross just *Dec. 25 1776* below Trenton in order to cut off Rall's retreat, while Washington was to cross nine miles above the town. Three parallel columns were simultaneously to sally into the enemy's country.

---

[1] Sullivan and Stirling had both been exchanged.

Just one third of the plan was executed. Gates complained of being ill, but was not so indisposed as to be prevented from hastening away in order to intrigue with Congress. Ewing found the river very full of ice and was certain that Washington must have failed in his attempt. The desperate northern column was left to make its way between the floating cakes unassisted. All night long in sleet and darkness Washington and Knox toiled and urged the miniature transports. Not until three o'clock was the force safely landed and not until eight did they come in sight of their objective. Drunkenness and overconfidence let the town lie in unpreparedness until the Americans were within musket shot. Otherwise, bereft of a part of his army and delayed by the slow crossing, Washington's shivering soldiers could easily have been scattered, while the Trenton Hessians escaped to Dunlop. As it turned out the Americans took nearly 1,000 prisoners, 6 field pieces, 4 flags and 12 drums with the loss of 2 officers and 1 private wounded. A private described the engagement as follows:

> "This morning at 4 a clock we set off with our field pieces, marched 8 miles to Trenton whare we ware atacked by a number of Hushing & we toock 1000 of them besides killed some. Then we marchd back And got to the River at Night and got over all the Hushing."

Nevertheless, this apparently elated diarist refused to be tempted by the $10 extra bounty which Washington, pledging his own private fortune, was compelled to offer the militia as an inducement to stay with the colors for a few days more. Neither was it particularly significant to this patriot that the Americans had taken so many "Hushing" and that there had occurred the first offensive action and real victory of the war. Like many others he drew his wages and bounty money and departed.

Dec. 29 1776 Before the remainder could do likewise, Washington recrossed the river into the land of the enemy, and occupied

Trenton with not more than 5,000. In the meantime Cornwallis had collected 8,000 trained men at Princeton. Leaving 3 regiments in the town the British commander set out for the American army, arriving within striking distance by nightfall.

Washington was not only compelled to shift his position to the south of the town but was in the same plight in which he found himself at Long Island—deep water in his rear and an overwhelming force in front. This time, however, due to the determined skill of the American leader the little army did not retreat. At one o'clock A.M., it moved out over the roundabout Quaker Road, leaving 700 men behind to keep the fires burning and to imitate camp noises. It arrived in Cornwallis' rear near Princeton at sunrise when the British brigade of the rear guard was crossing Stony Brook to join the main force near Trenton. Perceiving a small party of Americans (Mercer's men), Colonel Mawhood (English) faced about in order to capture what he estimated to be a few colonial companies. For some time he was successful on account of the superiority of the British bayonet. But suddenly he found himself confronted with Washington and the whole American army which was supposedly twelve miles away at Trenton. Washington pursued the British regiments as far as Kingston. He made prisoners of 200 cooped in old Nassau, and inflicted a loss of about 400 on other troops. Since his men were too fatigued to carry out the original intention of seizing the stores at Brunswick, and had vastly exceeded their resources in their daring, he camped that night at Somerset Court House. The next day he went into winter quarters on the heights of Morristown.

Jan. 3 1777

Jan. 4 1777

Washington's daring and skill had caused his little force to outnumber that part of the enemy he had attacked. Had he failed in any part of his plan he would have been annihiliated and gone down in history as a fool. As it was, when Cornwallis wheeled about, Washington knew that his own superiority had fallen to inferiority. The astute American commander quickly took the defensive.

To this movement he was forced as much on account of the condition of his men as their numbers. Marching in the frigid cold without proper nourishment and uniform, the soldier's sufferings were possibly greater than those at Valley Forge.[2] It was estimated by eyewitnesses that the ill-fed, ill-clothed, ill-supplied and exhausted American army could then have been put to flight at Morristown by one well-equipped and drilled battalion.

Obscured by the brilliant skirmishes of Trenton and Princeton, the true situation between the contending forces should not be overlooked. The British in their victorious battles around New York had taken almost as many prisoners as Washington had soldiers in his camp. The untrained, come-and-go patriot had been an easy prey to the seasoned veterans from abroad. The American had not yet learned to march in the open, under fire and against breastworks. Through lack of discipline and training he was bound to be an easier victim than the soldier who knew what to do instinctively and made offensive action possible.

Jan. 13 1777

The treatment of the American prisoners certainly did not stimulate the patriot to try conclusions with the British. Ethan Allen during his incarceration wrote that he had suffered everything short of death. Many others were sharing a like fate. To prevent ill treatment to Lee, Washington informed Howe that every cruel act would meet with retaliation. The mockery of this thoughtfulness is expressed in the fact that Lee at that very hour was concocting plans for the complete overthrow of Washington's army and the American cause.

It is certain, though, that Howe was attempting to make captivity for the "rebels" more distressing than death. The prison ships, *Jersey, Hunter, Whitby, Scorpion, Stromboli* and *Good Hope,* were floating "black holes." The hatches and other openings of the crowded traps were so sparse and barred as to make air and light real luxuries. The stacking up of the dead was as regular as sunrise. The highest privilege a prisoner could receive was to go ashore with a burial party. The emaciated bodies were flung into shallow holes in the sand only to be washed by the next storm about the vessel where they floated before the occasional view of the next victims. During the war 10,000 are said to have perished on the *Jersey* alone.

---

[2] To be described in the next chapter.

In the sugar houses and churches of New York, the land prisons of the British, conditions were even worse. Unprincipled overseers are said to have fed the dead and starved the living. The deceased captives, mortifying in their own filth, were often found to have placed in their mouths pieces of stone or plaster, their last hope of nourishment. Very few of the released survived, some dying in their tracks before reaching home.

It is possible that Howe's prison system was one of the principal deterrents to recruiting. It may in part explain the reluctance of the American soldier to reënlist even after being stirred by Tom Paine's *Crisis* read at the head of each regiment:

> "These are the times that try men's souls. The summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will in this crisis shrink from the service of his country, but he that stands now deserves the love and thanks of man and woman."

At Morristown those parts of the militia which had with effort been induced to stay on after Trenton were leaving in shoals, taking with them what Government property suited their fancy. After two years of war Washington's whole energy had to be expended in pleading with Congress and the country for an army. He was left with nothing whatever with which to undertake operations. Consequently, the hostilities of the remainder of the winter manifested themselves only in ineffective partisan warfare among New Jersey farmers.

Feb. 19, 1777 Congress did not increase its prestige by appointing Stirling, Mifflin, Saint Clair, Stephen and Lincoln as major generals, passing over Arnold, the senior brigadier, who had demonstrated more soldierly qualities and leadership than any other general save Washington and perhaps Greene. Dissatisfaction arose among the troops in that their natural leader should be so treated. The unjust situation is explained by the fact that Arnold was a friend of Schuyler, and Schuyler, due to Gates' plotting, was *persona non grata* to Congress.

By March, thanks to the indifference of a well-fed and erroneously revered population, the force at Morristown had dwindled to less than 3,000, over 2,000 of whom were worthless militia who would depart the next month. Within two-days' march was a British army of 10,000 trained soldiers which could have taken the Americans with less loss than it was experiencing from the rebel community.

April 26 1777 To add to Washington's misfortunes, General Tryon, the royal governor, had landed near Fairfield, Connecticut, and marched to Danbury where he captured more than 1,600 tents and other stores. Generals Silliman and Wooster pursued the British, harassing them at Lexington until Wooster was killed. Arnold, who had been on a visit in the neighborhood, voluntarily led in his impulsive way several hundred militia to the fray. Although he had two horses shot under him he succeeded in inflicting much loss on the escaping British. Congress, forced to recognize him for this exploit, reluctantly made him a major general but did not restore him to his former relative rank.

May 24 1777 Finally after four months, the army at Morristown under the act creating 88 battalions came up to a total of about 7,500. Although Washington was able to move out of camp he was not strong enough to undertake an offensive. Selecting a strong position near Brunswick he placed himself between Howe and Philadelphia. Then ensued a series of adroit maneuvers on the part of Howe to entice Washington into giving battle. After three attempts to lure the Americans toward unfavorable ground, during each of which Washington returned to his strong position, the British took to their boats on Staten Island *June 30 1777* and sailed Washington knew not where. For two months Howe at sea and Washington on land played at hide and seek. The Americans first moved north as far as Haverstraw on the Hudson, then returned as far south as Philadelphia and had partly retraced their steps northward, when verification of the news that the British were in the Chesapeake turned them again *Aug. 22 1777* south.

Although the army had been harassed by marching and countermarching and knew with a vengeance the meaning of locomotion, it did not, while Howe was in obscurity, lose in numbers. Congress had again resorted to the fickle militia, calling out approximately 11,000 from the surrounding states.

When Washington finally marched through Philadelphia with drums beating, the flag of the Union (13 stars and stripes) flying, the generals and their aides all gold and lace riding on frisky mounts, and the "ragged, lousy, naked regiments" carrying burnished arms, the whole force came up to the magnificent total of 11,000 fit for duty. *Aug. 24 1777*

Before the army travels further, it is necessary to speak of a curious malady—"foreignitis"—which affected it most strangely. The American agents in France had been besieged and besought by European adventurers for commissions in our service. Most of the applicants were without merit or interest in the cause. That Franklin in his Parisian apartments was not deceived by them is evidenced by the closing sentence of one of his replies:

> "If, therefore, you have the least remaining kindness for me, if you would not help to drive me out of France, for God's sake, my dear friend, let this your twenty-third application be your last."

Silas Deane was less discerning. He made great promises to trained and untrained alike. In consequence, little foreign migrations waited upon Congress and importuned Washington when he had just been given plenary powers and was in the thick of his troubles after Trenton. In one instance Deane had given Du Courdray a commission as major general of artillery. Knox, as brigadier, and chief of that arm had served successfully for over a year. Greene and Sullivan shook hands with Knox that they would all resign their commissions provided the displacement occurred. Washington, besides, protested against the appointment because he would be saddled with a man whose qualities he did not know and about whom he should have been consulted. Congress was forced to repudiate Du Courdray's commission. But others came who could not be warded off so easily. Upon their advent the junior American officers protested that they themselves were native born, had served from the beginning and were now unfairly "jumped" by a foreigner. The enlisted men detested being ordered about by a titled fellow with a broken accent. This antipathy caused even Canadian officers to be tried and retried on the flimsiest pretexts until many were forced to resign their commissions.

Just as the convalescent can sometimes attribute good effects to certain diseases, so to a few exceptions among the foreigners, without whose aid it is doubtful if America had won the war, the country owes deep gratitude: Steuben, Lafayette, Pulaski, Kosciusko and Du Portail. Of these Steuben by his ability and Lafayette by his affluence, influence and noble attitude were preëminent.

Congress, in bestowing the rank of major general on Lafayette, gave forth these democratic sentiments:

> "That in consideration of his zeal, illustrious family and connections he have the rank of major general in the army of the United States."

Nowhere in the history of the Revolution did our lawmakers intimate by the slightest token that there existed such a thing as military technic or efficiency. Family, caste, friendship, favor and politics seemed to be the determining factors in awarding splendid commissions. Arnold, the most brilliant divisional commander of the war, was passed over time after time by incompetents until he finally responded to ill treatment with treason.

Two days after Lafayette's arrival Washington received the news that Howe was in the Chesapeake. The American commander marched south to meet the British, having obtained reliable information by the service of scouts; but finding the opposing force superior, he withdrew to a defensive position north of Chad's Ford across the Brandywine.

Sept. 11 1777 Howe tried the same pinching movement he had used at Long Island. This time, however, he changed the relative positions of the thumb and forefinger. Knyphausen moved out over the eastern thumb in order to keep Washington occupied and make him believe he was opposed by the entire force. Howe with Cornwallis made a detour over the long forefinger in order to cross the western forks of the Brandywine and surprise the American flank.

Washington, perceiving the plan, sent Sullivan across the upper reaches of the river in order to keep Howe engaged, while he, Washington, could cross and overwhelm the inferior force of Knyphausen's before help could arrive. Sullivan, without making sufficient reconnaissance, reported that there was no enemy across the river so that he was consequently withdrawn. Shortly afterward the news came to Washington that the whole British army had crossed near the point where Sullivan should have kept the enemy engaged. It was too late for the American army to carry out the original plan. It could not defeat the weak fraction on the thumb while the larger force on the tip of the forefinger was absent. Howe was already hitting Washington on two sides. Sullivan's militia on the right flank gave way like sheep and the rout began. Although Greene came to the rescue and covered the retreat, Washington was forced to withdraw to Chester with losses about equal to those of the British.

Sept. 12 1777 Next day he moved north to Germantown, where, upon finding that Howe was still inactive, he prepared to force the issue again. Crossing the Schuylkill he hastened south. The two armies met at Warwick Tavern where the rain began to *Sept. 16 1777* fall in torrents. The Americans without rainproof clothing of any kind, in their tight-fitting, uncomfortable, unsuitable garments, were drenched to the skin. Their "cartouch" boxes were soaked through so that all idea of any engagement, other than with bayonet or bow and arrow, vanished. Washington removed his saturated musketeers behind the Schuylkill near *Sept. 17 1777* Perkiomen.

Convinced that Philadelphia would soon be in British hands Congress[3] again precipitately packed off westward, this time to York. Finding the burdens of war excessive and quite out of hand, it magnanimously passed them over to Washington who was virtually given dictatorial powers within seventy miles of his headquarters for sixty days. His hands were free to meet the enemy in any way he chose.

Finding that Howe was moving westward along the south bank of the Schuylkill, he attempted along the north bank to keep pace with him. But the disaffection of the Germans and

---

[3] It had returned from Baltimore.

Quakers in that vicinity withheld valuable information, so that, when Howe suddenly wheeled eastward, Washington was not apprised of the fact. The British were across the river and well on their way to Philadelphia before Washington was aware of the countermarch.

At Germantown Howe retained 6,000 men while he scattered the remainder, with the exception of 3,000 in Philadelphia, throughout New Jersey. As soon as Washington was satisfied of this faulty disposition, he at once decided to fall upon the inferior force at Germantown and overwhelm it. By setting out at night he would march with four columns along parallel roads, converge and attack simultaneously at dawn. The militia was to close in around the British flanks and cut off its retreat while the continental troops made the main attack in the center. All arrived near their separate destinations, and the plan would have been carried out admirably had not any one of the following occurrences taken place. A dense fog settled over the troops so that forty feet was the visual limit. The militia on one flank never appeared; on the other, they fired a few random shots over the creek which they were to cross and dispersed. The Chew House in rear of the American objective had been barricaded by five companies of British so that no amount of cannonade, torch flame or rifle fire could dislodge the occupants. General Stephens in a drunken condition led his column off the trail and fired into Wayne's troops. Greene, thinking the firing at the Chew House and in his rear was that of the main body of the enemy, withdrew. A general panic and retreat ensued. Washington was glad to collect all his forces at Skippack Creek by nightfall without the loss of his cannons.

Oct. 4
1777

The troops of Washington's army so far had begun and ended their open fighting by running. They had scarcely been present long enough as a whole to be trained to do otherwise. The men had no chance to exhibit their natural courage so long as many of their leaders were ill-disciplined. General Conway, for instance, was found, during the action at Germantown, resting in a farmhouse. When asked by two field officers why he was not with his brigade, he mumbled a feeble excuse about the indisposition of his horse.

While Washington was impotently beating himself away against Howe in the south, Burgoyne's army in the north was streaming down from Canada in an endeavor to join Clinton so as to separate New England from the remainder of the colonies. Ticonderoga had fallen because Saint Clair had omitted the obvious precaution of seizing a commanding hill. The Americans then retired, leaving no usable article in their wake, so that Burgoyne's army, cutting its way through a denuded wilderness, made slow and difficult progress.

If the British force had been hampered by hardship and disease, the American force had grown thin in addition by desertion. In August 2 Massachusetts regiments had left the northern camp while Washington was gaining recruits in the south. Schuyler's force was decreasing to such an extent that only 4,000 troops remained to him, one third of whom were negroes, boys and old men too aged for field service.

Smallpox, too, as well as "inoculation frolics" had wrought fearful havoc. At that time vaccination was a novel immunity, administered by transmitting the infection from the stricken to the well. In civil life, where people were healthy and comfortably surrounded, this method of transmission of the disease induced no great amount of mortality. The doctor's argument, that more died from the epidemic taken in a natural way than from inoculation given while in a healthy condition, seemed to prove itself with the civil population. But when the malady was transported out of its time to the army, consideration was not given to the wasted, exposed, and emaciated condition of the subject. With the soldier, shoes, whole breeches, and overcoats were absent quantities, and hunger ever present. More died from wounds by bacilli than from lead. The doctors in the field became violent spreaders of contagion rather than skillful guardians of health. The remedies of quackery of that age, snakeroot, rum and gentian, distilled earthworms, and lukewarm snail-water added not over much to recovery. In spite of the general's specific orders to the contrary, surgeons so persisted in their pernicious scratchings that they had to be tried by court-martial.

A change in the moral tone of the troops came with the battle at Bennington, Vermont, where in their advance the British had attempted to round up some supplies and had been met and defeated by an overwhelming number of farmers. The victory gave to Schuyler many new recruits. To add to the general revival, Arnold was returning from meeting Saint Leger who had advanced from Oswego to join Burgoyne. By a clever ruse the American commander and his reënforcements had scattered the Canadians, English, and Indians, leaving the valley of the Mohawk cleared of the enemy. His successful 600 would soon lend personal aid to the main body.

Just when Schuyler had successfully built up optimism from depression and was gaining adequate numbers, Congress decided on the brilliant scheme of sending the subtle Gates to take over the northern command. Schuyler received the blow without comment, increased his energies in building up his positions and prepared to meet the enemy descending upon him.

When Gates arrived, although the fruits of victory were ready to be plucked, the new general did his utmost to let them rot on the limb. The American army far outnumbered the British and Kosciusko had skillfully planned the fortifications on Bemis Heights. Nevertheless the British approached the flank of the strong position in such a way as to threaten to enfilade the lines. Gates refused to move, more interested in showing the teamsters an easy way of retreat than in forging ahead into battle. Arnold, realizing the danger of passive resistance, forced his new commander by moral suasion to order the left wing forward. With the expectation of aid to follow, Arnold fell upon the enemy at Freeman's Farm, but was unable to dislodge them. Seeing himself in a disadvantageous position and with no reënforcements, he whirled about and attacked the British center. Even with the odds against him he would have held his own had not British reënforcements arrived. All this time Gates withholding aid from his subordinate had sat behind entrenchments when he could not have helped knowing that his overpowering forces would have routed the British. Even as it was, night fell upon the two armies with more losses to Burgoyne than to Arnold.

Of this engagement Gates sent a report to Congress in which he made no mention of Arnold and his heroic deeds. Schuyler's staff officers having attached themselves to Arnold felt the slight so much that a feud arose which was heightened in bitterness by Gates' inexplicable delay throughout the next eighteen days. Arnold's natural ardor and bravery chafed under such unwarrantable inaction. After one heated argument with his chief he applied for permission to leave the army. When his application was immediately granted, he found himself besought by his officers and men to remain. Gates, however, refused to receive him back so that he occupied a singularly unofficial status without command.

In the meantime Lincoln, after retaking Mount Independence, joined Gates, raising the latter's force to more than twice that of the British. Still Gates sat looking into the distance. *Oct. 8 1777* Burgoyne, who had already set October 12 as his limit of time for holding out, determined to force a passage to Clinton farther down the Hudson. Again he attacked the American left. Unable to bear the sight of the American inaction in the face of such an offensive, Arnold, with fury and without authority, rode at the head of his men, who followed him amid cheers. He drove Burgoyne into his camp, repulsed Balcarras and took a strong redoubt, where he ended a day of heroism and victory by being carried from the field wounded. While all this was happening, Gates in his own tent held ethical discourse with a captured British aide as to the merits of the Revolution.

Following much wrangling, during which Gates had learned of the fall of Fort Montgomery and of the contemplated advance of Clinton and during which Burgoyne was in ignorance of these events, the British surrendered at Saratoga. *Oct. 17 1777* The victory was credited to a hero who was in reality a dilatory weakling. It belonged to an intrepid, skillful leader who afterwards succumbed to treason.

One soldier in his diary wrote his estimate as follows:

"Arnold was a smart man; they didn't serve him quite straight."

Another characterized him thus:

"A bloody fellow he was. He didn't care for nothing; he'd ride right in. It was 'Come on, boys!' twasn't 'Go boys!'—

there wasn't any waste timber in him. He was a stern-looking man but kind to his soldiers. They didn't treat him right—but he ought to have been true."

On the other hand, this remark seems to epitomize another soldier's opinion:

"Gates was an old granny-looking fellow."

This summary seems to be the only surviving camp description of this reclusive warrior.

The country went into hysterics over this first decisive victory. Gates was at once a national hero paramount to all others. Many acclaimed him and denied Washington.

The news of the capture of Burgoyne came as a boon to the ragged, defeated main army at Skippack Creek. The hopes of Washington's command were to a degree revived. But they were also alloyed with the significant knowledge that Howe had *Oct. 19 1777* moved into Philadelphia and, with his 20,000 trained troops, was spending his third winter in another large and luxurious American city, this time the capital of the country. As the cold weather came on, desertions in the Revolutionary ranks grew to large proportions. Washington moved to Whitemarsh, *Dec. 19 1777* where he remained three weeks. Then he sought winter quarters at Valley Forge.

These first lessons in mobility for the army had been hard and discouraging. Trenton, Princeton and Saratoga were the only visible returns of over a year's effort. Though the first two were brilliant, bold strokes, they were candidly but skirmishes having little bearing on the outcome of the war. Saratoga, then, was the single prize of all this grueling. The British effort to cut the country into two parts had been paralyzed, and a large force had been captured.

On the other hand, the troops from overseas had won Long Island, New York, White Plains, Forts Washington and Lee, the Brandywine and Germantown. As a consequence Howe had moved practically when and where his fancy took him.

In the meantime a prosperous people had begrudged its suffering army a miserly support. Its Congress had fussily pecked at Washington and his following without returning anything palpably constructive. As a body it had rebuked Stark, displaced Schuyler, ignored Arnold, cast aspersions on Greene and Knox, court-martialed Sullivan, Saint Clair, Wayne, and Matthews because they had lost engagements, and ousted Trumbull, the commissary general, so that shoes and clothing lay rotting in hogsheads by the roadside undelivered to the needy troops. But greatest of all, many of the delegates had plotted with the coward Conway against Washington himself. The majority held Charles Lee and Horatio Gates in the highest repute and left the main army to work out its own deliverance at Valley Forge.

CHAPTER III

THE ARMY FINDS DISCIPLINE AND SUCCESS

(1778–1781)

Dec. 19 1777, to June 18 1778

VALLEY FORGE stands as the Gethsemane of American history. It has come to be the national equivalent of vicarious sacrifice. It commonly suggests no other claim for greatness. What hardships our soldiers at other times have endured, and what Valley Forge really accomplished for the United States, are totally eclipsed by records of frozen feet and hungry stomachs close to a comfortable city.

When the British took up winter quarters in Philadelphia, Washington put the hills and the Schuylkill between himself and Howe. His army found itself in an undeveloped, wooded country which was so dense that every effort had to be bent on making it fit for existence. The soldiers at once were set to work to cut fuel and such logs as would do for building. Huts were reared, chinked with mud or clay and thatched with straw. Window openings, usually two in number, were closed with oiled paper. The construction of these rude shelters was arranged so that each regiment reaped the result of its own labor and laid out its own street. The brigades, each having two such streets, stretched beween Trout Creek and Valley Creek in the shape of a wide V whose point was away from the river.

Dec. 20 1777

So scarce was straw, because the farmers refused to haul it, that many roofs were incomplete and many a soldier had to sleep on brush or bare ground. Washington was compelled to issue a proclamation which made it plain to the surrounding population that the grain would be immediately threshed and the straw sold, or the whole would be taken and paid for as straw. Even then it was almost impossible to carry out the threat because of the lack of transportation. Had not soldiers harnessed themselves to carts of their own making, very little provender of any sort would have been brought into the camp.

To the mismanagement and neglect of the lawmakers and to the apathy and defection of a large part of the civilian population can be justly attributed this unnecessary suffering. *Oct. 10 1777* General Mifflin had resigned as quartermaster general. Congress had waited a month before it acted upon his resignation, and then three months before it appointed a successor. In the meantime horses starved to death by the hundreds, and provisions and clothing lay rotting in many places by the roadside. *Dec. 22 1777* In Valley Forge there was at one time not a "single hoof of any kind to slaughter, and not more than twenty-five barrels of flour." *Feb. 1778* At another, the army went a week without any kind of flesh to eat. When there was any, it was so poor that one wag among the soldiers declared, when he saw a butcher carrying a hindquarter, that it was so thin he could see the latter's breeches buttons through it. Though Washington issued a proclamation ordering the people to have the cattle fattened, it did little good. The soldier was glad to get meat of any quality. His diet was often fire-cake and water for days at a time. The commander in chief in an appeal for aid stated that the soldiers had scarcely tasted vegetables of any kind, had but little salt or vinegar and no proper drink. Along the line of huts in the evening could be heard the cry, "No meat, no meat!" James Thacher, while speaking with Washington in the camp, heard through the chinks in the logs voices exclaiming, "No pay, no clothes, no provisions, no rum!" The following poem addressed to Washington may or may not in its facetiousness have some underlying truth in it:

> And for the beef—there needs no puff about it;
> In short, they must content themselves without it,
> Not that we mean to have them starved—why, marry,
> The live stock in abundance, which they carry
> Upon their backs, prevents all fear of that!

Even clothing sufficient to cover officers and men was lacking. Lafayette in his memoirs stated that "the unfortunate soldiers were in want of everything; they had neither coats, nor hats, nor shirts, nor shoes; their feet and legs froze until they grew black, and it was often necessary to amputate them." One old soldier, having received a furlough, had to spend two days in cutting up a blanket from which he made a coat and moccasins so that he might undertake the journey home. On December 23 there were 2,898 men unfit for duty on account of lack of shoes and clothing; on February 5 the number had risen to 3,989.

Officers were no better off than the men. One general[1] stated that he saw officers at a grand parade "mounting guard in a sort of dressing gown made of an old blanket or woolen bed cover." This same general's aides gave a dinner to which only officers who did not possess a whole pair of breeches were invited. Guests were abundant.

Jan. 1778 It was probably due to these conditions that Washington recognized the impractical type of clothing of the time and suggested to Governor Trumbull a woolen double-breasted jacket and overalls or trousers. But any clothing would have been satisfactory to the commander in chief, for he said disgustedly, "Perhaps by midsummer, he (the soldier) may receive thick stockings, shoes, and blankets, which he will contrive to get rid of in the most expeditious manner. In this way, by an eternal round of most stupid management, the public treasure is expended to no kind of purpose, while the men have been left to perish by inches with cold and nakedness."

Camp sanitation, under conditions that were insanitary and with soldiers who were ignorant, was almost unknown. Washington reiterated his orders on cleanliness so often that they appear to have grown customary rather than useful. He showed *March 13 1778* how carcasses of dead horses lay in and near camp, how offal lay unburied near the commissary stalls and how much "filth and nastiness" lay among the huts. To show his appreciation of contrary conditions, he states that "nothing does or can contribute more to the health of soldiers than a clean camp, clean clothes and victuals well-dressed." However, in huts unprovided with chimneys, poorly ventilated and crowded beyond capacity, where the smarting smoke from the cooking mingled with the stench of the unbathed bodies and where the mass of occupants was suffering with itch and scurvy, it is not surprising that virulent diseases abounded.

---

[1] Steuben.

Such hardships among undisciplined men were natural forerunners of every sort of absenteeism. The knowledge that warm houses contained sleek men with paunches, who spoke loftily of "the cause" but casually forgot the colonies' defenders, did not spread a feeling of patient endurance. To a considerable distance from the camp the countryside was filled with straggling soldiery. The death penalty for desertion was rarely inflicted; and the next heavier, 100 lashes, was in no wise a deterrent. A Tory stated that 1,134 deserters had come into Philadelphia and given themselves to the enemy.

March 3 1778

March 26 1778

Passes into the city had to be forbidden. Officers granted leaves and furloughs so promiscuously that Washington was compelled to arrogate those powers to himself. Through the loose detached service methods a company's rolls were no indication of who was in camp. In one case where 12 men were marked "present," they were truthfully accounted for as follows: one, as valet to a commissary, had been 200 miles away from the army for 18 months; another as valet to a quartermaster, had been absent in the north for 12 months; and the remainder as drivers of carriages, bakers, blacksmiths, carpenters and coal porters had been gone for years. Officers themselves left their organizations on flimsy pretexts and many were captured through their own folly or carelessness. So, for one reason or another, Washington's army by March was reduced to 4,000 fit for duty against an enemy of 20,000.

March 15 1778

Congress, at a safe distance from possible activities, could not understand why Washington did not drive the British from Philadelphia. He was met with everything from mild lack of confidence to downright abuse. John Adams, who never strayed far from the comforts of civilization, gave it out that he was "sick of Fabian systems . . . and weary with so much insipidity." Such sentiments soon grew to be those of the civilians in general. Few of those in power visited the camp to see for themselves the suffering and dwindling of the little army, and few others were directly interested in the deplorable conditions forced on these defenders of liberty. Yet the urge of the "stay-at-homes" grew apace and by no means increased the morale of the officer and soldier.

Into this unhappy situation there suddenly came a fortune as great as it was unforeseen. There was bestowed upon our ragged troops the greatest gift that they could have received—the gift of discipline. That automatic obedience to authority, which transforms crowds into units, had previously been noticeably lacking. Its absence had often caused brave men to exhibit themselves as cowards. But now in this dark hour it fell providentially from the hands of a foreigner so that the troops began to function as an army, and Valley Forge became a Pentecost instead of a Gethsemane.

Curious fact! this new stamina was imparted by a Prussian; and more curious still, by a Prussian who, because he lived before the days of Prussianism, suited the genius of the American soldier exactly. Lafayette had brought zeal, soldiers and money, but von Steuben brought efficiency, an efficiency he tempered with energy, tact and kindness.

We must remember that von Steuben had come from the court of the great Frederick, the Frederick who despised the German tongue and persisted in employing French customs and language exclusively. Von Steuben had been an aide on that versatile leader's staff. He combined the thoroughness of German drill and training with French adroitness and imagination.

Dec. 1777 He told Congress that he had come to serve "a nation engaged in the noble enterprise of defending its rights and liberties." He asked only to have his necessary expenses defrayed while in the service and to be reimbursed for the loss of his own income only in case the cause was successful.

Feb. 23 1778 On arrival at Valley Forge he was shocked to see the distress of the forces. He was surprised to find no uniform drill, no similarity of organization and no team work of any kind. He observed afterwards that he had found more quartermasters and commissaries in the camp than in all the armies of Europe together.

In spite of the fact that his French cook took French leave the minute the kitchen facilities—one camp kettle under a tree—were pointed out, and that the Baron was compelled from then on to lead a life of Spartan frugality and discomfort, he set in motion at once the business of organization, discipline and training. For Washington, having recognized Steuben's particular merits, had not waited for Congress to act but had immediately appointed him as inspector.

Rising at three in the morning, smoking his pipe and drinking his cup of coffee, Steuben proceeded to the parade ground, where he personally taught drill movements. He would illustrate the manual of arms by using the musket in his own hands. Such a democratic demonstration shocked the higher officers who were still imbued with the British idea of aristocratic aloofness. But Steuben's tact and his sensible dealings made even the cavalier see the fruitlessness of trusting everything to the noncommissioned men. Steuben forced the discovery that in a country where caste is obnoxious an officer must gain results by more direct means. Accordingly there was established that dignified contact between officer and soldier wherein respect is engendered by fairness and ability.

At first the new inspector was particularly struck with the attitude of the officers. He said "the captains and colonels did not consider their companies and regiments as corps confided to them by the United States for the care of the men as well as the preservation of order and discipline. The idea they had of their duty was that the officers had only to mount guard and put themselves at the head of their regiment or company when they were going into action." He forthwith organized the officers into squads, sections and companies for drill under his personal direction. In this way he raised up an excellent corps of instructors. Some time after this plan had been in operation he beheld a colonel instructing a recruit, whereupon he exclaimed, "I thank God for that!"

He was instrumental in having a guard of honor for the commander in chief augmented. The order is significant.

"Headquarters, Valley Forge,
"March 17, 1778.

"One hundred chosen men are to be annexed to the guard of the commander in chief, for the purpose of forming a corps, to be instructed in the maneuvers necessary to be introduced into the army, and to serve as a model for the execution of them. As the general's guard is composed of Virginians, the hundred draughts will be taken from the troops of the other states.

"Description of the men.

"Height, from 5 feet 8 to 5 feet 10 inches; age, from twenty to thirty years; robust constitution, well limbed, formed for activity, and men of established character for sobriety and fidelity. They must be Americans born."

Taking particular pains with these, Steuben succeeded in presenting to the whole army a concrete example of the proper evolutions. Since drill then was the largest part of the training, the service performed shed its helpful influence on many later military events.

His drill regulations show his good sense and humanity. On them are based all subsequent ones in our service, and by them long-needed exercises were put in vogue for the first time. He reduced the number of motions for loading to fifteen. He prescribed a uniformity of arms and accouterments throughout the army. He formed the "company in two ranks at one pace distance, with the tallest men in rear" . . . and "the shortest men in the center." He divided the company into two sections or platoons and the regiment into eight companies. He split regiments of more than 160 privates into two battalions. He assigned to the flank companies the most experienced officers actually present with these units.[2] He established such a sensible "position of the soldier without arms" that for hygienic reasons alone many of its features might with advantage be used to-day. "He (the soldier) is to stand straight and firm upon his legs, with his head turned to the right so far as to bring the left eye over the waistcoat buttons; the heels two inches apart; the toes turned out; the belly drawn in a little, but without constraint; the breast a little projected; the shoulders square to the front and kept back, the hands hanging down to the sides, with the palms close to the thighs." He introduced a "common" step of 24 inches and a cadence of 75 to the minute, which seemed to suit the rugged country, the heavy accouterments, the dense lines and slow firing with which the soldier then struggled.

---

[2] The order from right to left was: first captain, colonel, fourth captain, major, third captain, lieutenant colonel, fifth captain, second captain. The establishment of 1778 allowed to each battalion of infantry 477 privates with pay at $6.66 per month; artillery, 336 matrosses at $8.33 per month; cavalry, 324 dragoons, $8.33 per month; provost, 43 provosts or privates, $8.33 per month; three companies in the engineering department, each to have sixty privates at $8.33 per month. A regiment of infantry had 1 colonel (who was also a captain), 1 lieutenant colonel (also captain), 1 major (also captain), 6 captains, paymaster, adjutant, quartermaster, 1 surgeon, 1 surgeon's mate, 8 lieutenants, 9 ensigns, 1 sergeant major, 1 quartermaster sergeant, 27 sergeants, 1 captain lieutenant (over the colonel's company), 1 drum major, 1 fife major, 18 drums and fifes, 27 corporals, 477 privates: in all 585.

The march in general had been limited to crude formations in line and column of files. Steuben not only made these movements uniform, but added the column of platoons, thus lessening the unnecessary length of road space for tactical movement and the opportunity for straggling.[3] He caused the platoon to wheel much as it does now in "platoon right" and to execute the "oblique step" in order to break from, and form, company. The latter was a curious sidling movement in which the soldier stepped off to the right or left oblique while he kept his "shoulders square to the front." But the evolutions themselves were quite simple. For instance, at the preparatory command, "Take care to display column to the left," all understood that the column of platoons was to form line to the left front. At the second command, "To the left—face!" all except the leading platoon faced to the left. At the third command, "March!" all the rear platoons obliqued to their places where their commanders halted them and dressed them to the right. The sagacity with which he made every man in ranks an integral part of the drill is illustrated by the way he discarded sole dependence upon music or the beat of the drum, and made each individual soldier responsible that he regulated his march by watching the gait of the officer or element in front of the platoon. Whenever there was no such officer or element, a sergeant was to be placed six paces to the front. Such were some of the sensible drill movements (which in those days were battle movements also) that Steuben found useful.

Knowing, however, that drill was valueless without the discipline of daily routine, he went minutely into field and company administration. He prescribed that troops should camp by battalions. He allowed sinks to be dug no nearer to occupied tents than 300 feet. He charged field officers with seeing that their camps were pitched regularly and properly, especially that kitchens and sinks were put in sanitary places. He outlined methods of getting wood and water by means of an organized system of signals and formations. He established roll calls of "troop" and "retreat" under arms and the "reveille" and "noon" without arms. He charged the noncommissioned officers with the making of an accurate check of their squads at tattoo to see that the men were in bed. At the "troop beating" he required company officers to "inspect into the dress of their men," to "see that the clothes are whole and put on properly, their (the soldiers') hands and faces washed clean, their hair combed, their accouterments properly fixed and every article about them in the greatest order." He inaugurated the Saturday-morning inspection which the captains were to conduct for their individual companies in order to "examine into the state of the men's necessaries."

---

[3] Marching and wheeling by fours or squads did not come into vogue until many years later, after the Civil War.

If his technic was simple and fitting, his application of it was just and human.

Let us quote from his regulations, in use at Valley Forge, and afterwards published in 1779 under the authority of Congress, the first standard set of regulations for our army:

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE CAPTAIN

A Captain cannot be too careful of the company the state has committed to his charge. He must pay the greatest attention to the health of his men, their discipline, arms, accouterments, ammunition, clothes and necessaries.

His first object should be to gain the love of his men by treating them with every possible kindness and humanity, inquiring into their complaints, and when well founded, seeing them redressed. He should know every man of his company by name and character. He should often visit those who are sick, speak tenderly to them, see that the public provision,

whether of medicine or diet, is duly administered, and procure them besides such comforts and conveniences as are in his power. The attachment that arises from this kind of attention to the sick and wounded is almost inconceivable; it will, moreover, be the means of preserving the lives of many valuable men.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE LIEUTENANT

He should endeavor to gain the love of his men, by his attention to everything which may contribute to their health and convenience. He should often visit them at different hours; inspect into their manner of living; see that their provisions are good and well cooked, and as far as possible oblige them to take their meals at regulated hours. He should pay attention to their complaints, and when well founded, endeavor to get them redressed; but discourage them from complaining on every frivolous occasion.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE ENSIGN

The ensign is in a particular manner charged with the cleanliness of the men, to which he must pay the greatest attention.

When the company parades, and whilst the captain and lieutenant are examining the arms and accouterments, the ensign must inspect the dress of the soldiers, observing whether they are clean, and everything about them in the best order possible, and duly noticing any who in these respects are deficient.

He must be very attentive to the conduct of the noncommissioned officers, observing that they do their duty with the greatest exactness; that they support a proper authority, and at the same time do not ill treat the men through any pique or resentment.

Here is the golden text of all leadership—his "*first object* should be to gain *the love* of his men by treating them with *every possible kindness and humanity.*" Such consideration

Steuben immediately couples with the duty of infinite care of the company that the state has committed to the charge of the captain. Then the vital advice of individual treatment—of knowing every man by *name and character*—is all too well understood by any one who has ever attempted to handle manhood in the mass. And finally the special visitation of the sick rounds out the thoughtful attitude a company officer should school himself to employ. When analyzed, this simple paragraph spells self-control, high sense of duty, fidelity of performance and loyalty to the inferior as well as to the superior.

Knowing full well that the captain could not, without specific help, bring his company up to standard, Steuben assigned the subalterns particular tasks. The lieutenant was to be zealous in regard to the "health and convenience" of the soldier, and the ensign in regard to "neatness and cleanliness." Steuben here discreetly laid emphasis on the development of self-respect and pride, qualities which are the leading strings of success. Then he capped the whole by setting a check upon ill treatment which arises through "pique or resentment." Understanding how partiality and prejudice may be the ruin of discipline, he closed his instructions by putting a special guard on that sort of injustice.

Steuben spent much time in developing a keen sense of responsibility in the company officer in comparison to that of the field and general officer. He knew that if the individual soldier had affection and regard for his immediate leaders, the higher commands would take care of themselves. He realized that the pride and bearing of the rank and file were the keynotes to achievements in the field, as was demonstrated many times in the World War.

Could any set of instructions more grippingly embrace the essentials of discipline? Have so few words ever more perfectly tempered kindness with justice and balanced rule and appeal? By following these simple principles, could not any body of men, whether soldier or civilian, be directed without friction? Why, then, were these doctrines omitted from later regulations? Why did they have to be ferreted out from a dusty volume whose leaves were yellowed with age and whose print was in old script with its "s's" that looked like "f's"?

George Washington

Painted from life by Ralph Earl.
Courtesy of William M. Austin, New York City.

Frederick von Steuben

Mainly because training, as we shall see, was discarded for a long time after the Revolution, did the true picture of Steuben grow indistinct. Naturally only the rigors of necessary discipline were remembered in connection with him. He has thus been tabled in later years as a hard taskmaster. Legislators have held his work up to contempt in that he early molded our army into Prussian inflexibility. The substance of such an attitude seems to rest on the fact that he hailed from Prussia. By the same argument objection was once made to Christ on the ground that he came from Nazareth. Writers and speakers have been erroneously thankful that the army has survived Steuben's hard lines whereas, in truth, he brought us up out of unsuitable aristocracy, unspeakable chaos and, above all, the misuse of authority. He knew that leading was better than driving and he proved that his human methods were practical and successful.

That he followed his own advice is shown by many instances. For example, once after Arnold's treason, when Steuben was standing by listening to the roll call of a company, he heard a man answer to the name of Arnold. Promptly inviting the soldier to his tent, the baron told the private that he was too good a man to bear a traitor's name, whereupon he gave him permission to be known as Steuben.

Due to such painstaking care and labor, the festering camp began to take on the semblance of order and organization in spite of the lack of supplies. Disease was lessened. Arms remained with the colors.[4] Soldiers on detached service as servants were returned to the fighting force. Officers began to father their organizations. The human touch, zeal and dignity that have since characterized the best American leaders became noticeable. Troops began to be complimented in orders on their drill. By taking the attitude that the "indifferent quality of clothing instead of excusing slovenliness and unsoldierly conduct, ought rather" to excite each man to compensate for those deficiencies by redoubled attention to his personal appearance, Steuben was successful in building morale upon less than nothing. *April 14 1778*

---

[4] During the next year, 1779, only twenty firelocks disappeared in contrast to the thousands missing before Steuben came.

So a foreigner with such a thick brogue that he was largely unintelligible, against odds of national and provincial jealousy and notwithstanding the powerful calumny that was usually heaped upon the efficient friends of Washington, earned a substantial reputation. His work could not be ignored. Congress was morally forced to recognize him. Accordingly Washington's orders one day announced to the camp that von Steuben had been made a major general and inspector general of the army.

May 9 1778

We are soon to see some of the direct effects of his efforts.

The spirits of the little army that strove with its emaciated self in pitiful efforts at training were unexpectedly raised by the news of the French Alliance. Washington proclaimed a holiday. The ragged, but clean, soldiers had a chance to show on parade their new and well-acquired maneuvers. The commander in chief dined in public with his officers; cannons were discharged, fusees were fired, toasts were drunk and huzzas were given by the officers and men with great ceremony. The form and precision here displayed heightened the pride of corps throughout the rank and file.

May 6 1778

May 18 1778

Out of this alliance came the necessity of giving Lafayette a command, for which he had been constantly begging. Washington assigned him 2,500 picked men ostensibly for the purpose of conducting a reconnaissance toward Philadelphia. At Barren Hill this small but vital American force found itself completely surrounded by an overwhelming number of British. The only means of possible escape was the apparently impassable Schuylkill in the patriots' rear. A ford, however, was accidentally discovered over which the troops would have to pass rapidly while pressed by the enemy. This highly difficult crossing was to be a test of discipline in the American soldiers. As a matter of fact, they were formed by their officers without hesitation or confusion, were marched across the stream without crowding and were well on the way before the British discovered the escape. The drill and training acquired under Steuben were chiefly accountable for the survival of Lafayette and his command.

With the coming of spring and the prospect of help there came internal relief for the army. Food and clothing grew better, almost sufficient. Greene, at the solicitation of a committee from Congress, had been appointed quartermaster-general to succeed Mifflin.[5] Jeremiah Wadsworth had, in addition, been made commissary general. Their services were efficient, though Congress and the country accused them of extravagance. The troops fared for over a year following their appointment better than at any time previous, and there were fewer recorded complaints. As Washington had predicted, summer saw the soldier at last provided with heavy clothing.

When Howe decided to sail back to England without hurting the American army in the field and Clinton relinquished Philadelphia, Washington, leaving Arnold in that city, pursued the British through New Jersey. Having now the usual increase of "sunshine patriots" he outnumbered the enemy by 1,000. At Monmouth Court House the advance guard of the Americans came upon the rear guard of the British. Washington ordered Lee to attack with the hope of getting the enemy's wagon train. Evidently through jealousy or defection Lee not only failed to carry out his commander's intentions, but was actively responsible for the breaking up of the troops and their retirement to the rear. Although they were pursued by the British and, through lack of proper leadership, retreated in more or less disorder, nevertheless they were capable of being reformed quickly into a proper battle line, after what would formerly have been a demoralizing retreat. Again the work of Steuben became the deciding factor. The Americans having rallied, drove off the British. But the defeat of Clinton's forces was impossible, because the day had been cleverly wasted by Lee. The enemy slipped away under cover of darkness to New York. The temperature throughout the action had been very high, reaching, some say, ninety-six, so that there were more casualties from the heat than from firearms. Soldiers were found dead without a mark on them. In the north this was the last general engagement of the war, because the British were too strong for Washington to take the offensive again. But the action showed that the American troops with a fair amount of discipline and training and against nearly an equal force, could give a good account of themselves.

June 28 1778

---

[5] Greene was allowed to retain his line commission.

The next attempted offensive in New England was conspicuously impotent. General Sullivan had collected 10,000 New England militia and untrained troops for the purpose of taking Newport. Washington, besides, had sent him Lafayette with 2,000 men and allowed him 4,000 French troops. With a force between 13,000 and 15,000 he was to overwhelm the British garrison of 6,000. *Aug. 15 1778* When he moved over to Butts' hill a storm tore down the tents, killed some horses, wet the powder and discomfited the men. *Aug. 20 1778* Many of the militia forthwith went home. Finally Sullivan began the investment of the city. But the French fleet refused to coöperate, whereupon the militia deserted so fast that Sullivan and Greene[6] felt they would soon have no force at all. *Aug. 29 1778* Sullivan retreated to Butts' hill where the British attacked. The remaining Americans, among whom was a black regiment under Colonel Christopher Greene, fought well from behind earthworks; but they finally had to withdraw from the island.

In the "far west" near Pittsburgh another part of the army, though small, was preparing to do a great service for the country. Lieutenant Colonel George Rogers Clark, with 150 men, set out to take what are now Kentucky, Illinois and parts of Michigan, Indiana and Ohio away from the British, hostile Indians and the French. After hardships, similar to those of Arnold in his march to Quebec and far worse than those of Valley Forge, *July 4 1778* Clark succeeded in capturing Kastaskia without bloodshed. When 80 men left him because of the expiration of their enlistments, he simply recruited young Frenchmen of the neighborhood and hung on. By a combination of apt arrogance and soft words that prevented a struggle, he won over the whole of the Illinois country, including Vincennes. Although that town was shortly retaken by a superior force of British, he *Feb. 25 1779* made an unexpected winter march, and by a well-planned attack with exhausted troops recaptured the place. After reading Roosevelt's *Winning of the West* one is convinced that this little campaign ranks as a combination of suffering and daring ahead of anything of the kind in history. For these men moved to their goal so fast that huts were impossible. The harsh winter found them digging fresh holes in the snow each night, caught them often advancing waist-high in mud and ice water for hours at a time, and saw them ever alive to the terror of the lurking tomahawk. Clark finally won the "Old Northwest" for the United States, and was promoted to the grade of brigadier general.

---

[6] General Nathaniel Greene.

July 3–Nov. 11 1778

July 1779

The Indian massacres in northern Pennsylvania and southern New York drew other expeditions. General Sullivan with 2,500 men moved up from Easton, Pennsylvania, along the Susquehanna to Elmira, New York. At the same time he sent Colonel Brodhead with 600 men up the Allegheny from Pittsburg and General James Clinton with 1,500 men along the Mohawk Valley and the upper reaches of the Susquehanna. The purpose was that of terrorizing the Indians and destroying their crops, villages and warriors. It was felt that the protection of the settlers had to be gained at any cost, so that women and children among the redskins sometimes suffered the fate of the men. Such a mission was distasteful to the officers and baneful to the soldiers. The callous coating left upon the patriot's mind is revealed by an incident quoted from a lieutenant's diary:

> "At the request of Major P——, sent out a small detachment to look for some dead Indians—returned without finding them. Toward morning they found them and skinned two of them from their hips down for boot-legs, one pair for the Major, the other for myself."

Oct. 1779

The object was achieved with great thoroughness. Sullivan's army returned to New Jersey after a difficult march of over 700 miles.

Nov. 1778

After Monmouth the main army took up winter quarters at White Plains. Later Washington placed 7 brigades at Middlebrook and Elizabethtown and 6 at West Point. This winter, due to its mildness and to Greene and Wadsworth, seems to have found the army in better condition with regard to clothing, food and shelter than ever before. But the soldiers were ragged, and officers in general were in a destitute condition. Congress did not gain many recruits by allowing Washington

Sept. 1778 to offer secretly $10 extra bounty. Those who left the army, even after the bounty of $80 and half pay for seven years (that Congress had previously offered and that the soldier rarely got) did not give glowing accounts of their military life. The militia went home to find that the civilian did not feel the war at all. It was this splendid heedlessness on the part of the public rather than the hardship of camp that disgusted the soldier. Washington said in a letter to Harrison:

> *Dec. 1778* "If I were to be called upon to draw a picture of the times and of the men, from what I have seen, heard, and in part know, I should in one word say that idleness, dissipation and extravagance seem to have laid fast hold of most of them; that speculation, peculation and an insatiable thirst for riches seem to have got the better of every other consideration, and almost every order of men."

Naturally the patriot said, "Why should I suffer and die for such people?" Had the states actually given good food and clothing, recruiting would have been successful without any bounty. As it was, the country profiteered, bankrupted itself and gave Washington no proper force.

In the south, the taking of Savannah by the British did not *Dec. 29 1778* raise the spirits of the army. After that occupation, Lincoln took command in Charleston. With about 3,600 ill-disciplined men the new southern commander tried to advance to the Savannah River. But his force, made up principally of raw recruits, fled whenever hardship or the enemy were to be encountered and in those dense regions became disorganized raiding parties. In minor engagements Colonel Moultrie drove off the British from Port Royal Island and Colonel Pickens scat- *Feb. 1779* tered some loyalist guerrillas. When Lincoln moved on Augusta, his 1,500 troops under General Ashe were surrounded by the British and practically annihilated. Reënforced by fresh *April 1779* militia, Lincoln continued his advance. But the English crossed the Savannah and drove Moultrie back to Charleston, who seems to have had a difficult time in keeping the enemy *May 3 1779* from getting the city. The following extract from one of his letters throws light on some of his experiences:

> "As the enemy was so near, I was desiring one of my aides to go and bring off our rear guard from Coosohatchie to join us immediately; but Colonel John Laurens (who joined me two days before) being present, he requested me to permit him to go on that service; which I readily consented to, thinking him to be a brave and experienced officer; I told him at the same time that I would send 150 good riflemen to cover his flanks, lest the enemy should be too close upon him; I accordingly sent Capt. James with one hundred and fifty picked men, and 100 men of the out piquet to join him; these altogether made a body of 350 men, which was one-fourth of my little army; but instead of Colonel Laurens' bringing off the guard, as he was desired, he very imprudently crossed the river to the east side; and drew them up on the opposite bank of the river, taking those 150 who were sent to cover his flanks, and the 100 men of the out piquet and joined them to the guard; while he left the houses on the hill for the British to occupy; in this situation did he expose his men to the fire, without the least chance of doing them any injury; after remaining some time he got a number of men killed and wounded; and was wounded himself; he desired Capt. Shubrick, who commanded after he left the field, to stay a little longer and then to bring off the men; had not Capt. Shubrick moved off at the very instant that he did, his party would have been cut off from their retreat and every man of them would either have been killed or taken prisoner; we heard the firing very distinctly at Tullifiny, and supposed it was our retreating guard coming in; but presently Col. Laurens came up to me, wounded in the arm; I said to him: 'Well, Colonel, what do you think of it?' 'Why, sir,' said he, 'your men won't stand.' Upon which I said; 'If that be the case I will retreat.' "

Between official ignorance and troop inconstancy General Moultrie had his troubles. His resolution and thrift, however, saved the city. Then the southern army went into summer quarters at Sheldon.

In the north, Washington, on account of the dearth of everything needful for campaign, could undertake but desultory offensives. Wayne with a small force and rare bravery cap- *July 16 1779*

Aug. 19 1779

tured Stony Point with the bayonet. But Clinton with a superior force later took it back. Then "Light Horse Harry Lee"[7] captured 200 of the enemy at Paulus Hook where Jersey City now stands, and the military work in the north was ended.

Sept. 23 1779

Oct. 8 1779

Oct. 19 1779

In the south D'Estaing suddenly appeared off Savannah and began a siege of that city. Lincoln joined him in these operations. When the French commander found that he had to put to sea, a premature assault was decided upon. But the British, having been apprised by a deserter of the plans of the allies, drove them off with great loss. What was left of the little southern army made its way safely across the river, but the whole of the country south of Charleston passed into the hands of the British.

Sept. 18 1779

The main army in the north was again ill-supplied with clothing. Congress recommended to the states that they provide clothes for their own soldiers, and voted to the officers one "suit" consisting of one hat, one watch coat, one body coat, four vests, four pairs of breeches, four shirts, four stocks, six pairs of stockings and four pairs of shoes. But this pretentious outfit was not provided. Later, clothing arrived from France but there was not enough. General Glover wrote:

Nov. 25 1779

> "The whole army has gone into winter cantonments excepting General Nixon's and my brigades, who are now in the field (eight hundred of my men without shoe or stocking) enjoying the sweets of a winter campaign while the worthy and virtuous citizens of America are enduring the hardships, toils and fatigues incident to parlors with good fires and sleeping on beds of down."

Nov. 18 1779

Although Congress had offered $200 to a recruit to enlist for the period of the war, and one of the states had reached $750, a suit of clothes once a year and 100 acres of land, Washington's force scarcely totaled 26,000 effectives. He himself says:

> "That of this number, comprehending four hundred and ten invalids, fourteen thousand nine hundred and ninety-eight

---

[7] The father of Robert E. Lee.

are stated as engaged for the war; that the remainder by the expiration of enlistments, will be decreased by the 31st of December, two thousand and fifty-one; by the last of March, six thousand four hundred and twenty-six; by the last of April, eight thousand one hundred and eighty-one; by the last of June, ten thousand one hundred and fifty-eight—and shortly after twelve thousand one hundred and fifty-seven."

This winter was spent by the main army at Morristown, *1779–1780* New Jersey. For suffering it was worse than Valley Forge. The pay was far in arrears. A large proportion of soldiers had no suitable covering at night and often the whole army went for five or six days without even bread. The cold was so severe that for forty days at the other camp near West Point no water dripped from the roofs.

While the northern troops were suffering at Morristown and West Point the southern troops were being pressed in campaign. *Feb. 11 1780* Sir Henry Clinton with Cornwallis and 10,000 men landed from New York below Charleston. The little force of American regulars and volunteers in that city should have tried to escape and save itself. But Lincoln, not realizing his power- *April 11 1780* lessness, as one more skilled in the art of war might have done, let himself be surrounded. When Fort Moultrie fell, he saw *May 12 1780* that it was useless to hold out and surrendered the city with 5,000 men. The entire south now belonged to the enemy.

There the colonists confined themselves to partisan strife. Sumter on the Catawba and Broad rivers, Marion among the Peedee swamps and Pickens and Clark along the Saluda made a predatory warfare on all Tories. The actions were bloody and useless.

In the meantime Knyphausen in the north, having been left in command of New York by Clinton when the latter went south, misinterpreted the attitude of mind of the impoverished American soldier. He crossed into New Jersey in the hope of *June 6 1780* winning over some of the army at Morristown by promises of comfort. But the Whig patriot was not so easily influenced. Although he might grumble at a greedy and neglectful populace that would cheerily let him starve, he despised the Tory with an ingrained hatred. Accordingly the militia all along Knyphausen's march made it very uncomfortable for the British so that he was forced to return to New York.

When Clinton arrived back from Charleston and heard of the fate of Knyphausen's expedition, he himself determined to attack Morristown. *June 23 1780* Greene, however, blocked the roads so successfully when the British approached the town, that he stemmed the advance. Although he was finally forced to retire, the American troops acted with such precision that Clinton had to content himself with the burning of Springfield and to return to New York. Here again was a recovery due mainly to the teaching of Steuben.

A new commander in the south was necessary since the fall of Charleston. Washington desired Greene to have the post, but Congress appointed Gates, "the hero of Saratoga." The new commander took over a force of about 2,300 men at Hillsboro that had been operating under De Kalb. *July 25 1780* Of these, 900 had never been in action and were ignorant of the use of bayonets. Gates sat still for a couple of days until Cornwallis had time to reënforce Rawdon and then set out to meet the enemy. *Aug. 13 1780* The forces engaged near Camden. Gates seems to have made no reconnaissance, no estimate and no definite plan. He allowed the poorest militia to be placed opposite the best trained veterans of the British. It was natural that the former fled at the first onset and thereby left the American regulars to be cut to pieces in their tracks. Gates disappeared so fast that he reached Charlotte sixty miles away that night. The smaller British force had killed, wounded and captured about 2,000 Americans, whereas it had lost barely 300. This battle or rout was the most disgraceful defeat of the war. The Revolutionary southern army had vanished.

The northern army in the vicinity of Tappan, N. Y. (near the New Jersey state line), had practically evaporated also. Not only had the expiration of enlistments taken place, as Washington had foretold, but the men had deserted by the hundreds, many to the British. *Oct. 1780* In addition to the few regulars trained under Steuben, only that militia which came out solely to protect its own fireside remained. This small band had so little to eat that it practically had to live off the country.

The following order issued in another northern camp reveals the pathetic attempt of the remnants to preserve order and discipline in the face of the last act of the tragedy of this dark year.

"Headquarters,
"Orange Town, Sept. 26, 1780.

"The truly martial appearance of the Troops yesterday, the order and regularity with which they made the different marches, and the facility with which they perform'd the several manoeuvers, do them the greatest credit, and open the most flattering prospect of substantial service to the country, and military glory to the Army.

"Nothing can be more pleasing to the Officers who feel for the honor of the Army, and the Independence of America, than to see the rapid progress which has been made by the Troops in military discipline. The good conduct of all the officers yesterday, gave the Gen'l the highest satisfaction and the particular service of the Inspector-General,[8] and those in that line, deserve his especial thanks.

"Treason of the Blackest Dye was yesterday discovered. General Arnold, who commands at West Point, lost to every sentiment of honor, of private and public obligation, was about to deliver up that important Post into the hands of the enemy. Such an event must have given the American cause a deadly wound.—Happily the Treason was discover'd in time to prevent this fatal mischief. The providential train of circumstances which led to it, affords the most convincing proof that the Liberties of America are the object of Divine Protection. Our enemies, despairing of carrying their point by force, are practising every base art to effect, by bribery and corruption, what they cannot accomplish in a manly way.

"Great honor is due to the American Army that this is the first instance of Treason of the kind, where many were to have been expected from the nature of the dispute; and nothing more brightly ornaments its character, than the firm resistance with which it has constantly met the seductions of an insidious enemy. Arnold has made his escape to the enemy; but Mr.

---

[8] Von Steuben.

Andre, the Adjutant-General of the British Army, who came out as a spy to negotiate the business, is our Prisoner!

"His Excellency the Commander in Chief has arriv'd at West Point from Hartford, and is no doubt taking the proper measures to unravel fully so Hellish a plot."

Oct. 7 1780 The letters of Washington and the French officers show that they despaired at this time of the independence of the states. The only redeeming feature of the year was the partisan battle of King's Mountain in the south. Campbell, McDowell, Shelby and Sevier surrounded Ferguson and killed, wounded and captured about 900 with little Whig loss. But this small affair was little compensation for the fall of Charleston, the defeat of Camden, the plunder of the country, the treason of Arnold and the lack of an army.

Nevertheless the war had to be pressed in the south or the southern states would be lost. Greene, who had resigned as quartermaster-general,[9] on account of new organization which *Sept. 30 1780* permitted corruption, was sent to succeed Gates. He took command of 2,300 men at Charlotte, 1,100 of whom were regulars. *Dec. 2 1780* All the wagons had been lost, there was not a dollar in gold in the whole force and the naked soldiers were living after the manner of animals. But if his army was worn down and he was confronted by Cornwallis, Rawdon, and Tarleton, he yet had Steuben, Morgan and Kosciusko to depend upon.

While Greene was trying to bring the southern military patient to life, the remnants of the northern army were trying to reconcile the inequality of the bounty, the complete absence of pay and the utter contempt for the soldiers' agonies. Some states were offering as high as $1,000 per man over the sum provided by Congress. Such lavishness gave to the unstable militiaman, who served only for a short time, almost a fortune in contrast to the pittance allowed but seldom given to the Continental who stayed on year after year and suffered all manner *Jan. 1 1781* of tortures. Accordingly, six regiments of the Pennsylvania line reached the limit of their endurance. Instead of deserting as the militia had done, they rose to press their long series of grievances.

---

[9] Timothy Pickering, President of the Board of War, succeeded him.

After an officer had been killed in the attempt to restore order, the rioters marched toward Princeton with an "astonishing regularity and discipline." Wayne, who was in command at Morristown, was allowed to accompany them. Congressional representatives finally pacified them by promising to make up the arrears in pay, and to give each soldier a pair of shoes, overalls and a shirt. That the legislators felt themselves properly on the defensive is shown by the fact that they readily agreed to bring no one to trial for the outbreak.

The mutineers refused to accept bribes from General Clinton who offered them every consideration if they would come into the British service, but rather gave his representatives up to be shot as spies.

At this time the reduction of the Continental army and its reorganization went into effect. Just when soldiers of this character were most pressingly needed, Congress through lack of funds was forced to cut down their number. Officers were to choose among themselves who should be retired. The establishment was to consist of "4 regiments of mounted and dismounted dragoons, or legionary corps; 4 regiments of artillery; 49 regiments of infantry;—and 1 regiment of artificers." An infantry regiment was to consist of 612 files, exclusive of officers, sergeants and musicians. The officers displaced as well as those who remained were to have half pay[10] for life. *Jan. 1 1781*

The New Jersey line, hearing of the apparent success of the Pennsylvanians, decided to mutiny also. One night at Pompton Colonel Shreve, suspecting their feelings, ordered his men to fall in, but only a few obeyed him. They then marched toward Chatham and after having much debate with the state commissioners, returned to Pompton. In the meantime, the American General Howe with his brigade had arrived by Washington's order from West Point. At daybreak the mutineers found themselves surrounded. Howe ordered them into ranks without arms, executed two of the leaders on the spot, rebuked the rest and the mutiny was over. *Jan. 20 1781* *Jan. 27 1781*

While the northern army was in the throes of organization and disorganization, some of Greene's troops were having activity in the south. Cornwallis sent Tarleton to capture Morgan's inferior force which at this time was separated from Greene. Morgan took up a position near Hannah's Cowpens with an unfordable river in his rear. This curious selection he explained as follows:

---

[10] This they never received. But Greene was successful in having some of the ousted ones placed in command of militia organizations.

> "I would not have a swamp in the view of my militia on any consideration; they would have made for it and nothing could have detained them from it.—As to retreat, it is the very thing I wished to cut off all hope of. I would have thanked Tarleton had he surrounded me with his cavalry. It would have been better than placing my own men in the rear to shoot down those who broke from the ranks. When men are forced to fight they will sell themselves dearly."

This true hero of Saratoga had learned to know the militia. He placed the really raw ones very far in front and told them that all he expected of them was to fire two volleys. Then they could run as usual and as they would do anyway, but they must run in a certain direction around the flanks. He showed them the path they should follow and warned them not to disturb the good regulars in rear. Then he apprised the remaining troops of the outlined flight so that there would be no misunderstanding as to its meaning. The militia did not quite get through with their volleys but they did go where they were told and formed again in time to help complete the discomfiture of Tarleton.

Jan. 17 1781 This ingenious adaptation of tactics to human weaknesses caught the superior British force between two fires and completely routed it. Out of its total of 1,150 men, 784 were killed, wounded or captured against 11 Americans killed and 61 wounded. Tarleton himself barely escaped with his life.

Congress was forced to recognize Morgan[11] with a medal.

March 16 1781 Greene at this time was following Cornwallis whom he met later at Guilford Court House (Greensboro, N. C.). The southern army of 4,400 men was composed of raw militia and of regulars who had never been in action. Greene's dispositions were similar to those of Morgan just described, but Cornwallis fought more carefully than Tarleton and Greene's troops were physically and mentally poor. The battle lasted five hours with much slaughter on both sides. During the long strain many Americans dropped exhausted from lack of food. Greene himself fainted when the action was all over.

---

[11] At Saratoga, Morgan had been as brave and successful as Arnold. But Congress had treated him almost as badly as the latter.

Although it was an apparent victory for the British, Greene pursued the victor until the Virginia militia refused to go any further because their time had expired.

Feb. 1781 In the meantime Lafayette, whom Congress had assigned the task of capturing Arnold, had been marching his 1,200 American veterans up the Delaware and down again in the hope of seizing his prey. In one of his marches north, Washington gave him command of the army of Virginia which had lately been made and put under Steuben. Before going south to take over that force, Lafayette put shoes and clothing on his men by issuing drafts on the French treasury. *April 29 1781* When he arrived in Richmond, he found the Virginia army in a good state of discipline under Steuben who placed himself under his youthful commander's orders without hesitation and with the utmost loyalty. But Lafayette's command, although good in quality, was so small that it had to spend its time during the summer in dodging the strong British forces.

April 18 1781 Greene, farther south, fought an indecisive action with Rawdon at Hobkirk's Hill. Marion, "Harry" Lee and Sumter managed to drive the British out of the up-country of the Carolinas with the exception of Ninety-six, which Greene besieged. *April 23 1781* When Rawdon brought British reënforcements, Greene had to raise the siege and take his men into summer quarters on the High Hills of the Santee. The heat now was too intense for either army.

Aug. 1781 Because Lafayette's force was "not strong enough even to be beaten," he could be well pleased at his success in merely keeping out of the way of Cornwallis. But when that British commander retired to Williamsburg and later to Yorktown with 7,000 men, Lafayette sent Wayne to keep Rawdon from reenforcing Cornwallis. His idea of keeping the British separated was, as we shall see, most appropriate.

Aug. 22 1781 Greene simultaneously decided to carry the war into the enemy's country and forthwith marched toward Eutaw Springs. *Sept. 8 1781* When the British retired from that place, he vigorously attacked and drove them from the field with great loss. But the undisciplined American militia in pillaging the British camp drank so much rum that they were useless on the counter-attack of the enemy. Eutaw Springs was retaken. In extenuation it may be said that many of Greene's soldiers were so naked that they had to tie pieces of moss on their shoulders and sides to keep the firelocks and cartridge boxes from chafing the skin.

Summer of 1781 Three things happened now which gave Washington a plan and a hope. The administration of the army became more sound under a civilian superintendent of finance instead of a Board of Treasury; a clothier general operating under the superintendent, Robert Morris, began to get clothing to the troops; and De Grasse wrote that he was sailing for the Chesapeake with 25 ships. Washington secretly decided to bottle up Cornwallis. He collected in that country between the Bronx and Dobb's Ferry, the French from southern New England and the Americans from the Highlands, as if to lay siege to New York. Then he marched to Sandy Hook, having written to the various governors of his contemplated attack on New York. He was well on his way to Philadelphia before his intentions were suspected.

At that place Rochambeau gave the troops $20,000 in gold which bought them many necessaries and raised their spirits. At the Head of Elk in Maryland they were joined by the French who were surprised at the large number of ragged soldiers among the Americans. From there and from Annapolis the rest of the journey was made by boats. The allies with 8,800 Americans, 7,800 French and a French fleet of 20,000 sailors and 2,000 guns invested Yorktown, while Cornwallis, who could have escaped, calmly watched the process.

In the meantime Clinton in New York sent Arnold to harass New England in order to call some of Washington's troops away from the south. But Washington was not so easily turned aside. Arnold, however, pressed the New Londoners. How they responded can be inferred from the following extract from Colonel Hemstead's diary:

"Soon after our arrival, the enemy[12] appeared in force in some woods about half a mile S. E. of the Fort, from whence they sent a flag of truce, which was met by Capt. Shapley, demanding an unconditional surrender, threatening, at the same time, to storm the Fort instantly, if the terms were not accepted. A council of war was held, and it was the unanimous voice, that the garrison was unable to defend themselves against so superior a force. But a militia Colonel who was then in the fort, and had a body of men in the immediate vicinity, said he would reënforce them with two or three hundred men in fifteen minutes, if they would hold out; Col. Ledyard agreed to send back a defiance, upon the most solemn assurance of immediate succor. For this purpose Col. —— started, his men being then in sight; but he was no more seen, nor did he even attempt a diversion in our favor." *Sept. 1781*

The taking of New London, however, was quite useless to the British as long as Clinton did not directly reënforce Cornwallis. Yorktown was bound to fall with the French odds alone so great against the town. But Lieutenant Feltman in his journal was not altogether pleased with the conduct of American troops:

"Page 20. 15th Oct'r. '81. . . . The enemy threw a number of shells this day and wounded a great number of men, especially the militia; several were wounded this day in their sleep, such is the carelessness of those stupid wretches who are not acquainted with the life of a soldier." *Oct. 15 1781*

Yorktown capitulated without more glory to our army than that the siege was conceived by Washington and aided by American troops. Had not the French outfitted them with clothing and shoes, it is doubtful if they could have been present at the capture, except in the nude. Had not the French had an overwhelming amount of men and materials, it is certain Yorktown could not have been captured before Clinton could have aided Cornwallis. *Oct. 17 1781*

---

[12] The British under Arnold.

But those American soldiers who had been through the training at Valley Forge gave good accounts of themselves at the siege. Many a life was saved by Steuben's discipline and training and many lost for lack of them.

When it was all over "Light Horse Harry" Lee made this tragic lament:

> "Convinced as I am that a government is the murderer of its citizens which sends them to the field uninformed and untaught, where they are to meet men of the same age and strength, mechanized by education and discipline for battle, I cannot withhold my denunciation of its wickedness and folly."

How pathetic, in this story of men willing to brave death for those at home that those at home responded by killing through neglect more of them than did the enemy!

This ghastly truth apparently failed at this time to make any impression upon the public, for training and discipline in the intervals between calamities are going to be thrust down. Preventive medicine, applied to war, is about to be a thought foreign to the public mind. Unready youths are going to be fed by the government into the flaming breach as helpless babes before the burning mouth of Moloch.

CHAPTER IV

THE ARMY FLUNG ASIDE

(1781–1811)

YORKTOWN did not end the war. Only a small division had been taken. Our army had at no time been able to force the British from the Continent. Still luxuriating in New York, Charleston, and Savannah, were almost three times as many of the enemy as those lost by Cornwallis.

Washington had to husband his strength. Of the French, only Rochambeau with a small army remained. Lafayette and De Grasse had sailed for France and the West Indies. The American army was going through the usual stages of depletion. The commander in chief sent Lincoln north to prepare winter quarters for the main army in New Jersey and along the Hudson, and Saint Clair and Wayne south to reënforce Greene.

With these additions Greene came out of summer quarters *Nov. 19 1781* to start active operations. But the nudity and hunger of his men drove him to negative measures. Now that a great victory had been won the people gave less than ever any thought to the troops. Supplies failed for long periods. The soldiers, forced to live off the near-by farmer or townsman, simply heightened their unpopularity. Being much of the time without food and clothing, they besides grew loathsome. Greene wrote that *Oct. 25 1781* "numbers of brave fellows who had bled in the cause of their country had been eat up with maggots." In a position he took up near Charlestown his savage-looking men fared better. But the relief was temporary, for soon one third of his force was reported so naked that the men could not leave their tents and were reduced to such nourishment as they could find or filch.

Dec. 6 1781 Although the northern troops had more clothing, they also had more cold. The scarcity of food was about the same. Mr. Comfort Sands, most unsuitably christened, undertook to supply the army. But he supplied it so much according to his own profit that the soldier's appetite was quite overlooked. He would arrange to have the cattle driven into camp just when hunger had reached the limit of endurance. He would make the officers draw rations when it suited his convenience rather than their needs. So the northern camps lived alternately well and poorly according as Sands' caprice satisfied or intensified natural cravings.

April 22 1782 In the spring Congress made a scale of rations and pay for officers.[1] The major general received the grand sum of $31.60 a month and five rations. The lieutenant received $3.15 a month and one ration. It is interesting to compare these sums with the $1,000 bounty already offered the private for enlisting. In this instance, the money and provisions were to be treated as separate items. If the officer could not draw his rations monthly they were forfeited, for they could not be commuted

---

[1] *Rank*	*Rations Per Day*	*Pay Per Month*
A Major general	5	$31.60
Brigadier general	4	25.30
Colonel	2	12.60
Lieutenant colonel commandant	2	12.60
Lieutenant colonel	1½	11.00
Major	1½	8.00
Chaplain	1½	8.00
Captain	1	6.30
Subaltern	1	3.15
Surgeon	1½	4.60
Surgeon's mate	1	3.15
Quartermaster-general	4	25.30
Deputy quartermaster, with the southern army	1½	12.60
Deputy paymaster, with the southern army	1½	11.00
Deputy clothier with the army	1	3.15
Deputy paymaster with the army	1	....
Commissary forage	1½	11.00
Field commissary	1	6.30
Field commissary with southern army	1	6.30
Director-general hospitals	2	....
Chief physician	2	....
Hospital surgeon	1	....
Mates	1	....
Stewards	1	....
Wardmasters	1	....

into money. However, these figures are merely studies in black and white, because the soldier seldom received his pay in any shape.

Parades and reviews, the military exercises of that day, were the constant work of Washington's officers in spite of their penury. The little army of about 6,000 was kept up to as high a state of morale as living conditions would permit because of the expected resumption of activities. The commander in chief's orders abound in appreciation here and condemnation there for some well or badly executed maneuver.

May 31 1782

On one occasion he instructs the commandant of artillery, who seems to have been a sort of ordnance officer, to issue ten rounds of blank ammunition per man. Shortly afterward appears, "A Plan for Conducting the Rejoicing on Thursday," the birthday of the Dauphin of France. For this ceremony a great colonnade was built upon the parade ground at West Point. Washington dined at four o'clock in the afternoon with his officers and ladies. All the surrounding garrisons on both banks of the Hudson turned out their troops so that they could "display[2] in full view of West Point." A running fire of artillery and musketry was delivered at prearranged signals. After dinner thirteen separate toasts were drunk "and each toast announced by the discharge of artillery." As soon as the thirteenth was quaffed, the officers rose from the table and joined their respective commands. After more musketry and cannonading, "the officers commanding corps with an audible voice" prayed "to God to bless the Dauphin of France." Though such a ceremony seems to be as much a test of capacity as religion, it lent spirit to the troops in their hard life.

June 16 1782

That target practice was one of the functions of drill is apparent from one of Washington's observations. Although the light infantry had "performed with great precision," he was "sorry to find . . . that they did not take so good aim as he expected."

The following order will disclose both the pains then taken and the officer responsible for the training.

---

[2] Be in regimental front.

"Head-Quarters,
"Newburgh, June 18, 1782.

"The review of this army by brigades being now completed, the Commander-in-chief is happy in this opportunity to present his thanks to major general the Baron Steuben, for the indefatigable assiduity and singular attention exhibited in the late inspections and reviews, and for his eminent services in promoting the discipline of the army on all occasions; and at the same time to express his approbation of the present laudable disposition and pride of corps which seem to be diffused throughout the army. From this spirit of emulation, and a consideration of the amazing contrast between the past and present appearance of the troops, the General anticipates the happiest consequences; but, being persuaded that appearance alone is not sufficient to establish the reputation and ensure the success of our arms, and that frequent and repeated exercise is absolutely necessary to constitute the perfection of discipline, he requests in the most pointed terms, that the commanding officers of divisions and brigades will punctually exercise the troops alternately every other day, in brigade and by detail.

"In the course of these exercises the officers are permitted to vary the maneuvers as time, circumstances and inclination may prompt, provided they do not deviate from the established principles. But, in all cases, the General entreats the officers to pay the most minute attention to the soldier's method of priming and loading, as well as of leveling and taking aim. This is a matter of great consequence; he hopes, therefore, that the utmost pains may be taken to instruct every individual in this essential part of his profession."

Aug. 7, 11 1782

Many means were invented by the higher commanders for the purpose of offsetting the low spirits induced by hunger and raggedness. It was at this time that the "service stripe" or war chevron seems to have had its origin. Any soldier who had served more than three years with "bravery, fidelity and good conduct" was to wear on his left sleeve a stripe "of angular form." If he had served more than six years he was to wear two stripes. All stripes were to be of the color of the "facings" of the corps to which the man belonged.

The hat seemed to be the most difficult article to obtain and the one dearest to the soldier's pride. Those who could get it, cut it, cocked it and decorated it according to the regimental design. Those who were without it were in a sorry plight. They had no chance to cut a military figure. Washington placed this deficiency on the part of a certain regiment side by side with the "want of exactness in performing . . . maneuvers" due to "the badness of their position in the mountains."

May 14 1782 As to insignia of rank, worsted shoulder knots were prescribed for noncommissioned officers. The sergeant was to have two, one on each shoulder, whereas the corporal was to have only one on the right shoulder. For officers, Washington had recommended to the army two years previously that major generals wear two epaulets with two stars upon each, that brigadiers wear two but have only one star on each, that field officers all alike wear two plain gold epaulets and that captains wear only one on the right shoulder and subalterns one on the left.[3] It is likely that before this time officers or men had had little opportunity to comply generally with this order. At this date a nicety and self-respect in dress seem to have accompanied the state of developed discipline, so far as the officer's purse could permit.

But throughout the rank and file it was most difficult to obtain a uniform mode of wearing the hair. In those times of dyed wigs and long locks it was a knotty problem to have the hair trimmed and tied in the same manner or the wigs of the same color in any organization. The tonsorial allowance of two pounds of flour and one-half pound of rendered tallow may or may not have succeeded in giving a sleek appearance.

Aug. 21 1782 A more suitable organization seems to have been one of the greatest concerns of this year. The artillery, cavalry, sappers and miners were placed upon a more sound basis. The light infantry companies—one in each regiment—were formed into separate battalions. The personnel of these foot troops had been picked with a view to obtaining men of good physique and marching ability who could act as pioneers. Since Steuben had prescribed advance and flank guards for the march, it is likely that these companies performed a great part of reconnoissance duty. Yet other troops helped out in this work because he had been careful to show that men so engaged should be frequently relieved.

---

[3] The generals, in addition, wore feathers in their hats and different clothing from the soldier. The other officers wore the clothing of the corps to which they belonged.

Sept. 1782 Shortly after the separation of the light infantry, Washington ordered a general removal of all troops down the river to Verplanck's Point. The journey was attended with extreme orderliness. The little force disembarked and prepared a clean and well-decorated camp. On the new site were entertained Rochambeau's soldiers who were returning overland from the south and were on their way to New England where they were going to embark for France. Levees and festivities were conducted on a grand scale for over a month. French officers expressed surprise at the good appearance and efficiency of the American soldier whose reputation gained in his undisciplined years was hard now to overcome.

Oct. 1782 After the national courtesies, the American troops returned to the hills back of Newburgh for another winter. They had become expert in building rude temporary structures. They now made cabins sufficient to hold eight soldiers comfortably and larger ones for noncommissioned officers. They went so far as to have a great assembly hall, called the chapel, where services, courts-martial and public entertainments were held. it is said on good authority that the timbers of these buildings were joined so skillfully that they neither had nor required a nail or other piece of metal.

This, the eighth winter of the war, saw the soldiers as much as ever derided and neglected by the country. Economy was made to bear hardest upon those who had shouldered the burdens of the conflict. The half pay promised to the officers had never been produced. They were humiliated on social occasions. They had received not over one sixth of their pay during the whole Revolution. Their private resources were at an end and their friends were wearied out and disgusted with their repeated applications. They could not invite foreign officers or associates to a meal, so scant was the ration and so wanting any funds. Since nothing had been given them for clothing after 1777 they were constantly chilled by the zero weather and often in the unspeakable hospital. They had waited in the vain hope of relief by Congress. The "deranged officers," who had been squeezed out of the service by the union of smaller regiments and who had been provided for in no way, oftentimes had to sell their clothing for support or to beg. They were treated by the public as idlers living on the public bounty and were derided by their neighbors as "half-pay officers." These very leaders who had risked their lives to quell mutinies, who had stood before death and torture in order to make the country safe and independent, were ridiculed and neglected. So great was the public stigma on these men that the word "soldiering" came into use as a synonym of idleness.

If the country had given the continental soldier public honor and had made him independent for the rest of his life it could not have begun to repay him for his services. But when it failed in its promises and even scorned him in public the name of ingrate is scarcely a strong term. As shall later be seen, this attitude is not going to be confined to Revolutionary days.

Under such punishment for having committed the crime of bearing untold misery for one's country, it would not have been criticizable had there been a continuous round of mutiny or even an overthrow of the weak central government. On the contrary, these officers, now disciplined under Steuben's humane régime, decided merely to address those in power with their pleas. The shame lay in their having to beg for that which was their just due.

The Massachusetts officers agreed first to approach their *Sept. 1782* own legislature. Accordingly a committee went to Boston where it was well received and was promised everything by Hancock and Adams. But upon a weak excuse of a private letter from a congressional delegate who discouraged the half pay, the matter was postponed indefinitely. Although this action caused more discontent, the officers, following Washington's advice, refrained from resigning. Instead they began to prepare a petition to Congress. Officers of other states were invited by the Massachusetts line to join in the request. Accordingly *Dec. 1782* a joint memorial was drawn up. The facts set forth in their conservativeness, simplicity and pathos should have drawn

Jan. 6 1783 humiliation from an ogre. When the paper was presented to the central legislative body, the members were inclined to be *Feb. 13 1783* incensed at the apparent irregularity of such a procedure, but they conceded the point under pressure and reluctantly referred the matter to a committee. While the decision was still pending, a copy of the King's speech in parliament seemed to indicate peace. Congress then went into a committee of the whole on funds. The army's condition was considered as of no more importance than other questions. So it was attempted to refer the claims of the officers to the states, but the motion failed. *March 10 1783* The committee then brought in a report to give five years' full pay, but the proposition was rejected.

March 12 1783 At this juncture the famous Newburgh addresses were mailed to Congress by Washington.

These two anonymous tracts had been distributed throughout the camp.[4] Their fiery style had the double effect of admiration and conviction. The first one called for a meeting of all the officers on a certain date and implied that plans would be made to resort to force. Washington, who had had his ear to the ground all this time, realized the peril. He issued an order which condemned the anonymous call and postponed the meeting four days. By such action he properly compromised the effect of the document and gained time for reflection. But the author of the first publication embarrassed the commander in chief still further by issuing a second address and stating that Washington's recognition in orders was equivalent to his sympathy.

In the "Chapel" or "Temple" the officers met on the date set by Washington. He himself unexpectedly appearing among them was naturally the first to speak. In that calm dignity so peculiarly his own, he explained how the substance of the addresses appealed to their passion rather than their reason, how his past life would show that he was not indifferent to the interest of the army, and how foolish it would be to sully by one rash act the glory they had already attained. He then called upon them to give "one more distinguished proof of unexampled patriotism and patient virtue" so that posterity could say, "Had this day been wanting, the world had never seen the last stage of perfection, to which human nature is capable of attaining." Few eyes were dry when he had finished. This magnificent man capped his physical and mental triumphs with the greatest moral victory attainable—the victory "over jealousy, just discontent and great opportunities."

---

[4] Later found out to be the work of Major John Armstrong, aid-de-camp of General Gates.

March 18 1783 Washington wrote the President of Congress again. This time he enclosed new resolutions of moderation and wisdom made at his advice after the meeting just described. The delegates voted in consequence a commutation of five years' full pay in cash or in six-per-cent securities at the option of Congress, mainly because they feared to do otherwise. Although this amount was less than satisfaction, the officers were in such need of relief that they had to accept the measure.

The rank and file were in a worse plight. In addition to the sufferings the officers had borne, they had had to build all the quarters and perform other menial tasks without exterior aid. In other words, they had been compelled to carry their own comfort into the wilderness and in return to jeopardize their lives for the saving of the nation.

April 11 1783 When Congress announced the cessation of hostilities, the discharge of the men enlisted for the war became a new puzzle. *April 19 1783* In the publication of this event to the soldiers Washington was rightly fearful that they could not distinguish between cessation of hostilities and actual declaration of peace. He felt it would be hard to hold them in the service, especially in view of the fact that the Connecticut noncommissioned officers were *May 1783* already claiming half pay. To solve the dilemma, Congress promptly put the responsibility on Washington of granting either furloughs or discharges as he chose. And then, as an achievement of great generosity, it permitted the soldiers to keep their arms and accouterments.

Hostilities ceased unexpectedly because of the situation abroad rather than our power. As a consequence neither officer nor soldier foresaw the predicament of either waiting in the service until some future payment should be made or of going home penniless in the hope that he might at some time receive something. When the order for granting furloughs was issued, all appealed to Washington in pathetic frenzy. But the most he could do was to send a message to Philadelphia urging the immediate issue of the contemplated six-month certificates of three months' pay. A faint prospect of three months' pay after the half pay promised by Congress and wrung through such misery and self-restraint! But the furlough was too strong a temptation to both soldier and officer so that they left without any pay. Only about a thousand three-year men were retained to watch New York, the only place of British occupancy remaining. In the south the enemy's troops had been withdrawn principally for European political reasons. So the army went home without even a ceremonious "thank you" from the nation. To this day most of them are unpaid—and will be.

June 13 1783

It was the recruits only who mutinied; 280 of them from Lancaster and Philadelphia bloodlessly drove Congress to seek safety at Princeton. Washington sent General Howe, who had suppressed the New Jersey malcontents, to do the same in Pennsylvania. But the affair had already subsided when the regulars reached the scene of difficulty. On account of the uprising 4 men received corporal punishment.

Nov. 2 1783

Without further ado the army kept dwindling until Congress ordered its disbandment. Washington's last general order issued to the troops at Princeton, sent them out into the new democracy with sagacious words of construction. So from their leader within the army they received encouragement but from no one without.

Nov. 25 1783

With the one regiment of infantry and two battalions of artillery that remained, the commander in chief later marched into one end of New York while the British under Sir Guy Carleton marched out at the other.

Dec. 4 1783

Not long afterward Washington's officers assembled at Fraunces' Tavern to bid him farewell. Gathered in the high-ceilinged room were the infantry officers with their blue cutaway coats faced with white, their white buttons, silver epaulets, black gaiters, and white-braided cocked hats with black plumes; the artillery officers with their scarlet facings, yellow buttons, gold epaulets and yellow-braided cocked hats with black and red plumes; and here and there a general officer in his blue and buff and with stars upon his gold epaulets.

Under these picturesque uniforms beat the hearts of true men who loved their commander. For the last time they stood before him who had always been wise and kind. For eight years he had suffered with them all manner of ills. Having formed the habit of trust in such unfailing control, they were about to scatter into a country of doubtful management and cold attitude. Their depression was keen. When in the silence it was necessary for the great man to speak, he tried to advise them; but his voice broke. Filling a wine glass, he gave a simple toast to their happiness, and requested them to take him by the hand. Stifled by emotions they accompanied him to Whitehall Ferry, where they watched his boat until it slowly passed from sight.

At Annapolis he formally resigned his commission to Congress and quietly retired into private life. *Dec. 22 1783*

Though Mr. H. G. Wells[5] is content with disposing of Washington with the single colorful statement that "he was a conspicuously indolent man," Mr. Green, the great English historian, speaks of him thus:

> "No nobler figure ever stood in the forefront of a nation's life. Washington was grave and courteous in address, his manners were simple and unpretending; his silence and the serene calmness of his temper spoke of a perfect self-mastery; but there was little in his outer bearing to reveal the grandeur of a soul which lifts his figure, with all the simple majesty of an ancient statue, out of the smaller passions, the meaner impulses of the world around him. . . . It was only as the weary fight went on that the colonists discovered, however slowly and imperfectly the greatness of their leader: his clear judgment, his heroic endurance, his silence under difficulties, his calmness in the hour of danger or defeat, the patience with which he waited, the quickness and hardness with which he struck, the lofty and serene sense of duty which never swerved from its task through resentment or jealousy, that never through war or peace felt the touch of a meaner ambition, that knew no aim save that of guarding the freedom of his fellow countrymen,

---

[5] *Outline of History.*

and no personal longing save that of returning to his own fireside when their freedom was secured. It was almost unconsciously that men learned to cling to Washington with a trust and faith such as few other men have won, and to regard him with a reverence which still hushes us in the presence of his memory."

After the peace, the discharged soldier or officer went about the country hunting to adjust himself. His occupation was gone, his means were used up, his body was ailing, hurt or emaciated, and his unkempt, ragged appearance brought only gibes from the people. Ex-soldiers, who had suffered most, died quickly. The remainder went often from town to town in order to find work. Many of the officers in following the example of Greene and Washington had used their private means to finance the war, and were bankrupt. General Clarke, who almost single-handed had presented the states with an empire, was deprived of his commission and died in misery and poverty.

Jan. 3 1784 Knox, who succeeded Washington, had to continue to disband the remainder of the army until it numbered less than 700 men. Finally Congress passed this astounding legislation:

June 2 1784 "And whereas, standing armies in time of peace are inconsistent with the principles of republican governments, dangerous to the liberties of a free people, and generally converted into destructive engines for establishing despotism;

"It is therefore resolved, That recommendations in lieu of requisitions shall be sent to the several States for raising the troops which may be immediately necessary for garrisoning the Western posts and guarding the magazines of the United States, unless, Congress should think it expedient to employ the Continental troops now at West Point in the service aforesaid;

"Resolved, that the commanding officer be and he is hereby directed to discharge the troops now in the service of the United States, except twenty-five privates to guard the stores at Fort Pitt and fifty-five to guard the stores at West Point and other magazines, with a proportionable number of officers, no officers to remain in service above the rank of captain."

How sane men could come to a result so far at variance with the incidents of their own time seems to us inexplicable. Had it not been the "standing" part of the army that had been responsible for the few successes of the Revolution? Had it not been the need of stability that led Washington to say:

> "Regular troops alone are equal to the exigencies of modern war as well for defense as offense, and whenever a substitute is attempted it must prove illusory and ruinous. No militia will ever acquire the habits necessary to resist a regular force. The firmness requisite for the real business of fighting is only to be attained by a constant course of discipline and service. I have never yet been a witness to a single instance that can justify a different opinion, and it is most earnestly to be wished that the liberties of America may no longer be trusted, in any material degree, to so precarious a dependence."

Eighty men—the army! Even they, it was specified, were "to guard the stores." Picture them at West Point, all that remained of Alexander Hamilton's battery,[6] oiling the trunnions of three and six pounders, mowing grass on the magazines and doing their turn at guard. The army—a few watchmen not even glorified. All the training, all the safeguard that Washington and Steuben had built up with such great care was wantonly tossed aside. But even this sacrifice would not have been so terrible were not hundreds of lives to be lost by the discard.

Congress had, however, indulged in a vague legislation which called out from the different states for twelve months 700 enlisted men and a proper proportion of officers. An officer from one state, under this law, might command men from another. The purpose of the enactment was to garrison the frontier posts to be evacuated by the British according to the treaty. But this tepid measure was to prove useless.

June 3 1784

Hardly a year had elapsed when it was demonstrated that this force could not be raised so as to be effective in the face of so short an enlistment. The Indian depredations were coming on so fast that it was impossible to recruit a new levy every year. And in the meantime frontier settlers were being massacred.

---

[6] Afterwards Battery F, Fourth Artillery.

April 1, 7, 12 1785

Accordingly the term of service was extended to three years. The organization was a mixed regiment of 8 companies of infantry and 2 of artillery. The officers were: 1 lieutenant colonel commandant, 2 majors, 8 captains, 10 lieutenants (1 as adjutant, 1 as quartermaster and 1 as paymaster), 10 ensigns, 1 surgeon and 4 surgeon's mates. The highest ranking officer received $82 per month and the private $4.[7]

Sept. 1785

General Knox as Secretary of War and Lieutenant Colonel Harmer as commandant were in charge of this regimental army. Although it was the first organization to have the functions of regular troops, it was not so styled. Congress had said that "standing armies were dangerous to a republic" and it was going to stick to its original story in spite of the facts.

Other happenings proved that such a force was insufficient. The British, Spanish, French and Indians on the frontiers,

---

[7] COMPENSATION PER MONTH

Rank	*Salary* *Cash*
Lieutenant colonel commandant	$50.00
Major	45.00
Captain	35.00
Lieutenant	26.00
Ensign	20.00
Surgeon	45.00
Mate	30.00
Sergeants	6.00
Corporals	5.00
Musicians	5.00
Privates	4.00
	Subsistence
Lieutenant colonel commandant	20.00
Major	20.00
Captain	12.00
Lieutenant	8.00
Ensign	8.00
Surgeon	16.00
Mate	8.00
	Forage
Field Officers	12.00
Surgeon	6.00
Regimental Staff	6.00

where the foreign trappers had little faith in the new government, made such numerous incursions that the army had to be increased; 1,340 additional noncommissioned officers and privates were authorized, who were to be on the same footing as the previous 700. The whole was to be called a "legionary corps." Of the new men only 2 companies of artillery were ever enrolled. Consequently the entire resistance of the country—less than 1,000 men—was tied to the chain of forts in the northwest and south, and along the coast. *Oct. 20 1786*

Lonely garrisons dotted the border from Fort Pitt to Vincennes. Great tracts of dense woods full of bear, panther and deer cut the little parties of from 25 to 100 soldiers away from civilization. So wild was the life, so certain the attack of the savage that the officers or men dared not take with them wives or families.

The fort was usually built in stockade form. Its rectangular fence of logs, pointed at the tops and loopholed for the flintlocks and iron and brass cannon, was reënforced at the four corners by blockhouses. The enclosure was usually divided into two parts by a high stockade fence similar to the outer one. In case a blockhouse or other wooden part was burnt or a breach made in the outer fence, the occupants could retreat to one side or the other. The two enclosures contained, on the one hand, the guardhouse and parade—and, on the other, the quarters of the officers and men and the magazines. The supplies were usually placed in the blockhouses.

The officers' quarters were log shacks consisting of two rooms, each one occupied by an officer. Although the commanding officer might have two and a hall, such an assignment was a luxury. The enlisted men huddled together in small barracks for the sake of warmth. With only open fireplaces to heat the buildings, with supplies coming by boat or caravan very occasionally and with the chill of winter and monotony, it is no wonder that rum was popular.

Yet these men with their smart cocked hats, their tight gaiters, their polished cartridge boxes, their clean white belts, their shaven faces and their powdered hair turned out daily for drill, guard mounting and parade as if the eyes of the world were upon them. Every few nights each soldier, muffled in bear and coon skin, watched as a sentry in the unheated blockhouses or at a desolate post outside. The lurking redskin was ubiquitous. A wink of sleep, a tomahawked sentinel and one pine torch well applied meant death to the garrison.

These soldiers had built the fort with their own hands. It was really theirs more than the government's. But not for a moment did they forget their duty to their nation and to each other. Each day there were quantities of fuel to cut, sinks to fill and the policing of every cranny of the inclosure for health's sake. There were drills and parades. But what recreation? Hunting was so dangerous on account of the Indian that often it had to be forbidden. There were no movies, no libraries, no illustrated magazines. Even a book was a rarity. Although few of the men could read and write, a Bible or a letter was soon frayed from excessive fingering. Eating with the same men, seeing the same faces, doing the same chores—imprisoned on the outskirts of one's own country!

Thus the little garrisons carried on in order to keep murder and rape from the contiguous settlers. Every single soldier who could be enlisted and many more were needed on the frontier. There was consequently no foot-loose command with a chance for proper training or for use in defense in the entire country.

Dec. 1786 Accordingly, in Massachusetts, when dispute over debt arose, Daniel Shay collected some old soldiers of the Revolution, easily dispersed the militia and forced the court to adjourn. With no ready troops to oppose the movement Shay led 2,000 men to the arsenal at Springfield where he was held at bay. It took General Lincoln with 4,000 soldiers raised by the state to disperse Shay's force, after bloodshed and much tumult.

The obsession of universal peace had played its usual part after eight years of unstable equilibrium. Civilization had been torn by what then appeared to be a world war. The wish being father to the belief, it was decided by the public there would be no more resort to arms. Shay's rebellion awakened the states to the realization that the smallest apparent causes can sometimes, presto, be the largest ructions. Because of the current feeling John Adams was actuated to say:

> "National defense is one of the cardinal duties of a statesman. . . . The subject has always been near to my heart. The delightful imaginations of universal peace have often amused, but have never been credited by me."

Accordingly the Congress went to the magnificent extreme of allowing the original 700 enlisted men to reënlist for another three years, thus attempting to save transportation by retaining the former troops. The infantry was arranged in a regiment by itself and the artillery was separated into four companies of the same size each as those of the infantry. This small force was the invitation of over three million people for more bloodshed. *Oct. 3 1787*

Such was the futile provision when the country created its Constitution which made the President commander in chief of the army, and also made Congress responsible for the nation's defense. The actual number of men then in the service was 595. Under the new government the Department of War was established with its secretary whose duties covered military commissions, land grants and naval and Indian, as well as army affairs. Knox and Harmer were continued in office. Every person enlisted or commissioned was required to take an oath of allegiance. The commissioned officers were appointed by the President and all persons in the army were referred to as "in the service of the United States." *1788* *Sept. 29 1789*

The reaction from the Constitution was first materially felt in the military establishment when the new strength of the army was placed at 1,216 enlisted men. This law which repealed the provisions of the year before was extensively detailed. It made the length of service three years for officers as well as for the rank and file. It allowed 2 inspectors with "pay and subsistence of captain." It provided that subalterns as adjutants should receive $10 and "Quarter and Pay masters" $5 extra pay per month. It raised the forage for majors and surgeons from $6 to $10, and gave to the enlisted man the following clothing and rations: *April 30 1790*

> "One hat, or helmet, one coat, one vest, two pair of woolen and linen overalls, four pair of shoes, four shirts, two pair of

socks, one blanket, one stock and clasp, and one pair of buckles (annually).

"One pound of beef or three quarters of a pound of pork, one pound of bread or flour and half a gill of rum, brandy or whiskey (daily.)

"Two quarts of vinegar, two pounds of soap and one pound of candles (every hundred days)."

It then tore down the whole structure by cutting the pay of the private to $3 per month, and deducting besides $1 for hospital stores and clothing, so that he really received only $2 in cash; then it added a little salve by giving officers wounded or disabled in line of duty a pension of $9 per month, and enlisted men $5.

The entire force was to be organized into 1 infantry regiment of 3 battalions, and 1 artillery battalion. Each battalion was to have 4 companies, 1 major, 1 adjutant, 1 quartermaster and 1 surgeon or surgeon's mate. The infantry company was to consist of 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 1 ensign, 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, 2 musicians and 61 privates. The artillery company was provided with 2 lieutenants instead of a lieutenant and ensign.

Shortly after this law was passed the western settlers were marauded by the Indians aided and abetted by the British. Since the Revolution over one thousand souls in the vicinity of Kentucky alone had perished by arrow and tomahawk. Congress was besieged for aid. But there was yet no army outside of the little garrisons scattered on the frontier, and President Washington was powerless to call out a single additional regular soldier.

July 15 1790 Therefore, Governor (General) Saint Clair of the Northwest Territory raised about 1,100 militia which under the system of the time consisted of "old men, boys and untrustworthy substitutes," untrained and undisciplined. The leader chosen by Saint Clair proved to be incompetent and was often drunk. However, General Harmer added 320 regulars to this force, superseded in command Saint Clair's choice and led the whole force into the Maumee country. It was not long until one of his detachments was ambushed and 400 of the remainder at the Maumee River had half of its number killed or wounded. What was left of the main force escaped, but the Indians were filled with new courage for murder and rapine so that hundreds of settlers were killed and plundered as a result of the disadvantage. General Harmer was exonerated from blame on acount of the poor quality of his troops.

March 3 1791

From this affair came the creation of a second regular regiment of infantry. The pay schedule and organization was to be the same as that of the previous regiment, but the strength was to be 50 men less. To this toy army there was added a major general, brigadier general, brigade major, quartermaster and chaplain.[8] In addition, levies for six months were allowed to be raised by the President.

Instead of paying the soldier a sum sufficient to get a good type of man, Congress again resorted to the pernicious bounty system, which allowed to each recruit of the regulars $6 and of the levies $3. More pernicious still was the allowance to each recruiting officer of $2 for each new man enlisted by him. Not only was a low type of soldier obtained but desertion and waste were the results as in the Revolution.

Nov. 3 1791

In the meantime the ravages of the Miami Indians became so hurtful that General Saint Clair was sent against them. His force was made up of men "purchased from prisons, wheelbarrows and brothels at $2 per month." On his way he built Fort Hamilton (north of Cincinnati) and Fort Jefferson (near Greenville). The levies under this system turned out to be more disgraceful in desertion and disorder than the militia had been. When the Indians charged at a branch of the

---

[8] "Sec. 6. That in case a major general, brigadier general, quartermaster, aid-de-camp, brigade major, and chaplain, should be appointed, their pay and allowances shall be respectively, as herein mentioned: the major general shall be entitled to $125, monthly pay, $20 allowance for forage, monthly, and for daily subsistence fifteen rations, or money in lieu thereof, at the contract price. The brigadier general shall be entitled to $94, monthly pay, with $16 allowance for forage, monthly, and for daily subsistence twelve rations, or money in lieu thereof, at the contract price. That the quartermaster shall be entitled to the same pay, rations, and forage, as the lieutenant colonel commandant of a regiment. That the aid-de-camp be entitled, including all allowances, to the same pay, rations and forage, as a major of a regiment. That the brigade major be entitled, including all allowances, to the same pay, rations, and forage, as a major of a regiment. That the captain be entitled to $50 per month, including pay, rations and forage."

Wabash, these untrained men fled through the regulars, whose regimental officers were all killed in trying to stem the tide. General Saint Clair had eight bullet holes in his clothing. An equal force of Indians routed these poor troops, killing 632 and wounding 264 out of about 1,400.

In addition to the above losses another calamity visited the army. The Indians had become bold and arrogant by their successes over our impotent troops. As a consequence Lieutenant Colonel Hardin and Major Trueman, sent on a pacific mission to the hostile towns of the Indians, were treacherously murdered.

These disasters again threw Congress into a whirlpool of army legislation, but, as always, too late to prevent disaster. *March 5 1792* The lawmakers authorized the recruiting of the existing 2 regiments of infantry up to 960 men apiece. It created 4 more regiments of the same strength, one of which was to consist of 2 infantry battalions and a squadron of 4 troops of light dragoons. Each troop was to be officered by 1 captain, 1 lieutenant and 1 cornet; and each infantry company by 1 captain, 1 lieutenant and 1 ensign. The dragoons were to serve dismounted when so ordered. The pay was made free of all deductions. The monthly cash ranged from $166 for a major general to $3 for a private.

A curious feature was an additional indefinite cavalry force for the frontiers, raised for such periods, with such organization and with such strength as the President might decide. The 3 additional infantry regiments were to be raised or discharged at the discretion of the President.

March 28 1792 A little later Congress authorized a maximum of four brigadier generals for the army.

May 8 1792 Then came the universal militia law which made every male citizen between 18 and 45 years a constructive soldier. The captain or company commander was to be responsible for the enrollment of every eligible man in his district. Each soldier notified was to equip himself, within six months,

"with a good musket or firelock, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints, and a knapsack, a pouch, with a box therein to contain not less than twenty-four cartridges, suited to the bore of his musket or firelock, each cartridge to contain a proper quantity of powder and ball; or, with a good rifle, knapsack, shot pouch and powder horn, twenty balls, suited to the bore of his rifle, and a quarter of a pound of powder; and shall appear, so armed, accoutered, and provided, when called out to exercise, or into service; except, that when called out on company days exercise only, he may appear without a knapsack. That the commissioned officers, shall, severally, be armed with a sword and hanger, and espontoon; and that, from and after five years from the passing of this act, all muskets for arming the militia, as herein required, shall be of bores sufficient for balls of the eighteenth part of a pound. And every citizen so enrolled, and providing himself with the arms, ammunition, and accouterments, required as aforesaid, shall hold the same exempted from all suits, distresses, executions, or sales, for debt, or for the payment of taxes."

Here was a distinct attempt to standardize the calibers of the flintlocks throughout the country. The whole force was to be organized into divisions and brigades. The lower units were to be organized as those of the regular army. One company of "grenadiers, light infantry or riflemen" was to be created for each battalion; and 1 company of artillery and 1 troop of horse, for each division. The commissioned officers were to furnish themselves with good horses of at least fourteen and a half hands high and were to be "armed with a sword, and a pair of pistols, the holsters of which to be covered with bearskin caps." The state adjutant general was to distribute all orders from the commander in chief of each commonwealth.

Then followed the legionary organization promoted by General Knox, secretary of war. The militia comprising the able-bodied men of the entire country were to be divided into 3 corps. The advanced corps was to consist of those between the ages of 18 to 20; the main corps, between 21 to 45; and the reserved corps, between 46 to 60. Of the advanced corps the men under 20 were to receive instruction for thirty days at "annual camps of discipline."

All the regular troops were to become a legion. The authorized 5,120 were to have 4 sublegions. The regiment as an or- *Dec. 27 1792* ganization was discarded. There was to be no rank intervening between a brigadier general and a major. Each sublegion was to consist of 1,280 men commanded by a brigadier general, and was to be made up of 12 battalions of infantry, 1 battalion of riflemen, 1 company of artillery and 1 troop of dragoons. The whole legion was to be commanded by a major general. The intention was apparently to cut down the number of officers and to avoid the horrid term, "regular army."

The legion for the regulars was to have a short life, but the law and legionary organization for the militia became dead letters almost as soon as enunciated. The states were not penalized for failure to raise troops nor was the soldier for omitting to provide himself with so much equipment. The federal government took no steps to raise or organize this force. But the law is interesting in that it recognized at this early date the principle that every able-bodied citizen should be an active defender of his country. It remained inactive and was often noticed as a pretty statute on the books for over a century, during which time it was to be our only militia law.

The regular army of the borders was now extremely pressed by the Indians who were bold and confident from their previous victories. The lives of innocent settlers were being lost while all these sentiments were being written into enactments.

June 1792 Things came to such a pass that Washington chose Anthony Wayne to organize a force and suppress the rapacious tribes in the west. Wayne arrived at Pittsburg and began a work of discipline and training that was to last almost a year. It was necessary for him to stop and prepare while savage depredations were continuing. *May 1793* Although the caliber of recruits was the same as before, he claimed in the next spring to have 2,500 *Oct. 1793* "worthy of being trusted in campaign." Moving the legion to what is now Cincinnati he there awaited orders which arrived *Dec. 1793* in time in the fall to let him march to Greenville which he named in honor of General Nathaniel Greene. Here he *June 30 1794* gave his soldiers intensive drill so that later he was able to send a strong detachment to the scene of Saint Clair's defeat where he built Fort Recovery and repulsed 2,000 Indians with heavy loss. After having been joined by some mounted Kentuckians, he started toward the Maumee towns. His army numbered

2,643, all that he could obtain from the 5,120 authorized. With *July 27 1794* this comparatively small band he was to combat a greatly superior force of redskins. At the junction of the Maumee and the Anglaise rivers he built Fort Defiance. When the Indians *Aug. 1794* refused peace, he went to meet them in the vicinity of Presque Isle.

He disposed his troops with the injunction that they fire *Aug. 20 1794* once and then drive the Indian from cover with cold steel. The battleground, "Fallen Timber," was a wide path in the woods made by a previous tornado. The twisted trunks and branches embedded in artificial and natural entanglements of brush made an ideal cover for the savages. Even their brilliantly painted faces were hidden. But the hunting shirt and cap of the United States soldier were in evidence. The white, red, yellow and green plumes[9] of the sublegions made four separate bands of color in the surrounding foliage. The dragoon with the white horsehair crest of his brass helmet flying in the wind charged the fierce fire without wavering. The men with their bayonets, the company officers with their short sabers, the field officers with their longer ones and the trooper with his still longer horseman's sword hunted the Indian out of his hiding place and ran him through or simply ran him. For these officers in their half-boots and these men of the odd numbered sublegions in black wigs and even numbered sublegions in white, were drilled and disciplined troops. The savage afterwards stated that he "could not stand up against the sharp ends of the guns." Neither could he face soldiers who by time and practice had assimilated precision and obedience. The victory was complete, the Indians losing at least twice as many as the Americans. As a consequence, the frontier settler lived in peace for a long time.

The other regular troops at this period were scattered as follows:

398 at posts on the upper Ohio.
73 in the Southwest Territory.

---

[9] The officers and men when not in the field wore cocked and round hats respectively. The officer wore the plume of his sublegion, and the soldier wore on his round hat, which had a brim 3 inches wide, a strip of bearskin 7 inches high and 7 inches wide.

146 in Georgia.
369 at seacoast fortifications and recruiting rendezvous.

April 2 1794 During the spring of this year Congress had made several feeble laws affecting the army. It authorized one or two more May 9 1794 arsenals in addition to the ones at Carlisle and Springfield. Harper's Ferry was chosen. To the legion of the United States it added 764 enlisted men, with a proper proportion of officers, to be known as the corps of artillerists and engineers. After absorbing the 4 companies of artillery already in the service, the corps was to consist of 4 battalions of 4 companies each, to be commanded by a "lieutenant colonel, commandant." The June 7 1794 company was to be officered by 1 captain, 2 lieutenants and 2 cadets. A cadet was to have the pay, clothing and rations of a sergeant. An extra ration of "four ounces of beef, two ounces of flour, a half a gill of rum or whisky" was to be tendered to the frontier soldier.

Aug. 1794 While Wayne was pursuing the Indians, universal peace at home was disturbed by the whisky insurrection. After riots, not without bloodshed, 7,000 men in Pennsylvania refused to disperse at the order of the President. It was necessary, because there was no regular force, to call upon the governors of Pennsylvania and the surrounding states for militia. Although the troops of the Keystone State could not be collected on account of sympathy with the rioters and were therefore useless, the militia of some other states succeeded finally in dispersing the malcontents and saved the nation further embarrassment. No one has ever answered the question, "What would the President have done had all the states refused?"

Jan. 5 1795 The insurrection led to another series of acts featuring the army. A premium was placed on the reënlistment of the trained soldier by raising the monthly bounty, clothing and pay allowance to $9 for a sergeant major down to $6.66 for a private, gunner or bombardier. When the cavalry officer or private furnished his horse, arms and accouterments he was to receive 40 cents a day in addition to his pay, and when the enlisted man furnished his own rations and forage he was to receive 25 cents a day. The militia who had gone with Wayne were to be included in this scale. The pay in cash for all grades of enlisted men was to be raised $1 per month, in addition to an initial bounty of $16 for those who reënlisted, and $14 for recruits. Congress was beginning to realize it must pay decently for decent men, but it continued the wasteful bounty system.

March 3 1795

The legion was to be completed to 4,800 enlisted men,[10] all enlistments to be terminated at the whim of the government, although three years was specified. The pay allowances and rations were to continue at practically the same rate. In addition to their pay all persons in the service were to receive a definite number of rations: a major general 15, a brigadier 12, a major 4, and so on down to a private, who received 1.

A Law May 30 1796

Effective Oct. 31 1796

Scarcely had this legislation been carefully enacted before the legion was abolished. The army from then on was to consist of 4 regiments of infantry, 2 companies of light dragoons and the corps of artillerists and engineers as already organized. Instead of the previous 5 legionary generals, there were to be but 2, a major general with two aides and a brigadier general. Three legionary generals had to be either "deranged" or demoted two grades.[11] The pay, rations and forage remained about the same.

This act also provided that the President must confirm court-martial sentences which in time of peace included the death penalty or the "dismission" of an officer.

March 3 1797

The next year a Judge Advocate, to be taken from the line and to have extra pay and rations, was for the first time provided. The office of major general was abolished. A quartermaster-general and a paymaster-general were also created, who with the Judge Advocate and brigadier general were to form a "General Staff."[12] The pay of lieutenants and ensigns was raised and officers commanding separate posts were to have their rations doubled. Officers "deranged" by the previous act were to be given six months' pay and subsistence.

1798

Hoyt's *Treatise on Military Art,* published "according to act of Congress," presented a set of drill regulations for the cavalry. The author frankly stated that the manual was an adaptation to mounted troops of the principles of Baron von Steuben. The regiment was divided into 2 squadrons of 4 troops each. But Hoyt improved on Steuben by having the cadence in the manual the same as the intervals between parts of the command rather than a "second of time." Throughout the treatise the dragoon is armed with sword and pistol.

---

[10] Exclusive of the corps of artillerists and engineers.

[11] The grade of colonel had not existed since the Revolution.

[12] Although a general staff in name, it had none of the great functions of such a body, such as wisely foreseeing weaknesses in case of war.

April 27 1798 The imminent trouble with France caused the legislators to increase the corps of artillerists and engineers by 3 regiments, to be enlisted for five years. A company was to be officered by 1 captain, 2 lieutenants and 2 cadets, and otherwise to be made up of 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, 42 privates, sappers and miners, 10 artificers, and 2 musicians.

The harbors were to be thoroughly defended. The sum of $1,150,000 was voted to erect and improve fortifications, to purchase cannon, small arms, and military stores; and for the hire, purchase and employ of foundries and armories virtually as the President saw fit. This provision was an early intimation of the lavishness of the country with regard to war material. Quite in contrast was the attitude toward discipline and training. The comprehension of their value has always been awkward for the American mind.

May 28 1798 In the event of war the President was authorized to call out 10,000 enlisted men for three years at a bounty of $10, to organize and officer this force about as he chose and to appoint a lieutenant general at $250 per month, who was allowed 4 aides and 2 secretaries. The Executive was empowered to appoint an inspector general with rank of major general and an adjutant general with rank of brigadier. Soldiers were exempted from all "personal arrests for any debt or contract" during their service. This army was never called out.

July 6 1798 The next law voted 30,000 stands of arms to be sold to the governments of the respective states.

July 16 1798 Since war was apparently at hand, a frenzy of legislation took place. The regular infantry regiment was increased by 3 extra staff officers, an adjutant, a quartermaster and a paymaster who had heretofore been selected from the existing lieutenants. A surgeon and 2 mates were added to the regiment. Its companies were increased by 2, each one consisting of 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 1 ensign, 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, 1 musician and 60 privates. The regimental staff was made up of 1 sergeant major, 1 quartermaster sergeant and 2 senior musicians. Three brigadier generals having been subtracted when the legion was abolished were now again authorized.

Twelve additional regiments of infantry and 6 troops of dragoons were to be enlisted for, and during, "the existing differences between the United States and the French Republic." A regiment of light dragoons—the first regiment of horse provided for by the new government—was to be formed from the 2 old troops and 6 new ones. The bounty was $12 for these men. The volunteers were never called out, because it had already become customary in the United States to be engaged in war before training could begin.

The first indication of a medical establishment was given in Congress the following year. A physician general, an apothecary general, a purveyor and "a competent number of hospital surgeons" were authorized.[13] *March 2 1799*

The war scare still being prevalent, a contemporary law provided, in case of imminent war "between the United States and a foreign European power," to raise additionally 24 regiments of infantry, a regiment and battalion of artillerists and engineers and 3 regiments of cavalry. The complete nullification of this grand paper force was that it was not required to serve outside its particular state for more than three months.

The organization of the regular infantry and cavalry regiments was changed again by adding a cadet to each company and by making a regiment consist of 2 battalions of 5 companies *March 3 1799* each. The artillery was changed to 4 battalions of 4 companies each with 2 cadets per company. The titles of ensign and cornet were abolished and replaced by second lieutenant. The office of colonel did not yet exist. The pay for a private was raised to $5 and one ration; for a cadet to $10 and two rations; for a major of cavalry to $55 and four rations; for a major of infantry to $40 and three rations; and for a lieutenant colonel $75 and six rations. An allowance for forage was given all mounted officers. Two regiments were to constitute a brigade and 2 brigades a division. It was apparent that the soldiers had heretofore been clothed entirely from standard sizes, for the law now allowed 25 cents a garment for alterations to "coats, vests, overall and breeches" so as to fit the wearer.

---

[13] "Sec. 6. That the compensations of the said several officers shall be as follows: of the physician general, $100 pay per month, and $50 per month, which shall be in full compensation for forage, rations, and traveling expenses; of the purveyor, $100 pay per month, in full compensation for his services, and all expenses; of the apothecary general, $80 pay per month, and $30 per month in full compensation for forage, rations and all expenses; of each of his deputies, $50 pay per month, and $16 per month, in full compensation for forage, rations, and all expenses; of each hospital surgeon, $80 pay per month, and $40 per month, in full compensation for forage, rations, and all expenses; of each mate, $30 pay per month, and $20 per month, in full compensation for forage, rations, and all expenses; for each steward, $25 pay per month, and $8 per month in full compensation for forage, rations, and all expenses; *Provided*, That none of the officers aforesaid shall be entitled to any part of the pay or emoluments aforesaid, until they shall, respectively, be called into actual service."

The uniform at this time was changed to suit the new organization of the army. The commander in chief had three silver stars on his gold epaulets. The general officers wore blue coats with lining, cape and cuffs of buff, with no lapels, and with caps, cuffs and pockets embroidered. The general officers (except the staff) wore white plumes, and line officers red plumes.

The shoulder strap made its first appearance. A lieutenant colonel still wore two silver epaulets, but a major one epaulet on the right shoulder and a strap on the left. A captain wore an epaulet on his right shoulder, a lieutenant one on the left shoulder (there being no apparent distinction between first and second lieutenants), and a cadet only a strap on his left shoulder. The noncommissioned officers wore red worsted epaulets; staff sergeants, one on each shoulder; line sergeants, one on the right shoulder; and corporals, one on the left shoulder. The artillery and infantry wore blue coats with red facings whereas the cavalry wore green coats with white facings. All wore cocked hats with a black cockade having an eagle in the center. The enlisted man's cockade was of leather and his eagle of tin. The regiments were distinguished by the numbers on their white buttons.

How all this new organization and these numerous regulations could have been put into effect in the face of an approaching French army can be answered when we look at the turmoil and powerlessness in which the country found itself thirteen years later. We can only be thankful that the well-trained French army never appeared.

The disturbances of these times call attention to the undisciplined condition of the country. One John Fries led a rebellion in Pennsylvania. He had collected a large body of men who were opposed to the war tax. Although a presidential proclamation ordered the rioters to disperse, an armed force was necessary to put down the insurrection. *March 7 1799*

In the midst of all this furor, an event occurred which should have made the populace stop and think. Washington died suddenly at Mt. Vernon. The nation had not yet learned to appreciate the greatness of this man. But the Revolutionary soldiers knew him, missed him, and mourned him. They had been close beside him when the fire tested him and them together. They knew that he was the Revolution—he was the new country. Iron-hearted and soft-handed he had been their friend and leader. He had met the blackest of men and times and turned both to account. The members of the army told the nation these things about the fireside, near the forge, over the counter and in the churches. And the country listened, but not till many years later did it quite comprehend. *March 14 1799*

No sooner had Washington died and the trouble with France apparently passed over, than Congress tore down the greater part of the military structure it had raised. It violently threw into the discard his soundest counsel. All regular forces except the first 4 regiments of infantry, 2 regiments of artillerists and engineers, 2 troops of light dragoons and "the general and other staff" were ordered to be discharged; 3,399 men were cast out of the service. *May 14 1800*

That some few who remained evidently had an interest in their profession, is shown from the attention to details. For the 2 remaining troops of dragoons there appeared from the press of E. A. Jenks "an exact set of cavalry exercises, an approved work." The volume explained the manual of the pistol and sword, and exact movements for the horsemen.

Effort at Harper's Ferry was made to standardize the rifle by the manufacture of the model 1800. By it a single caliber of .62 was devised for the whole army. In rifle regiments officers carried it instead of a sword. The weapon for them was slightly lighter and more ornamented than the enlisted man's. A rampart rifle weighing 20 pounds or more was also made at the arsenal. It was used solely to fire over parapets.

Dec. 19 1801 In spite of the fact that the actual strength of the army, notwithstanding the organization provided, numbered only 248 officers, 9 cadets and 3,794 enlisted men, Congress was not satisfied with this reduction.

March 16 1802 *Effective June 1 1802* There being every indication of peace, that body further scorned Washington's sentiments and contracted the fighting force of the country to 2 regiments of infantry, 1 regiment of artillerists of 4 battalions (of 5 companies each), and 1 corps of engineers consisting of 1 major, 2 captains, 2 first lieutenants, 2 second lieutenants and 10 cadets. Three military agents[14] were also provided for, and the grade of colonel for the first time since the Revolution came into being in the artillery. Of the general officers, a brigadier was the only one allowed. The pay, subsistence and forage remained about the same, except that the brigadier received $225 per month and nothing else.

The great redeeming feature of this legislation was the actual establishment, under the guise of a corps of engineers, of the educational institution that was to have such a decided influence upon the future of the country. The United States Military Academy at West Point was born.

---

[14] "Sec. 17. That it shall be the duty of the military agents, designated by this act, to purchase, receive, and forward to their proper destination all military stores, and other articles for the troops in their respective departments, and all goods and annuities for the Indians, which they may be directed to purchase, or which shall be ordered into their care by the department of war. They shall account with the department of war, annually, for all the public property which may pass through their hands, and all the moneys which they may expend in discharge of the duties of their offices, respectively; previous to their entering on the duties of their offices, they shall give bonds with sufficient sureties, in such sums as the President of the United States shall direct, for the faithful discharge of the trust reposed in them; and shall take an oath faithfully to perform the duties of their respective offices. . . .

"Sec. 27. That the said corps, when so organized, shall be stationed at West Point, in the state of New York, and shall constitute a military academy; and the engineers, assistant engineers, and cadets of the said corps, shall be subject, at all times, to do duty in such places, and on such service, as the President of the United States shall direct.

"Sec. 28. That the principal engineer, and in his absence the next in rank, shall have the superintendence of the said military academy, under the direction of the President of the United States; and the secretary of war is hereby authorized, at the public expense, under such regulations as shall be directed by the President of the United States to procure the necessary books, implements, and apparatus for the use and benefit of the said institution."

Washington, as early as 1793, had indicated the desirability of a Military Academy in his message to Congress. Timothy Pickering had earlier suggested West Point as the place. Although Washington was opposed in his views by Jefferson, the first President showed in 1796 that his original desire had been intensified. But when Jefferson, after he had studied the question, became a most zealous advocate of the plan, the idea of a Military Academy seemed to be right from every point of view.

George Barron, a civilian, had established, previous to the above act, a mathematical school at West Point for the few cadets then in the service. But the government of young military men appeared to be incompatible with the systems in vogue in ordinary schools, for the "institution ran into disorder and the teacher into contempt."

Even after the act of 1802 only a few of the officers authorized were appointed. Major Jonathan Williams became the first superintendent. To his lot fell such instruction as reading lectures on fortifications, teaching the use of instruments and conducting practical exercises in the field. The two captains, W. A. Barron and Jared Mansfield, taught algebra and geometry. The limited curriculum of this nebulous school was also hindered by the intermittent appearance of the teachers, who were ordered away for such duty as erecting fortifications in various parts of the country.

Cadets were quartered in the old "Long Barrack" of the Revolution. They were instructed in a two-story "academy" building which was also the dwelling of the superintendent.

They were limited by no entrance examinations and no age, physical or mental qualifications. They were not amenable to martial law, had no class rank and demanded the right to select such branch of service as pleased them. But the Corps was begun and the foundation of great possibilities laid.

Much could hardly be expected immediately from such a school. In these times when the most exciting duty for an officer away from the frontier was to sit on a court for the trial of a lieutenant colonel who refused to cut off his cue and trim his whiskers to a prescribed line, of a major for selling milk to his command or of a lieutenant for shooting his captain's ducks, little could be expected in the way of teaching bristling, pregnant, trenchant truths. These officers, trussed up in their great single-breasted blue coats with high standing collars that hampered relaxation, could scarcely have the speed of olive drab.

March 3 1803 While West Point was being established the country was disturbed by the ominous prospect of a war with Spain. Congress accordingly issued a host of militia calls that were to *April 18 1806* stretch over several years. First of all 80,000 were authorized for one year. Then a similar law made the period of service six months. Later 30,000 were authorized to be enlisted for *Feb. 24 1807* one year. All these enactments were inoperative almost as soon as made.

During this inconsequential agitation, 2 army officers, Captain Meriwether Lewis and Lieutenant William Clark,[15] with 4 sergeants, and 23 privates and Indian interpreters traversed, between midsummer, 1803, and the autmn of 1806, the entire continent from east to west and back again from west to east. The exploit is so famous in general history that little need be said of it here. Following the Missouri they made their way to the coast. Taking accurate surveys and constructing maps and creating friendships with the Indians, many of whom were seeing a white man for the first time, they picked their way from prairie to mountain and from mountain to the coast. To the suffering, hardihood and daring of these soldiers the United States owes the opening of the west.

While Lewis and Clark were gone, the idea occurred to General Wilkinson, commander of the army and governor of Louisiana Territory, to send out a similar expedition. Lieutenant Zebulon Montgomery Pike (afterwards General) with 1 sergeant, 2 corporals and 17 privates explored the head waters *April 30 1806* of the Mississippi. After enduring much that Lewis and Clark had undergone, he returned less than nine months later to St. Louis, having made peace with the northern Indians and learned much of their country. Without an educated partner he had acted as astronomer, surveyor, commanding officer, clerk, spy and guide for the expedition.

---

[15] Brother of George Rogers Clark.

July 1807 General Wilkinson was so much pleased with the results that he sent Pike with 1 lieutenant, 1 sergeant, 2 corporals and 16 privates south toward the mouth of the Mississippi. The mission of this young officer was to effect an interview and good understanding with the Yanctons, Tetons and Comanches and to return certain captured Osage Indians to their home. Not only was Pike successful in this enterprise, but he explored the region about the peak which bears his name and beguiled the Spaniards into taking his party prisoners to Santa Fe, where he learned much of Spanish intentions, customs and the nature of the country. The exploration furnished unusually valuable information and was given the personal approbation of the President.

Feb. 4 1805 To return to the army proper the little force had dwindled at one time during this exploration period to 175 officers, 12 cadets and 2,389 enlisted men. Morale in the service was low. The older officers were, as a rule, idle, ignorant and intemperate because appointments were dependent almost entirely on politics. It was not difficult to sidetrack into the service "swaggerers, dependents, decayed gentlemen" and those thought fit for nothing else. The Military Academy had furnished but a very few junior officers. Besides, the soldier had come to be such a plaything of the government that often excellent men hesitated to accept a position that might unexpectedly be no more to-morrow.

April 10 1806 Here is an instance of the laxity with which the people handled military matters. Twenty-six years after the virtual close of the Revolution, the country woke up to the fact that it had not dealt fairly with those who had fought in that war. With most of the actually deserving ones deceased, it generously provided for the remainder. This anachronism emphasized not only a lack of past justice but the extravagance of spending almost $20,000,000 for widows who survived till almost as late as our war with Spain in '98. But most of the soldiers who really deserved this pension never received it.

April 12 1808 In the meantime the war with Great Britain was threatening. Again the army, which recently had been cut down, was increased; 5 regiments of infantry, 1 regiment of riflemen, 1 regiment of light artillery and 1 regiment of light dragoons, to be enlisted for five years were added. Two cadets were to be assigned to each company or troop. The regiment of dragoons was to be composed of 8 troops, whereas the other regiments were to have 10 companies. The pay was to remain about the same.[16] But the failure to increase the staff made the work of raising and organizing these 6,000 additional men almost impossible.

1808 The reason for the "light artillery" in this legislation may be due to the fact that *Maneuvers of Horse Artillery* by General Kosciusko appeared that year. The manual's introduction enunciates this remarkable principle:

> "The use of artillery in battle is not against the artillery of an enemy, for that would be a waste of powder, but against the line of the enemy in a diagonal direction when it is destructive in the extreme."

The maneuvers consisted of detaching limbers, making fast prolonge and drag and executing similar evolutions to those in Steuben's regulations for infantry. The book showed the armament of the company to be six pounders and two five-and-a-half-inch howitzers, although four and eight pounders might be used.

1810 In 1810 little of account happened for the army. The uniform was radically changed to single-breasted coats without facings and with silver lace along the buttonholes. There was also prescribed the silk hat (much like the civilian one at present) with a cockade on the side.

West Point's faculty was increased by teachers of "drawing and of the French Language."

Congress was far from negligent of its fortifications and seacoast defenses. It mistakenly had the notion that such construction would keep an enterprising enemy from landing on our shores. Although it had accepted archaic plans of purported engineers in political favor and had used them with great loss and against the advice of Major Joseph G. Swift,[17] it still had a mass of fortresses along the coast to show for the several millions it had expended. Just before the second war with Great Britain there existed 24 forts, 32 inclosed batteries *1811* and works of masonry with an armament of 750 guns of various calibers; 12,610 soldiers were needed to man these strongholds.

---

[16] The brigadier was to receive $104 a month, 12 rations and $16 for forage.

While Great Britain was about to strike from the east and north, the savages were again breaking out in the west. The hostile Indian tribes under Tecumseh and his prophet brother were collecting in force with manifest intentions of bringing destruction to the white settlers along the Wabash. General William Henry Harrison collected a band of regulars and militia to combat them. His knowledge of the savage caused him to keep his command constantly on the alert. He took up a final position on the west bank of the Tippecanoe River where *Nov. 7 1811* he was later attacked. The struggle was desperate and success for our troops much of the time doubtful. But the fact that the riflemen were fighting on the defensive and were superior marksmen finally gave Harrison the advantage.

In these post Revolutionary years the army passed through swift periods of rise and fall. It was the thermometer of the nation's fear. At first, under the constitution, it was barely 1 regiment, then 2 in 1789, 3 in 1791, a legion corresponding to 5 in 1792, 6 in 1796, 9 in 1798, 6 in 1800 and 3 again in 1802. In 1808 it suddenly sprang to 11 regiments each having 8, 10 or 20 companies depending upon the law by which the particular organization was born. But the actual number of soldiers recruited, irrespective of laws, seemed to vary little. In 1805, the army consisted of 2,732 officers and men; in 1807, of less than 2,500; and 1809, 2,965; although the authorized strength during these years showed differences of nearly 400 per cent.

How could any organization under such whimsical change be otherwise than far below standard? How could the velocity of such expansion and contraction do else than break the joints of our land defense? There could be no unity or spirit in the army under such sudden measures of giving and taking away.

---

[17] The first graduate of the Military Academy.

Aside from a very few men who had graduated from the Military Academy and others who, like Winfield Scott, had entered the service with the highest motives, the officers took little interest in their profession. Politics rather than qualifications commissioned them. Steuben's work had been rooted up and nothing had been planted in its place save West Point, which as yet could give few results. The old training had passed out when the army had been flung aside. Too often was the officer at this time an idler or martinet, and often both. When Congress and the people took so little interest in proper national defense, such decadence was to be expected.

A good man, who might under better conditions have enlisted, sensed the instability of the army and shied at the unknown. Either in entering or leaving the service of his country he would be unpopular. His pay would be low and his life hard and dangerous. His treatment, too, was likely to be bad. He hesitated to give up his chances in civil life when he did not know how long the government might keep him. In spite of the small wages, he might have come into the army had there existed an established pride of corps and a distinction in being a defender of his nation. But when both these elements were taken away, the excellent recruit was hard to obtain.

Dec. 24 1811

Congress had to offer to any man who would enlist or reënlist for five years a bonus of $16 bounty, to be paid at once, and 3 months' pay and 160 acres of land upon honorable discharge. As an added inducement his heirs were to receive all this gratuity if the soldier died or was killed in line of duty.

With ordinary attention to the happenings of the Revolution thirty years before and to the first man in peace as well as war, who had just died, Congress could have made an excellent, economical force. But it had forgotten the magic word "training." Because it had not listened to the voice of experience and wisdom, it could not in a twinkling find a substitute for time. Nor could it organize efficiently or economically after the panic was once started.

To Washington, the country accorded mourning for thirty days, the annual observance of his birthday, a high monument, the name of the capital of the nation and the splendid title of "Father of his Country," but it consistently spurned the advice he held most dear:

> "To be prepared for war is one of the most effectual means of preserving peace. A free people ought not only be armed but disciplined."

CHAPTER V

THE ARMY IN NAME

(1812–1820)

NO period casts upon the United States a more justifiable shadow than the one which includes the second war against Great Britain. Almost thirty years had passed since the first one, when nearly 400,000 frantically raised soldiers had sought to drive little more than 40,000 of the enemy from our shores. At the end of this illuminating interval, the government found itself with larger resources and a firmer control, but with nothing that might be mistaken for trained forces. Men of the type of Washington, Steuben, Greene and Morgan had passed out. There had meanwhile been no incentive to produce soldiers technically schooled for battle and campaign. Bereft of ordinary means of keeping afloat, the country was about to plunge into war.

The opening of 1812 saw the army almost as heterogeneously organized, or disorganized, as when Steuben appeared at Valley Forge. Congress had established companies ranging from 64 to 100 men; and regiments, from 10 to 20 companies. Although the regular establishment had been raised to 11 regiments, less than one fifth of the added numbers had been recruited and no provisions had been made for a competent staff to handle the increase. Only 71 cadets had so far been graduated from a Military Academy of irregular and infantile curriculum. Even if such men as Thayer, Swift and Totten were beginning to give good accounts of themselves, they were so young and few that they scarcely formed a nucleus.

The several thousand regulars were chained to the frontier forts and the coast line. They could not be withdrawn for combined use without inviting massacres of the frontiersmen and the loss of possessions. The First, Fourth and Fifth regiments of infantry were scattered in small groups along the vast stretch of territory on the edges of the Great Lakes and on the borders of Ohio and Indiana; the Seventh was spread through Kentucky; the Sixth was found in the southwest; the Second in the vicinity of New Orleans; and the Third along the frontier of Georgia and Florida. The artillery in small detachments was dotted along the coast from Maine to Georgia and the regiment of dragoons was broken up and used as foot troops with the infantry.

Off in their primitive inclosures, the little companies, platoons and sections formed their ranks for morning parade with white belts immaculate, breast plates polished and "silk" (or "plug") hats shined to a gloss. The musketeer in his blue coatee with bullet buttons and herring-bone buttonholes, the rifleman in the full-dress gray coat of a modern cadet, and the officer in his high black boots with gilt spurs marched solemnly and punctiliously before the commanding officer. If from the blockhouse there came the cry "Indians," the scene suddenly took on more action. Each man knew his part. The hunting shirt and nankeen overalls replaced the coatee and the tight-fitting breeches. The dress quickly changed, but the discipline remained. Through straining days and nights the meager garrison watched every loophole for the fatal fiebrand or the crawling redskin. After hours of sleeplessness, hunger and oftentimes fever, the defenders finally convinced the savage of the futility of his errand. Then came the burials, the ministrations to the sick and the repairs to the stockade. The few, who had become fewer, returned to the routine of toil and isolation.

To help in the protection of these frontiers Congress authorized the enlistment of 6 companies of "Rangers" for twelve months. *Jan. 2 1812* Then, because of threatening war with England, it added to the regular troops 10 regiments of infantry of 18 companies each, 3 regiments of artillery of 20 companies each and a regiment of light dragoons of 12 companies. *Jan. 11 1812* After the increase, the army theoretically consisted of 17 regiments of infantry, 4 of artillery, 2 of dragoons and 1 of rifles, together with a corps of engineers composed of 16 officers and 4 cadets.[1]

---

[1] "Sec. 3. That to each regiment raised under this act, whether of infantry, artillery or light dragoons, there shall be appointed 1 colonel,

Feb. 6 1812

The new legislation amounted to paper energy. If sufficient recruits could not be had for the former army certainly the acquirement of fresh ones on the same conditions was ridiculous. In this strait, Congress, instead of raising the inducement for men who could be held long enough to be trained, resorted to calling out 30,000 volunteers. This move gave the same reaction as Glendower's "spirits from the vasty deep."

March 28 1812

However, from the mist of these legislative acts there did arise a Quartermaster's Department. Although imperfectly created, it was the first legal recognition of an actual supply staff. Military agents were supplanted by a quartermaster-general, with rank of brigadier, four deputy quartermasters and an elastic number of assistants, depending upon the requirements of public service. The act itself looked very well, but it had so many "riders" pertaining to the ordnance and subsistence branches that confusion and delay resulted. Some one said it should truly have been entitled "An act for the speedy enrichment of contractors and the periodical starvation of the troops of the United States." But it was at least a step toward making an organized supply department.

April 8 1812

April 10 1812

Finding out for certain that it could not raise the army it had voted, Congress now hedged on its original idea by reducing the period of enlistment for 50 per cent of the volunteers to eighteen months. Finally it threw up its hands altogether and passed its responsibility to the States by asking the Governors to have 80,000 officers and men ready to march at a moment's notice. What came of this request will be seen later.

April 29 1812

The signal legislation of this period was the improvement that Congress, under the direction of President Madison, made in the Military Academy. The authorized number of cadets was raised to a maximum of 250. The Corps of Engineers was increased by 6 officers. A force of 94 enlisted men was

---

2 lieutenant colonels, 2 majors, 2 adjutants, 1 quartermaster, 1 paymaster, 1 surgeon, 2 surgeon's mates, 2 sergeant majors, 2 quartermaster sergeants, and 2 senior musicians.''

Other sections allowed 2 major generals and 5 brigadiers, and fixed the pay at the prevailing rate for all except the major general who was to receive $200 for pay, $20 for forage, and 15 rations per month.

formed into a "company of bombardiers, sappers and miners," who afterwards gave actual demonstrations to the cadets.

The instructional staff was augmented by a professor of natural and experimental philosophy with rank and pay of lieutenant colonel, a professor of mathematics, and a professor of the art of engineering, the last two with rank and pay of major.[2] Cadets were placed under the established discipline of academy regulations, were to be organized by the superintendent into companies, were to be encamped three months out of the year and were to be "trained and taught all the duties of a private, noncommissioned officer and officer." Although this uplift to the Academy was not to bear fruit in this war, it was to be a boon to the next one and to the interval between.

May 14 1812

The eve of war saw another development in the staff. The Ordnance Department made its appearance. Its head was to be styled commissary-general of ordnance, and to have the rank of colonel, an allowance of $500 a year and 4 rations a day for clerks. He was to have associated with him 1 assistant with rank of major, 4 with rank of captain and as many with rank of second lieutenant as the President saw fit to give.

June 10 1812

The first activity of the year was instituted in the west before war was declared. Colonel William Hull, a valiant officer during the Revolution and then governor of Michigan, was requested by the Secretary of War to take command of the western forces, to accept a commission as brigadier general and to lead the troops to Detroit. Well knowing the situation and the kind of untrained men upon whom he had to rely, he refused the appointment. But upon being importuned later, he accepted. Late in May he arrived at Dayton, Ohio, and took charge of 1,200 militia who were hopelessly ill-supplied. With these he reached Urbana, where he was joined by the Fourth Infantry of regulars, numbering only 300 effectives. From there he started to cut his way through 200 miles of wilderness. With a large proportion of undisciplined, hungry men who had to be urged along often at the point of the bayonet by the regulars, he attempted to work north and at the same time protect his rear. Naturally, the progress was slow when he had to cut roads, build bridges and garrison the blockhouses he constructed.

---

[2] If these professors were selected from the Corps of Engineers instead of the line they were to retain their rank in that corps but to have the same pay and emoluments as those of the rank indicated for the professorships.

In the east General Dearborn, who was in command of the army, could not obtain even poor troops. When he called for some of the 80,000 the President had requisitioned, in conformity with the recent law, he was met with a cold rebuff. The governors of Massachusetts and Connecticut would not, on the express order of the Secretary of War, send a single soldier. They stated that since their particular states were in no danger of invasion they could not comply, and then rested their case on constitutional nicety and legal minutiae.

June 1812

General Hull was in almost as awkward a position as General Dearborn. The authorities in Washington, without any realization of his obstacles, were urging him by heavy packets of correspondence to hasten his advance to Detroit. Such governmental heckling was so usual it would not here be commented upon, were it not for a blunder of criminal omission. Of the declaration of war no mention was made in those letters carefully sent by messengers. That vital information was intrusted to the public mails and to such conveyance as chance in a rugged country provided. As a consequence the commander of our army in the field did not know of the existence of a state of war until July 2, several days after the Canadian government had been discreetly apprised of the fact by our Secretary of the Treasury. Such conscientious consideration of the enemy to the exclusion of our own troops did not raise the spirits of General Hull's force.

War declared June 18 1812

Once the struggle had started Congress realized that although an army scattered in little detachments might resist savages successfully with conglomerate regimental organizations, some sort of uniformity was necessary to make them operate as a team. Accordingly the strength was set at 10 companies per regiment, more nearly conforming to Steuben's idea.[3] Why such an obvious detail had been ignored in peace, admits of but one answer.

June 26 1812

---

[3] "Sec. 1. That the infantry of the army of the United States shall consist of twenty-five regiments, and that a regiment shall consist of one

July 6 1812

A little later other legislation gave the President authority to appoint two more brigadier generals, to place federal officers over volunteers and to confer honorary brevet rank for over ten years' service in any one grade and for "meritorious conduct." This attempt to better the officer personnel without spending money proved to be more harmful than helpful. The honor was empty and rank became confused.

July 12 1812

Hull finally arrived at Detroit. When a few hundred Michigan militia had joined him, he crossed into Canada in spite of the fact that 180 of the Ohio volunteers refused to accompany him.

In the vicinity of Sandwich he spent about a month supplying himself off the country, trying to win over the inhabitants and seeking to get some howitzers and cannon which he lacked. Finally he decided to attack the British post at Malden. But on the eve of the venture, being apparently impressed with the caliber of his troops and the fall of Michimackinac,[4] the key to the trade routes, he returned to Detroit with his whole force.

Aug. 16 1812

After he had placed his troops behind fortifications of the strongest type, about 1,300 British and Indians threatened to attack him. Though well armed and equipped, Hull surrendered without any show of resistance. Detroit fell and the northwest passed into the hands of the British. What the British commander thought of the militia at the capitulation is shown by the ease with which he allowed them to go home, whereas he took the regulars as prisoners to Montreal, where, after many hardships, they were finally exchanged. Much has

---

colonel, one lieutenant colonel, one major, one adjutant, one paymaster, one quartermaster sergeant, two principal musicians, and ten companies.

"Sec. 2. That each company shall consist of one captain, one first lieutenant, one second lieutenant, one ensign, four sergeants, six corporals, two musicians, and ninety privates.

"Sec. 4. That each troop of cavalry, or light dragoons, shall consist of one captain, one first lieutenant, one second lieutenant, one cornet, four sergeants, six corporals, two musicians, one master of the sword, one saddler, one farrier, one blacksmith, and sixty-four privates; and the pay and emoluments of a master of the sword shall be the same as those of a riding-master, and the pay and emoluments of a blacksmith shall be the same as those of a farrier.

(June 26, 1812.)

[4] Mackinaw, a regular army frontier post about 270 miles northwest of Detroit. The small garrison completely unaware of the existence of war had been on July 17 surprised and captured by a Canadian force familiar with the state of hostility.

been written of this disgraceful capitulation both in condemnation and defense, but whatever has been said on either side has never been at variance with one fact: the government trusted to senility in command and inexperience in rank and file—about all that it had allowed itself to have.

The operations of other American commands during the remainder of the year were almost as futile. Along the Niagara frontier General Stephen Van Rensselaer had been attempting to collect a central army. About this time it numbered altogether 691 men—unpaid, unfed, un-everything as was the custom. It, therefore, had to wait until later for any activity. At Ogdensburg General Jacob Brown of the New York militia had driven off from behind earthworks a superior force of British, but the numbers engaged were so small as to make the effect on the war very little. In the west, General Hopkins with 4,000 Kentucky militia attempted to punish the hostile Indians along the Wabash and Illinois rivers. The state volunteers assembled at Fort Harrison with enthusiasm. But on the march the hardships on these undisciplined men brought insubordination and disobedience. In five days they had abandoned their General and dispersed to their homes.

Sept. 1 1812

Oct. 10 1812

Oct. 11 1812

General Van Rensselaer having later collected at Lewiston about 2,500 New York militia and 450 regulars—mostly recruits—planned to take the heights of Queenstown across the river. His idea was to send over 600 of the best troops first. But boats seemed to be lacking at the last minute so that only about 225 made the crossing. This little force gallantly attacked and took the heights. There they withstood charge after charge throughout the day, vainly hoping for reënforcements. Overpowered at last by superior numbers, most of them were either killed or captured. During these terrible hours an overwhelming force of American militia on the New York side looked on calmly at the slaughter. Tomes says:

Oct. 13 1812

> "They were ordered, threatened and entreated. The militia, nevertheless, were not disposed to move. As one half of the boats had drifted away or been swamped in the confusion, the men pleaded the want of means to carry them over. It was then suggested that they should cross in detachments; and as

the general became still more urgent in his entreaties, he so far prevailed, as to induce a militia company handsomely equipped to consent to go. Just as they were entering the boats, however, a firing was heard from the opposite side of the river; and these gallantly arrayed soldiers halted and firmly stood their ground, declaring they would not cross. Moreover, they took occasion to express their scruples about invading foreign territory and affirmed that they, as militia, had constitutional objections which no general could induce them to waive on that occasion."

Corporal Stubbs in his diary seems to corroborate this account from a different standpoint, the standpoint of the gallant fellows on the Canadian shore:

" . . . But we were now in our turn unfortunate, for one half of our army was yet on the other side of the river, nor would the cowardly dogs come over to assist us when they saw the d—d red coats cutting us up like slain venson!—The enemy now doubled their numbers while every shot diminished ours, in truth they got the better of us, and again got possession of their batteries altho we let fly showers of ball and buck shot into their very teeth and eyes! AH! the poor yankee lads, this was a sorry moment for ye! they dropped my brave companions like wild pigeons, while their balls whistled like a northwest wind through a dry can brake!—our Commander ordered a retreat, but nature never formed any of our family you know for runners, so I wadled along as well as I could behind, but the redcoat villians overhaul'd me, and took me prisoner! but not until I had a fare shot at their head commander General Brock, who galloping his horse after my retreating comrads, bellowed out to 'um like a wounded buffalo to surrender, but I levelled my old fatheful bess, which never disappointed me in so fare a mark, and I heard no more of his croaking afterwards—of 1,000 which crossed over but a few escaped biting the dust!—As for porr me, I expected they'd kill and scalp me, but after stareing at me as if I had been born with two heads, and enquiring of what nation I was, and from what part of the world I came, their Colonel ordered me liberated, who said to me, 'old daddy, your age and odd appearance induces me now to set you at liberty, return home to your family and think no more of invading us!'—This I promised him I would do, but I didn't mean so for I was determined I wouldn't give up the chase so, but at 'um again."

So Queenstown added another humiliation to our arms and revealed the shocking fact that untrained men would not even go to the rescue of their stricken comrades. An effort in the west did not turn out much better. General Harrison tried to lead a column into Canada. His call for recruits brought the *Oct.–Nov. 1812* quick response that is usual with men who know nothing of the hardships of campaign. About 10,000 militia of Kentucky, Tennessee, Virginia, and Pennsylvania started to plod through the cold swamps of the north. A slight fray with the Indians was the test of their endurance. Some deliberately returned to camp and others to their homes. The remainder stayed only at the earnest entreaties of their officers. At any rate the numbers dwindled to such an extent that the work of the year for these troops stopped.

General Dearborn, the commander in chief of the northern department, had 6,300 troops along the northern boundary. With 2,200 at Sackett's Harbor, under the immediate command of General Smythe,[5] and 5,000 at Plattsburg he controlled an army over six times as strong in man power as all the Canadian forces. Had they been trained, combined and hurled as a single unit against the enemy, one campaign would have sufficed for the war. But General Dearborn was satisfied with fractions and small ones at that. He reserved for himself the force at Plattsburg. Although the 5,000 there were sufficient in themselves to take Montreal, he was content with using only 1,500 under Colonels Pike and Clarke for an expedition against a *Nov. 20 1812* small British post on the river La Colle. Subdividing this command still further into two detachments he sent them out in the nighttime. One drove the small force of Indians and Canadians away without capturing them. The other, hearing the firing, mistook the assaulting troops for the enemy. The resulting picture discloses two American commanders firing into each other effectively while the enemy escaped.

---

[5] General Van Rensselaer had resigned in chagrin after Queenstown. General Smythe was his successor.

General Dearborn and his troops now being weary went into winter quarters at Plattsburg.

General Smythe remained the one hope of the year. So far he had been content with issuing soul-stirring proclamations to the surrounding inhabitants. "Volunteers!" he had written, "I esteem your generous and patriotic motives. . . You will show the *eternal infamy* that awaits the man who, having come within sight of the enemy, *basely shrinks* in the moment of trial. Soldiers of every corps! it is in your power to retrieve the honor of your country."

By means of such turgid outflow, he had induced at least 4,500 men to come to him. After the repose of General Dearborn, he burst into fresh torrents of words, plainly admitting the defects of previous commanders and his own eminent fitness to gain the victory.

Having collected at Black Rock seventy rowboats and numbers of bateaux, he announced the exact date of invasion to be November 28. On the eve of the appointed day, he sent over the river under cover of the night a small advance guard which spiked the enemy's cannon and returned in safety.

The next day 2,000 men under General P. B. Porter took to the boats early in the morning preparatory to rowing across the stream. General Smythe with the remaining number (over 3,000) paraded in full view of the enemy's forts. To the hostile cannonade his batteries replied with a fire of shells and red-hot shot. All seemed to be ready for attack. But throughout the morning the troops waited for the order to proceed. In the afternoon General Smythe, without explanation, gave instructions for the vanguard to disembark and for all to return to their quarters.

So openly resentful were some of the men who had been wheedled into leaving their firesides, that the General promised to invade Canada at a later date.

Dec. 1 1812

Accordingly three days afterwards the command was drawn up as before. Again the boats were entered and again the troops waited for the order to proceed. This time the General was conducting a council of war. He had forgotten up until that time that an invasion was not to be undertaken without the approval of his principal officers. His real reason was that now that some of his troops had refused to enter the boats he was mistrustful of the stability of his men. At any rate, as afternoon approached, he again ordered the troops to disembark and to be informed that the invasion was given up for the season.

Thompson says:

> "The scene of discontent which followed was without a parallel. Four thousand men without order or restraint indignantly discharged their muskets in every direction. The person of the commanding general was threatened. Upward of 1,000 men of all classes of society had suddenly left their homes and families, and had made great sacrifices to obey the call of their country under General Smythe's invitation."

Scorned and hunted, Smythe finally took refuge in his own home in Virginia. Having "come within sight of the enemy" and "basely shrunk" he became the victim of his own words. On the other hand, he possibly had a just fear that the militia would desert him at the last moment.

The closing year saw the militia dispersed, the regulars in winter quarters and Congress again casting about to get soldiers. Legislative efforts resulted in raising the pay on a scale ranging from $12 for a sergeant major to $8 for each "private, driver, bombardier, mattross, sapper and miner." But the act was a little late to do much good.

Dec. 12 1812

Jan. 1813

At the opening of 1813 a detachment of General Harrison's force, commanded by General Winchester, made its way through a two-foot snow and high drifts on its way to the rapids of the Maumee. The men, having harnessed themselves to sledges in order to transport their own baggage, covered the required distance of forty miles in ten days. One soldier described his difficulties on this march as follows:

> "Our tents were struck, and in half an hour we were on the road. I will candidly confess that, on that day, I regretted being a soldier. We marched thirty miles under an incessant

rain (on the day before the snow had fallen so deep as to be up to a man's waist), and I am afraid you will doubt my veracity when I tell you that in eight miles of the best of the road, it took us over the knees and often to the middle. The Black Swamp would have been considered impassable by all but men determined to surmount every difficulty to accomplish the object of their march. The water was about six inches deep on the ice, which was very rotten, often breaking through to the depth of four or five feet. The same night we encamped on very wet ground, but the driest that could be found, the rain still continuing. It was with difficulty we could raise fires; we had no tents; our clothes were wet; no axes; nothing to cook with, and very little to eat. A brigade of pack-horses being near us, we procured from them some flour; killed a hog; our bread was baked in the ashes, and our pork we broiled on the coals—a sweeter meal I never partook of. When we went to sleep, it was on two logs laid close to each other, to keep our bodies from the damp ground."

While gathering supplies[6] from the surrounding country, General Winchester was informed that the Americans at Frenchtown thirty miles away were in need of succor. Abandoning much of his work of provisioning the northwestern army, he sent Colonel Lewis with 550 men at once to the town. This force with reënforcements of 150 men attacked with such vigor that it drove the British and Indians away. Nor could the enemy retake the position after repeated assaults. *Jan. 18 1813*

But discipline and training tell more sometimes in sealing a victory than in gaining it. After the enemy had apparently left the field, the inflated officers and soldiers neglected all caution. When General Winchester with another detachment of 350 had joined them, they became so reckless that they straggled over the country at will and established no outpost. In this condition they were surprised in the early morning by about a thousand British and Indians, who had arrived within gunshot before they were discovered by the Americans. *Jan. 20 1813* *Jan. 22 1813*

---

[6] Had not General Harrison made himself a glorified supply officer in this campaign the soldiers would have had nothing to eat.

Jan. 23 1813 In the action that followed, half the command was easily captured by the enemy because it had taken up a hasty and untenable position, and the next day the whole of General Winchester's previously successful force was surrendered.[7]

Jan. 20 1813 Legislation during this inconsequential excursion was exerting itself just as effectually; $24 in addition to the existing bounty of $16, three months' pay and 160 acres of land were offered to a recruit, and $4 to the officer who procured him. To each regular regiment there was added 1 major and to each troop or company 1 third lieutenant and 1 extra sergeant. A member of the militia was allowed to enlist in the regular army; heretofore, by existing law, he had been prohibited from so *Jan. 29 1813* doing. Twenty extra regiments were to be raised for one year and 6 major generals and 6 brigadier generals were added to the army.

Feb. 24 1813 The appointees to the higher grade were Harrison, Wilkinson, Hampton, Lewis, Davie and Ogden; to the lower, Izard, Pike, Winder, M'Arthur, Cass and Howard.

The written strength of the regular army was now 44 regiments of infantry, 4 regiments of artillery, 2 regiments of dragoons, 1 regiment of rifles, 1 corps of engineers and the staff. It is doubtful if a sixth of this 58,000 men was ever recruited.

A *New System of Discipline* for infantry being adopted, the drill of that time was returned to the French system. Companies and platoons were formed in 3 ranks at 2 feet distance. A regiment was organized into 1 or 2 battalions, depending on the number of companies. A platoon consisted of 32 men and a section of 8 men. In wheeling, the front rank moved on a circle, the middle rank on a "less circle to the front" and the rear rank on a "circle still less." The maneuvers were, in general, so complicated that they were difficult for the recruit to master.

Smith's *Artillery Tactics* conformed more nearly to Steuben's principles. A company of 1 captain, 2 lieutenants, 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, 6 gunners, 6 bombardiers and 32 mattrosses paraded in 1 rank; a company of double that size, in 2 ranks.

---

[7] Killed, 397; wounded, 27; prisoners, 522.

In wheeling, receiving and manning the piece at the park and in limbering and unlimbering the pieces, the movements were precisely worked out in detail. The batteries were taught to fire while advancing and retreating, to move with either the right or left in front and to "display" pieces either to the left or right. Chisel marks were placed on the "base ring" and "swelling of the muzzle" of the gun in order to get a proper line of sight and elevation for firing at a target. The system for so doing was elaborate. Because the guns were not uniformly made, each piece had to have its own chisel marks, carefully and mathematically worked out by the battery officers, or the shooting with cannons would be ineffective. It is needless to say in this undisciplined fracas that the artillery did not figure greatly.

April 27 1813 One of the very few land successes of this war was an expedition led by General Pike[8] against York (Toronto). With about 1,700 picked men he attacked a stronghold garrisoned by about 850 Canadians and Indians, mostly militia. Under a trained officer, the Americans advanced bravely and would have taken the fortress without much loss had not a magazine within the works of the enemy accidentally exploded. The havoc and death resulting on both sides were tremendous. General Pike and about 280 of his men were killed. But since the United States troops were the first to rally they charged the place and took it. With greater numbers and more training than the enemy, our forces gave a good account of themselves.

May 1 1813 Shortly after this victory the War Office printed the *Military Laws and Rules and Regulations for the Armies of the United States.* The initial appearance of such a work was the forerunner of the present *Army Regulations.* At that time it comprised information such as the rank of regiments and officers, duties of the staff departments, rules governing promotion and other instructional matter. The following extract marks an advance in prescribing punishments:

> "And be it further enacted, That in lieu of whipping, as provided by several of the rules and articles of war, as now

---

[8] Zebulon Pike, for whom the famous peak was named.

used and practiced, stoppage of pay, confinement, and deprivation of part of the rations, shall be substituted in such manner as is hereinafter provided."

Just how much this substitution was observed will be seen later.

The *Army Register* appeared also. It contained a complete list both of regular and volunteer officers and showed a conglomerate mixture of elements making up the army: 1 regiment of artillery; 2 regiments of dragoons; 1st, 2d and 3d regiments of light artillery; 25 regiments of regular infantry; a rifle regiment; 14 regiments of one-year infantry; 5 regiments of volunteer infantry for the war; 12 companies of rangers; 4 regiments, 1 battalion and 1 company of "United States volunteers" and 5 companies of "sea fencibles." It also showed the country to be divided for military administration into nine districts with a brigadier general in charge of each.

May 1 1813 The uniform regulations were issued in most specific form. Just how many inches a button should be placed from the bottom of a coat was carefully shown. Blue was prescribed for infantry and artillery. Any ornament such as red collars and cuffs or lace was forbidden. Leather caps were substituted for felt.[9] Generals in dress uniform were to be distinguished by cocked hats and other officers by the long chapeaux similar to the one worn in recent years by the naval officer in full dress. Cotton pompons were substituted for feathers. The standing collar was to reach the tip of the ear, and the coats themselves were to be decorated with horizontal tape, buttons and blind buttonholes.

The firelock was practically the same as the one used during the Revolution. Most of the powder was obtained from Kentucky where it was greatly needed and largely manufactured. Although another arsenal was established at Rome, New York, the making of arms and ammunition for the army was mainly carried on by private plants.

In the west the British and Indians to the number of over 2,000 were laying siege to Fort Meigs which had been built and was now defended by Harrison. When he heard that General

---

[9] The tall "tar-bucket" seen at a cadet full-dress parade.

Clay with about 1,200 Kentuckians was coming to his rescue he determined on an offensive. A part of the approaching reënforcements was directed to spike the enemy's guns and immediately join the main body under Harrison. But the 800 untrained men, after having wrought the necessary harm to the hostile artillery, disobeyed orders by attacking the enemy. The consequence was that they were surrounded and over 80 per cent of them either killed or captured. General Harrison being left in the lurch, could do no more than carry on a passive defense. The hostile Indians having no liking for siege warfare soon caused the abandonment of the investment of Fort Meigs, much to the unexpected relief of the American troops. *May 5 1813* *May 9 1813*

In the north General Dearborn, against little resistance, occupied Fort George and other smaller strongholds on the Niagara frontier. During these operations Generals Winder and Chandler were taken prisoners, and Colonel Boerstler, thinking on slight cause that he was surrounded, immediately surrendered himself with 542 men. *May 27 1813*

However, General Brown did repulse a force from Canada at Sackett's Harbor. The defensive action of his troops may be judged by this officer's official report of the affair: *May 29 1813*

> "My orders were that the troops were to lie close and reserve their fire until the enemy had approached so near that every shot might hit its object. It is, however, impossible to execute such orders with raw troops, unaccustomed to subordination. My orders were, in this case, disobeyed; the whole line fired, and not without effect; but in the moment while I was contemplating this, to my utter astonishment, they rose from their cover and fled. Colonel Mills fell gallantly in brave, but vain endeavor to stop his men. I was, personally, more fortunate. Gathering together about one hundred militia, under the immediate command of Captain McNitt, we threw ourselves on the rear of the enemy's left flank, and, I trust, did some execution. It was at this last moment that the regulars under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Backus, Light Dragoons, first engaged the enemy, nor was it long before they defeated them. Hurrying to this point of action I found the battle still raging, but with obvious advantage to our side."

About a month after this General Dearborn on account of illness requested to be relieved. General Wilkinson was chosen to succeed him. Age and infirmity gave place to age and fatuity. The result hereafter treated should not be surprising.

July 6 1813

While the larger forces were being collected and demoralized, some smaller units of the regulars were giving good accounts of themselves. For example, in the west a young officer by the name of Groghan with 160 regulars was attacked at Fort Stephenson by over twice that number of British. By resolution, foresight and uncommon bravery he and his men drove off the enemy. His only cannon was a six-pounder gun loaded with slugs and grapeshot, which he used very ingeniously. The effect on the surrounding community was a discreet withdrawal of hostile marauders.

Aug. 2 1813

In contrast to this action was an affair in another part of the country. The Creek Indians in the south were brandishing their red war clubs. Fort Mims, about 40 miles northeast of Mobile, was garrisoned by about 240 Mississippi militia, who with about 300 women and children occupied the stockade. Although many well-founded reports of a coming Indian attack should have warned the inmates, the news made little impression on these untrained men. At 11:00 o'clock in the morning 600 savages came within ten yards of the stronghold without discovery. Swarming through the open gate they succeeded in killing about 400 souls. As a result the whole southeast was in a state of fury and panic.

Aug. 30 1813

While the south was in chaos over this unnecessary massacre General Harrison undertook an offensive in the north. Having managed to collect, feed, hold, and transport to the southern side of Lake Erie about 7,000 troops of whom about one fifth were regulars, he landed on the Canadian shore only to find the British General Proctor fleeing before his superior force. The Americans proceeded to take Malden and Sandwich without a skirmish. At the Thames River they caught up with the enemy, consisting of 800 British and about 1,500 Indians, who were defensively disposed between the banks and the marshes. A cavalry charge by the mounted Kentuckians and the killing of Tecumseh gave the greatly superior force of Americans the victory. However, the fighting was hard and credit should be

Sept. 25 1813

Oct. 5 1813

given the partially disciplined troops of Harrison, who stood their ground well.

Since the massacre at Fort Mims in the south, General Andrew Jackson had been at work collecting militia at Huntsville. In spite of petty interference by the Secretary of War, Armstrong,[10] Jackson had been successful in rounding up about 2,500 men. With these he started his march through Tennessee toward the Coosa River.

Oct. 11 1813

While General Jackson, with his arm in a sling, was thus moving at the head of his troops in the south, General Hampton near Lake Champlain, with about 5,000 freshly recruited men, and General Wilkinson at the foot of Lake Ontario, with about 8,000, planned a joint invasion of Canada. Added to jealousies and bickerings between these two officers was the unwelcome presence of a third party, Armstrong, who had left Washington to meddle at the front. The troops were all recruits, even to the Fourth Regular Infantry whose trained men had been taken to Canada after Hull's surrender. Affairs were generally in disorder. Colonel Swift, the first graduate of the Military Academy, and then chief engineer of this army, on his arrival at Sackett's Harbor

Oct. 31 1813

> "found everything in a most disgraceful and deplorable condition; no plan of campaign studied or definitely fixed; the enemy's positions unknown, and the St. Lawrence unexplored; supplies deficient through neglect or incompetency of the War Department; expense of transportation enormous, that of a single field-piece costing over a thousand dollars; our troops mostly recruits, and sick from eating contract provisions."

In this chaos General Hampton marched quickly and eagerly on Montreal before Wilkinson would be able to gain honors. It looked as though the great force under Hampton would be able to consume the paltry 800 Canadian regulars at that place. But the British Commander took a chance on the quality of the United States troops. He played the old, simple trick of Gideon's Band. Distributing his buglers well over separated positions where they independently sounded their

Oct. 26 1813

---

[10] Author of the Newburgh addresses and member of the Conway Cabal.

calls, he led the American commander to believe that a large force was assembled. Although the barest common sense should have convinced Hampton that the British had less than 5,000 men, he immediately withdrew and went into full retreat, thankful that the enemy did not pursue. Thus the Americans gave up without firing a shot.

Meanwhile, Jackson in the south had arrived in the vicinity of the Indians' rendezvous. Having learned that the Creeks had posted themselves at the Tallasahatchee, he sent General Coffee with 900 mounted troops to destroy them. The natives were decoyed much as the men of Ai in the Bible. Enticed from their wigwams by a few interpreters, who fled before the savages, the Creeks found themselves suddenly in the midst of an overwhelming force of Americans who promptly exterminated them.

Nov. 3 1813

A few days later while Jackson's force was building Fort Strother, he was notified that another body of hostile Creeks was besieging friendly ones at Talladega. Not waiting for a moment he set out with 2,000 men. When he found the river too deep to ford, he crossed it by setting a foot soldier on a horse behind a mounted one. He thus succeeded in the dark in getting all his floundering soldiers on the other side.

Nov. 7, 8 1813

While he was reconnoitering the enemy's position and was resting his wearied troops who had marched all night, he was suddenly informed that General Cocke had called away General White's column which Jackson was commanding and which was to protect his rear. Such ignorant meddling left Jackson completely cut off in the wilderness. In this predicament he did the only sensible thing. He immediately, in the nighttime prepared for the attack. Again following out the tactics of Joshua against the men of Ai he would have annihilated the savages, had it not been for the fact that some militia of Roberts' brigade gave way and Colonel Bradley, a recent soldier, refused to move forward because he claimed he need not fight until attacked. Even at that, the Indians were driven away with loss. Jackson's training and determination accounted for the flight of the hostile tribe.

Nov. 9 1813

Nov. 11 1813

General Wilkinson in the north finally started his movement toward Canada. At Chrystler's farm near Williamsburg his advance guard of about 1,600 men met a force of 800 British regulars. After two hours' fight, in which the Americans came *Nov. 12 1813* off second best, his superior force retired to their boats. A few days later, having heard of Hampton's refusal to join him, he gave up the idea of invasion and went into winter quarters. Although 8,000 men were at the disposal of the American commander to meet no more than 2,000 British, he recoiled and sought comfort in blaming Hampton.

Whereas the northeast found neither real leaders nor soldiers, the south found a leader but few trained soldiers. Yet demoralization in both cases was evident. The speed of the march and the hunger of the ill-supplied camp was too much for Jackson's untried troops. When they attempted to leave him, he barred the path of the militia with muskets of the volunteers; and likewise the volunteers, with the militia. He had to resort finally to persuasion and promises. When only 190 men consented to remain, he placed himself at the head of the departing troops and said he would go with them. But he made them promise that if provisions were met on the way they would return. When they did come up with a drove of cattle, nothing but a threat to shoot them down kept them with the colors. They then made the plea that their enlistments were expiring and that they should be allowed to go home. *Dec. 10 1813* Several threats to open fire on the mutineers finally quelled their intention.

After the complete subsidence of any aggressiveness on the part of the northern troops who had quailed before an inferior enemy, the Canadians openly accepted the tacit invitation to pillage the shores of the United States. Our lack of training and discipline was to waste more lives and property. The winter coming on, the armies of Hampton and Wilkinson *Dec. 19 1813* dwindled to several thousand men. General McClure wantonly abandoned Fort George which had been won at so much sacrifice; and then for no legitimate reason burned Niagara, thereby making homeless several thousand innocent inhabitants during a cold winter. In or about the army there was little spirit or system. Small bands of British took Fort Niagara with *Dec. 30 1813* scarcely any opposition, occupied Lewiston, Youngstown and Manchester and burned Black Rock and Buffalo.

Thus the year passed out with very little save disgrace for the undisciplined and ill-managed American soldiery.

Jan. 12 1814 General Cass wrote to the Secretary of War as follows:

> "I have passed this day the ruins of Buffalo; it exhibits a scene of distress and destruction such as I have never before witnessed. . . . From the most careful examination, I am satisfied that not more than 650 men, of regulars, militia and Indians landed at Black Rock. To oppose these, we had from 2,500 to 3,000 militia. All, except a very few of them, behaved in the most cowardly manner. They fled without discharging a musket."

In the south General Jackson was no better off for troops than the northern generals. Bereft of all the soldiers of the year before, he was reduced to 900 new raw militia. However, *Jan. 21, 22 1814* he did have some experienced officers. With their aid he was able to lead his troops against the Indians, whose detachments on two occasions he put to flight.

Jan. 27 1814 By this time it was so difficult to get recruits that the $16 and 3 months' pay for enlistment were raised to $124 cash, of which $100 was to be paid immediately upon the soldier's entry into the service. Men did not care to become a part of a disgraceful mob. The term of enlistment for the 14 regiments of one-year men was raised to five years. By way of increase, 3 regiments of riflemen, consisting of 10 companies (each company having 1 captain, 1 first, 1 second and 1 third lieutenant, *Feb. 10 1814* 1 ensign, 5 sergeants, 4 corporals, 2 musicians and 90 privates) were also authorized.

General Wilkinson having prolonged the inactivity of his 4,000 men longer than was seemly, determined now to prevent the British from entering Lake Champlain by the river Sorel. Accordingly his force marched to attack 200 of the enemy in a fortified mill called La Colle. Trees had been felled across the *March 30 1814* Americans' path. The mire was so heavy in the woods that the large guns broke down. The lighter artillery could scarcely be dragged. The men when they reached their destination had to stand in snow a foot deep and fire through a forest so dense that the enemy was screened from view. On the other hand, the

British with deadly aim wrought so much havoc that Wilkinson decided to withdraw, going back later to Plattsburg where he failed to renew hostilities; 4,000 Americans withdrew before 200 of the enemy. Although Wilkinson received so much blame for this that he was forced to retire, it should be noted in his favor that he had found it necessary during the engagement to place a sergeant behind each platoon with orders to shoot down any man attempting to flee.

March 30 1814

Congress during these flights of soldiery was ever ready to vote splendid organizations. The first, second and third artillery regiments were reorganized into 12 battalions with 6 lieutenant colonels in command. Each company was to have 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant, 1 second lieutenant and 1 third lieutenant, 5 sergeants, 1 quartermaster's sergeant, 8 corporals, 4 musicians and 100 privates. The 2 regiments of dragoons were combined into 1 consisting of 8 troops. Each troop was to have 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant, 1 second lieutenant, 1 cornet, 5 sergeants, 8 corporals, 1 riding master, 1 master of the sword, 2 trumpeters, 1 farrier, 1 blacksmith, 1 saddler and 96 privates. Officers were given allowances for "waiter" or servant hire. A major general was entitled to wages for four and the officer personnel of a company to three. No soldier from the line was permitted to act as a waiter. An attempt was also made to equalize promotions by an adjustment of the relative rank of officers. For the first time major generals in the selection of their aides were confined to captains or subalterns of the line, and brigadiers to subalterns.

April 1 1814

Theoretically, the army at this time consisted of 44 regiments of infantry, the corps of artillery, 1 regiment of light artillery, 1 regiment of dragoons, 4 regiments of rifles, the corps of engineers, the rangers and the sea fencibles.

After an unsuccessful attempt to recapture the post of Mackinaw, when our forces acted as ignorantly as Braddock and were slaughtered by the enemy with as much ease as the "venson" of which Corporal Stubbs spoke, the operations of the north concentrated themselves on the force of General Brown. About 3,500 men had been collected at Buffalo in the early spring and summer under the direct supervision of Brown, Scott and Ripley. After two years of war the training and discipline that had been discarded as lost arts after the Revolution were brought from their hiding places. These young generals personally and studiously taught and trained their men, giving those rudiments whose knowledge would have saved many lives in the preceding years of this war, and incidentally have gained the aim of the United States.

When these troops were sufficiently able to handle themselves they were taken by boat to Fort Erie which surrendered without resistance. They then pushed a detachment of the enemy over fifteen miles to the Chippewa and there engaged a *July 4 1814* force of 5,000. A bold attack, complete response to trained officers, the use of the bayonet, with which the Americans were now completely armed, drove the superior numbers of the Canadians from the field.

July 25 1814 Afterward General Scott in pushing across the Chippewa was practically hemmed in by overwhelming odds. His force not only attacked and held its own, but General Brown displayed uncommon teamwork in marching to Scott's aid. When darkness stopped the battle of Lundy's Lane the British had sustained more losses than the Americans. The bravery and skill of this action can be determined from the following:

> "All that remained of the brigade after that terrible conflict did not exceed 220 men—the Ninth, Eleventh and Twenty-second regiments consolidated under Major Leavenworth, not altogether 100. Many of the cartridges with which the Americans fired, when attacked on the hill, were taken from the cartridge boxes of the English lying dead around them. Men and officers, after five hours' constant fighting, were completely exhausted, and many almost fainting with thirst. There was no water nearer than the Chippewa."

A small force of trained soldiers had met superior numbers on hostile soil and won victories. Although compelled on account of its size to retire from the Canadian shore after the siege of Fort Erie,[11] it nevertheless had saved depredations in the United States and given a distinct setback to the boldness of the enemy. A short continuance of such efficiency on the part of the army would have ended the struggle.

---

[11] The 1st Regular Infantry was present at this siege.

But it was very hard to get Americans to train, as will be seen by the coming experiences of men dressed in soldier's uniform. The crowning disgrace of the war was yet to take place.

In the Tenth Military District[12] which had just been formed, little anxiety had been felt over 3,000 British troops who had been hovering about in the Chesapeake for over a year. A large force of trained and hostile British soldiers was within modern artillery range of the nation's capital. A dilatory circular was finally issued by our government calling upon the Governors for 93,500 men. A dribbling argument as to the number of troops to be employed occupied several weeks, the Secretary of War contending that not over 3,000 should be called out. General Winder saw no reason why 4,000 militia could not do the work. A state of restless recruiting resulted. During this time the British were marching uninterruptedly through the very heart of the country and heading directly for Washington. Just outside of that city at the little town of Bladensburg, 5,400 American militia, 400 regulars and 600 sailors and marines were finally collected. Indeed, they were slung into camp just a few hours before they were called upon to do battle with the approaching enemy. Tomes has described the conditions of the camp as follows:

July 4 1814

Aug. 24 1814

> "While their leaders were stupid with perplexity, the soldiers were wild with disorder. A veteran officer declared that the camp resembled a race-field, and that it was as noisy as a fair. The militia and the sailors, overflowing with drink, were boisterous with mirth and quarrel; and the countersign was given so badly by the unsoldierly sentinels, that it could be heard at a distance of fifty yards."

As the enemy was nearing this American assemblage, the President borrowed a pair of dueling pistols from the Secretary of the Treasury, who felt he had better not go, and then accompanied the Secretary of War and General Winder to the proposed battlefield. Aroused to the fact that the British were really coming, these men of state, since they could almost hear the rifles of the enemy, hurried from the Capitol. When the 1,500 trained British soldiers were almost at Bladensburg, these three gentlemen fell to arguing and discussing the situation as if it were something quite new. Three thousand American militia and a few hundred sailors and marines were somehow posted on the heights above the river—badly. Orders were issued by one commander and countermanded by another. Troops moved here and there without plan or regularity. The British regulars came over the bridge steadily in the face of heavy losses. At this and the sight of harmless hostile rockets the American militia scampered like errant schoolboys, spreading the contagion of flight to General Winder's forces who were poorly posted in rear. The artillery could fire only to the front because the pieces had been scattered between the intervals of improperly selected positions. No one seemed to know what to do except disappear. General Winder,[13] who had been a lawyer up until the war, reported the flight by saying, "To my utter astonishment and mortification—when I regained my position, I found the whole of these regiments were flying in the utmost precipitation and disorder." In speaking of the Eighth Maryland he showed that "this corps which had heretofore acted so firmly, evinced the usual incapacity of raw troops to make orderly movements in the face of the enemy and their retreat in a very few moments became a flight of absolute and total disorder." Of the whole of the troops he said that "such of them as could be halted, instead of making efforts to rally, gave themselves up to the uncontrolled feelings which fatigue, exhaustion and privation produced, and pursued their way, either toward home, or in search of refreshments and quarters." In stating his defense of this flight he maintained that "no advantage of position is proof against groundless panic, and a total want of discipline, skill and experience." But such opinions did not prevent General Winder himself from issuing orders for the retreat through Washington and Georgetown. This hodgepodge army actually fled through the capital of the nation and left it open to plunder and rapine. Over twice as many Americans as the enemy left their own homes open to loot, and did so without having made more than a pretense of defense. Picture the newly dressed militiamen zealously slinking homeward or lolling about the streets of the city with a wary eye for the enemy; wagons and carts burdened with snatched household effects; darkey and aristocrat jostling one another in precipitate escape; Mrs. Madison looking vainly through a spyglass for her husband, the President; and secretaries and generals fleeing in carriages this way and that. Behold Brussels during Waterloo! Why the enemy chose to be satisfied with burning the public buildings has never been explained. The "defenders" certainly gave a wider invitation.

---

[12] It consisted of Maryland, District of Columbia and part of Virginia now separated from the former 5th District.

---

[13] "His appointment had been 'based not on the ground of distinguished professional service or knowledge,' but simply on a presumption that, 'being a native of Maryland and a relative of the governor, Brigadier Winder would be useful in mitigating the opposition to the war, and in giving an increased efficiency to national measures within the limits of the State' " (Upton).

How unnecessary was the flight, is shown by the figures. All told there were only 66 casualties out of 5,000 American soldiers. Of this loss the large percentage was borne by sailors, marines and regulars. It is almost certain that no more than 8 militiamen were killed.

Small successes by detachments of trained troops could not compensate for the fall of Washington. Although the Second Infantry at Fort Bowyer in the south and a few hundred under General Macomb at Plattsburg were making gallant defenses against Indians and British, the effects were local. As far as the war was concerned, it was affected very little by such minor actions. *Sept. 1814*

It came to an end with inconsequent attempts at tardy reconstruction. Several proposals for general conscription were given to Congress and rejected. Two new arsenals were established at Watervliet, New York, and Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. The recruiting laws were revised to allow a recruit under twenty-one to have four days' grace before he was sent to his organization, to allow a master to receive part of the bounty money of an enlisting apprentice, to raise the land bounty from *Oct. 1814* *Dec. 10 1814*

160 to 320 acres and to permit a civilian to hire a substitute to go to the front in his place. But nothing was mentioned with reference to training.

Dec. 24
1814

Such futile acts only accentuated the weak military situation and were appropriate concomitants of the sad ending of an inglorious war. For humiliating as it is for the land forces to acknowledge, it is only true and fair to state that hostilities stopped solely on account of political conditions and a successful navy.

Dec. 1
1814

After the peace had been signed, General Jackson at New Orleans, ignorant of the state of international affairs and momentarily expecting an advance by the British against the town, used his great energy and skill in building up the morale of the citizens and collecting more troops. He gave New Orleans a touch of discipline in stating that those who were not for the cause were against it. Accordingly many were compelled to join the ranks. He took over the entire district with dispatch and ruled it with an iron hand.

Jan. 8
1815

When Pakenham, the brother-in-law of the Duke of Wellington, landed with about 8,000 British troops, he found himself in low swampy ground affording no cover nor means of retreat. His position was as unfavorable as could be imagined for a military leader.

On the other hand, Jackson, knowing that he could not trust his 5,000 militia in the open, bent all his energies to making more impregnable, a natural defensive position between the Mississippi and a cypress swamp. The merits of his selection were heightened by a deep canal, a sort of moat which ran along the front of the proposed parapet. He reënforced this natural barrier until it partook of the nature of a redoubt. Behind it, he placed his untrained riflemen so that certain fractions could load while the others were discharging their pieces. By such disposition he could keep up a continuous fire. He so protected and pointed his cannon that they could sweep any attacking columns with cross fire. In addition, he had the gunboats in the river and the fort from the opposite bank prepared to rake the enemy.

Jan. 8
1815

In spite of the Americans' formidable position and his own lack of scaling ladders, Pakenham in utter foolhardiness attacked. Naturally his men suffered over 2,000 casualties in a few minutes.

But Jackson could not trust his troops to pursue the fleeing British. He had an object lesson at this time across the river. A few hundred of the enemy were easily putting to flight an overwhelming number of Louisiana and Kentucky militiamen who had been forced into the open. He was thus prevented from clinching his victory because of the unreliability of his own troops. So he had to allow Pakenham to withdraw the remaining British forces.

After peace was generally known to exist, the army began to fall off in numbers until it totaled 33,424 out of a possible *Feb. 1815* 62,773. Several attempts by Congress and the army were made to overcome by quality the lack in quantity. The Ordnance *Feb. 8 1815* Department, for example, was placed on a firmer basis by making it consist of 1 colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel, 2 majors, 10 captains, 10 first lieutenants, 10 second lieutenants and 10 third lieutenants. But the new urge came too late to be of value in a disgraceful and ignominious war that should have ended in a few months had George Washington been heeded and Steuben's training continued after the Revolution.

A board of officers consisting of Generals Scott and Swift and Colonels Fenwick, Cumming and Drayton, who had been *Feb. 25 1815* ordered "conformable to the House of Representatives" to prepare a set of Infantry Drill Regulations "after the pattern of the *Rules and Regulations for the Field Service and Manoeuvres of the French Infantry,"* now submitted the results of their labor. This was the first work of its kind actually prepared by a regularly constituted board of American officers.

William Duane's *Hand Book for Infantry* which had been approved by the Secretary of War in 1812, had been in use. It had since 1809 provided for 3 ranks in a company; had done away with the oblique step, the lock step and the deploy step. In firing, the front-rank man loaded and fired his own piece, the middle-rank man fired both his own and his rear-rank man's piece and the rear-rank man merely loaded the middle-rank man's gun. Thus the middle-rank man fired almost twice as fast as his front-rank man and loaded every other time the piece he fired. Volley firing was discouraged.

In presenting his volume to the public, Lieutenant Colonel William Duane showed the spirit of the times three years before the war of 1812:

"There is no discipline; there is even no system; and there are gross misconceptions on the subject. There appears to have been a disposition to discourage the acquisition of military knowledge."

His work consisted of seven parts, touching on almost every phase of contemporary military education. But it was complicated and the natural result of the state of the times he shows above.

Feb. 25 1815

The newly adopted regulations edited by the Board of Officers simplified Duane's system principally on account of the sad experiences of an ill-conducted war. Battalions were divided into 8 companies each. The first and second companies were formed into one grand division, the third and fourth into another, and so on. There were 4 officers to a company: 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant, 1 third lieutenant and 1 ensign. For the first time the instruction was divided into three schools—the soldier, the company and the battalion. The commandant of each regiment was enjoined to assemble at his quarters all the officers of the command so as to explain to them what these three schools meant. Commands of "caution" were distinguished from those of execution by different kinds of type. The length of the ordinary step was increased to 28 inches and the cadence to 90 per minute. The manual of arms continued the practice of Steuben in having the intervals between motions a second of time. The execution of the motions was practically the same as in the Revolution. However, emphasis was placed upon taking extra time with priming, putting the cartridges into the barrel and ramming home. Officers to-day can be glad that there is such a thing as fixed ammunition when they read the following problems confronting the drill master in 1815:

"The instructor will remark, that the soldiers who, without apparent hurry, load with steadiness and coolness, are those who load best and quickest; because they turn the ramrod without catching against, or interfering with those of the men beside and before them; because they enter it, without frequent attempts, at once into the muzzle, and in returning it into the pipe; because they ram home best; because they do not spill the powder in priming; and because, finally, they do not let fall cartridges in taking them out of the cartridge-box; all essential objects, on which the instructor must make the recruits bestow the utmost attention."

A single method of firing on the part of a company was enunciated. The right file was to fire first, the next file on the left was to aim the instant the first had fired, and this process was to continue toward the left of the company. After each file had fired once, each man was to load and fire at will. The fusillade was stopped by a ruffle of the drum.

With the noise of black powder and the long firelocks the recruit had difficulties that seem absurd to us as we withdraw the bolt and look in the chamber. His perplexities had to be definitely guarded against as follows:

> "When the firings shall have been executed, it shall be required of the soldier to be attentive in observing, when he half-cock, whether smoke proceeds out of the touch-hole, which if it does, indicates certainly that the piece has gone off. If the smoke does not appear, the soldier, in lieu of reloading, will turn off to the rear, in order to prick the touch-hole, and prime a second time. If the soldier thinks he has fired, and proceeds to load again, he ought, at any rate, to discover his mistake, if any exists, in ramming home from the length of ramrod projecting out of the muzzle; and he would richly merit punishment, were he to load a third time under all these circumstances."

The normal formation of a company consisted of 2 ranks. However, provision was made for "the occasional order of 3 deep." [14]

---

[14] The manual consisted of the following positions: Present arms, shoulder arms, advance arms, order arms, pile arms, take arms, support arms, carry arms, fix and unfix bayonets and secure arms. Priming and loading was done still by twelve commands.

Target practice was suggested. Each battalion was encouraged to provide several targets, 5 feet 10 inches in height and 22 inches in width. "They must be marked by 3 stripes 4 inches broad, drawn horizontally across the target and of striking color, one stripe across the top, another across the middle and a third across an equal distance from the top and middle." The soldiers were to be practiced at a distance between 60 and 300 yards, "aiming at different heights according to the distances."

There were two main elements of instruction emphasized. The trigger was to be pulled forcibly with the forefinger without stirring the head or altering the direction of the firelock, and the balls fired off were to be carefully gathered in order to be used again. As a reward to the best marksmen in each company, their names were to be "taken down."

In the war just passed the army had played its part in burlesque and tragedy. It had been more pitiful than in the Revolution. Yet when the affair was over, the country did not absurdly disband its entire force, principally because there was the fresh memory of a sound spanking. Instead, a law was passed limiting the army to 10,000 men and a corps of engineers.[15] The corps of artillery was organized according to the law of March 30, 1814, and the regiment of light artillery, to that of April 12, 1808. A regiment of infantry was newly made up of 1 colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 1 adjutant, 1 quartermaster, 1 paymaster, 1 surgeon, 2 surgeon's mates, 1 sergeant major, 1 quartermaster sergeant, 2 principal musicians and 10 companies. Each company consisted of 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant, 1 second lieutenant, 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, 2 musicians and 68 privates. There were 6 general officers all told, 2 major generals and 4 brigadiers. The pay went back to the low rates of the acts of March 16, 1802, and of April 12, 1808, except for major generals who received the modern pay of the act of Jan. 11, 1812. Supernumerary officers and men had to be discharged by May 1, the "deranged" officers being accorded three months' pay.

March 3 1815

Some sinister effort must have been at work to deprive all the old regiments of their traditions and spirit. For no plan could have more shrewdly damned any existing pride and affiliations than the following:

---

[15] The engineers were to remain as already organized.

The old 1st Infantry went into the new 3rd Infantry; the old 2nd went into the new 1st; the old 3rd, into the new 1st; the old 4th, into the new 5th; the old 5th, into the new 8th; the old 6th, into the new 2nd; the old 7th, into the new 1st; and the old 8th, into the new 7th. The new 1st was then made up of the old 2nd, 3rd, 7th and 44th; the new 2nd, of the old 6th, 16th, 22nd, 23rd, and 32nd; the new 3rd, of the old 1st, 17th, 19th, and 28th; the new 4th, of the old 12th, 14th, 18th, 20th, 36th, and 38th; the new 5th, of the old 4th, 9th, 13th, 21st, 40th, and 46th; the new 6th, of the old 11th, 25th, 27th, 29th, and 37th; the new 7th, of the old 8th, 24th, and 39th; and the new 8th,[16] of the 5th, 10th, 15th, 31st, 33rd, 34th, 35th, 39th, 41st, 42nd, 43rd, 45th.

Not only were the units of the army diabolically jumbled but its size had to shrink to about one-sixth its former self. Officers and men had to be ejected and the remainder readjusted with a natural wrecking of ambition and spirit. Neither was there any solace to the remnants in being sent in small scattered fractions to lonely frontier posts and seacost fortifications. *May 1815* The First Infantry, for instance, being deprived of all the officers of the old First, Second and Seventh was sent to Pass Christian, Louisiana. The Second in the same way was stationed at Sackett's Harbor and Plattsburg, N. Y. The Third was scattered along the Great Lakes in small forts such as Detroit, Mackinac, Howard, Dearborn, Knox, Harrison, Wayne and Crawford. The Fourth was charged with the small posts on the frontier of Georgia and South Carolina. The Fifth and the Third had their headquarters at Detroit and helped in garrisoning the western forts above mentioned and Fort Armstrong, Atkinson, Brady, Gratiot, Howard, Winnebago. The Sixth went to Governors Island, N. Y. The Seventh went to Fort Gibson, Arkansas, and the stockades in that vicinity.

---

[16] Some of these remnants the Eighth was supposed to take over had never been organized. The list includes rifle regiments, making a theoretical 48 to account for.

The artillery corps garrisoned the seacoast forts from Mobile to Boston and the regiment of light artillery was parceled out with the infantry, as was also the regiment of rifles. The corps of engineers was stationed at West Point, N. Y., its officers being taken for duty in constructing forts and improvements at various places in the United States.

1815 So the year passed out with the various little groups plodding to their posts and building their lonely log cabins and stockades.

The *Register of the Army* having made its first appearance before the end of the year showed the 2 major generals to be Jacob Brown and Andrew Jackson, and the 4 brigadier generals to be Alexander Macomb, E. P. Gaines, Winfield Scott and E. W. Ripley. The ordnance, medical, apothecary, pay and purchasing departments were all tabulated in detail. Although the apothecary department had an apothecary general, the medical department seemed to have no head. There was, in addition to the office of "adjutant and inspector general," that of a plain "adjutant general."

Discussions with reference to supplies of ordnance were prolific at this time. One concerning hand grenades is worth quoting in the light of recent events:

"Ordnance Office,
"Washington, January 23, 1816.

"In former times the hand grenade was used as an arm for a portion of the infantry. It is entirely gone out of use for that purpose. Grenadiers are now armed with the musket, and in some services (as the French) with a sabre also.

"They are picked companies of stout men, usually placed on the flanks of the battalions, and being generally chosen to form the storming party in the attack of fortified places, they retain the name of grenadiers from the former use of those troops, and the weapon with which they were then armed. The superiority of the musket had caused it to supersede the hand grenade as an arm for troops. The grenade may be put in numbers into the ditches and passages where the troops are collected.

"For this purpose proper provision is made in our service. The six-pounder shell is used as the hand grenade, and shells of any caliber as rampart grenades."

This extract, though it gives a glimpse into the historic cycle of the hand grenade, shows more fully the discussions in these times over arms and ammunition. There seemed to be a feeling among the legislators that deficiency in military operations was due to lack of supplies. Few realized yet that training was the all-important step toward efficiency. Armories and seacoast material were voted almost in prodigality. And then the building craze seized our lawmakers. For a time it was difficult for artillery and ordnance experts to keep the authorities from building a lot of useless structures instead of manufacturing a sufficient quantity of needed materials. *Feb. 1816*

The uniform of the war was to a great measure retained, though some minor changes show a slight departure. A mixture of civilian and military dress was prohibited, except that all military persons, irrespective of the remainder of their dress, were to wear on their hats black cockades with gold eagles. Although collars were to rise to the tip of the ear they were to be only "as high in front as the chin will permit in turning the head." The generals, corps artillery officers and infantry officers wore chapeaux. The light artillery wore round, stiff, black caps, seven inches high, with a visor. A tassel fell from the top of the right side of this heavy headgear. The mounted men wore pantaloons, and the infantry breeches. The light artillery wore coatees whereas the other branches wore long coats with full skirts. The rifleman and cadet wore gray, the rifleman having a short coat and the cadet a coatee. The cadet wore the common round hat with the cockade and eagle, his trousers having black silk lace down the side and an Austrian knot in front. Officers wore sashes when on duty. The Jefferson or high-shoe was prescribed as in 1814.

April 24 1816 The Congress added to the "general staff" 1 inspector general, 1 paymaster-general, 3 topographical engineers, 1 quartermaster-general and 1 commissary general of purchases. Official recognition was thus for the first time given to a fairly competent staff. Although citizens and not soldiers were allowed to fill the new appointments, the establishment of the offices themselves was a distinct advance.

April 29 1816 As for material, an annual sum of $250,000 was appropriated for purchase or manufacture of arms and equipment for the militia. Out of 18 projected arsenals 5 were completed during the year: at Watertown, Mass.; Frankford, Pa.; Baltimore, Md.; Greenleaf's Point, D. C., and on the James River near Richmond, Va.

Jan. 23 1817 The artillery armament comprised 24, 18, 12 and 6 pounder cannon, 8 inch and 24 pounder howitzers and 10 and 8 inch mortars. In the manufacture of so many calibers, the ordnance department claimed there was much useless difficulty and expense. Accordingly there was a decided attempt to reduce the number of different types of large guns.

To show the immaturity of our government in handling military matters in these early times, the method of delivery of orders is a good example. It seems that it had been the custom since the early part of the second war with Great Britain, for the President or Secretary of War simply to send an order to any junior army officer without giving responsible superiors any knowledge of the fact. No attempt was made to inform intermediate commanders of the contents of such instructions. In the meantime the commanders of departments, who were charged with the responsibility for the work of a subordinate, found themselves suddenly deprived of his services. Indeed, in many cases the higher commanders were not aware that important labor had ceased because the responsible officer had gone elsewhere. It was due to just such a case that General Harrison had come into dispute with the Secretary in 1814 and had resigned his commission. Although General Andrew Jackson had had similar trouble at the same time, affairs did not grow serious for him until three years later. An officer under his command who had been making at his direction secret surveys for government purposes was suddenly spirited away by the War Department to New York City where the surveys were exposed. Jackson, not knowing of the officer's absence, was going on the assumption that his subordinate was proceeding with the important and delicate work, he, Jackson, had assigned; when one day he was surprised to read in the public print of the officer's presence in the north and of the exposure of the survey. Accordingly the general issued an order in the Division of the South that no officer would obey any order "emanating from the Department of War," unless it came through the proper channels. Soon afterward General Ripley, who was serving under Jackson, received instructions from the War Department which he refused to obey on the ground of General Jackson's order. Before a decision could be reached, Mr. Calhoun became Secretary of War and in his usual far-sighted manner adroitly put a quietus on the unbusinesslike practice. *April 22 1817*

In the wilderness of military chaos of these early years, the voice of a real prophet rose to do signal good for future army officers and scientific men. Since Steuben's arrival at Valley Forge no more valuable asset had been given to the military service than that which was added about the middle of this year. Captain Sylvanus Thayer became the fifth superintendent of the Military Academy. His advent marks a new era not only for the army but for education in general. He organized the corps of cadets into a battalion of 2 companies commanded by a cadet colonel. He created the office of commandant of cadets who was responsible for the tactical instruction and discipline. It was during his superintendency that the cadets were taken on practice marches to Boston, Philadelphia and Princeton in order to widen their scope of training. He introduced the section and section-room method, the weekly standing reports, the scale of daily marks, the dependence of class rank upon scholarship, the blackboard system and the *Annual Register*. A very few students were grouped under a single instructor, who marked their recitations accurately. By such a system a maximum amount of thoroughness and individual effort was required of the cadet. *July 1817*

Captain Thayer had traveled in Europe and studied at its best schools. From abroad he imported among other things analytical mathematics. In short, he gave to America its first scientific school which stood alone for almost half a century in the Western Hemisphere.

But even beyond these improvements, by his wisdom and human dignity he laid the foundation for the development in the youth of that marvelous thing—character. He understood how quibbling, vacillation, or a false statement might be the ruin of a whole campaign. He saw that, whereas in other professions such weaknesses might lead to the loss of property or money, in the business of arms the lives of stalwart men and a nation's standing were at stake. Honor, therefore, was to be the first consideration of the soldier and the guardian of his every act. Character was to be built carefully. So the West Point cadet came to be tenacious above all else of the "honor of the corps" in general and of his own straightforwardness in particular. Later, the motto of the Academy—"Duty, Honor, Country"—grounded itself in lives of sacrifice. The stamp of Thayer and his doctrines is recognized in the names of such graduates as Lee, Grant, Sherman, Longstreet, Jefferson Davis, Sheridan, Stonewall Jackson, Meade, McClellan[17] and a host of others.

Dec. 1 1817 While this great foundation was beginning to be laid at the Military Academy, Mr. Calhoun became Secretary of War as the year closed. He found an army which actually numbered 8,221 men and another arsenal established near Augusta, Ga. He also found the brewing strife with the Seminoles across the border in Florida.

What General Jackson did in that southern conflict is so well known in the country's history that a word about the army here is sufficient. The Seminoles had fallen upon and massacred 47 men and women moving on a peaceable errand. Other smaller depredations had been numerous. When finally General Gaines with 600 men was besieged at Fort Scott by several thousand Indians, General Jackson, without first asking the Governors, quickly called out the Tennessee militia and marched on the enemy. With the Fourth and Seventh Infantry, one battalion of artillery and several thousand militia and friendly Creeks he invaded Florida, defeated the hostile *Jan., Feb., March 1818* tribes, captured the Spanish strongholds and executed two British subjects who had abetted the outrages of the Indians. In the first three months of this year General Jackson by cutting a little red tape put an end to the atrocities in the south with almost no bloodshed.

---

[17] Most of these were cadets during Thayer's superintendency or shortly thereafter.

Shortly after these activities, Congress made some rather constructive laws for the military establishment. It created the office of surgeon-general [18] and a chaplain at the Military Academy who should be professor of geography, history and ethics. It improved the quartermaster, subsistence, inspector and adjutant general departments and provided a Judge Advocate for each territorial division. It gave to those officers holding "brevet" rank, the pay and emoluments of that higher grade, so long as they had a command commensurate with it. Legislation also limited the artillery corps company to 1 captain, 2 first and 2 second lieutenants and the light artillery company to 1 captain, 1 first and 2 second lieutenants.

April 14
1818

April 16
1818

One of the lieutenants in each case was to act as a "conductor of artillery or ordnance officer" and to receive $10 per month extra.

April 20
1818

Uniform standards of manufacture and collection of war materials seemed to be wanting. The expenses of the arsenal at Springfield, Mass., were $162,500 for manufacturing 12,500 stands of arms—about $13 per stand. The figures reveal that about the same number were manufactured at a cost of a little over $15 apiece at Harper's Ferry. A contract with a private concern was made for 180 field-pieces and for 50 tons of shot and shell for the militia. Later 150 tons of heavy cannon and mortars and 50 tons of heavy shot and shell were added to the contract. The specifications called for little more than caliber and weight. At the end of the year Pittsburg Arsenal had about 12,000 stands of arms, New Orleans 20,000, Newport, Kentucky, 4,000 and Detroit, 3,000.[19]

Sept. 28
1818

Aug.
1818

Dec. 2
1818

---

[18] Salary $2,500 per annum as others of "General Staff."

[19] Mostly muskets. The model "1817, Harper's Ferry" rifle had the following characteristics:

"Total length about 51½ inches. Length of barrel about 36 inches. Calibre of bore without grooves .52. The bore is heptagonal and the seven narrow grooves are at the apices. Of course they are quite necessary. The depth of the grooves is one-hundredth of an inch. The pitch is one turn in 50 inches. Weight of the rifle with its steel ramrod 10 pounds. It was not at first supplied with a bayonet, but later a ten-ounce socket bayonet was issued with it for certain special demands of service. The charge was 90 to 100 grains of fine grained powder and a half ounce spherical bullet loaded bare. Loading became difficult after fouling accumulated. The muzzle velocity was about 2,000 f.s" (Sawyer).

March 19 1819
Early May 1819
June 8 1819

The movement of the Sixth Infantry from Plattsburg, N. Y., to Saint Louis, Mo., illustrates the distances traversed by the army and the progress of the frontier westward. The regiment marched from Plattsburg through New York and Pennsylvania, and arrived at Pittsburg where it encamped. It then embarked on small transport boats, moved down the Ohio and encamped at Belle Fontaine, Mo. Almost three months were required for the journey.

1819

Captain Long with his company made an exploration into the region of the Colorado. Making surveys and notes, he explored much of the country others had missed, and discovered the mountain which still bears his name. He completed this work in 1820.

Dec. 6 1819

During this year two arsenals were established (though apparently not completed) at Baton Rouge, La., and Detroit, Mich. Complaint came from the Ordnance Department, however, that there was a deficiency of cannon, shot and shell, and that it would be provident to get these "not perishable" articles in peace when prices were low. The economy of this measure was urged especially since the government had no arsenals for big guns.

1819

The handling of the larger weapons was given great attention. During the year there appeared a *Treatise upon Artillery* by H. Lallemand, who acknowledged on the title page that he was an "ex-general" of the French Imperial Guard and that the work had been translated by "M. de Russy under the eye of the author." However, the production, whether authorized or not, was comprehensive. Its four volumes[20] covered about

---

[20] "The first volume contains a general description of cannon, projectiles, caisson, gun, and other carriages, with small arms; on the organization, instruction, and position of the personnel (these articles form the basis of a system of artillery), a nomenclature necessary in the field, the EXERCISE of cannon in the field, at sieges, in fortified places, and in sea coast batteries; the school of field guns, in plain and mountain countries; maneuvres of horse and field artillery; the maneuvres of force (or the application of the mechanical powers to artillery), and the construction of batteries.

"The second volume contains a sketch on the composition and division of armies; it treats of the quality and distribution of artillery in an army; its conduct in the field, its position and duty in action, as well as in the attack and defense of field works; the theory and tables for firing, the charges and ranges of cannon; construction of artillery bridges; charging and packing caissons, and other carriages; composition of the equipage, all that any artilleryman should then know. The quick match pouch, the leather thumb piece which the gunner put over his fingers when he "shut close" the touch hole, the bricole to draw the pieces, the locking chains, the sponges and rammers, the copper ladles which served "to load the pieces in case of need," the priming horn containing powder to pour into the vent, the mortar ladle to clean the chambers of mortars and howitzers, the splints which wedged in the bomb in the mortar, the spatula, a shovel-like instrument, which drove in the splints, the stone mortar tapeon upon which the stone basket was laid before it was fired, were some of the various instruments used in discharging cannon. Fuses were placed in bombs before they were fired from howitzers and mortars. The mattrosses sponged, loaded, rammed, pricked, primed, fired and furnished ammunition. The gunners tended the vent and elevated or gave direction to the piece. An artificer or corporal attended the caisson and issued ammunition. Batteries were preferably horse drawn. Positions of the gun detail were established with great nicety. On the carriages were two trunnion plates, one for traveling and the other for action, so that the piece had to be carried a certain way on the march and a different way during combat. The changing of these positions was accomplished with great accuracy and ceremony.

Aside from its employment in furthering military technic, the army was used exntensively in the construction of public

---

ammunition, and supplies for field, siege and garrison artillery; preparing all kinds of fixed ammunition and fire works; instructions for the chief inspectors, and for conductors of artillery and convoys; finally, practical rules founded on experience.

"The third volume treats on field fortifications, comprising the trace, the dimensions, and the secondary means of defense; summary of permanent fortification; on the execution and service of artillery in the attack and defense of places, and on their supplies of provisions; Castramentation; military reconnoitrings; method of solving, by means of a cord and stakes, the most necessary geometrical problems, for field purposes.

"In the fourth volume, I enter into details on the constructions of gun carriages, caissons, etc., etc. I treat upon the cordage, iron, and the wood used in the artillery; on the manner of keeping magazines, arsenals, depots of arms; on the fabrication and receipt of guns and small arms; on projectiles, iron, steel and lastly, on the fabrication of powder. These establishments are not always under the direction of artillery officers; but they should, notwithstanding, possess a sufficient knowledge to enable them, when necessary, if not to direct, at least to inspect them." (Extract from introduction of volume itself.)

works. The government partially realized its economic value in the expression of the following enactment:

> "That, whenever it shall be found expedient to employ the army at work on fortifications, in surveys, in cutting roads, and other constant labor, of not less than ten days, the noncommissioned officers, musicians, and privates so employed shall be allowed fifteen cents, and an extra gill of whisky or spirits, each, per day, while so employed."

March 2 1819

But the country had reached that psychological stage after a war where it was recumbent and fat. Peace seemed to be assured, and the returns for army expenditure looked indistinct.

Secretary Calhoun had been met with the usual cry from Congress for the reduction of the army or at least a reduction in costs. In reply he showed conclusively that the armed forces were doing more for the country than any civilian body, that the ordnance, engineer and artillery officers were filling as great a civilian need as military, that the frontier posts were being pushed along the Mississippi, Missouri and Red rivers in order to protect our trade and that a thinner line would be wasteful. In spite of his cool and absolute logic Congress demanded the army's reduction to 6,000. Accordingly Mr. Calhoun was forced to suggest palliative measures in order to keep the force from falling below that figure. In doing so he gave utterance to a truth which has been ignored ever since to the nation's sorrow:

Dec. 12 1820

> "Economy is certainly a very high political virtue, intimately connected with the power and the public virtue of the community. In military operations, which, under the best management, are so expensive, it is of the utmost importance; but by no propriety of language can that arrangement be called economical which, in order that our military establishment in peace should be rather less expensive, would, regardless of the purposes for which it ought to be maintained, render it unfit to meet the dangers incident to a state of war."

During the years after the second war with Great Britain the army tried to bring itself out of the ignorance and decadence into which it had been tossed after the Revolution. What trained forces remained to the country were used almost ceaselessly in defending and developing our wild frontier. But the only civilians who knew the army's work and understood the nation's need were a limited few like Calhoun. Politics did not know, need to heed nor care to consider the necessity for trained fighting men. The farce of 1812 had made little impression upon the general public. We had come out all right—that was enough. Just why or how we had "come out" was a matter of little concern. That with 527,654 so-called soldiers we had been unable to defeat not over 5,000 British Regulars, that for two years and a half so small a hostile force had brought devastation within our borders and had killed and wounded 5,614 Americans and that our nation had uselessly spent for all this discard of training over $50,000,000, had not come to be realized by the voter. He was developing the inside of the country without much thought of its edges. But out there the army, having passed through its nameless period, was growing in quality while the government was looking with skeptical eyes at its size. It was too much to expect over 7,000,000 people to support 10,000 soldiers.

CHAPTER VI

THE ARMY BLAZES THE TRAIL

(1821–1844)

IF the civilization of the bulk of our country were a commodity, it should belong to the army. The thin cordon of hardy soldiers that pushed the foes of peace persistently back across prairie and through jungle, made safe the trader, trapper, and settler inside the circle. It was the troops that cut the trails, built the roads, dug the wells, surveyed the land, braved the savage, suffered in silence and opened the chest of southern and western riches.

With the stigma of Revolutionary days and 1812 still following the military man, it was easy for the civilian to brand the whole army as contemptible, especially when some coxcomb among the officers made a spectacle of himself. Cast adrift from the life of town and farm, the soldier just over the horizon was easily forgotten and seldom considered. That he was hewing the way for delicate feet to follow, pushing through showers of sleet and arrows and possessed of the same passions, hopes, and capacity for pain as the man behind the counter or plow, were thoughts remote from the minds of Boston and Baltimore. Either pacifying or suppressing the Indian, was no more, it is true, than the labor of his profession, no more than the job he had undertaken. But really he *was* risking his life that the nation might be happier and greater.

March 2 1821 Congress, echoing the appreciation of the people, reduced the army. One major general, 2 brigadiers, 44 ordnance officers and 3 regiments of infantry, artillery and riflemen were cast out of the service without any provision for their welfare. The Ordnance Department was abolished after having been built up through years of technical study and research. To replace it an extra captain and 56 enlisted men were allowed the artillery for ordnance work.[1] The office of Judge Advocate was also discontinued.

May 4 1821 Another general demoralization of regiments took place when by the effect of this law the Sixth Infantry was consolidated with the rifle regiment and boiled down to the strength of one regiment after wholesale discharges. *June 1 1821* The Eighth Infantry was disbanded entirely. The Light Artillery Regiment, Ordnance Department and Corps of Artillery were shrunken into 4 regiments of artillery,[2] known as the First, Second, Third and Fourth.

Most of the artillery naturally occupied the coast line, the Third being stretched from Annapolis, Md., to Charleston, S. C. The Infantry was mainly on the frontier of the south and west.

The Sixth Infantry, for example, having constructed Fort Atkinson at Council Bluffs, started the first settlement in Nebraska and the first stronghold west of the Missouri River. The troops built a sawmill and gristmill and had 506 acres of land under cultivation. Though the walls of barracks and quarters were made of logs, the roofs were shingled and the floors planked. If the quarters for the men had eighty-eight rooms and those of the officers were more commodious than formerly, it was because the brains and energies of those soldiers converted stark forests into habitations.

The reduction of the army stagnated promotion to an extraordinary degree. Although every officer of worth who could be retained was absorbed in the reorganization, many had to be discharged. Those who remained found themselves members of a minority whose vacancies were filled to the choking point. In the artillery, especially, during these days of regimental promotion, it was hard to rise when four lieutenants in a company had to wait for a captain. Each soldier of this reduced army found more guns and more miles of front on the borders to be cared for than formerly. On the one hand, personal advancement was blocked, and, on the other, more work was required. All these blights on human endeavor were hardly conducive to meeting with a good will the hazards of a soldier. Yet the remaining handful attacked the wilderness with a will.

---

[1] The army, after the law went into effect, consisted of 7 regiments of infantry, 4 regiments of artillery, the engineer corps, as before established, 1 major general, 2 brigadier generals, 1 adjutant, 2 inspectors general, 1 quartermaster-general, 1 commissary general and 1 paymaster-general.

[2] Each regiment had a light battery, which, however, was so only in name.

March 27 1821

Neither was the precision of the little army tarnished by the blows it had received. The uniform order is an instance. For many pages it goes into great detail as to the quality and make of clothing, and as to how it should be worn. Blue was for the first time prescribed as the national color for cloth. The chapeaux de bras was worn without plume or feather by all officers except those of the company. The rank and file and company officers wore the stiff high hat or "tar-bucket" (much like the cadet full-dress hat now). Pompons of different colors adorned this head piece: artillery wore yellow; light artillery, red and white; infantry, white; and rifle companies, green. Gold and silver tassels for company officers and worsted ones for enlisted men hung down on the right side of the cap.

The shoulder strap as an insignia of rank of officers seems to have been discontinued, though the epaulets worn as before were retained. Instead of the straps, captains wore one-stripe chevrons of gold or silver lace on each arm above the elbow and subalterns one on each arm below the elbow. Sergeant majors and quartermaster sergeants wore a worsted chevron on each arm above the elbow, sergeant and senior musicians one on each arm below the elbow, and corporals one on the right arm above the elbow. Wings, or little rolls on the shoulder, were worn both by company officers and enlisted men. Pantaloons were buff, white or blue, blue and buff for wear off duty and white for parade. Gray woolen ones were allowed for winter wear of enlisted men of the artillery and infantry. The coat was about the same as before, the cadet continuing the gray coatee and the rifleman the green jacket. Red silk sashes for all officers on duty came into general use.

The laced bootee or modern type shoe was provided for all enlisted men. A higher boot was required to be worn by company officers; one to reach to the calf of the leg, by engineers; and "high military boots," by mounted officers with troops.

In contrast to this ornate clothing, weapons of greater accuracy and range than heretofore carried were issued to the soldier. The government had on hand something less than 10,000 rifles at the arsenals of Harper's Ferry and Springfield. The smooth-bore was beginning to disappear in the service. Three contractors in Middletown, Connecticut, and Mr. Deringer in Philadelphia, manufactured for the army several thousand rifles in this decade each one costing about $14.50 or an equivalent of about $75 now. Although the breech-loader had been experimented with by the Ordnance Department, the invention of Mr. Hall of Yarmouth, Maine, had not succeeded further than an output of 200. The great defects were the powder leaks and the lack of interchangeability of parts. The small-bore "squirrel rifle," firing balls between 90 to 200 to the pound, were used greatly by militia in its customarily sudden calls into the service.

A private publication called the *Artillerist* appeared this *1821* year, apparently for the militia. It detailed extensively everything from the manual of the sword to six "divisions of movements" for the battery. Cuts, guards, St. Georges, mullinets, and parries for fencing were carefully set forth, as well as drill movements, such as how the "pieces being in battery" should "march in retreat or in advance toward the enemy."

There now being no cavalry in the service, its maneuvers had to be kept alive solely by regulations for the volunteers. *1822* Lieutenant Colonel Pierce Darrow accordingly adapted such a work to Scott's regulations, calling it *Cavalry Tactics.* He confessed at the beginning that the organization of a cavalry regiment was so radically different in most of the states that it was quite impossible to give a standard type. He compromised, however, by laying down "the order of formation" for two regiments of different size. He conformed to the law of 1820 in prescribing that regiments should be called battalions, and that companies should be posted in line according to the dates of the captains' commissions.[6]

---

[3] The following extract will show how he solved two difficulties:

"A regiment of cavalry, in this, and many of the states, comprises but four companies, which are styled a squadron, of which I shall first give a detail of arrangement. The second method of formation embraces eight

Early 1822

While the army was trying to better its efficiency, it was in reality low in spirit. The injustice upon the officers who had been "deranged," "razed" or transferred was so apparent that the matter was taken up by many citizens who forced an investigation by a Committee of Congress. The members came to this remarkable conclusion: "While the committee pay just respect to officers retained in the service, they wish not to detract from merits of the many valuable officers who have been left out of the army or reduced in rank." This magnificent tribute was the sole consequence of the fatiguing labor of the lawmakers. No material provision was made for those "valuable" men suddenly cut off without a farthing.

The army had to continue to perform its own tasks and those of the men taken away by the legislators. Its dispersion had to be so thin that as a defensive force it was ridiculous. The Second Infantry for instance, in trying to keep in advance of its part of the receding frontier, made long journeys which disclose what was taking place throughout the service. In January the regiment had been moved from Plattsburg to Sackett's Harbor, N. Y. A few months later five of its companies and headquarters sailed to Sault Sainte Marie where they built Fort Brady. Less than 800 men tried to cover almost 8,000 miles of front, open to Indian raids and lesser encroachments.

June 1822

Jan. 29 1822

The 4 puny regiments of artillery scattered their harbor forts through Eastport and Portland, Me.; Portsmouth, N. H.; Marblehead and Boston, Mass.; Newport, R. I.; New London, Conn.; New York City, West Point, Sackett's Harbor, Fort Niagara and Plattsburg, N. Y.; Philadelphia, Pa.; Baltimore, Annapolis and Fort Washington, Md.; Norfolk, Va.; Smithville, N. C.; Charleston, S. C.; Savannah, Ga.; Amelia Island, Fort Gadsden, Fla.; Fort Bowyer and Mobile Bay, Ala.; Fort

---

companies, and two squadrons, first and second; each squadron is divided into two grand divisions, and numbered from right to left, 1, 2, 3, 4; the whole are styled a battalion when in the field.

"The habitual habit of formation is in two ranks, but it is frequently practiced, where the companies are small, to parade the squadron in one rank. This may be allowed on particular occasions, and when there are but four companies to parade together, as it will greatly facilitate the exercise and movements; but this should by no means prevent their acquiring a perfect knowledge of their duty in two ranks."

Petite Coquille, La.; Fort Saint Philips, Council Bluffs, Saint Peters, Miss.; Mackinaw, and Fort Shelby, Mich. The armaments totaled 28 forty-two pounders, 226 thirty-two pounders, 413 twenty-four pounders, 228 eighteen-pounders, 3 ten-inch seacoast mortars, 32 ten-inch siege mortars, 5 eighteen-inch mortars, 10 eight-inch howitzers and 46 twenty-four-pounder howitzers. Neither could the fortresses be well manned nor the guns be all cared for or operated under such limitations of man power.

The provision for so many large weapons, with their requisite balls and ammunition, illustrates the attitude of the country toward materials for war. Somehow, our citizens have always been ready to spend money for the making and storing of arms to the disregard of the construction of a soldier and the soldierly character. It has been difficult for them to see that it takes longer to make the operator and superintendent than the missile and gun. While satisfied with its meager army, Congress at this time provided $5,000 for a national armory on "the western waters" to be selected by a "skillful engineer" or ordnance officer. Galena, Ill., seems to have been the choice because of the mines there and the fact that the War Department was still charged with the management of geological activities later given over to the Interior Department.

March 3
1823

As the little army tried to stretch itself over many different activities and along thousands of miles of wild territory, it had its share of combats with the savage, which went along incessantly. These "small affairs" were scarcely noted by the newspaper and too often forgotten by the people. A few soldiers were cut down here, an officer lost his life there and the story of their deeds sank almost at once into oblivion. Even as large an action as that of the Sixth Infantry, when Lieutenant Colonel Leavenworth drove back the Arikara Indians who had put General Ashley's party in jeopardy, has gone unrecounted in our general histories.

June
1823

While the few trained forces on our frontiers were repelling the Indian by superior knowledge and training, Colonel Thayer back at the Military Academy was raising the standard of military and educational work. In addition to the advancement which he had already brought, he used senior cadets of excellent qualifications as assistant professors in order to give larger individual instruction. He succeeded in getting Congress to provide for these men, selected wholly on their merit, $10 a month as extra pay for the "honorable distinction." He then ordered extra buttons to be worn on their dress coats, so as to make the remainder of the Corps of Cadets see the stamp of authority placed upon the new position. By such methods, he was able partially to overcome the shortage of commissioned instructors in a microscopic army, to make scholastic competition among cadets higher and to improve the thoroughness of West Point courses.

Sept. 10 1823

It was the scientific instruction at the Military Academy that made possible an engineer corps which constructed many of our public works. In this year Congress appropriated $30,000 for surveys of roads and canals of national importance and allowed the use of the corps of engineers and two other "skillful engineers" to carry on the labor. Most of the highways and explorations of this period were made by army officers—then the only home-grown scientific men of our country.

April 30 1824

Another event in scientific instruction was the establishment of the "artillery school of instruction" at Fortress Monroe, Virginia, for the purpose of familiarizing the artillerist with his duties. Although its curriculum and plant were quite unformed, the foundation was laid for the service school that was to have a beneficial influence later on the development of our larger weapons and mines.

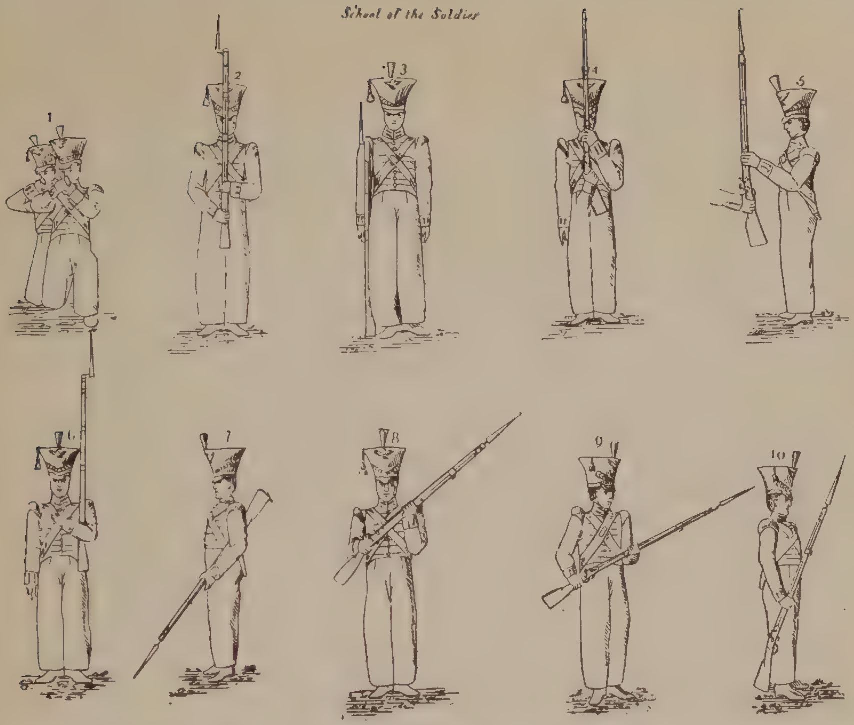
1824

The scientific knowledge of army officers spurred others to try their skill in making improvements. A curious invention came into use at this time in the militia. Simeon North of Middletown, Conn., who had been making rifles for the army, invented a few 4 and 5 shot repeaters. He put a small extra barrel in rear of the regular flintlock bore so as to have the ammunition slide into place in front of the chamber. The magazine did not revolve, was impractical and soon came into disuse. But the device illustrates the attempt at this time to produce a greater volume of fire and more rapid loading.

1824–1825

1825

The drill regulations or "Infantry Tactics," as they were then known, went into great detail in this period. The oblique step required the feet to be planted at 18, 25 and 44 inch dis-



1. Represents a soldier of the first and second ranks kneeling and aiming.
2. Represents a soldier after presenting arms.
3. Represents the position of ordered arms.
4. Represents the soldier presenting his firelock, for inspection.
5. Represents the soldier receiving his musket from the instructor, after inspection.
6. Represents the soldier after the third motion of support arms.
7. Shows the soldier, after the second motion of secure arms.
8. Represents the soldier after executing the command, "port—ARMS."
9. Represents the soldier after the second motion of charge—BAYONET.
10. Shows the soldier in the position of trail arms.

tances at various times in the execution of the movement. Eight plates showed how a company should march precisely through different parts and kinds of defiles. The utmost nicety was required of a "battalion of the first line passing through a battalion of the second line," a "column of attack forming square against cavalry," "the deployment of the column for attack," and a line of eight battalions oblique to the enemy in forming parallel to him by "echelons of brigades." The first company on the march, being detached as an advance guard, had its own supports and reserves.

Along with the changes in drill went those of the uniform. A cloth "foraging cap or chakos" trimmed with lace was now permitted company officers and enlisted men "when on duty, absent from their companies." The new headpiece was light and in some respects like the modern cap. It was evident that the bell-crown "tar-bucket" was quite too much for those who were not allowed to wear the light chapeaux de bras. A frock coat with a skirt to come to the knee was required of all officers whenever full dress was not otherwise prescribed. The insignia of rank was worn upon the collar. *1825*

Some changes of station again mark the progress of the frontier outward. Two of the companies of the Fourth Artillery were sent south from Fortress Monroe. The Third Infantry went west from Fort Howard, where it helped build Camp Miller, afterwards known as Jefferson Barracks, Missouri. *April 1826* *Sept. 1826*

A "Cavalry Tactics" by a board, of which Major General Scott was president and several militia generals were members, appeared this year. It covered the training of young horses, care and equipment of mounts, nomenclature of pistol and sword, drill in 1 or 2 ranks, formations of a regiment of 4 squadrons in order of battle, schools of the trooper and squadron and elaborate maneuvers corresponding to those of infantry tactics. *1826*

A similarly complete regulation appeared for artillery. Everything from the "hound-box" to "perch" was completely explained. The work gave exhaustive schools of the gunner, the piece and the battery, and included evolutions of batteries and a manual of the howitzer. A battery consisted of 6 pieces, *1826* which were numbered from right to left, each piece with its caisson being drawn by four horses. The battery was divided either into 3 sections or 2 half-batteries. Both the cavalry and artillery maneuvers were copied from Scott's infantry movements as, for example, the command, "Break from the right and march to the left."

1826 According to the *Abridged Tactics for Infantry* the soldier in the position of attention put his heels as near together "as the conformation of the man will permit." He executed "eyes right" as he does now. The company fell in and was sized in "two ranks, tallest men on the right," and was then divided into platoons and sections. Loading was done by 12 commands, and "P'sent," "Port" and "Pile" arms were a part of the manual. There was volley firing in addition to firing by file as before.

While the little army was trying to improve itself, legislation was moving like the hen that pecks at particles all day and occasionally lays an egg. Extra pay of $10 a month was *March 2 1827* given to the officer who actually was in command of a company. The purpose was to alleviate the distress of junior officers who had difficulty in living on their pay. But only the senior subalterns whose captains happened to be absent profited by the measure. Sometimes, naturally, good captains were detached in order to give the increased pay to straitened lieutenants. In any case, only a few could receive the small benefit of the law. Instead of giving a substantial increase to every soldier, Congress thus resorted to a petty compromise which caused discrimination, did not raise the general morale and was on the whole wasteful.

Yet the army went on improving itself and boring into the *April, May 1827* wilderness. The frontier extending further west, Colonel Leavenworth with four companies of the Third Infantry selected the site of the fort in Kansas which still bears his name. There he established a cantonment. The Sixth, in the meantime, joined forces with the remainder of the Third at Jefferson Barracks, where was started an informal Infantry School of Practice. To this primitive place of instruction, as to the Artillery School of Practice at Fortress Monroe, all the "brevet second lieutenants" were sent upon joining.

While the army was thus trying to advance technically so as to make itself more efficient, it had many besetting trials with which to contend.

June 16 1827

Brevet rank, that great anomalous bugbear which was to have such a disturbing influence on the spirit of troops, was given a standing it had not heretofore had. The adjutant general issued an order which deemed officers holding brevet rank to be on duty and to have command according to their brevet commissions when they were actually commanding enough troops to warrant such higher grade. If a brevetted officer was really commanding double the number of men which ordinary regimental rank entitled him to control, the brevet rank became actual. A captain who was also a brevet major, for example, exercised command as a major when he was on duty over a detachment composed of not less than 2 companies. Naturally such an incongruity led to discontent. Those who had had no opportunity to be brevetted or those who, although brevetted, did not command the required number of men were through chance denied the higher grade. Men of long service and experience were often, then, commanded by their actual juniors.

Neither did disease help the morale of the army. The troops on duty in the south were so reduced by fever that Brigadier General Jacob Brown had to transfer large numbers over considerable distances. The Fourth Artillery alone had lost (mostly from yellow fever) during the six years of its stay, 16 officers and 220 enlisted men. Yet Congress inquired into the expense of changing the Fourth to the north coast, the Third to the New England coast and the First and Second to the south. It had not been borne in upon the minds of the lawmakers that soldiers in the wilds were dying fast. When General Brown showed that it was unfair to exterminate regiments in unhealthful places while others were in a land of comparative conveniences, his dispositions were approved.

Whereas the artillery had posts in civilization to which it could be moved, the infantry had to live constantly on the borders. It is hard to realize now the terrible scourges of plague and epidemic that riddled the commands of the frontier. Resistance was lessened by exposure. Flies, roaches, mosquitoes and rats were so abundant that they were almost ineffaceable. Scientific investigation had not yet shown the fatality lurking among these pests. The soldiers, in crowded buildings and unacquainted with the need of ventilation, disseminated small pox, yellow fever, malaria and typhoid without understanding their sources. Danger from disease for the military man was many times as great as for the citizen who had his own room and dined at home.

If an undeveloped, small medical department had its troubles, the task that fell upon the staff in general was just as great. *1827* The Ordnance Department had been taken away from the army by the false economy of costly reductions. Those who kept up a part of the ordnance duties now masqueraded as artillerymen. A lieutenant colonel and 4 captains of artillery, stationed in Washington, attempted to supervise the arms and equipment of the entire service. Such condition was typical of the big burden that fell upon the few who made up the army.

The movement of troops over tremendous distances was but an evidence of the attempt to have soldiers in two places at once. *1828* The First Infantry which had occupied Baton Rouge and vicinity was sent to Fort Crawford, Fort Snelling and Fort Winnebago at the other end of the Mississippi. *1829* The headquarters of the Fourth Artillery were changed to Philadelphia. Four companies of the Sixth Infantry started as an escort to a party of traders bound from Fort Leavenworth to Santa Fe. *May 1829* The journey there and return was to require two years of fighting, thirst and exhaustion. The endurance and determination of these men broke a path for Kearny and Doniphan later, and blazed this trail for the first time.

While the small army was desperately trying to hold the borders, it was also bringing the drill regulations up to a more practical and efficient standard. Improvement in the quality of maneuver went on, even if the numbers of troops to execute the movements were few. *1829* The new *U. S. Infantry Drill Regulations* consisted of three main schools: the soldier, the company, and the battalion. It was the most thorough and progressive work of its kind since Steuben's manual and showed again the energy of Major General Winfield Scott. The book contained a special section for light infantry and riflemen.

Loading while kneeling and lying down, forming single file, advancing by files, diminishing and increasing front, and firing in extended order, seem to point to the development of the service of security. The 2 rifle companies in each battalion were, therefore, posted on the right and left. Executing the manual "by the numbers" was provided for so that the recruit could be the more carefully instructed. Inspection arms was described much as it exists to-day except that the ramrod was sprung in the barrel before the piece was taken by the inspector. Since the bores of the muzzle loaders could not be readily looked through, such precaution was necessary in order to make certain that the piece was unloaded. Target practice made its first modern advance. An eight-inch bull's-eye with an exterior ring was placed in the middle of the upper half of the target and between the horizontal bands, evidently to simulate the vital part of a human being. A soldier was required to begin at 50 yards in order to gain confidence, and then gradually proceed back to 140 yards which was considered point-blank range. Because the sight was fixed, he had to aim below the bull's-eye more and more as he advanced toward the target from 140 yards.

Under Dept of War, March 2 1829

A System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery showed that the proper service was with horses in action, and that the proper calibers for the field were 6-and-12-pounder guns and 24-pounder howitzers. This regulation includes the term field artillery, light and horse artillery. The book is complete and a counterpart of the *Infantry Tactics.*

1829

As the army labored on improvement, Congress seemed to be more interested in destruction than construction of the armed forces. It tried now to do away with the office of major general or general in chief of the army. When the matter came to an issue, views of the committee on military affairs and of the Secretary of War were called for. Both Mr. Harrison and Mr. Peter B. Porter showed how the army had to have a head who was a soldier, just as much as a ship needed a captain who was a sailor. If the office were taken away, the work would be improperly done by a civilian secretary on the advice of junior staff officers by whom he was surrounded. The result was that Congress retained the office without recognizing its authority in purely military affairs, so that administration by the Secretary for a long time clogged the machinery and gave a precedent for much mismanagement in the Civil War.

Within the army military procedure was likewise shaken by the operation of the orders on brevet rank. Officers by this time had become so confused that in many cases they were at a loss as to who was actually in command. The consequence was that an order from Washington separated command from *Aug. 13 1829* brevet rank. Although an officer sat on a court in accordance with brevetted grade, he was forbidden to exercise command corresponding to such grade unless especially assigned by the War Department for that purpose. So confusion was somewhat allayed but not overcome.

These interruptions could not stem the steady progress of the army in pushing our boundaries outward. The movement of the Third Infantry is an illustration of the advancement of *Nov. 26 1829* the frontier. Two companies left Jefferson Barracks for Black Creek, Choctaw Nation. Four more companies left for the *Dec. 14 1830* southeast corner of what is now Oklahoma on the Red River. These places represented the outlying sections of our western boundary. Wild regions infested by savages were reclaimed by roads, forts and the surveys made by this daring handful of soldiers.

Indian uprisings later becoming threatening along the Mississippi, the Sixth Infantry was concentrated at Jefferson Barracks, with the specific purpose of taking care of the Sac and Fox Indians commanded by Black Hawk. That part of *Sept. 1831* the Fifth Infantry at Fort Winnebago was moved to Fort Armstrong (Rock Island, Ill.). The Third was sent to Cantonment Jesup, La.

In the meantime, administrative changes caused a bettering *1831* of conditions at Washington. The topographical engineers were *March 1832* organized into a regular bureau of the War Department, and after eleven years' absence, an Ordnance Department again made its appearance. Congress established the latter as a branch separate from the artillery so that it could now function with some sort of benefit for the service and advancement along broader and more technical lines.[4]

---

[4] It is interesting to note that in 1830 a change was attempted in the

Then General Scott entered upon the first of the duties which were to make his and the army's name so famous for pacification. In South Carolina the *Nullification Proclamation* had angered the people of that state to such an extent that they were on the point of secession and possibly civil war. President Jackson sent General Scott to Charleston to look after the difficulties. The General's great tact, forbearance, and humanity bridged over the gulf and kept the government out of war. *1832*

In the west the activities of Black Hawk were such that it was known a large force would be necessary to subdue him. General Atkinson, with the Sixth Infantry and 900 Illinois volunteers concentrated at Dixon's Ferry. *June 1832* The government acting with exemplary promptness, made provisions for raising 600 mounted rangers, the first intimation of cavalry since 1821. *June 15 1832* It also prepared to send General Scott with troops from the east. To get to the scene of activities, a large part of the Fourth Artillery covered by rail, boat, and marches 1,800 miles in 18 days. Such dispatch at a time when transit was not modern is almost unparalleled. But the eastern troops were never destined to engage with Black Hawk for they lost more than 30 per cent of their number by Asiatic cholera en route. The Second Infantry at Detroit was similarly struck down by the disease. Though the concentration contemplated 1,300 regular troops from the Lakes and the Atlantic, the whole force was blocked by the plague. At Rock Island, Ill., General Scott, foreseeing the dire effects of drunkenness in connection with the disease, forestalled intoxication by a characteristic order:

"That every soldier or ranger who shall be found drunk or sensibly intoxicated, after the publication of this order, be compelled as soon as his strength will permit, to dig a grave at a suitable burying place, large enough for his own reception, as such graves cannot fail to be wanted for the drunken man himself or some drunken companion. This order is given as

---

paper cartridge with which the soldier loaded. Instead of having to bite the end and discard the wad, the foot soldier could thrust the whole cartridge into the chamber. The paper envelope, having been made combustible by a preparation of niter was consumed at discharge. The improvement was of doubtful value, especially when the paper became wet, so that the cartridge did not come into general use.

well to serve as a punishment for drunkenness, as to spare good and temperate men the labor of digging graves for their worthless companions."

Although Scott did not get to the fight the above will intimate that he had a well-disciplined force in hand.

General Atkinson in the meantime had, with parts of the *Aug. 2 1832* First and Sixth Infantry, come up with Black Hawk at the junction of the Bad Axe and the Mississippi. After a bloody battle of three hours, Atkinson signally defeated the savages. In the meantime the Illinois volunteers had met the enemy *July 21 1832* at the Wisconsin River and driven him back. When they had joined General Atkinson the augmented force effectively put a quietus on Black Hawk.

Yet the army did not always treat the savage with the rifle. *1832* Captain Bonneville of the army took an indefinite leave of absence in order to study the Indian in his native haunts. Disguised as a fur trader, he made his way with 110 men to the heart of the Rockies, where he lived among the Nez Percés and Flatheads for five years. His daring labor was the wedge for peace with many tribes of Indians for years afterward.

Shortly after Scott's experiences in getting his troops west, *Nov. 2 1832* "ardent spirits" disappeared from the ration. Liquor was forbidden to be introduced into any fort, camp or garrison by any soldier or sutler, and sugar and coffee were issued in place of whisky. So it came about that the army was the first institution of our government to prescribe prohibition for its personnel.

Ordered June 11 1832 Operative July 4 1833 Along with such restrictions came changes of uniform which were intended to create a greater appeal to self-respect. Officers wore double-breasted coats coming to the knee, the different branches had the same colored facings on their coats as were prescribed during the Revolution, cocked hats returned, and all officers and noncommissioned officers had epaulets on both shoulders. Rank was distinguished by the materials and sizes of the straps of the epaulet, on which was placed the regimental number. The eagle for the colonel came into vogue for the first time as did the rows of buttons for generals in groups of fours, threes and twos.

Sylvanus Thayer

It then became apparent to Congress that if the Indian was to be pursued, cavalry was necessary. After eleven years of absence a regiment of dragoons made its appearance. One colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 10 companies, each with 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant and 1 second lieutenant made up this new mounted contingent of 600 privates.

March 2
1833

At the same time, enlistments for the whole army were reduced to three years and the pay of a private increased to $6.[5] Although he received only $5 of this amount for the first two years, he was given the remaining $24 at the expiration of that time, provided his conduct had been good. A reënlisted soldier received the full $6. All premiums were henceforth prohibited to recruiting officers and no man who had been convicted of a criminal offense could be enlisted.

How well this last provision was carried out seems to be disputable. Small pay, little recreation, hard duty and little opportunity for advancement were not appealing to well-bred young men. Since the Military Academy furnished all and more of the officer personnel, commissions from the ranks were rare. The down-and-outer, the foreigner, and the adventurer made up to too great a degree the rank and file.

The consequence was that the personnel of a company had to be controlled with an iron hand. Ignorant men could be restrained from mutiny by fear alone. Beating, which had been prohibited many years before, was still prevalent in these isolated places. Desertion in one instance met the following fate:

"The court found him guilty as charged and sentenced him to be tied to a stack of arms and to receive ten lashes for five successive mornings with a cat o' nine tails on his bare back in the presence of the command, to have his head and eyebrows shaved, to forfeit all pay and traveling expenses and to be drumd out of service."

---

[5] The allowance for clothing for three years consisted of:

March 20
1833

- 1 cap complete
- 2 coats complete, for artillery and infantry
- 1 coat complete, for ordnance and dragoons
- 6 pairs woolen overalls
- 9 pairs cotton overalls
- 2 woolen jackets, for artillery and infantry
- 3 woolen jackets for ordnance and dragoons
- 3 cotton jackets
- 6 cotton shirts
- 6 flannel shirts
- 9 pairs boots
- 9 pairs stockings
- 2 blankets
- 1 forage cap
- 1 great coat
- 1 leather stock
- 3 pairs of drawers.

The rawhide, however, was still used as in the days of the Revolution. One officer forgot himself so far as to be court-martialed and severly punished on the following charge:

Charge 1

"Conduct subversive of good order and Military Discipline." Specification: In this: That he, the said Lieutenant Colonel W—— of the 6th Regiment U. S. Infantry, while commanding the regiment in question, did punish with stripes and lashes, private Thomas Powell of Company 'D,' of the regiment aforesaid—the punishment so administered being of such extreme severity as to have disabled the said Thomas Powell from the performance of his duty, for the period of nine days. This at Jefferson Barracks, in the state of Missouri, on or about the 12th of December, 1828."

For sleeping on post in hostile country a soldier was sometimes ordered to be shot. Sometimes, also, the firing squad was given secret directions to aim high over the head of the blindfolded victim kneeling on his coffin before his grave. After the volley, the prostrate convict was pardoned before his fellow soldiers because of previous good conduct.

Cruelty naturally sprang up in a wilderness where one's existence depended upon the obedience of men who could neither read, write nor understand the reasons for discipline. There were instances where officers privately flogged their men. Physical superiority throughout the country was playing a large part in the settlement of affairs, and so it was in the army.

The guardhouse was a log fortress usually outside the walls of the stockade. The ordinary type had two compartments, one for the guard and the other for the prisoners. The open room held those charged with moderate offenses, but cells at one side restrained the deserter, the rioter, and the more heinous criminal. These latter compartments about 8 feet long, 3 feet wide and only 3 feet high made it impossible for the culprit to stand upright during his confinement.

The constant danger to the isolated fort is shown by the diligence with which those approaching it were challenged. The countersign was normally used with great care. The person approaching was called upon to "stand" by the sentry, and then to "advance with the countersign, and give it." If the word was correct, the sentry said "Right, pass"; if not, he called a noncommissioned officer of the guard.

The daily guard, fatigue, and routine of other duties were often interrupted by more exciting occurrences. The arrival of the "express rider" at an unusual hour of the night, the "orderly call," the parading of the garrison with knapsacks packed, the hustle and bustle of the "waiters," the discomfort of weighty accouterments and tight garments, the long, dreary, hungry march, the contact with the first painted warriors, the running fight, the unexpected whoop of a fresh band of savages, the final drive after hours of sweaty, muddy, bloody struggle, the search for the dead and wounded, the return to the fort, the gloomy burials with final volleys over the graves of good companions, were incidents in the monotony of the soldier's life. And the apothecary in Philadelphia went on undisturbed even by a headline of what the *n*th Infantry had done for the civilization of the nation's territory. The soldier had plenty of one thing—hazard. And this he accepted without complaint.

While the small bodies of troops were pounding away on the frontier, the army as a whole was being bettered. The organization of the First Regiment of Dragoons was soon completed. The service now had mounted troops to use against the Indian. The medical corps, too, was helped by legislation. The quality of its officers was raised, when all new appointments of assistant surgeons had to be censored by an army medical board. *June 1834* *June 30 1834*

Field artillery had its real birth during this year. The Ordnance Department tested out two different types of carriages, the "stock-trail" and the Gribeauval. It especially *1834* went into the merits of brass and iron weapons, with results favoring the former. As to sizes, 6- and 12-pounder guns and 12- and 24-pounder howitzers seemed to survive.

1834 *An Abstract of a System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery* was written by J. L. Wilson for the South Carolina militia. Two gunners and 2 first, 2 second and 2 third mattrosses served the piece (16- or 24-pounder). Grape shot was loaded by means of bags holding lead bullets. Cartridges of powder were made into cases covered by flannel boiled in oil. Pieces were touched off by a torch, and the powder in the chamber ignited by the use of a quick match and a portfire. The former was a long homemade fuse like a round lamp wick and the latter was a small paper case of powder made more inflammable by the admixture of antimony.

1834 Less than 4,000 regular soldiers now guarded over 10,000 miles of seacoast and frontier for 15,000,000 of people. Five hundred infantrymen and artillerymen in Florida constituted the nation's only safeguard in a country of 52,000 square miles, infested by thousands of Seminole and Creek Indians. Dec. 28 1835 It was natural that the savage began to feel his power to such a degree that his confidence and cruelty led him to murder parts of the Second and Third Artillery and Fourth Infantry marching peacefully from Fort Brook to Fort King; 107 regular officers and men were killed. At the same time 2 other officers were murdered near Fort King. This affair, commonly known as Dade's massacre, fired the country and especially the army.

Almost immediately General Clinch with 6 companies of Dec. 31 1835 artillery and infantry regulars and about 400 volunteers met approximately 1,000 Indians at the Withlacoochee and drove them back. Of the trained soldiers 57 officers and men were killed. Why only 30 officers and men of the volunteers got into action has never been satisfactorily explained. Had the whole force been used it is likely the Florida war would have ended at once. All the few trained soldiers could do was to repulse the Indians who went further away into their hiding places and became more wary.

It was during this war that the most trying duty that could fall to the lot of troops was performed by nearly all of the regular army constantly for four long years. Moving from swamp to swamp in search of an enemy that never appeared, dying by battalions with fever and exposure, never able to bring on a decisive engagement with the elusive natives, never daring to separate into small groups without being exterminated by savages who sprang from the soil, at night disturbed by decoys and alarms, always on the move fighting shadows, starved for supplies, burned or plundered by the Indian, hindered by thickets, marshes, tropical forests, morasses and jungles of unknown poisons and mysterious extent, balked by the enemy who was never to be trusted in council and resorted to any ulterior means to gain a scalp, the little army of less than 1,000 regulars tried to clean out a vast country occupied by over 3,000 Indians. In spite of the handicaps the soldier built 90 forts and stockades and 480 miles of road. This great wedge of development and safety the army accomplished at the price of misery, disease, and death.

Jan. 1836 The First Artillery was the first one to reach Florida from the north in order to reënforce the command already there. *Jan. 9 1836* General Scott, in charge of the Eastern Department, was also sent to the scene of the trouble by the War Department. And it was wise that the regular troops were appearing, for General Call had reported mutiny among his volunteer troops and Governor Eaton had shown that his had all gone home. Florida was left alone with its handful of trained soldiers, whose companies were now rendered so small by the lack of legislation that scarcely an average of 30 men could be mustered for duty.

General Gaines, in the meantime, in command of the *Feb. 3 1836* Western Department, having no information from the War Department, hastened with about 1,100 men for Tampa to avenge Dade's massacre. Pushing on to Fort Drane where Scott had a reservoir of supplies for the right wing of his troops, he was there besieged. When the siege was raised not only *March 6 1836* were Gaines' troops starving and subsisting on horse flesh, but the supplies for Scott's troops were all used up. Here we have the picture of two forces of United States troops acting utterly independently of each other and in opposition. Part of the reason for this mismanagement can be attributed to the absence of the telegraph and rapid transit.

General Gaines then calmly went back to his command, leaving General Clinch to resuscitate the starving soldiers.

Spring 1836 In addition to these troubles the Creek Indians now began to show signs of hostility in southern Alabama and Georgia. Although the Second Infantry did some notable work in escorting emigrating tribes, there were so few soldiers, in proportion to the number of savages and settlers to be protected, that the task seemed hopeless.

General Scott was without an adequate force. Although the Sixth Infantry, some artillery and the volunteers were on their *May 23 1836* way, the situation in Florida was not then helped. Futile and tardy enactments by Congress gave authority for "10,000 men" and an additional regiment of dragoons, but such action was far from collecting, organizing, training and putting on the ground the numbers voted. Besides, the 10,000 were to be discharged at the end of "six or twelve months" and the extra regiment of dragoons was to be disbanded at the will of the President. Although the dragoons were to be accepted for three years, the volunteers were to go out either in a year or a half year as they chose. What raw troops would decide is not undecipherable after what had already transpired in our history. To add to this fruitlessness, the governors of Georgia and Alabama had ordered thousands of soldiers into the field who were useless because they had no arms.

June to Nov. 1836 The Third and Fourth Artillery and Fourth and Sixth Infantry took part in a succession of small actions, such as Macinope, Fort Drane, Wahoo Swamp and Withlacoochee, wherever any Indians could be induced to appear. In the meantime the savage was carrying on raids of extermination on every white man, woman, and child who could be seized in Florida, southern Alabama and Georgia. A massacre would occur in one place while the troops were at another. Seldom was the meager force in that wide country able to catch up with a foe that was capable of rapid disappearance. History little records the deeds of heroism and discomfort of Scott's troops.

One commander wrote:

> "There are here 11 companies of artillery; the whole presents a fighting force of 110 men; and while we are entitled to 55 officers, we have here only 6 for company duty."

The country would not allow the officer or enlisted man to do the job right by making or having a sufficiently large trained force. So scarce were subalterns that President Jackson had to order them to the front from detached service. With companies that were squads, needing few officers, and having less, with useless pilgrimages that were able to cover but small fractions of the hostile territory and with the ever-present disease that was more deadly than the bullet, morale in the service was naturally low.

Promotion was so slow that a lieutenant had little hope of ever becoming a captain. For sixty-nine graduates of the Military Academy there were no actual vacancies so that they had to be attached as brevet second lieutenants to their companies. These young men with exceptional education under the régime of Colonel Thayer, seeing futures less lucrative and hopeful than those of uneducated mill hands of their own town, resigned in shoals. One hundred and seventeen officers went out in 1836. During this decade, the service lost and the civilian gained the benefit of such men as Horace Bliss, celebrated engineer; W. C. Young, President Panama Railroad and Hudson River Railroad; R. R. Parrott, inventor of the gun bearing his name; Alexander D. Bache, one of the most famous educators and scientists of his time; Albert Sidney Johnston; N. B. Buford; Leonidas Polk; Jefferson Davis; Joseph E. Johnston; George G. Meade; and Henry Du Pont, proprietor of the Du Pont Powder Mills.[6] *1836*

Efforts within the service to produce good results were almost pathetic. *Tactics and Regulations for the Militia* gave to the volunteer a volume containing all that should be known by him of infantry, cavalry and artillery drill. One apparently novel thing emphasized was the deployment of the light infantry and rifle companies and battalions "as skirmishers," and their "rallying and assembling." *1836*

The uniform showed marks of evolution toward later changes. Although the epaulets were retained for full dress of officers, shoulder straps of the type worn on the officers' blue dress coat before the World War came into vogue for generals and colonels in "undress." Majors and company officers wore slashed flaps, buttons and loops on their sleeves. The major wore a slash 6½ inches long, 4 loops and 4 buttons; and the subalterns, a slash 3½ inches long with 2 loops and 2 buttons. The cadet full-dress coat and overcoat were almost as they appear now, although a gray vest was included in the wardrobe. All staff officers wore aigullettes on the undress coat. Chevrons for noncommissioned officers in dress uniform were replaced by the same sort of slashings on the sleeve as for captains and lieutenants, except that the material was worsted cloth instead of gold lace. For undress, the chevrons for sergeants and corporals were approximately of the same design as now, save that they were pointed downward. It was prescribed that the hair should be "cut short or what is generally termed cropped; the whiskers not to extend below the lower tip of the ear, and in a line thence with the curve of the mouth."

---

[6] All graduates of West Point.

Promotion for company officers was within the regiment; for field officers, within the same branch of the service. Added to the inequalities of such procedure throughout the army, brevet rank continued to create much dispute and many unusual situations.

July 7 1836 During the year General Scott was recalled from the scene of hostilities in order that his conduct in not prosecuting the war more quickly might be inquired into. Between General Gaines, the raw troops, and Congress he had not had a chance. Supplies and transportation were wanting and his difficulties approached those of Schuyler or Washington at their worst. It had now grown to be a national habit to take the tools away from a commander and to inquire at the seat of government into his conduct when he failed. Of course, General Scott was fully acquitted, and the enemy was not harmed by his absence.

The army, in small detachments like lost souls in the desert, went about seeking the enemy. It might as well have hunted, like De Soto, for the fountain of youth. At the small councils the chiefs made peace and afterward broke faith. The actions though small caused marching and countermarching that keenly harassed and provoked the troops.

The Third and Fourth Artillery and the Third, Fourth and Sixth Infantry regiments bore the brunt of this unusual hunt in the dark against treachery and disease. The First Infantry and some of the newly organized Second Dragoons were on their way south. But trouble was brewing in Canada to such a degree that most of the remaining regulars were needed in the north. *July 31 1837*

In the south General Jesup was unable to report more than 30 Indians killed and 500 captured. Colonel Zachary Taylor, however, having taken a company of the Fourth Artillery, the First and Sixth Infantry, some Missouri volunteers, Morgan's spies, some pioneers and pontooneers, and some Delaware Indians—a force of 870 altogether—set out through the fastnesses of Florida with orders to defeat the Indians wherever found. After much search a body of savages, large enough to be attacked, was found hidden in a hummock of thick saw grass five feet high. To approach the position the soldiers had to wade to their knees in mud and water. Although such a quagmire prevented the use of horses and made the advance of foot troops hazardous, Taylor attacked. When Colonel Gentry of the raw troops fell, most of the volunteers fled to their baggage and could not be persuaded to return. Colonel Zachary Taylor describes the remainder of the battle thus: *Oct. 21 1837* *Dec. 19 1837*

> "The enemy, however, were promptly checked and driven back by the Fourth and Sixth Infantry, which, in truth, might be said to be a moving battery. The weight of the enemy's fire was principally concentrated on five companies of the Sixth Infantry, which not only stood firm, but continued to advance until their gallant commander, Lieutenant-Colonel Thompson, and his adjutant, Lieutenant Centre, were killed, and every officer, with one exception as well as most of the non-commissioned officers, including the sergeant-major and four of the orderly sergeants, killed and wounded of those companies; when that portion of the regiment retired a short distance and were again formed, one of the companies having but four men left untouched.
>
> "Lieutenant-Colonel Foster with six companies, amounting in all to 160 men, gained the hummock in good order, where he was joined by Captain Noel, with the two remaining companies of the Sixth Infantry, and Captain Gillam, of Gentry's volunteers, with a few additional men, and continued to drive the

enemy for a considerable time, and by a change of front separated his line, and continued to drive him until he reached the great Lake Okeechobee, which was in rear of the enemy's position, and on which their encampment extended for more than a mile.

"The action was a severe one, and continued from half past twelve until 3:00 P.M., a part of the time very close and severe. We suffered much, having 26 killed and 112 wounded, among whom are some of our most valuable officers. The hostiles probably suffered, all things considered, equally with ourselves, they having left ten dead on the ground, besides doubtless carrying off many more, as is customary with them when practicable."

Dec. 25 1837 Thus was fought the Battle of Okeechobee Swamp on Christmas Day.

After the battle one officer gave an account of the Florida country and situation not overly flattering to either:

Feb. 8 1838 "We (Colonel Taylor's army) have just returned from the Everglades.. These Everglades are, at the northwest, termed wet prairies. They are large wet prairies, or grassy lakes, and of which the Indians know but little, and where they cannot live a month without great suffering.

"We saw but few Indians, and they fled rapidly at our approach. We took about sixty horses and ascertained that their cattle were exhausted. Colonel Taylor has taken about 600 head. We found on our last excursion but few cattle tracks, and only two cows were taken. The Indians are suffering for food, in all their camps we find that they have subsisted on palmetto roots and the cabbage tree, which are never eaten by them except when hard run.

"One hundred and thirty Indians and negroes have come in since the Battle of Okeechobee, and they say many more will come in soon, and that they are tired of the war, and destitute of provisions.

"Florida is generally a poor, sandy country. The southern portion is nearly all prairie, wet and dry alternately. Not more than one-tenth, at the utmost, of Florida is fit for cultivation, and I would not give one good township of land in Illinois or Michigan for every foot of land in East Florida."

That the army has been as much a peacemaker as a war wager, has not been a prevalent conception. Yet its recorded dealings with other nations and with the savages will prove that it has tried zealously to prevent conflicts. The year 1838 was particularly one of peacemaking by the army for the benefit of the country. General Scott had been sent north by the government for the purpose of preventing a third war with Great Britain. Sympathizers with Canadian rebels or patriots had led the border states to take up the quarrel of the Canadian revolutionists. Some citizens of the United States, those elements untrained, undisciplined and unorganized, had actually taken part in hostile enterprises. The acuteness of the situation was all the more aggravated by the necessary absence of our trained troops in Florida, along the coast and on the western frontier. Scott was without organized power to hold our violators of neutrality in check. By a combination of skillful addresses and personal conferences he averted the catastrophe and prevented a useless waste of lives. His exertions with our citizens and the British agents in Canada were the entire reasons for the prevention of rupture. *Jan. 1838*

After our instability had been so obviously shown by this lucky outcome and by the slaughter and fruitlessness in Florida, the stingy size of our army at last became patent. Congress at length gave voice to an increase. It allowed to every artillery company 16 extra privates and to every infantry company 38. It added a company to each regiment of artillery and another regiment of infantry to the whole establishment. It proportionately increased the officers in the engineer corps, the topographical engineers, medical and other staff departments. It gave to each person in the service, except general officers, an extra ration for every five years of service. It raised the enlisted pay to a scale ranging from $17 for a sergeant major down to $8 for a private. It prescribed that $2 a month was to be withheld until the expiration of enlistment. It replaced the bounty by three months' reënlisted pay. It gave to any enlisted man, serving continuously for ten years, 160 acres of *July 5 1838* land. It allowed the council of administration at any post to hire a chaplain at $40 a month and the Military Academy to have a professor of chemistry, mineralogy, and geology. It authorized 1 regiment of infantry to be equipped as light infantry and 2 to be armed with rifles.

Since Scott had made the peace with Great Britain possible it was necessary to see that no fresh causes for war arose. Part of the newly organized Eighth Infantry was accordingly used in small bodies on the lake boats to enforce the neutrality and to arrest any suspicious American sympathizers.

1838 to 1840

While this small contingent of the army was keeping peace in the north, General Scott again was ordered on another delicate mission in which the slightest error of performance meant war and the loss of many lives. The Cherokees, who still inhabited parts of Georgia and North and South Carolina, their native home, had, under questionable inducements on the part of our civil agents, agreed to emigrate west. The real truth was that since gold had been discovered in this region, our people were covetous of that part of the Indian country. This tribe had always been friendly and had largely taken up the education and customs of the states. The whole Cherokee nation realized that it had virtually been robbed of its territory. In spite of this feeling, some had emigrated, but about 15,000 refused to leave their mountain homes.

General Scott was accordingly chosen to bear the brunt of the affair by having to direct the emigration. His masterful appeal to the Cherokees not to compel war, his instructions to his soldiers to be gentle and firm, his square dealing and his quick demonstration of force, by drawing a circle of troops about the Indians, brought the desired result. Parts of the 4 regiments of artillery, the Fourth Infantry, a portion of the Second Dragoons and some Georgia militia were the troops designated for this work. Scott's arrangements were so complete and his promises so fully carried out that the Indians even submitted at his suggestion to vaccination. Nothing for the ordinary comfort of these people had been forgotten by him. One authority states that $2,500,000 was saved the government by this peaceful emigration. How much loss of life was prevented is inestimable. In addition to keeping us out of war, Scott and his troops retrieved the opprobrious reputation of the government, and washed clean the dirty smudges of our enviousness.

Further south in Florida matters had come to a standstill. Seeing the futility of protecting the inhabitants of that country or of rounding up the Indians with so few trained forces, General Jesup asked to be relieved. Colonel Zachary Taylor took his place. What the new commander did will be seen later. *May 15 1838*

Meanwhile it is scarcely fair to center the attention at this time upon the south and east. While the troops in Florida were fighting fever and hardship, the little stockades in the near west were protecting the settlers and having their brushes with the savage. Although none of these actions was large enough to record separately, they were none the less severe and difficult. The redskin was beaten off only to return later. Something had to be done in the way of permanency. Though surveys were constantly injected into the unknown middle west country by army engineers, aided by other troops, more extensive feelers had to lengthen themselves into the infested plains before the troops could progress gradually and intelligently outward. One of the big moves at this time, which did so much for our country later, was the expedition of a then unknown young man. John C. Fremont was commissioned a second lieutenant of topographical engineers and sent with Mr. Nicholet, the distinguished astronomer, west of the Mississippi and north of the Missouri. This was the beginning of the magnificent explorations (to be described later) that were to make the "Pathfinder" so famous. *June 7 1838*

It may be interesting at this point to digress a moment in order to note certain advances in technique within the army. The Jenks breechloading rifle was tried out by the Ordnance Department. Although the weapon was thought unfit for infantry, a similar carbine was judged to be practicable for cavalry. The Board that pronounced upon the venture felt convinced that breechloading produced no advantage and was slower, especially because of the fouling of the piece. Since the muzzle-loader had to be rammed each time before firing, the bore would naturally, they thought, be kept cleaner than in a breechloader. *1838*

The Second and Sixth regiments of Infantry were finally entirely concentrated in Florida. What happened to a part of the Second might be cited as typical of conditions under which all the troops then marched. Captain Russell was taking the men of his company to Fort Dallas. With a part of them he was going by boat down the Miami River when the party was fired on by Indians from the shore. Immediately he ordered his men to row toward the savages and attack. Being the first to land, he had scarcely started the fight when he fell pierced by five bullets. His lieutenant continued the disadvantageous action not without success and brought back in safety the body of the captain. But so overwhelming was the number of Indians that all the few soldiers could do was to make a break for safety.

Sept., Nov. 1838

March 1839

While such tragedies were taking place, General Scott was ordered on his fourth mission to save the peace of the United States. It seems that the state of Maine had got into altercation with the Canadian authorities over its boundaries. The governor had gone so far as to call out 8,000 militia. When General Scott arrived his diplomatic handling of the situation closed the issue. Here again we have the trained soldier using all proper means to avoid war. All through these pages we will find that he who understands hardships and the business of arms not only does not want strife but does everything he can do to prevent it. But when the struggle becomes inevitable he acts as the skilled surgeon who cuts deep in order to gain a quick recovery.

March 1839

To be in better shape for the disturbances that were constantly threatening, the army chiefs sought to collect and drill the troops. A "Grand Camp of Instruction" was held at Trenton, New Jersey. All the regulars that could be scraped together in that part of the country went through some maneuvers. Among other things one battery of each artillery regiment took over horses from the dragoons and was formed into a light battery. This concentration was doubtless another forerunner of the modern summer camp.

Summer 1839

The war in Florida being unusually prolonged, General Macomb, general in chief, visited the scene of activities. After consultation with the principal Indian chiefs with whom he made a treaty he announced to the army and the public that

May 18 1839

the war with the Seminoles was over. This was the third time in three years that peace with these savages had been announced to the fighting forces by some high authority. On the previous occasions the Indians had broken faith with the addition of many Christian graves to the soil of the south. General Macomb's prognosis proved to be no exception.

For scarcely a month passed before events made force again necessary. Colonel Harney was on a march with 40 men toward the Caloosahatchee River. His men had camped with the same feeling of security that Dade had had three years before. The Indians met on the way seemed to be most friendly. But just before dawn one morning the camp was attacked and 18 of Colonel Harney's men massacred, he and the others barely escaping. Hostilities naturally were renewed with all the discomforts, horrors, and fruitlessness of past years. *July 23 1839*

Inside the army, the work of improvement went steadily on notwithstanding the ebb and flow of peace. The field artillery took another stride forward when Captain Robert Anderson translated the *French Regulations* so as to cover both the "horse and foot" artillery in one manual. It dealt with the passage of difficult ground in detail, and covered the maneuver of the battery from the "passage of carriages" to the "countermarch." Every conceivable manner of going "into battery" was explained with great thoroughness. These regulations contributed highly to the efficient part field artillery was going to play in the Mexican War. *1839*

During the ensuing year the regular regiments were moved about the country in a wild endeavor to stamp out the terrors of the frontiers. The newly organized Eighth Infantry, having finished its duty in helping to keep the peace with Great Britain, was started from Sackett's Harbor for the Wisconsin territory. The Winnebago Indians had left their reservation and were committing outrages. Going overland and by boat, the regiment arrived at Camp McKeon whence it proceeded against this tribe. *1840* *May 2 1840* *May 28 1840*

During this period the Seventh Infantry was taking part in actions near Fort King and Fort Drane, Florida. The Sixth was doing similar work. The Fifth was holding the Indians in check in the northwest. The Fourth was helping the Sixth and

Seventh in Florida. The Third was in the southwest, opening roads in the Sabine country in Texas, even to the extent of clearing the river of its undergrowth and jammed logs. The First and Second were scouring Florida. The field artillery was left to prevent further trouble in Maine. The Second and Third were in Florida and the Fourth on the lake frontier helping the Fifth Infantry. The First Dragoons were in the north and the Second in Florida.[7]

Evidently the means provided for solving the Seminole situation were few. *May 1 1840* General Taylor having found the task beyond him, asked, as his predecessor had done, to be relieved. General Armistead took his place. The new commander divided the territory into seven military districts for the purpose of making the tasks of the troops specific. His forces were augmented by the arrival of the Eighth Infantry which had just rounded up the Winnebago Indians and had traversed the entire *Oct. 1840* frontier to go south. The Third came from Texas a little later.

While the army was contending with the Seminoles, the administration at the Military Academy was signally helped. *July 20 1840* Congress recognized the office of Commandant of Cadets which Colonel Thayer had provided previously. The commandant, under the superintendent, was made responsible for the military instruction of the corps. Becoming now the chief instructor of infantry, cavalry and artillery tactics as well as of practical military engineering, he was able to unify the teaching of these subjects so vital to young army officers.

In Florida, responsibility for suppressing the Seminoles *May 31 1841* again became too heavy. General Armistead at his own request was relieved from command and Colonel Worth took his place. Although the First Infantry left for Forts Snelling, Crawford and Anderson in the northwest and the remaining troops were weary of so much length without strength, the new incumbent hit upon a successful plan. Pursuing the original idea of General Scott, he did not hunt the enemy directly but rather his dwellings and standing crops. General Sprague gives an intimate glimpse into these activities:

---

[7] The disposition of these regiments is correct only in a general way, because few of them at this time could be serving as a unit in any one place.

"Fever and dysentery were the prevailing diseases. Officers and soldiers were inevitably exposed to the vicissitudes of the climate. Day after day they were wet to the skin, then subjected to a burning sun, causing an atmosphere to arise from the heated sand almost unsupportable.

"The bands of Indians, which for years had lived from season to season, in the enjoyment of abundance, celebrating their corn dances and festivals, harassing the white man as suited their convenience or inclination, were now driven in small parties to remote and unhealthy hiding places. The foundation of the contest was reached, which inspired all with the hope of future success."

One of the curious incidents of this campaign is shown by Colonel R. H. Wilson, in his history of the Eighth Infantry:

"At the end of September, 1841, A, C, E, and G were at Punta Rassa where, owing to the fact that at certain periods during great storms the land was subject to overflow from the waters of the Gulf, platforms were erected sufficiently high it was supposed for protection, on which were pitched the tents of officers and men. On the night of October 10th a terrific storm arose which soon grew to a tornado, and at dawn of the next day all that could be seen of the cheerful, busy camp of the day before were the uprights and roofs of the hospital. In the branches of two large, moss-mantled live-oaks which stood in the center of what was once Camp Caloosahatchee, were clustered, close as spines upon the prickly pear, all the men of the command—some 200—who, true to their teachings, had clung to their arms through all these trying hours, and not one had perished."

Speaking of arms, it is well to note that heretofore no large arms had been made by government arsenals. Only carriages and small arms had been manufactured by the army. *1841* However, at this time an advancement was made in having ordnance officers inspect the making of government cannon in private plants. The quality of the output was thus materially raised. The small arms then on hand included 672,542 muskets, 25,154 rifles, 7,287 carbines and 22,047 pistols.[8] The large guns in use consisted of the following kinds and sizes: 8-inch Columbiad, 10-inch mortars and howitzers and 42, 32, 24, 18 and 12-pounder guns—smooth bores.

A real improvement in small arms took place when the model 1841 rifle made its appearance. It had a percussion lock and used a reduced powder-charge. Besides keeping the motions of loading a muzzle-loader to the minimum, it modified the kick. It proved to be the most accurate and dependable spherical bullet rifle ever made and marked the end of the production of flintlocks. Springfield and Harper's Ferry arsenals began to turn out several thousand of these every year and to remodel the flintlocks.

The place of the dragoon was materially helped by the appearance of the first extensive *Cavalry Tactics* issued "by order of the War Department." The manual provided for a drill of 2 ranks, the rear rank taking two feet from head to croup. A regiment consisted of 5 squadrons and each squadron of 5 platoons, 2 platoons formed a division. A captain commanded the squadron with a junior captain second in command. The lieutenants each commanded a platoon. The term "troop" had not yet come into use.

Winter 1841
Feb. 14 1842

While the army was improving its training and technic internally, it was also extending itself externally. The Big Cypress Expedition and the plundering campaigns of Colonel Worth were having their effect. That officer made an estimate that there remained only 300 Indians of both sexes abroad. The others in a starving condition, having lived on palmetto root and cabbage, had surrendered without bloodshed to the troops. The President after some hesitancy approved Worth's *May 10 1842* suggestion that the war terminate. However, some of the regulars stayed in the south to make sure of peace and succeeded in *Aug. 14 1842* capturing the last of the savage chiefs, even after peace was declared.

---

[8] The arsenals and depots holding these included:

Allegheny arsenal.
Apalachicola arsenal.
Augusta arsenal.
Baton Rouge arsenal.
Champlain arsenal.
Detroit arsenal.
Fort Monroe arsenal.
Frankford arsenal.
Kennebec arsenal.
Little Rock arsenal.
Mount Vernon arsenal.
North Carolina arsenal.
Pikesville arsenal.
Rome arsenal.
Saint Louis arsenal.
Washington arsenal.
Watertown arsenal.
Watervliet arsenal.
Charleston depot.
New York depot.
Palatka depot.
Rock Island depot.
Tampa Bay depot.
Harper's Ferry armory.
Springfield armory.

The First, Second, Fourth and Sixth Infantry regiments were sent north and northwest, the Second to Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the First, Fourth and Sixth to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri.

The regular troops had lost throughout the war by death 1,466 officers and men from a maximum strength of 4,191[9] souls, or over 41 per cent.

Had there been a sufficiency of trained troops at the beginning when the Indians were willing to try conclusions and were assembled, this great mortality could have been reduced nine-tenths. Instead, volunteers were called out time and again at a cost of several million dollars which netted the United States nothing. The untrained men as usual could not fight because they did not know how. At the outset our miserly attitude with regard to the soldier had robbed us of a speedy peace and the lives of a great number of good men.

Peace was no sooner announced than the army was reduced from 12,539 to 8,613 for a population of 17,000,000. At the *Aug. 23 1842* most, 1 man in every 2,000 persons kept alive the elements of discipline and training. The country thus laid itself open to more murder and bloodshed.

However, the shrinkage was made by simply reducing the number of men in a company. No commissioned officers were cast out of the service. Although the staff was cut down, army organization was not greatly disturbed. A piece of economy was inaugurated in the replacement by ordnance officers of civilian superintendents at Springfield and Harper's Ferry arsenals. But a setback was given the cavalry when a regiment of dragoons was transformed into one of riflemen.

Now that railroads had been extended and new roads had been built, especially in the east, communication between the outlying army and the seat of government was quicker than before. Accordingly the eastern and western divisions of the army, commanded each by a general officer, were done away with and nine separate departments[10] created. By such distribution each of these smaller commands could deal directly with the general in chief in Washington and avoid the delay of long and winding channels of correspondence.

---

[9] Those actually enlisted and commissioned.

July 11 1842

In the following year the cadet body of the Military Academy was for the first time legally composed of young men from all parts of the United States. The students were required to be appointed according to congressional districts. Each representative was to have one appointment of a youth actually residing within his district. Ten cadets were to be appointed at large. Although such a custom had been in practice, never before had it had legislative sanction.

March 1 1843

Shortly afterward a school for drill for the brigade was originated at Jefferson Barracks. Although the scope and kind of work was limited, the attempt showed an effort in the service to train large units. The Third and Fourth Infantry regiments which were then stationed in Missouri, constituted the personnel. These organizations by their application gained a reputation for smartness and precision, raised their esprit and prepared themselves well for the Mexican War in which they were to take part. *1843*

---

[10] ''Department No. 1. West Florida, and the states of Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Tennessee and Kentucky. Headquarters, from the 1st of November to the 30th of June, in each year, at New Orleans, and for the remainder of the year at the Bay of St. Louis, or Baton Rouge, as the commander may elect.

''Department No. 2. The country west of the Mississippi, north of Louisiana and Texas, and south of 37th degree of north latitude. Headquarters, Fort Smith.

''Department No. 3. The state of Missouri (above the 37th degree of north latitude); the state of Illinois; the Iowa territory; that part of the Wisconsin Territory west of the 13th degree longitude west from Washington; and the Indian country north and west of the lines indicated. Headquarters, Jefferson Barracks.

''Department No. 4. The states of Indiana, Ohio and Michigan; the part of the Wisconsin Territory, not included in Department No. 3, and the Indian Country north. Headquarters, Detroit.

''Department No. 5. The states of Pennsylvania, New York, Vermont, New Jersey, Connecticut and Rhode Island. Headquarters, Troy, N. Y.

''Department No. 6. The states of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Maine. Headquarters, Portland.

''Department No. 7. The states of Delaware, Maryland and Virginia. Headquarters, Fort Monroe.

''Department No. 8. The states of North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia. Headquarters, Sullivan's Island, Harbor of Charleston.

''Department No. 9. (Temporary) east and middle Florida. Headquarters in the field.''

Already the rumblings of that war could be heard in Texas, where the struggle for independence was progressing. The infantry regiments of the brigade school were sent to Camp Wilkins, Camp Salubrity and Grand Encore, Louisiana. The Second Dragoons were ordered to Fort Jesup. This force constituted the first installment of Taylor's "Army of Occupation." On this account the act making the Second Dragoons into riflemen was repealed. *Spring 1844* *April 4 1844*

Some years before this Lieutenant John C. Fremont, it will be remembered, had started out with some troops in order to make explorations in the region of the Missouri River. Up to this time he had surveyed the Des Moines River, the Platte River, and a large part of the country between the Missouri River and the Rocky Mountains. He had also gone over the Rocky Mountains to the mouth of the Columbia River and had explored most of what is now Oregon and Northern California. He had traversed over ten thousand miles of freezing mountain and sickly basin. Now a lieutenant colonel, he found himself in California ready to take up the conquest of that country.

The little army in its garrisons and camps, though interrupted by uprisings here and there, went on with its discipline and training day by day. The soldier at sunrise found himself in ranks. Hurrying into his room or tent he made his bed, swept his quarters and set his belongings in order so as to be ready for inspection twenty-five minutes after reveille. After he had eaten his breakfast, he cleaned his musket or his rifle, polished his breastplate, cartridge box and buttons, brushed his hat, pompon and clothing, and generally prepared himself for parade at nine o'clock. At that dress ceremony, he saw the national colors raised to the top of the flag pole, heard the "Star Spangled Banner" played, beheld his officers move to the front and doff their hats to the commanding officer and then he himself, while yet in ranks, marched with his company in review. After the ceremony was over he changed his dress uniform for the more comfortable one of fatigue, if he was not detailed for guard that day. If on guard, he prepared himself more thoroughly in dress uniform for inspection, paying particular heed to his rifle and the cleanliness of his person. At guard mounting which took place immediately after parade the soldier awaited the results of inspection to see whether he would be selected as the neatest and most immaculate man in ranks. If he were so selected he was appointed orderly at headquarters and was not required with the others to walk post and guard prisoners at work. If he was not on the guard detail for the day, he attended drill shortly after guard mount. Throughout the remainder of the day he helped in his fatigue uniform to make the post cleanly and to repair and construct those parts of the garrison that were ever in need of such labor. Since the small fort or stockade was far away from civilian help, the soldier shod the horses, fixed the chimneys, mowed the grass, picked up and carted away the débris, repaired the boots, sawed and planed the wood, fitted and nailed the lumber into buildings and performed all manner of chores for the garrison. Dinner was usually at one o'clock; the roll call of retreat, when the national colors were lowered, was at sunset; and tattoo, another roll call, was at nine o'clock. The soldier was in bed at nine-thirty when taps was sounded by the drum.

Such was the routine of the army in the lonely and desert places of the nation. Too often these rounds of duty were interrupted by the call to arms or the order for a movement over weird distances. The long march, fraught with the same discipline and training as in the post, took the soldier to an unknown region where he was confronted afresh with rounding out his small comfort by the work of his hands, or where his hardships and dangers were excruciating torture.

But these men seldom forgot their duty to the pioneer and those at home. Creeping boldly to the edges of the frontier, which they pushed further and further outward, these little bands of trained and disciplined Americans wove the capillaries of civilization as thickly as they could through the wilderness. They had come from the heart of the country, but in spite of the fact that the heart beat feebly at times for them, they pressed onward dutifully and loyally. They knew hardship and death. They were not itching for war. They wanted peace, but they knew that they could attain it quickly, after the strife was inevitable, only by having sufficient strength and skill.

Scott had saved the nation from great loss of life and serious embarrassment only by the narrowest of margins. By his indefatigable energy and uncommon tact he had persuaded mobs, convinced politicians and made diplomats see that the government was really at heart not anxious to take up arms. One minute he would calm rioters and the next judiciously placate foreign agents. An undisciplined and sometimes disloyal part of the civil population had placed the United States in a compromising position. His was a duty of honorable service to his flag. As an army officer his mission was to wrap his country with protection at any cost to himself. He had to be all things to all men, to the Canadian as well as the Cherokee, to the troublemaker as well as to the soldier.

Though Scott was a man of high merit in such tasks, other army officers tried whenever they could to rid themselves of strife wherever the savage could be mollified. Macomb, Clinch, Taylor and many junior officers treated with the Seminole as long as there was a hope of keeping him in check without bloodshed. But the Florida Indian was faithless. He understood force alone. The great pity was that there were too few of the trained army to end the affair quickly and thereby save the lives of many of its members and of the thousands of settlers, men, women and children, who were cut down by the tomahawk and scalping knife, during the long years of hopeless tracking.

Even with these handicaps, the fortresses and stockades arose as safe retreats for the pioneer settlers and the roads wound their rugged ways through sickly swamps and choking forest, in spite of the lurking bow and arrow. The soldier's jaw was set, his arm was flexed even as he toppled under a burning sun, with a hot fever or a fiery wound. Though his bones were laid in the dismal dust of nowhere, the work went on. When the automobile to-day tours safely from New York to Palm Beach, from Chicago to Kansas City, the anguish and courage of these determined Americans is commonly overlooked. But each mile is none the less a silent witness to their constructiveness.

CHAPTER VII

THE ARMY WINS AND WIDENS THE BOUNDARIES

(1845–1859)

THE army is about to have a taste of real victory, to win a war, to overcome the entire enemy in the field. It is soon to cross into a foreign territory, meet superior numbers, bear gross hardships and stick to its colors. It is going to go continuously forward and not be turned spasmodically backward. It will press the foe through cactus, swamp and mountain passes into the very gates of the hostile capital and then take the city. It will return as a conqueror to safeguard the remaining wilderness of the nation. It will prove to the world that the American soldier, trained, disciplined, and well led is the acme of bravery and hardihood.

1845 In the year before the Mexican War, the army consisted of 8 regiments of infantry, 2 of dragoons and 4 of artillery, 3 general officers, the corps of engineers, the corps of topographical engineers and the following departments: adjutant general; quartermaster, inspector general; commissary; medical; pay; purchasing; and ordnance. The whole represented a paper strength of 8,613 men and an actual strength by the end of the year of 5,300. The army's effective force was less than at any time since 1808, though the population since that time had doubled.

These troops were occupying more than 100 posts. The artillery was largely on the Atlantic coast. The infantry and cavalry together occupied the broad line of the Great Lakes and the western frontier outlined by the Mississippi, Missouri, Arkansas, and Red rivers. The main posts in the west were Fort Snelling, near St. Paul, Jefferson Barracks, near St. Louis, Fort Leavenworth, in western Kansas, and Fort Jesup, in western Louisiana.

Winfield Scott was the major general in chief and the two brigadiers were Gaines and Wool. Taylor was colonel of the Sixth Infantry, Twiggs of the First, and Kearny of the Second Dragoons. One of the colonels, Walbach, was 82 years of age, such senility being due to the lack of provision for proper retirement of officers. The officers of the lower units, however, were the great compensating factor of the coming war. Grant, Thomas, Reynolds, Hancock, Lee, McClellan, McDowell, Meade, Beauregard, Hooker, J. E. Johnston, Longstreet and "Stonewall" Jackson were in the service. And many who had resigned in the period surrounding 1836 were about to come back to the colors as volunteers, notably Jefferson Davis.

The Military Academy furnished nearly the whole quota of these trained young men. Approximately 500 graduates were already with the colors. A similar number were in civil life, many of whom came into the service with the state troops in the course of the war.

In contrast to the excellent results that were going to be obtained from having these skilled officers, were the debates in Congress which tended toward the abolition of West Point. A feeling that there was being raised up a sort of aristocracy by that institution led the unacquainted into the belief that it should be abolished.

Three times this cavil had nearly plucked the hen that laid the golden eggs. Secretary of War Eustis, just before the conflict of 1812, had tried to wreck West Point by open attack. At the close of the same war Colonel Swift had had to borrow $65,000 from a private individual in order to keep the school running, because Congress refused to appropriate the current expenses. And now the Academy lay in the throes of political hatred and ignorant juggling. Luckily the only setback that came of all this controversy was the reduction of pay of each cadet to $24 per month. Twice the Academy had been saved by the prospect of war and once by the intervention of a private individual. *March 3 1845*

While the cradle of the army was being disturbed, the higher officers were looking after technical betterment. General Scott's regulations entitled, *Instructions for Field Artillery, Horse and Foot,* appeared. The Secretary of War in issuing it *March 6 1845* enunciated a new rule. He bound not only the regulars but the militia also to the use of no other "exercises and maneuvers." This was a great step toward uniformity. The "school of the battery" prescribed completely movements by hand and by horse, and covered every possible contingency with which the battery might find itself confronted in action. For detachments of from 2 to 9 men in serving the piece, the duties were precisely described and each man numbered. The firing[1] was explained with great care. The pieces of the field artillery were the 6-pounder gun and the 24-pounder howitzer, both of bronze.

For regular infantry the muskets and rifles were being rapidly provided with percussion locks for caps, so that two motions of the manual—opening and closing the pan—were eliminated. In the main, however, the army all through the coming war had to be provided with the old flintlock musket, because a lack of appropriation had prevented a sufficiency of rifles. Since 1839, the superintendency of construction of muskets by regular officers, instead of civilians, had reduced the cost per weapon from $17.44 to $11.02 and saved the government over $70,000. By such thrift more rifles could be purchased, but there were yet not enough. Captain J. T. Cairns in a work called the *Recruit,* described the nomenclature of the "Fusil, Musket or Firelock" and gave elementary instructions for their use, including "Right shoulder shift—arms." The *1845* bayonet with a clasp, which permitted the separation of that weapon from the firearm, was largely distributed to regular troops.

---

[1] 22. "Firing. No. 4 stands in line with the knob of the cascable, covering No. 2. At the command Load, he steps to his right, takes the portfire stock out of its socket with his right hand, takes hold of the lighted end of the slow match from under the apron of the box, and, blowing it, lights the portfire; he then steps back to his place outside the wheel; holding the portfire stock firmly in the right hand, finger nails to the front, the portfire stock touching the wheel and the portfire inside of it.

"When the piece is not provided with a slow match box, the linstock is used. In this case, as soon as the piece is unlimbered, No. 4 steps in and takes the linstock from its socket, steps back again, and plants it in his rear, facing to his right and stepping off with his right foot for that purpose. He then draws back his foot and faces to the front. He lights the portfire by facing and stepping off in the same way.

"At the command Fire, he raises his hand slowly, clear of the wheel, turning the back of the hand to the front, brings the portfire rather in front of the vent and fires. As soon as the gun is fired he lowers the portfire slowly. When a lock is used he takes the lanyard in his right hand, moves to the rear so far as to keep the lanyard slack, but capable of being stretched without altering his position, which is to be clear of the wheel. Should the tube or cap fail to explode the charge, the gunner immediately commands, 'Don't advance, the tube or cap's failed'; upon which No. 2 steps inside the wheel close to the axletree; No. 3 advances outside the opposite wheel and gives his priming wire to No. 2, who pricks the cartridge; he then gives him a tube or cap which he fixes, and both resume their posts. No. 4 is answerable that the slow match is kept burning.

"At the command Cease Firing, No. 4 shifts the portfire stock into his left hand, cuts off the lighted end of the portfire, and places the stock in its socket; if a linstock is used he puts that up also. When using a lock he coils the lanyard round the neck of the cascable, or unhooks it and carries it in his hand, as the mode of attaching it to the lock may require."

Political feeling over the coming conflict had caused the concentration at Fort Jesup, of the Third Infantry, 8 companies of the Fourth Infantry and 7 companies of the Second Dragoons, all under command of Brevet Brigadier General Taylor. This force, then thought to be large, was the actual beginning of the "Army of Occupation." *June 1845*

Texas now being annexed, Taylor was ordered to some port where he could readily embark for the Texas frontier. Accordingly he proceeded with his troops to New Orleans. Under later orders he moved by boat to Aransas Bay, Texas. With poor craft he was finally able to land at St. Joseph's Island a force of about 1,200. These men he took by boat through the mouth of the Rio Grande and thence 25 miles further up the river to Corpus Christi. *June 15 1845* *July 1845*

Due to the inactivity of the enemy he was left undisturbed. But he did not improve his time by gaining information of the country and possible hostile forces or by training his troops. He seemed to be pleased to wait for the Mexicans and trust to chance.

He was, however, blest with a number of trained junior officers who took a pride in their companies. In spite of the neglect of the higher command, the young captains and lieutenants molded by Thayer's systems, gave care and lent precision to the smaller units. Besides, Taylor, although he little realized the fact, could have well been thankful for his two daughters. Through them he luckily possessed two sons-in-law who afterwards built the career that steered him toward the

White House. Bliss, his adjutant, as brilliant and educated an officer as the service held, headed off much mismanagement and wrote the reports that went back home. Jefferson Davis, the colonel of a Mississippi regiment in the greatest battles in which his father-in-law was engaged or rather disengaged, was the principal factor in turning the brave old gentleman's vacant leadership into victory. So Taylor, who chatted pleasantly with the soldier one minute and ignorantly sacrificed his life the next, was protected in the office and on the battlefield by domestic attachment.

Aug. 31 1845 Finally 7 companies of the Seventh Infantry, the remainder of the Fort Jesup troops, 2 volunteer artillery companies from New Orleans and a small force of Texas Rangers joined him.

Then throughout the fall and most of the winter, while Taylor sat inanimate, other troops were leaving bare the frontiers of the country to assemble at Corpus Christi. The Seventh and Eighth Infantry came from Florida; the Fifth from the northwest; the Fourth from Jefferson Barracks, Missouri; the Third from Fort Jesup; the Second Dragoons from Mississippi and Texas; and 10 companies of the First Artillery and 4 of the Third Artillery from Florida. Most of the artillery acted as infantry but apparently 2 companies were retained as field artillery. Some Texas Rangers and New Orleans field artillery brought his entire strength up to 3,900 men.

Taylor's camp was far short of comfortable. The canvas was little more than mosquito bar. The "norther" would one minute pour frigid water through the sievelike tents and a torrid sun would steam the occupants the next. Wood was collected with the greatest difficulty so that camp fires, except for cooking, were impossible. The drinking water was brackish. There was little or no amusement. Sickness abounded and spirits were low.

Nor was the monotony and discomfort relieved by maneuvers or any expedient to keep the command busy. Taylor did not know much of the art of war, did not believe in teaching it, and did not understand even how to maneuver his regiments. Naturally all the evils that flow from idleness overtook his troops.

The question of brevet rank and his settlement of the affair did not better the unity of his little army. It seems that the list of colonels at this time was badly confused. Some officers held a brevet grade higher than their regular rank, while others held simply the latter. Twiggs on the list of colonels was senior to Worth. But Worth was also a brevet brigadier general. Each claimed that he was the senior and would command in Taylor's absence. Scott in Washington decided in favor of brevet rank in conformity to the law. As a consequence Worth was given command in preference to Twiggs, who had throughout the lower grades been senior to Worth, and who had never had the chance to win brevet honors on the battlefield. But Taylor, after the decision was made, called a review in which he gave Twiggs the seniority over Worth. When Taylor saw that he could not carry out this order without trouble, he countermanded the review. He thus showed himself not only unwilling to comply with orders, but also incapable of causing others to do so. It logically followed that this little force came to lack confidence in their chief. Had it not been for the effort of the junior officers to overcome such demoralization, all traces of discipline would have vanished.

So Taylor sat and waited for the Mexicans without exploring his surroundings, finding out about the enemy's intentions or improving the small American command.

When instructions from higher authority told him that he should encamp at some favorable point along the Rio Grande, he was unprepared for a march anywhere. But then and then only did he begin to find out something of the roads and towns that lay about him, a matter which delayed him three weeks. Then he delayed himself another two weeks before he was finally on the road to Matamoras. *Feb. 3 1846* *Feb. 24 1846* *March 8 1846*

The march was an excursion welcomed by the troops. Those who were not too sick to go, had the relief of activity and a change of scene. The weather was fair. Except for the tarantulas, rattlesnakes, and centipedes, the camps along the way were novelties of strange objects and animals. Dressed in his thick, blue-cloth uniform, and carrying a heavy knapsack, blanket, musket and cartridge box, the soldier underwent unexpected physical torture under the burning sun. Thirst in the "alkali" dust raised by the tramp of the men, was suffocating

March 28 1846 and difficult to quench with saline water. Ultimately the column came out through the chaparral on to the Rio Grande, across which lay the towers of Matamoras.

At this camp, as at Corpus Christi, was assembled the largest regular force collected since the Revolution. The numbers were a little less than 3,000. Although Taylor issued peaceful letters to the Mexicans, he planted four 18-pounders in command of the city and began the erection of a bastioned redoubt, called Fort Brown.[2] *April 7 1846* This fortress was poorly placed in a salient of the river so that it could be easily enfiladed by an enemy. E. Kirby Smith in his diary gives an account of these days:

> "This morning we found the enemy had been busy during the night erecting breastworks and planting cannon opposite to us. What will be the result of all this I can only conjecture. We certainly ought not with so small a force be left here to face the whole Mexican nation. General Ampudia with more than three thousand veterans will, it is said, in a few days reach Matamoras.
>
> *Entries April 5–9 1846* "We have been as busy as a light infantry company on drill ever since we arrived eleven days ago. Such a night as last night I have never known in all my soldiering.
>
> "The arms were put in forming order and the men sat or stood about in miserable groups, without any possibility of sleeping, and at reveille this morning our whole brigade was marched to the works, it being our detail on a large fortification, which we are constructing as rapidly as possible. . . . We are here neither in a state of peace nor war. Our pickets and patrols have exchanged some shots, and several deserters have been killed in attempting to cross the river."

The first hostilities occurred with the crossing of the river by the Mexican General Torrejon with about 1,600 cavalry. General Taylor had ignored the advice of Marcy, the Secretary of War, to get some hard-riding Texans for use as scouts. Indeed he had been content with only that information which came into the limits of the camp. Accidentally hearing of the Mexican movement, he sent Captain Thornton with about 60 dragoons to reconnoiter. Naturally under such a slipshod view of the enemy, the captain soon found himself hemmed in by the Mexican command. Though he tried to cut his way out, he soon saw the hopelessness of his task after several of his men were killed or wounded, and was compelled to surrender. This was the incident that caused the declaration of war. *April 25 1846*

---

[2] Afterwards Brownsville.

Even after this affair, Taylor took no aggressive action or precautions. He was not even aware of the Mexican main column which was coming over the river right under his very nose. When, through no effort of his own, he finally understood that the enemy was already between him and his base, he at once retreated to Point Isabel, leaving the Seventh Infantry and Bragg's battery at Fort Brown. *May 1 1846*

After provisioning his troops, he returned toward Matamoras with about 2,200 men, having obtained 200 at Point Isabel. Hampering himself by taking the wagon train with him against the advice of his officers, he moved out slowly. Oxen hitched to the ammunition wagons did not quicken the progress.

Neither were the spirits of the men raised by such delay. The blue-coated soldier at night bivouacked in the dust without complaint but with an anxiety to meet the enemy. Lying down in his fatigue uniform with its colored trimmings he arose after a night of discomfort to face whatever might be in store further toward the Rio Grande.

At Palo Alto the Americans came in sight of the Mexican Army. Between chaparral and marshes the two lines were drawn up opposite each other, the enemy being astride the road to Fort Brown. Taylor's artillery, better handled than the Mexican heavy pieces, was so effective that it cut great swaths in the enemy's lines while they were forming. An attempt to turn the Americans' right by a superior force of Mexican cavalry was met by a hollow square of the Fifth Infantry. Then the grass was set on fire by the powder wads from the shells, so that a dense smoke screen kept the two armies from seeing each other well. In this haze, the disciplined American leaders, though getting few directions from Taylor, promptly *May 8 1846* and of their own accord, met the Mexican attempt to encircle the left. Ringgold's and Duncan's batteries seemed to move quickly and instinctively to the place where they were most needed. Though our troops were on the defensive, the fire of our artillery was deadly in spite of the smoke. But there was not enough remaining daylight for either side to have a decision. However, darkness came down with about seven times greater loss to the Mexicans than to the Americans.

May 9 1846 In the morning Taylor's little army, ready to renew the battle, was surprised to see the enemy's column disappearing through the chaparral toward Matamoras. But the Americans could not pursue and follow up their advantage with more than several hundred men, because most of the troops had to be used in fortifying the encumbering wagon train before it could be left behind.

May 9 1846 About 8 miles to the north of Matamoras, the Mexicans took up a position which made it difficult for American artillery to operate and be effective. Behind an old river channel which crossed the road at right angles, Arista, the Mexican general, placed his entire command. The bed, or Resaca de Guerrero,[3] was full of ponds and mud and in many places impassable. The Americans, all told about 1,700, came upon the Mexican artillery planted in the road and almost immediately thereafter there was collision. The dense growth of mesquite and cactus made it impossible for one company to see another. Men losing touch with their comrades had to spend their energies in hacking through nature in order to find the enemy. The mass gave place to the individual. A general was little more than a subaltern. An officer led the troops immediately around him. But discipline and training told as the Americans beat their way forward through the thick undergrowth and amid the hottest fire of shrapnel and bullets. Sinking in the mud, floundering through swamps, the American right, accidentally finding its way around the Mexican flank, pressed the enemy who fought desperately. The vigor of the assault, more than the plan of it, dismayed the enemy who gave way more and more until a panic seized the whole force. Many were captured, but Taylor's forces could not pursue because they were scattered and exhausted. At that, only about 4,000 of the Mexicans succeeded in crossing the river, where many were drowned in their flight.

---

[3] The battle was called Resaca de la Palma.

Taylor, instead of reorganizing his army and pressing his advantage, proceeded to Fort Brown, where the beleaguered garrison was relieved of its strain.

May 13 1846 While Taylor was thus inert along the Rio Grande, back in Washington Congress was declaring war and gorging the military establishment with much that could not give results for many months, and more that was wholly worthless. Now that the clash of arms was upon us, it was ready to organize a sufficient army. General Scott's previous sound advice to have a modest 24,000 men, to train them in camps at home and to put them in the field at Vera Cruz, had been ignored. Though such a method would have saved hundreds of lives and thousands of dollars, Scott's idea was regarded by the legislators as far fetched. Justin Smith says in *The War With Mexico* that "for an elect body our Congress fell below all reasonable expectations."

May 13 1846 After the fashion of a foolish virgin it now permitted the President to call out 50,000 volunteers [4] "for twelve months" or "for the war." The militia were to serve only 6 months. The short enlistment again was to defeat efficiency and be expensive.

The regular army, on the other hand, was to have its companies raised from 64 to 100 privates during hostilities. Since the period of enlistment was to be for 5 years, recruits for the regular army were hard to obtain in competition with the volunteers and militia, whose short terms were attractive. But in this legislation Congress heeded Scott and authorized, though too late for adequate fulfillment, a very good, economical force. Had such a thing been done 2 years previously, thousands of three-months men who had been called out by Gaines and Taylor from Louisiana, Alabama, Mississippi, Missouri and Texas, would not have had to undergo useless marching and the ravages of disease in reaching Taylor's rendezvous. There they remained too short a time to be little more than embarrassing.

---

[4] The volunteers had to furnish their own clothes, horses and horse equipment. For such "use and risk" the donor was to receive 40 cents a day, in addition to the pay of a regular soldier.

May 13 1846 Congress also added to the permanent establishment, "a company of sappers, miners and pontoniers" of 100 men who were to be a part of, and stationed with, the corps of engineers at West Point.

May 19 1846 A ten-company regiment of mounted riflemen was created in order to establish military stations on the route to Oregon and to take the place of regular troops called to the front. Though the officers were mostly political appointees, the regiment was the beginning of the Third Cavalry.

While these laws were being made, Taylor, instead of making short work of the demoralized enemy, contented himself with sending to Point Isabel for planks and mortars and in making a trip there himself. For eight days he was inactive, much to the disgust of his skilled subordinates.

May 17 1846 His enemy was finally so much encouraged by his silence that Arista requested a suspension of hostilities. Although Taylor disapproved such action, he gave permission for the Mexican army to retire, provided it gave up its property. Arista did not directly reply to this proposition but shortly afterward left the city at Taylor's approach. The latter marched in amid the friendly greetings of the natives, whom he treated with great consideration. But Arista, nevertheless, had made his escape with his soldiers and all the munitions he could carry.

While Taylor was resting in his oasis in the desert, Matamoras, an expedition was being fitted out farther to the north at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas. Colonel Kearny, the commander and colonel of the First Dragoons, was ordered to take possession peacefully or by force of northwestern Mexico. At the stockade of the Fort, which then consisted of a square of wooden buildings with blockhouses, was collected about 1,600 men: the First Dragoons, the First Missouri Mounted Volunteers (Colonel Doniphan), 1 company and 1 battery of artillery under command of Major Clark, 2 companies of volunteer infantry, the Leclede Rangers and 15 Delaware and Shawnee Indians.

Kearny, without waiting to organize all his troops, sent them off by sections. The regular dragoons were the first to go. Then came Doniphan's regiment, and so on. Those in advance had to break their way through the roughest of country. After passing over unwooded areas where cooking was largely impossible, where the water was brackish, the way uphill, the mosquitoes and buffalo gnats scurrilous, the food scarce and scurvy prevalent, the whole command finally found itself on the Arkansas near Bent's Fort. So great were the sufferings that some died and many were driven into delirium. And again Valley Forge had a competitor in the way of soldierly grit. The march, however, seasoned the raw troops and Kearny's strictness brought discipline. *June 6 1846* *July 29 1846*

While Taylor and Kearny with their meager thousands were trying to conquer Mexico, Congress was slowly realizing that its attention to the army had been superficial. At this late date, it created an additional major general and two more brigadiers for the war. It gave to a volunteer company an elastic strength of 64 to 100 privates and another second lieutenant. Seeing that it had asked of the recruit more than could reasonably be expected, it gave to every volunteer soldier $3.50 per month as a clothing allowance, and 75 cents as subsistence and forage allowance for every twenty miles of journey to the place of rendezvous. *June 18 1846*

Then realizing that the most vital matters had been overlooked, it allowed the President during the war to organize the forces into brigades and divisions and to appoint such general officers as he saw fit. It required a brigade to consist of 3 regiments; and a division, of at least 2 brigades. The irony of this last enactment is apparent when we know that such organization had had to be made by the commanders in the field long before the intelligence of the nice little law reached them.

As an instance of the hurry into which all departments of the army were plunged by the nearsightedness in times of peace, the Ordnance Department had to issue in the first year of the war:

Eighteen- and 24-pounder siege cannon, 8-inch siege howitzers, 8- and 10-inch siege mortars, coehorns, 6- and 12-pounder bronze field cannon, 12- and 24-pounder bronze field howitzers, 12-pounder mountain howitzers, caissons, traveling forges, battery wagons, artillery harness, 20,000 rounds of siege artillery ammunition, 3,000 rounds of field artillery ammunition, 60,000 rounds of 8- and 10-inch mortar shells, 1,000 cannon balls, 400,000 pounds of black powder, 1,300 war rockets, 24,000 muskets, 3,000 rifles, 2,000 carbines, 1,000 pistols, 2,000 sabers, 2,000 noncommissioned officers' and musicians' short swords, 12,000,000 cartridges, 400,000 flints and 1,000,000 percussion caps.

Horses, too, had to be supplied in greater numbers. Taylor found that the artillery, which had had little chance to practice, needed two more animals to draw each filled caisson.

As for Taylor's army, it was living at Matamoras as best it could. Outside of the slight pursuit of Arista, which netted a few prisoners, and the search through the town for concealed munitions and supplies, there was no military activity save an expedition of a small force under Colonel Wilson, to Reynosa, 60 miles away. Taylor spent most of his effort on keeping supplied from the base at Point Isabel.

The volunteers who had been called by Gaines and Taylor were beginning to pour in, such influx creating a need for more supplies and spreading an infection of lawlessness. The new so-called troops were eager for excitement and resentful of restraint. Stretched in small camps from Point Isabel to Matamoras, they lacked control and supervision. Most of them were three-month men who would not stay for twelve months. They had marched through bad country under generally unskilled officers, many of whom could not drill a squad. Some, indeed, had been absent from their companies on the march, weeks at a time. One brigadier general came in a light buggy in which he proposed to make the campaign. The officers, as a rule, had been elected as in previous wars so that most of them knew not what to do. Some generals like Pillow hindered more than they helped the progress of discipline. As a result there were too often brawls, riots and shooting frays. Five months at least of hard drill was necessary to prepare such troops for action. They would neither stay nor submit, and Taylor did not insist on their training. Meade said these volunteers were one costly mass of ignorance, confusion and insubordination. Trained regular officers in the lower grades found themselves outranked by former juniors who had been dismissed from the *July 31 1846* army for incapacity or misconduct. About 20,000 men were finally collected, a large proportion of whom had to be sent home almost immediately with great expense and no help to the government.

Taylor in this situation decided to go west to Camargo. With the urge in the States for action, he had to do something. His untutored mind would not admit of skill or prevision. So he went up the river, not knowing the conditions of the town he was going to occupy, nor even having any idea of its strategic importance, because it had none. The troops suffered intensely with the heat and thirst. The discouraged volunteers, knowing nothing of care for their health, were sick to the extent of a third of their number. The First Tennessee, for example, was reduced from 1,040 to 500 men fit for duty. In addition, frogs, ants, scorpions, tarantulas, centipedes and mosquitoes disturbed the soldier's comfort.

When Camargo was occupied it was found to be a small *July 31 1846* town that had been inundated by the spring freshets. Since it had no supplies of its own, provisions had to come from Point Isabel. Now that the troops were over a hundred miles farther from the coast than they were at Matamoras, the only result of this movement was an added difficulty of transportation.

While Taylor thus sat in useless and trying Camargo, Kearny, near Bent's Fort, was reënforced by a regiment and battalion of Missouri volunteers. Having sent a message to Santa Fe showing the uselessness of resistance and the pro- *Aug. 2 1846* tective quality of his mission, he left his camp for the long march to that place over what is now the route of the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fe Railroad. The way was through high ranges of mountains, over buttes and ridges and along the valleys. The rations were so scarce that flour, water and salt pork were the main diet. Taking over by tact and force the village of Las Vegas, on the way, he crept on with his troops to San *Aug. 15 1846* Miguel. There, when the mayor wavered, Kearny assured him

Aug. 18 1846 that he had captured his town. Treating the people and crops
with consideration, he pressed on twenty-eight miles toward
Santa Fe, knowing that a large force of Mexicans was barring
his path. On approaching his goal, after leaving the artillery
Aug. 19 1846 on a commanding hill, he learned that the Mexican force had
fled south. Among the little adobe huts without floors, Kearny
raised the Stars and Stripes and pronounced Santa Fe under
Aug. 22 1846 government of the United States. It was there that the Peublo
Indians came in and submitted. Then Kearny issued a
proclamation of assurance of a free government and began the
erection of Fort Marcy to defend the town. So far a great
country had been taken with no bloodshed.

While Kearny was occupying Santa Fe, Taylor was making
ready for an advance southwest toward Saltillo. Instead of
employing a good secret service as Scott had advised, Taylor
as usual went forward trusting to developments. Again his
movement was intended to give an answer to the public cry for
action rather than to be effective.

Cerralvo, sixty miles away, was the first objective. Worth,
Aug. 19 1846 with the Second Division of regulars, moved out first. Persifer
F. Smith with the Second Brigade of mixed troops, Twiggs
Sept. 5 1846 with the First Division of regulars and Butler with the "Field
Division" of volunteers, followed. Finally headquarters left,
and the whole army of about 15,000 was on the move. The
march was over stony ground and through thorny bushes. Heat
and thirst wrought such distress that starts in the march were
Aug. 25 1846 made as early as three o'clock in the morning. At length the
advance troops came into the beautiful town of Cerralvo. It
Sept. 15 1846 had plenty of springs, the houses were of stone and supplies
abundant. Finally all of Taylor's command except the Texas
volunteers and those who had been sent further west, were concentrated
in the town.

A squadron of the Second Dragoons accompanied by Captain
McCulloch's Texas Rangers set out in the van for Monterey.
The rangers carrying heavy rifles, powderhorns, bowie
knives and Colt's revolvers, and dressed in irregular uniforms,
were in appearance not much unlike the Revolutionary volunteers.
The march now being through fertile fields and high

hills, the spirit of the command rose. About a thousand Mexican cavalry hovering in front lent zest to the progress.

Sept. 17 1846

When the main body arrived at Marín, Taylor learned that at Monterey there would be possibly decided opposition. But the army of 3,080 regulars and 3,150 volunteers went eagerly forward.

Sept. 19 1846

As they approached Monterey they were greeted by fire from the well-fortified stone city situated on rather high ground. To reduce this stronghold the Americans had only 4 field batteries, a 24-pound howitzer and one 10-inch mortar. Reconnoitering parties set out and discovered that the western end of the city was vulnerable in flank. Mansfield's prisoners confirmed the assumption that night.

The Americans having confidence after Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma that they could overcome a superior force, were in no mood to be thwarted. Worth with about 2,000 men advanced to the right of the city in order to turn Independence Hill and occupy the Saltillo highway, which was the only avenue of retreat southward for the Mexicans. Advancing about seven miles through thick country and having his rangers stampeded by Mexican cavalry, he was stopped by darkness and a heavy storm.

Sept. 21 1846

The next day he moved forward only to meet a charge of Mexican cavalry. With the aid of Duncan's battery the enemy was driven back on the town. Then the column spent the rest of the day in charging Federation Ridge and in taking three forts. At nightfall about 500 men, mostly regulars, were sent forward to Independence Hill, the main flank position.

In the meantime at the eastern end of the city, Taylor had not been meeting with as good results. He had evidently looked upon the capture of this stronghold much as he viewed a brush with the Seminoles in Florida. He seemed to have little plan or method. He sent Garland forward with the following directions:

> "Colonel lead the head of your column off to the left, keeping well out of reach of the enemy's shot, but if you think (or you find) you can take any of them little Forts down there with

the bay'net you better do it—but consult with Major Mansfield, you'll find him down there."

This queer bit of haziness was a sample of Taylor's mental grip of the situation. Though Garland's mission expressed in such an equivocal order was not overly intelligible, he advanced through fields and thickets and crooked streets in the face of a withering fire. The artillery could not do much execution and the units by such misdirection were separated. But before noon, at a crucial moment, when the engagement at the eastern part of the city seemed to be lost, Colonel Jefferson Davis led a charge that took the principal outlying fortress. Even so, the First Ohio farther to the right had to retreat with heavy loss.

On the western side of the town, Worth's troops under Colonel Childs, who had led his men to the foot of Independence Hill, had crouched at the base all night in the rain and cold. *Sept. 22 1846* In the early morning they quietly crawled toward the summit. At dawn, with a rush and sharp fighting, they took the crest and sent the garrison fleeing.

Taylor's troops far on the other side of the city saw the tide of Americans rise higher and higher and the Stars and Stripes finally wave over Independence Hill. *Sept. 22 1846* But during this day Taylor did nothing beyond shifting a few details from the captured redoubt. Neither did he coöperate with Worth or send him any word. Worth realized he must depend on himself. Expecting fire from the commanding positions around him, he disposed his troops (now numbering about 1,000) in the valley, so as to ward off counterattacks. Without coöperation he had taken three redoubts and a commanding fort and had cut the line of communications of the enemy. But he was left alone to work out his own salvation.

Sept. 23 1846 The next morning Quitman who was occupying the captured works on the east side of the town started an attack from house to house on his own initiative. He heard Worth's cannon, which had been dragged to the top of Independence Hill, firing with effect. Little by little Quitman's scattered men closed in. Worth now feeling from the firing heard from Quitman's troops that a general engagement was taking place, started toward the town. Leaving a force to guard the Saltillo highway, he had his men with pickaxes, crowbars and shells with fuses, work from house to house. At noon both sides, weary of the struggle, rested. Taylor, doing no more than the work of a corporal, walked about under severe fire. Night fell with the Mexicans cooped in the Plaza.

Sept. 24 1846 When the morning came, the Ohio volunteers who had taken the place of Quitman's troops, prepared to renew hostilities when a bugle in front sounded a parley. Ampudia was proposing an armistice. After much haggling, it was agreed that all public property and the city be turned over to the Americans within a week. The individual arms and ammunition were to be retained by the enemy, who was to retire behind a line through Lenares and Rinconada Pass. So Taylor let the Mexicans, who had suffered little loss, go practically as they had come, apparently little concerned as to whether they might fight the Americans another day. He even went so far as to accede to an armistice.

While Taylor was recuperating from his losses at Monterey, while his Texas troops were being discharged because they wanted to go home and while the Second Infantry was arriving to reënforce him, General Kearny, back in Santa Fe was starting his journey through an unknown wilderness westward. *Sept. 25 1846* Cutting roads through country over which there was as yet no trail, his effective dragoons, still in shabby clothing and on short rations, pressed toward the Pacific. When well on their way the troops met Kit Carson who told how Fremont and Commodore Stockton had already made an attempt to seize California. *Oct. 6 1846* Such news gave impetus to the weary, half-fed soldiers. Leaving Major Sumner with a portion of his command to hold New Mexico and sending back Colonel Cooke to get the Mormon battalion at Santa Fe, Kearny pushed on with only two companies.

In the meantime, General Wool at San Antonio was trying to get into shape volunteers raised in Tennessee, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois and Mississippi whom he had brought to that point. From there some 1,400 men, including a small portion of the Second Dragoons, set out for the march south. *Sept. 25 1846* It was a dispirited and unsoldierly force, but insubordination and lawlessness were harshly met by the strict discipline of General

Wool. Due to him the volunteer was made to regard the rights of the Mexican civilian. At length this turbulent command came to the Rio Grande opposite the Presidio. *Oct. 8 1846*

While this column was breaking its way through cactus, and picking up what food it could, General Taylor at Monterey did not enjoy the success of a victor. Sickness, desertion, and the short enlistment had reduced his command to less than 12,000 effectives. *Oct. 15 1846* Bandits, hanging on his long line of communications, caused many men to be detached. And the ill-advised armistice brought criticism upon him.

Everything was at a standstill. The government at this late date of the war had come to no definite plan of campaign. The three independent commands of Kearny, Wool and Taylor were expending exertion and blood in merely driving the unhurt Mexican armies away from the border settlements. No decision could result from the unstrategic dents hammered at random in the edges of the enemy's great territory. While the troops were being wasted by disease and hardship, the authorities at Washington were closing their ears to the Vera Cruz plan suggested by Scott, which was going to strike at the heart of things and end the war quickly. In contrast, the United States soldiers were scattered in ineffectiveness.

Doniphan's command made a fourth separate force. Having reduced the Eutaws to submission and subdued the Navajoes among the snows in the mountains, this officer was preparing to concentrate his forces south of Santa Fe at Valverde. *Nov. 1846* His 800 men, mounted and armed with rifles, hated restraint and were eager for any excitement.

Taylor was now forced to notify the Mexicans that the armistice must terminate. With such a change in the situation, he was in the predicament of casting about for activity. Disregarding the advice of the Secretary of War and placing still further distance between his army and its base, he set out west for Saltillo, the capital of Coahuila. *Nov. 13 1846* Marching over the high tablelands of temperate verdure, the troops came to their destination. *Nov. 16 1846* The town was hilly, consisting mostly of adobe huts, and was not inviting from the standpoint of supplies or comfort. Leaving Worth in command, Taylor went back to Monterey.

Meanwhile, General Wool, without instructions from Taylor, had continued south with his ragged and poorly fed volunteers. *Nov. 21 1846* Having without opposition taken Monclava, about 60 miles north of Saltillo, Wool had had time during the armistice to drill and discipline his men. He then set out south for Parras, *Nov. 24 1846* where he received orders from Worth to join the Saltillo forces. Within two hours Wool was on his way, so complete was his *Dec. 17 1846* reconnaissance and his state of readiness.

While Worth and Wool were trying to effect a junction in the west against the rumored attack by Santa Anna, Taylor at Monterey was splitting his command so as to send part east toward Tampico. Accordingly Twiggs with the First Division of regulars and Quitman with some Georgia, Mississippi and *Dec. 13, 14 1846* Tennessee volunteers set out for Victoria, 200 miles toward the east coast.

Shortly afterward Patterson at Matamoras started, at the direction of the Secretary of War (who had not taken the pains to notify Taylor), directly south for the same place. Patterson's *Dec. 24 1846* treatment of some 1,500 Illinois and Tennessee volunteers under him showed his ignorance of the military profession. His men went hungry time and again when there was abundant food about them. Many of them through neglect died of exhaustion. And they, generally, cordially hated him for his lordly severity.

The end of the first year of the war found Quitman at Victoria, Wool at Agua Neuva (near Saltillo), Worth at Saltillo, Patterson en route to Victoria[5] and Butler at Monterey. Doniphan was at El Brazito near El Paso with 500 men. Kearny had reached San Diego, California, and Cooke was marching to Kearny's assistance. The first year of the war closed with these scattered columns spending their vigor and blood in indecisiveness.

What Cooke and Kearny had done can be seen from Cooke's order issued to his battalion after the march:

"The lieutenant colonel commanding congratulates the battalion *Jan. 31 1847* on their safe arrival on the shore of the Pacific Ocean, and the conclusion of their march of over two thousand miles. History may be searched in vain for an equal march of infantry. Half of it has been through a wilderness where nothing but savages and wild beasts are found or deserts where for want of water, there is no living creature. There, with almost hopeless labour, we have dug deep wells, which the future traveler will enjoy. Without a guide who had traversed them we have ventured into trackless tablelands where water was not found for several marches. With crowbar and pick and axe in hand we have worked our way over mountains which seemed to defy aught save the wild goat and hewed a passage through a chasm of living rock more narrow than our wagons. To bring these first wagons to the Pacific we have preserved the strength of our mules by herding them over large tracts, which you have laboriously guarded without loss. The garrison of four presidios of Sonora concentrated within the walls of Tucson gave us no pause. We drove them out with artillery, but our intercourse with the citizens was unmarked by a single act of injustice. Thus, marching, half naked and half fed, living upon wild animals, we have discovered and made a road of great value to our country."

---

[5] Taylor was personally nearing Victoria to join Quitman.

The remainder of the war with the exception of Buena Vista belongs to Scott. After trying to euchre both Scott and Taylor into false positions, the administration, not valüing the science of war and viewing Scott as a "visionary," finally, having nothing better to offer, had to adopt the Vera Cruz plan. Scott knew that there was only one way to gain a speedy peace. It was to strike at the heart and center of the hostile country with the largest force obtainable.

Jan. 3 1847 Having arrived at Camargo, he found he could not get in touch with Taylor. He, therefore, requisitioned from Taylor's force about 4,000 regular infantry under Worth, 4,000 volunteer infantry, 500 regular dragoons, 500 volunteer dragoons and 2 field batteries.

Jan. 8 1847 Returning to Point Isabel, he personally planned with skill, foresight, and dispatch the details for launching his campaign. His masterful mind went thoroughly into the business of providing everything from supplies to boats. Northers, rains and scarcity of sailors hindered him, but he overcame his obstacles with tireless energy. Even the fact that Taylor was apparently avoiding him did not swerve him from his single purpose.

Taylor had indeed defiantly disobeyed the instructions of the President and Scott for a personal interview between the general in chief and himself. He had gone so far west toward Saltillo that touch with Scott was impossible. The answer may be found in the announcement by Taylor to Senator Crittenden that he was a candidate for the Presidency.

While politics were pushing the pawns of war into haphazard gambits, legislation strove all too late to put in the field more good troops. It now increased the regular establishment by 1 regiment of dragoons and 9 regiments of infantry. One of the infantry regiments was to be composed of "voltigeurs and foot-riflemen and be provided with a rocket and mountain howitzer battery." Enlistment was to be for the war only. An additional major, on account of the scarcity of field officers for campaign, was to be promoted in each regiment. Each honorably discharged man of all the forces was to receive a bonus of 160 acres, if he had served for twelve months, and 40 acres, if he had served for less time. *Feb. 11 1847*

At length Scott set sail for Tampico with the First and Second Pennsylvania, a part of the Louisiana regiment, and the South Carolina, New York and Mississippi contingents. Twiggs with his regulars followed. For the next days and weeks the scarcity of transports delayed the remainder. *Feb. 20 1847*

While Scott was busy preparing to drive his fateful wedge into the vitals of Mexico, activity in the west near Saltillo drew Taylor's forces together for conflict. The main camp had been surprised and had retreated to Buena Vista beyond Saltillo. Twenty thousand Mexicans were approaching. Had they come on with a charge, nothing could have saved the American army. Wool had selected the position and had been left in command by Taylor, who had gone back to Saltillo to prepare that place for defense. As it was, the Mexicans drove back Marshall's troops from the top of the mountain. Night gave the first phase of the battle to the enemy. *Feb. 22 1847*

Next morning the Mexican army in force came through the pass. Marshall, who had reascended the mountain, was nearly *Feb. 23 1847* outflanked by Ampudia, when Washington's battery began to have a telling effect. In the center, Colonel Bowles of the Second Indiana and 4 companies of Arkansas mounted riflemen fled before the Mexican onslaught. The Kentucky and Arkansas dragoons on the mountain, being cut off, also withdrew in panic. Although Bragg, Sherman and O'Brien trained their guns on the Mexicans against great odds, the way to the American's rear lay open.

Taylor then appeared on the scene. Though his brave attitude gave confidence, he uttered few directions, which were poor. The initiative of his trained subordinates came into play in spite of the absence of orders. Davis with his Mississippians and Bowles with the remaining Indianians charged and repulsed Ampudia's cavalry. To Davis especially belongs the credit for stemming the tide. At the head of his Mississippians he fought with dash and daring. Although he had to be carried from the field severely wounded, he had been the main factor in turning defeat into possible victory.[6]

Taylor, without knowing the size of a large force of Mexicans in front, ordered Hardin to charge it. Bissell, McKee and Thomas joined in the attack, but the forces were too overwhelming. Hardin, McKee and Henry Clay perished while standing to the last. But Bragg and Sherman galloped from another part of the field with their tired batteries, and some of the Indiana and Mississippi regiments charged the enemy's flank and rear. Finally, the fire of the batteries became so hot for the Mexicans that they retreated.

The queer battle was over, and so was the day. That night Taylor feared for the fate of his army. He had lost 673 officers and men and about 1,600 had skulked in the rear or deserted. But during the darkness Santa Anna drew off south.

What remained of the American army of the north was then spread out to guard the long line of communications from Agua Neuva to the coast. Thus ended the activities of Taylor's command.

---

[6] For his heroic work, Jefferson Davis was offered the office of a regular brigadier general instead of the ordinary brevet. He, however, declined the position in the regular army.

In the east Scott, having collected all his troops by boat at Lobos Island, took strenuous measures to keep smallpox from spreading and to drill his command. Studying the situation, he came to the conclusion that the fortified town of Vera Cruz should be invested from the rear, instead of being frontally assaulted, with the resultant heavy loss to his men. *Feb. 28 1847*

At this late date in the second year of the war when his campaign was already launched, Congress was busy with enactments that could not benefit him for many months. It voted 2 more major generals and 3 more brigadiers to the army. It authorized the organization of the forces into divisions and brigades as before. It gave to each artillery regiment 2 more companies and the authority to have 2 light batteries. It increased the pay and ordnance departments. Having made the mistake of the short enlistment, it attempted to rectify that error by offering $12 bounty to every soldier in Mexico who would reënlist for the war. It recognized distinguished services of the noncommissioned officer by the reward of a brevet of the "lowest grade of rank," and those of a private with a certificate of merit, which carried with it the extra pay of $2 per month. *March 3 1847*

Before this seeming generosity of the lawmakers could be made known to Scott, he had landed 10,000 men without mishap at Sacrificios Island. Through the surf and over the dunes his troops went inland and formed Camp Washington in a semicircular line around the rear of Vera Cruz. They built fortifications and brought up artillery from the fleet for the bombardment. Most of the work had to be done at night and in silence. *March 9 1847* *March 13 1847*

At last when the positions were satisfactory to Scott he summoned the town to surrender. When the refusal came, the guns from the fleet and on land opened fire. Within four days the occupants of the damaged city, hungry and terror stricken, capitulated. Scott's army having lost less than twenty killed, marched into Vera Cruz. He had saved his men, in spite of the urgent impatience of some of his juniors, who wanted to assault the place. *March 22 1847* *March 26 1847*

But the glory of this victory was lost in the mind of Scott when he realized what was before him. At his back was an adverse administration, that had given him less than the troops he had asked for. Yellow fever would soon be attacking the coast towns. Supplies and vehicles of every kind had to be collected soon for his march up through the 8,000-foot mountains over which there was one road to the city of Mexico. Only 180 out of the 800 wagons had arrived, and the mules and horses were correspondingly short.

April 8 1847 Finally leaving the First Infantry to guard Vera Cruz he sent Twiggs' division (2,600 men) forward toward Jalapa. Patterson next day followed. Although Scott did not believe that a large force was in his front, he wisely acted as though it were and himself set out on the march, followed by Worth's division.

At Cerro Gordo, Twiggs was held up by fire from a strong position across his path. When General Scott arrived he gave a very clear and comprehensive order for the attack, after gaining information through Captain Robert E. Lee and other officers whom he had sent out on reconnaissance. The action was to be a turning movement against the enemy's rear by Twiggs, supported by Shields' and Pillow's divisions. Even the pursuit was provided for in Scott's directions. The troops advanced through the thickest of tropical undergrowth. *April 18 1847* Twiggs' regulars took Independence Hill with difficulty and loss, and Shields and Riley went on to Cerro Gordo. The Mexican batteries in front fell under Pillow's and Tower's troops. With minor mishaps that were to be expected the heights were taken. Though Pillow's actions and some of Shields' volunteers were criticizable, the execution of the plan moved along with force and dispatch, and what Mexicans could get away fled in panic toward Jalapa. Worth's division pursued. Altogether, thousands of prisoners, 40 cannons, and 4,000 stands of arms were taken.

April 20 1847 Scott then moved the troops over the road to Jalapa which had been cleared by Worth.

There dire problems confronted him. Indeed, in many ways his predicament resembled the trying hours of Washington during the darkest part of the Revolution. Money was scarce. The government had not sent any. Seven regiments and 2 companies of volunteers would go home because their enlistments were expiring and nothing in the midst of this campaign could stir their patriotism to remain. The government in its usual calm at home paid and provided for the soldier sparingly. The commander in the field was left to scrabble. Out of 1 contingent of 3,700 men only 1 company remained. Scott was assured the recruits were soon to come. But even if they did, they would be worthless until after five months' training. And then, after a long delay, they did not come. His force was reduced to 7,000 in the face of 20,000 Mexicans. Here he was, in a hostile country, poorly provisioned, and without strength. And to cap all, the President was scheming at home to supersede him by Benton, who was ignorant of the art of war.

But Scott moved his advance troops on towards Puebla in spite of his difficulties and by overcoming many of them. Not over 4,000 privates were able to move forward. Worth started *May 6 1847* the movement. Fortunately that city made only a show of opposition as it was approached by Worth and Quitman, who entered it. Scott, in the meantime, was organizing his rear and supplies before moving up. When he arrived in the town, he *May 20 1847* at once started the drilling, the engineer training and the preparation of maps for the interior. It was difficult work with the morale of the men naturally below par. They had been paid for only two months out of the eight. Since Scott had little cash and the Mexicans knew his condition, prices rose prohibitively. But by clever and clean methods, he restored financial equilibrium and caused the city to offer him a place for the upbuilding of his forces.

With six weeks of steady drill and good treatment of the inhabitants, on whom he was absolutely dependent for most of his supplies and for the chance to occupy Puebla, he slowly emerged by his own efforts with a force of fair quality but poor *July 8 1847* quantity. Cadwalader and McIntosh ultimately arrived with 1,100 men and $250,000 in coin. The recruits also came. Major General Pillow,[7] having done his usual delaying and demoralizing work, arrived with 2,000 men. Finally General *Aug. 6 1847* Pierce brought 2,500 more.

Scott now had about 10,900 effective men. Of the regular troops all the infantry regiments except the First (which had to be at Vera Cruz), the main portions of the three dragoon regiments, the Second, Third, Fourth artillery, a light artillery battalion, and a howitzer and rocket battalion, were present. The new Ninth, Eleventh, Twelfth, Fourteenth, Fifteenth and the Voltigeur regiments of infantry together with the equivalent of about 3½ regiments of volunteers from New York, South Carolina and Pennsylvania swelled the numbers, and 300 marines made the sum total. As can be plainly seen the large proportion was made up of fairly trained and disciplined troops.

---

[7] A general by virtue of having been a law partner of the President.

As soon as it was possible Scott, in spite of his handicaps, *Aug. 5 1847* ordered the advance. Twiggs, Quitman, Worth, and Pillow, in the order named and one day's march apart, set out for the *Aug. 7 1847* heart of Mexico. Passing higher up the mountains the little army now of about 10,700 men, trudged onward until it was about that many feet above sea level. It met many hindrances, among which were 13,000 trees felled as barricades, which it pushed aside. At length it came to the valley of Mexico City.

Here Scott had to decide which of the four roads he would take toward his final objective. Pushing Captain Robert E. Lee, Beauregard and Worth's brigade ahead to reconnoiter, he found out the lay of the country and decided to approach the capital by the western gate. Then he ordered a force of en- *Aug. 19 1847* gineers and Pillow's troops to build a road over the pedregal[8] toward Churubusco. Although he did not yet desire a general engagement, Pillow seemed to know better. That political general attacked a powerful force of Mexicans, who routed the Americans. Scott then coming on the scene, saw that San Geronimo was the key to the situation. He sent Shields with his brigade to support Smith, who had already gone in the direction of that place. The troops sat and shivered in a storm all night. In the morning they were awakened early so as to go quietly toward their goal and take it with the bayonet. Lee, *Aug. 20 1847* in the meantime, had by superhuman effort carried to Scott complete information as to the whereabouts of his troops. The commander was then able to assemble more men as a reserve, and the battle of Contreras was begun. In seventeen minutes

---

[8] Lava-bed.

San Geronimo with all its strength was taken. The Mexicans' loss was about 1,700 against that of 100 Americans.

Although the distance was now short to the city of Mexico, Scott knew he could not leave his baggage and Quitman's brigade exposed in rear. So he ordered Worth to clear San Antonio of the enemy. But when Stevens found that the Mexicans were already retreating, he determined to attack them in flight. In the pursuit, the troops came upon the masked and heavily fortified bridgehead of Churubusco. There they were held up for some time because of the unexpected strength of the position. But Scott's handling of a turning movement in the rear caused the defenders to give way after a hard struggle, and Churubusco fell. The enemy was pursued almost to the city gates. The loss to the Mexicans was about 10,000; to the Americans about 950. It was a stubborn battle, but the courage that comes with competent leaders and superior training had counted.

Aug. 21 1847 Scott now did one of the most loyal and self-sacrificing things ever done by any man in high position. Although the way to the city now lay open, he forsook the personal glory of capturing the capital of the enemy's country because he felt wisely that such action would not so quickly "conquer a peace." The political conditions were such that a successful assault would mean only a postponement of a permanent settlement and the unnecessary sacrifice of many soldiers.

That night he caused Worth to occupy Tacubaya; Twiggs, San Angel; Pillow, Mixcoac; and Quitman, San Augustin. During the next few days Scott was waited upon by the Mexicans who proposed a cessation of hostilities. Accordingly an *Aug. 24 1847* armistice was agreed upon with the express purpose of negotiating a peace. Two weeks were wasted in talk, while Santa Anna was violating the stipulations of the agreement. When his *Sept. 7 1847* duplicity was discovered, hostilities had to be renewed.

Sept. 8 1847 Worth in the early morning was sent against Molino del Rey, where the troops encountered a very hot fire from the forts. Stopped, tossed back, leaders shot down, the gallant men returned again, not to be denied. The King's Mill was the first to fall and then Casa Mata after much loss and sharp fighting. But the victory from a fruitful standpoint was barren. Though the Mexican losses were heavier than those of the United States troops, the captured arsenal contained nothing of value and did not further the entrance into the city.

Sept. 11 1847 At a council in which the engineer officers, Lee and Beauregard, argued the various merits of positions and suggested the next move, Scott decided to attack the western gate—Chapultepec.

Sept. 12 1847 An artillery duel between the large pieces in the enemy's fort and our intrenched batteries opened the fight. All day the cannonade continued, not without effect on both sides, but altogether the garrison of Chapultepec suffered more than our troops.

Sept. 13 1847 Scott took the next day for attack. Pillow was to hit in front, Quitman and Worth on the two flanks and Smith in rear. Artillery again opened the fight. The infantry, advancing at eight o'clock, drove in the outlying troops. The fort, a very well-built stronghold, remained to be captured. On the lines went, but when they came to the ditch the scaling ladders did not arrive. The men lay down under galling fire and merely held their own, because nothing could be done in reply to the enemy's guns. But the waiting moments were terrible. At last the ladders came, and the soldiers, withheld from their prize for so long, climbed up the sides, were knocked down, scrambled up again and finally crowded over the walls. Some rough hand-to-hand work and Chapultepec was taken.

Quitman met resistance from a small redoubt which he overcame. Worth was held up at one entrance to the city proper, but, by ingeniously mounting guns on roofs, he drove the Mexicans before him. The gates of Belew and San Cosme were similarly taken, and the Mexican capital lay limp before the army.

Sept. 14 1847 The next day the victorious troops marched into the city, Santa Anna having fled.

The war was not over, but the fighting had ended. Scott appointed Quitman as governor of the city and proceeded at once to reorganize his forces and his long line of supplies.

He had conducted a brilliant campaign with little or no error. With minimum loss of life and time he had marched through the vital territory of a hostile population. Even so, he had been hindered more by the administration at home than the enemy in front.

The volunteers with scarcely any training had been of little help. Most historians have been very hard on them. R. M. Johnston says:

> "With officers not competent to maintain discipline, let alone handling their men in action, they made of the Stars and Stripes an emblem of pillage, destruction and outrage. They were 'dreaded like death in every village in Mexico.' They 'fled in every action in which they have been engaged.' At Monterey, volunteer regiments bolted. At Buena Vista, it was only the Mexican turning movement that swept many of them back to their stations. General Pillow begged for a single company of regulars at Cerro Gordo, to prevent a whole brigade from stampeding."

Their lack of training is attested to by many statistics. For example their rate of sickness was three times as great as that of the old regiments. But they themselves were not to blame. Whether patriotism or adventure had been their main motive, they nevertheless underwent hardship voluntarily for their country. They had been jockeyed into a false position by an obtuse and wily control of military affairs. There were not enough trained men on hand, so that the volunteer had to be used, abused and sacrificed.

Training was the thing that the government had ignored. By force of circumstances, rather than by foresight, the army in Mexico consisted largely of trained junior officers with regulars, and trained senior officers with volunteers. Few of the regulars in high command were scientifically skillful in gaining a victory with the least loss, because they were the outcome of stagnant handling in the previous thirty years. Scott stood preëminent and alone. He had pulled himself up by his own boot straps. His clear vision at home and his brilliant work in the field, rank him, in quality, second to no leader of our history. He realized fully conditions and situations and sacrificed his own personal ambition for the peace of the nation. Wherever tribute was due, he gave it without a tinge of meaner feelings. Though not himself a graduate of the Military Academy, he bore no resentment to the West Pointer. He unhesitatingly said at the close of the war:

> "I give it as my fixed opinion that but for our graduated cadets the war between the United States and Mexico might, and probably would have lasted some four or five years, with, in its first half, more defeats than victories falling to our share; whereas in less than two campaigns we conquered a great country and a peace without the loss of a single battle or skirmish."

In other fields of this war it must not be forgotten that Stockton,[9] Kearny and Fremont took California, Wool marched with difficult troops south from San Antonio to Taylor and was now in command of that long line which held northern Mexico. Doniphan, too, had beaten with his 800 men 1,000 Mexicans at Brazito, routed 1,200 at Sacramento, taken and held the capital of Chihuahua for two months, crushed a fierce band of Comanches at Paso, coupled up with General Wool and embarked for the United States in the summer of 1847, thus completing a victorious march of 3,500 miles in fifteen months.

If training had shone during hostilities, it was to count more than ever in the occupation of a conquered country. Each of the main cities along Taylor's and Scott's routes had to be ruled justly by a military governor. The rowdy soldier had to be severely punished side by side with the Mexican robber.

In Mexico City Scott's troops, due to necessary distribution and losses, numbered less than 6,000. For three months after the capture, not a single reënforcement provided for by the late laws of Congress had arrived. It was not until the end of the year that any reënforcements set foot in the capital. The numbers were finally swelled to 11,000 on paper and 8,000 fit for duty. It was then possible to have sufficient men to occupy the mining towns, and to repel attacks in the outlying districts, such as Jalapa. The efforts of Scott and Wool both tended toward the establishment of firm discipline and peaceful relations with the Mexicans.

Dec. 17 1847

---

[9] Naval Officer.

It was, however, an uphill task. Physically and mentally the soldiers were in a sorry state. When the government sent the volunteers into a foreign country to wage war, with the injunction that they furnish their own clothing, it had asked a very impossible favor. Poorly paid and much tattered, the state troops had a hard time to be decent in appearance. It was not until very late as usual that Congress passed a law to furnish clothing to volunteers in the same manner as to regulars. *Jan. 27 1848*

Altogether, this stay in a foreign country was naturally distasteful to the troops. The excitement of action had simmered down to the most trying routine. During virtual peace these men were undergoing the discomforts of campaign. What was the hitch, the technicality, that was keeping them from their homes in the states? They had finished what they came out to do. They had done their part. What was the matter with the slow wheels of state? The treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo had ended hostilities. *Feb. 2 1848* Why was this occupation among a people, who spoke a different language and did not understand our ways, dragging on so long? Fighting, disease, driving off bandits from supply trains, obeying and enforcing a stringent martial law, and constant drills and parades did not offer much recreation.

It is not surprising that desertion, gambling, drunkenness, theft and worse crimes abounded. A host of bootleggers, blacklegs and thimbleriggers offered ready inducements on all sides. Scott stated in one of his reports:

> "The same intolerable work at general head-quarters is to be perpetually renewed, or all the credit of this army for moral conduct, as well as gallantry and prowess in the field, will be utterly lost by new arrivals, and there is no hope of bringing up to the proper standard distant posts and detachments."

The only activities of this time were confined to northern Mexico. Colonel Price, who was military governor of New Mexico, got wind of an uprising in Chihuahua. Marching with great speed from El Paso he arrived at Santa Cruz. *March 1 1848* Having blockaded the town, and having received reënforcements, he forthwith attacked the place. *March 9 1848* After fighting his way through

March 16 1848 barricaded streets and executing some rather quick and rough work he was successful. This episode completely ended all armed controversy until peace was actually declared.

However, there arose in the main army near Mexico City an internal strife that lowered morale distinctly. Scott placed in arrest, and preferred charges against, Pillow, Worth and Duncan, one of whom at least was a political spy of the President. The Chief Executive had been averse to Scott's success, because Scott, being a Whig, ought not to become too popular. The actions of the three accused officers were insubordinate. But the President, believing their versions, ignoring his general in chief, and making up his mind at a great distance from the scene of ruction, peremptorily relieved Scott and restored the three officers to command with their highest brevet rank. After having been the prime factor of victory over Mexico, Scott was called home in disgrace.

Robert E. Lee said that now that he had performed his task he was "turned out as an old horse to die." So Scott took his *April 22 1848* leave of an army who trusted in him and loved him as a whole, and Major General Butler, a Democrat, was left in command.

Soon thereafter began the general preparation of the army *June 12 1848* for leaving Mexico. General Worth's Division was the last to quit the capital. In the main plaza the troops were drawn up, each country's colors were saluted and the United States flag gave place to that of the Mexican. Then began the long descent to Vera Cruz. It was a glad body of weary men who finally entered the lowlands of the coast, where they did not wait long *July 22 1848* in that fever district. Five companies of the First Artillery were the last to go just eighteen days after peace had been *July 4 1848* formally declared by the President of the United States.

The newly created regiments had already left for the States. They were to be mustered out at the following places: the Third Dragoons at Jefferson Barracks, the Ninth Infantry at Fort Adams, the Tenth and Eleventh at Fort Hamilton, the Twelfth and Fourteenth at New Orleans, the Thirteenth at Mobile, the Fifteenth at Cincinnati, the Sixteenth at Newport Barracks and the Voltigeurs at Fort McHenry.

The remaining regular army, after the reduction due to legislation, was scattered in reduced numbers over a wide field.

Winfield Scott

The first and Second Artillery were rendezvoused at Governor's Island and the Third and Fourth at Fortress Monroe. The First, Second, Third and Fourth Infantry under Twiggs were concentrated at Pass Christian, Louisiana. The Fifth Infantry went to Arkansas and Indian territories, occuping and building Forts Gibson, Smith, Washita and Towson. The Mounted Rifles, Sixth, Seventh and Eighth Infantry went to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri, under command of General Kearny. Eight companies of artillery and 3 companies of the First, and 7 of the Second Dragoons, were stationed on the United States side of the Rio Grande.

Congress now acted wisely in allowing officers of the regular establishment to hold the rank they had attained in the war, by being carried as additional numbers in their grades and by being assigned to their old units. The major who had been added to each regiment was retained, as were many of the staff, together with the 2 companies in each of the artillery regiments. The number of privates in each organization was fixed at 50 for the dragoons, 64 for the mounted rifles and 42 for artillery and infantry. The relatives of each enlisted man who died in the service were voted three months' pay. *July 19 1848*

Long marches by some of the regular regiments were immediately entailed, because of the acquisition from the war of 960,000 square miles of territory, including the present states of New Mexico, Arizona, Colorado, Nevada, Utah and California. Now that this vast country had been gained by the army's successes, it was to be made safe by the army's efforts. A long overland march by 2 companies each of the First and Second Dragoons was made along the Rio Grande, through El Paso, over the Gila and finally into California. The Mounted Rifles likewise, on account of the disturbances in Oregon, where some volunteers had murdered Indians in return for a massacre of missionaries, made its march over rugged country to that territory. A company of the Third Artillery set sail for California around Cape Horn. *Oct. 1848*

The year 1848 passed out with troops scattered over the old and new territory of the United States. The army had to strive for restoration under the handicap of demoralizing reduction. Many of the light batteries had to be dismounted and most of the organizations were reduced. The actual strength of the army was little over 8,000.

Winter 1848–49

When gold was discovered in California, soldiers deserted for the El Dorado by the wholesale. Captains in the west found themselves in some cases without a single soldier in their companies. The small army became still smaller every day. But the remainder and those that could be recruited, as they began to be stationed in the new western territory, helped as they could the "prairie schooner" and the "forty-niner" across wild tracts of unexplored country.

The Mounted Rifles or Third Dragoons made a long march of 2,500 miles from Fort Leavenworth toward Oregon. But for Fort Laramie and Fort Kearny, there was not a house between Fort Leavenworth and the Columbia River. The column plodded through trackless wastes, oftentimes without wood, water or grass.

May 1849

May to Sept. 1849

The Fifth Infantry lost in one month 46 men by the scourge of cholera that was so prevalent with the emigrant trains. In addition to sickness and hardship, units were split and sent over long distances. For instance, 4 companies of the Fifth marched from Fort Leavenworth to Santa Fe and 6 companies from northern Texas to El Paso. From these places they then made successful expeditions against the Navajo and Apache Indians. Likewise the Fourth Artillery and 2 companies of the First were sent from Fortress Monroe to Fort Pickens and Pensacola, Florida, where they were kept busy constructing roads and keeping the Seminoles in leash. Other regiments were similarly distributed.

March 2 1849

1849

Several internal changes at this time affected the army. The office of Judge-Advocate was created. Heretofore his duties had been performed by the detail of an officer of the line. The position now became the life work of an officer who could devote himself to legal study. A captain of the army could be selected and given the brevet rank and pay of a major of cavalry. As for drill and training, Cooper's *Regulations for the Militia* brought new developments in drill. Soldiers were formed into squads for recruit drill and mounted troops for the first time marched and wheeled by "fours."

At this time the army went seriously to work in garrisoning the new territory in order to make it habitable. Little by little nearly all of the troops were occupying tiny posts over the prairies so as to be ready to push back the Indian before the civilian occupant. The small parties of "forty-niners," singularly vulnerable to pillage and outrage, had given the savage confidence and lust for further attacks. To offset such incursions wherever they might appear, it was necessary to have many strongholds. The First Infantry, for instance, garrisoned in the southwest, Forts Merrill, McIntosh, Duncan and Ringgold Barracks. Other regiments built and garrisoned more. In one engagement with the Indians the First alone lost 8 men killed and wounded.

Jan. 1850

April 12 1850

The pitiful attempt to have a small force everywhere at once caused long journeys of immense hardship and waste of time in movement. The Seventh Infantry, for example, was sent from Florida to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri, thence to the Little Arkansas River, back to Fort Leavenworth and then distributed over the Arkansas frontier, all in less than six months.

June 1850

Oct. 1850

Congress, seeing finally that it was difficult for the army to be in two places at once and that atrocities could not be checked with the number of troops on hand, gave voice to an excellent piece of legislation. It made the enlistment period five years and allowed the President to recruit each company up to 74 men. Thus, without the addition of a single officer, the army could be increased in cases of necessity by 4,488 men.

June 17 1850

Congress had been made to have a change of heart in another direction. The war had proved the merits of the Military Academy. Several minor acts showed the confidence of the legislative body in that institution. The professors of engineering, philosophy, mathematics, ethics and chemistry were given a flat rate of pay of $2,000 and the professors of drawing and French each $1,500. The Superintendent was to receive no less than the highest-paid professor.

Sept. 16 1850

For the army in general, Congress for the first time recognized foreign service in its pay provisions. Those officers serving in the far countries of Oregon and California were to receive $2 a day extra and the enlisted men were to have their pay doubled.

Sept. 28 1850

While Congress was busy making these unusually constructive military laws, the Yuma Indian was particularly zealous in molesting emigrants. The country in the vicinity of the Gila was wild and unexplored and the Yumas were exceptionally treacherous. After some difficulty the site of Fort Yuma was established, which gave opportunity for General Smith, commanding the Pacific Division, to send a boat to the head of the Gulf of California. Lieutenant George H. Derby[10] of the topographical engineers was designated to make a reconnaissance of the country from the Gulf to the Fort, in order to establish a route from San Francisco. For 150 miles this officer penetrated this region and mapped the way to the fort.

Winter 1850–51

1851 In a similar manner, Captain Litgreaves, with 50 men, went from Zuni westward until he reached the Colorado, whose course he followed to Fort Yuma. Encountering the hostile Mojaves and Yumas, he made overtures of friendship and kept on his way. Though the journey was rugged and full of hardship, especially from the intense heat, he learned much of the customs of these tribes in addition to making a survey.

To offer havens for the traveler and settler and to have safe places in case of attack in force, many forts had to be erected. Major Heintzelman's troops built Fort Yuma. Other units of the army established Fort Kearny at Grand Island on the Platte River, Fort Laramie in Wyoming, Fort Bridger in Utah, and Fort Hall in Idaho, constituting the main chain of forts which protected the western routes of travel. Besides these garrisons, approximately seventy smaller ones dotted the plains. To construct a fort the soldiers were halted at a likely spot and given tools and the open country. With incredible swiftness and ingenuity they built barracks, officers' quarters, storehouses, guardhouses, headquarters and even the stockade barrier with its blockhouses. So in addition to being required to face the savage, these pioneer soldiers had to build their own shelter or be without any.

1851 Away in these remote places, driving off Indians and constructing strongholds, the troops never lost their punctiliousness. The adherence to a prescribed uniform intimates this quality of self-respect and discipline. The difference in grades was indicated by the buttons on the coat. The major-general's buttons were placed in double rows and in groups of threes, the brigadiers' in twos, and the field officers' without grouping. The company officers had but a single row. The coat was lengthened for enlisted men to halfway between the hip and the knee. The shoulder strap was worn by officers whenever the epaulet was omitted. The shape of the strap and the insignia upon it were the same as persisted down to the beginning of the World War. The present-day chevrons were similarly adopted for the noncommissioned officer. The "cloak" overcoat with frogs of black silk came into vogue.

---

[10] Nom de plume, John Phoenix, author of "*Phoenixiana*" and other sketches, the first American humorist.

The French bell tent was prescribed for use of enlisted men in the field. Just why mustaches were allowed to be worn only by cavalry regiments is not quite clear.

As an outgrowth of economy, changes of station and equipment were quite demoralizing. All the light batteries, except Bragg's of the Third and Taylor's of the First, were dismounted. The Third Dragoons returned from the Mexican frontier to the States, all the horses and most of the men being transferred to the First Dragoons. The Fifth Infantry relieved the Seventh in Texas and built Fort Belknap on the Red Fork of the Brazos River. A detachment of the Third Dragoons in taking horses overland to California met the Rogue River Indians whom they repulsed at the cost of the loss of an officer and several men. Some of the regiments had traversed the entire country during the year. The Third Dragoons, after having gone from one ocean to the other, had to recruit at Jefferson Barracks and reorganize for the third time in five years, on account of casualties.

March 1851

June 1851

June 18 1851

July 16 1851

Great attention was given at this time to heavy and mountain artillery as one of the reactions of the war. Drill regulations issued at War Department direction, covered the service of such pieces as the 8- and 10-inch and 24-pounder howitzers, 8- and 10-inch siege mortars, the coehorn mortar, the 10- and 13-inch seacoast mortars, the stone mortar, the 8-inch columbiad and guns of various calibers. Of the carriages there were the siege, barbette, casemate, flank casemate and columbiad. All cannoneers were required to be instructed in the *School of the Piece, Field Artillery,* before undertaking heavy artillery. As to purpose and use, heavy artillery was classified into siege, garrison and seacoast. The mountain artillery consisted of a 12-pounder howitzer which, with its carriage and ammunition, was packed upon three mules.

At no time during this period did surveys and expeditions against marauding Indians cease. *Feb. 6 1852* Company K of the Third Infantry overcame a band of Apaches with the loss of three men killed, and made a successful expedition against the tribes along the Gila River. *June 6 1852* Brevet Lieutenant Colonel Craig was shot and killed by two deserters while in command of a survey of the international boundary line of Mexico. Captain Marcy of the Fifth Infantry, with his company, and Captain G. B. McClellan, corps of engineers, explored the Red River from the mouth of Cache Creek to the river's source. *May 1852* They made peace with the Mojaves and found many valuable mineral specimens such as copper and gypsum.

July 5 1852 Some of the journeys of the troops were very costly. Eight companies of the Fourth Infantry left New York Harbor for a change of station on the Pacific Coast. The travel was by water, except across Panama. The railroad over the isthmus being at this time incomplete, the regiment had to march a great part of the way. Cholera and fever overtook them. Before they reached San Francisco 107 had died of disease.

In the east, confidence in the Military Academy was again *Aug. 6 1852* expressed by the Congress. The pay of professors and assistant professors was raised as an evidence of the appreciation of instruction imparted at that institution. *Sept. 1 1852* And the Secretary of War did not lower its standard by appointing as superintendent, Brevet Colonel Robert E. Lee.

1853 In the west, Captain Wright of the Oregon volunteers almost overturned the work of such expeditions as Marcy's by inviting some of the marauding Rogue River Indians in Oregon to have a feast and make a treaty. When they had gathered under his supposed protection, he and his troops opened fire on the defenseless savages and killed all but ten of them.

Such a proceeding naturally caused an uprising among these Indians who made war on the isolated settlers by burning the crops and murdering the innocent whites. The army in that vicinity finally succeeded in subduing the tribe.

The troops in the service were distributed over a wide territory. The Fourth Artillery was represented at Fort Independence in Maine and on the Rio Grande; the Second Infantry was spread from Goose Lake, Oregon, to Yuma, Arizona; the Fourth Infantry was at Vancouver Barracks, Washington; and most of the First Artillery was in Florida. The remainder of the army was scattered widely between these extremes. *1853*

While the meager army was trying to cover so much territory, the Military Academy was thrown into confusion by the abrupt change of the course of study from five to four years. The Secretary of War, against the advice of the faculty of that institution, made this decision and caused the reconstruction of the curriculum after the term had begun. This action disturbed temporarily the Academy's efficiency. *Oct. 11 1853*

In the journeys of the army in this period, disasters in travel were more common than in later times when the railroad was better developed, hygiene more understood and the ocean steamer more trustworthy. The greater part of the Third Artillery embarked at New York to go to California by way of Cape Horn. Off Cape Hatteras the vessel became unmanageable in a storm, her machinery was disabled, her sails were blown away, her deck was stripped and she sprang a leak. For days she was tossed about without any aid reaching her. Finally a Boston bark, *Kilby,* succeeded in getting off 108 passengers, but the hawser that held the boats together parted in the operation. *Dec. 29 1853* The vessels were so separated that the troop ship could not again be found. Finally it was sighted by the British ship, *Three Bells.* *Dec. 31 1853* The survivors were taken to New York and Liverpool. From exposure and drowning over 200 of the 600 aboard perished.

The next year, some of the survivors of this regiment went overland to California straight across the continent, while the other part sailed successfully in the course it had undertaken before.

Notable among the explorations of this year was one which Lieutenant Whipple, topographical engineer, conducted along the 35th parallel in search of a railroad route west. *Spring 1854* His ascent of the Colorado River in connecting with Litgreaves' previous survey was one of peril and hardship. The result of his efforts proved to be highly beneficial to later transit.

Patrolling the west was a constant duty of the army during these years. The Third Infantry made three expeditions against the Apaches in Arizona where it lost several officers and men. The Third Dragoons were similarly engaged in addition to being constantly on the move between Leavenworth and *June, July 1854* Laramie. The Second Infantry went from Carlisle Barracks overland and down the Ohio by boat to Leavenworth, where it was spread out along the Missouri.

Realizing the value of the soldier and what he was doing for the country Congress raised the pay of the enlisted man by $4 *Aug. 4 1854* a month. In addition, it gave its first recognition to pay for length of service. The soldier's second enlistment gave him an increase of $2 a month over his regular pay and each successive enlistment for five years $1.

1854 The need of a rifle in the hazards of the western service, which not only developed the Indian fighter but made the hunter indispensable, caused more conversions of old weapons by the Ordnance Department than ever before. Besides making the Revolutionary musket capable of using a cap instead of the flint, the arsenals changed the barrel by brazing a lining in the tube so that the bore could be rifled. The department also standardized the caliber at .58.

1855 The model 1855 rifle based upon the above gun was made to use the "hollow base conical bullet" developed by Captain Minie. Besides, a lug was placed near the muzzle of the piece so as to hold the saber or the socket rapier bayonet. This rifle was about four feet two inches in length and weighed about ten pounds.

1855 *Cooper's and Macomb's Tactics* gave instructions as to the care of the rifle, in addition to giving evolutions for infantry, artillery and cavalry. The manual showed minutely how the soldier could make his own ammunition by melting down lead, molding the balls, smoothing the bullets off by rolling them in a barrel and wrapping the cartridges. In addition to having merely ball cartridges, the soldier could use buckshot or ball with buckshot.

1855 *Hardee's Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics,* although apparently not conflicting with Cooper's and Macomb's, showed at this date striking similarities to Steuben's and yet marked differences. In "the position of the soldier" the heels were "on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man" would permit and the eyes were fixed straight to the front, "striking the ground about the distance of fifteen paces." There were four kinds of cadence and step: common time, quick time, double quick time and the run. The first was 90 steps to the minute and 28 inches in length; the second, 110 steps to the minute and 28 inches in length; the third, 165 steps to the minute and 33 inches in length; and the last, a fast run. The manual of loading was accomplished in "nine times" and fifteen motions as follows:

1. Load. One time and one motion.
2. Handle Cartridge. One time and one motion.
3. Tear Cartridge. One time and one motion.
4. Charge Cartridge. One time and one motion.
5. Draw rammer. One time and three motions.
6. Ram cartridge. One time and one motion.
7. Return rammer. One time and three motions.
8. Prime.[11] One time and two motions.
9. Shoulder arms. One time and two motions.

The actual firing was executed in three times and five motions.

Ready. One time and three motions.
Aim. One time and one motion.
Fire One time and one motion.

When the recruit became expert in this long exercise, he could be made to load in "four times" and fire as fast as three rounds in a minute.

Realizing the work the army was doing technically and its impossible task of dealing with the Indians successfully in so vast a territory as the United States now occupied, Congress *March 3 1855* added 2 infantry and 2 cavalry regiments to the service, thus making 10 all told of the former and 5 of the latter. The officers of the newly created regiments were to be selected so that the field officers and one-half of the company officers of the old regiments would fill the new vacancies. The remainder were to come from civil life. The paper strength of the army now rose to 12,698 men, and the Ninth and Tenth Infantry and Fourth and Fifth Cavalry came into being.

---

[11] If Maynard's primer was used, loading could be done in "eight times."

It is interesting to note among the changes of uniform that the cap which had been in vogue in one form or another for almost fifty years, now gave place to the hat of black felt, *Aug. 15 1855* especially for the new regiments. The new headgear was looped up on the right side and fastened with an eagle. Black feathers ornamented the left side, three for field officers, two for company officers and one for enlisted men.

The far west continued to call portions of the army into play in quelling Indian uprisings. The Fourth Infantry in eastern Washington and Oregon had trouble in subduing many tribes under the leadership of the Chieftain Kamiarkin. In Oregon the regular troops were embarrassed by a massacre of Indians on the part of some volunteers who shot down nineteen unarmed savages in cold blood. The effect of such an affair was to cause the reactionary murder of many innocent settlers. *Sept. 3 1855* Portions of the First Cavalry and Fourth Artillery had a hard encounter with the Brule Indians at the battle of the Blue Water. The Third Artillery had many engagements with the Klamath, Puget Sound, and Rogue River Indians, which actions entailed marches over long distances and the loss of many soldiers.

In addition to the Indian troubles the newly created territory of Kansas was torn with factions and outraged over the *1855–56* question of slavery. So acute and so partisan was the strife that the volunteers, who invariably took sides, could do little or nothing. Finally Governor Geary had to call for federal troops to restore some sort of order. Accordingly Colonel Cooke led the Fourth Artillery, acting as cavalry, from Leavenworth. This show of force caused the warring militias to disperse without bloodshed and Kansas was quickly brought to a state of quiescence, many lives being saved by the army's movement.

The newly organized Ninth Infantry arrived on the Pacific
coast, having gone by way of Panama, and shortly afterward *Jan.*
got into action in an expedition to Fort Walla Walla, Washington. *1856*
There it met the Indians near the Cascades, dispersed
them, and made the ringleaders prisoners. Later it captured *March*
500 of the hostiles near the Wenache River. *1856*

The work of the army this year consisted in reorganization,
training and fighting. The First Artillery had successful
actions in Florida and Texas. One company each from the 4 *1856*
artillery regiments was dismounted and together garrisoned
Fortress Monroe to reëstablish the Artillery School of Practice.
The Third Infantry, marching in one month over 500 *March*
miles, was busy in the southwest with the Gila and Mogollan *1856*
Apaches. The Second Cavalry was drilling at Fort Riley,
Kansas. The Third Artillery finally routed the Rogue River *March,*
Indians in Oregon, burned their village and decisively defeated *April*
them so that they sued for peace. The Sixth Infantry was at *1856*
Jefferson Barracks, Mo., and Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.
Most of the Fourth Artillery found itself at Fort Brooke, *Dec.*
Florida, where the Seminoles again were beginning to give *1856*
trouble.

So much action in the field caused the uniform to be made
more suitable to the needs of the soldier in the wilds. The long
baggy trousers, the lower collar, the loose coat and comfortable
hat gave more freedom of movement than was possible in 1812.
The leather belt worn with the sash was more practicable in
holding the sword. The shoulder strap was beginning to usurp
the place of the epaulet. And simple knots and braid designated *Jan., Feb.*
rank on the overcoat. A general had five braids and a *1857*
double knot, a colonel five braids and a single knot, a lieutenant
colonel four braids and a single knot and so on down through
the grades.

Confidence in the army's efforts was again expressed when
legislation raised the pay of cadets from $24 to $30 per month. *March 3*
Besides, civilian dependence on the army's explorations was *1857*
asserting itself in many ways. Lieutenant J. C. Ives, for
instance, at the direction of the War Department organized an
expedition to find the navigability of the Colorado River and *1857*
the practicability of routes for supplies. The work was carried

on in the presence of hostile Indian tribes and covered several hundred miles. Its value was to manifest itself later in opening up roads and railroads.

March 13 1857

Indian troubles again took the army into many untenanted regions. The Fourth Artillery, after having serious trouble with the Seminoles, especially at Big Cypress, was sent west and distributed through Utah and Nebraska. The Third Infantry was involved in the southwest with the Apaches in the Mogollan Mountains and along the Gila River. The Second Dragoons was so busy between Utah and Texas with its insufficient force that it was kept on the move most of the time. The newly created Tenth Infantry after clashing with the Sioux in Minnesota moved to Fort Kearny, Nebraska. The Sixth Infantry and First Cavalry went from Fort Leavenworth to Fort Kearny, meeting and defeating a large body of Cheyennes on the way. The first of the new cavalry regiments[12] had a severe engagement with the Cheyennes near the north fork of the Solomon River. In these engagements many of the men were wounded and killed with arrows; and with pistol, Allen's revolver and rifle balls. Many small surveying and exploring parties, notably those accompanied by troops furnished by General Clarke in command of the Department of the Pacific, kept up their valuable and trying labors through Arizona, Colorado, New Mexico and Nevada.

1857

It was in this year that the Sharp's breechloading rifle, using a cap, was invented. Although it did not come into use with the troops until several years later, it was the beginning of modern improvement in firearms, was to be the most efficient small weapon of the Civil War, and was to give rise to the name, "Sharpshooter." On the other hand, the Colt revolving rifle which was about the same time issued from that factory, was not destined to play so great a part. The soldiers did not like it because of the large powder escape at the breech and the tremendous kick when several charges exploded at once. But the production of the weapon shows the attempt at this early time to have a rifle that would shoot without the necessity for reloading at every shot.

---

[12] Known now as the Fourth Cavalry.

The largest expedition of this year was the one against the Mormons. This sect isolated near Salt Lake City refused to obey the laws of the United States. Accordingly the Fifth and Tenth Infantry and two batteries of artillery marched from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, to subdue them. The Second Dragoons was to follow. As soon as the Utah country was approached, bands of harassing Mormons burned and captured supply trains and drove off the cattle. All forage in front of the advancing force was destroyed. The men and animals grew hungry, and the cold became insufferable. When Colonel Albert Sydney Johnston took command and was reënforced by the Second Dragoons, he did all a leader could do, but he could not get supplies. His force was a ship at sea with no port for coaling and provisioning. Over the desolated region the progress had to be very slow, sometimes only three miles a day. The hostile Mormons would sell nothing, nor was there a chance to find anything in this remote region in winter. Since the troops were in such straits Colonel Johnston ordered Captain Marcy to make his way overland with 40 enlisted men to Fort Massachusetts, New Mexico, the nearest place where supplies could be had. The march of this small detachment through deep snows, near hostile savages and in terrible storms was fraught with frightful hardships. Horses, mules, oxen and men died of cold and disease. Finally a remnant of tattered and emaciated soldiers who had largely subsisted on the carcasses of dead horses and mules, came to Fort Massachusetts with such odd appearance and such ailing bodies that they were with difficulty recognized by the troops at that place. Fifty-one days had been occupied in the march. In the meantime, the troops in Utah had been reënforced by parts of the Sixth and Second Infantry and Mounted Rifles, and had reached Fort Bridger which they found burned by the Mormons. The plight of Colonel Johnston's command was scarcely less severe than that which had confronted Marcy. In tents during zero weather and far removed from Philadelphia, the command in Utah had to do for itself. But it was a disciplined lot that went to work building and hauling wood, water and its few supplies by hand in the frigid climate. There was no civilization which the soldier could reach or from which he could gain help. And

June 1857

Nov. 3 1857

civilization paid small attention to these hardships which were endured almost without complaint. After Captain Marcy returned, the Mormon city was entered without bloodshed. *June 10 1858*

During this movement of Johnston's troops, two minor laws made changes in the military establishment. The Texas border being still in an unsettled state, a new regiment of Texas mounted volunteers was allowed to be enlisted for 18 months. *April 7 1858* Because they were to furnish their own horses and horse equipments, all below the rank of major were allowed 40 cents a day extra pay. Legislation also gave the Superintendent of the Military Academy the local rank and pay of a colonel of engineers and the commandant of cadets that of lieutenant colonel. *June 12 1858* The course of instruction of the institution was changed, by order of the Secretary of War, back to five years. *April 5 1859*

Not only with the Mormon expedition was the army occupied. Other regiments in isolated places were having their troubles. The Navajoes had 6 engagements with the Third Infantry. The Pacific Slope Indians were signally defeated in 3 battles near Spokane River by the Third Artillery. *Sept. 1858* When an outlaw band of Cortinas attacked and blockaded Brownsville, Texas, the Third Artillery with other troops drove them off. The Sixth Infantry made a march overland from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, to the Pacific coast.

The wide dispersion of the regiments during this decade is evidenced by the posts which the Fourth Infantry had garrisoned and in the main built. Forts Vancouver, Reading, Humboldt, Dalles, Steilacoom, Jones, Boise, Lane, Yamhill, Orford, Townshend, Hoskins, Walla Walla, Crook, Terwaw, Cascade, Simcoe, Gaston, Chehalis, Yuma and Mohave—extending from British Columbia to Mexico, are forgotten names of the past. But they were in these times active and necessary havens for the settler.

In occupying so wide a space activities sometimes had to go beyond national protection and become international. War was in sight with Great Britain for the fifth time in the army's history, when the Hudson Bay Company attempted to enforce its law on American citizens occupying Vancouver Island. Captain George E. Pickett was ordered with his company and one gun to occupy San Juan Island and resist the force brought to bear upon that point. When it took months to get word of the trouble to Washington and months to get back instructions, General Harney had to act on his own initiative. Accordingly he had the small contingent under Captain Pickett take up a defensive position on San Juan. Several British ships with overpowering troops and armament tried to convince Pickett of his error, but the American officer with his one gun stood his ground and stated to the ships' commander plainly that he was prepared to resist all encroachments. For some time this audacious little force of regulars held the British at bay. Finally General Scott was enabled to settle the differences by engineering a joint occupation.

July 27 1859

So closed the scene of action just before the maelstrom of the Civil War. A trained army had wrested a peace in a short time, and prevented the loss of men and money entailed by a long war. It had made possible the acquisition of a third of the present United States. It had gone further. It had made the territories capable of occupancy. It had piloted the traveler in safety, built roads, protected the mails, opened river routes, kept the savages in leash and surveyed the routes of our present railroads east and west. It had held the trail through hunger, thirst, disease, wounds, disaster, and the untold suffering that cannot be explained to one who has never experienced such things, in such places, with such scant conveniences. The march left its wolf-cleaned skeletons, the fight left its gaping arrow wounds, the suffering left its shortened lives and civilization pressed in on all sides to gloat over a rich and beautiful country.

CHAPTER VIII

THE ARMY DIVIDES AND MULTIPLIES

(1860–1865)

WAR, springing sternly from the hearts of the people, is about to rack the nation. The great uprising is first going to split the army and then swell it to puffiness. The Mexican struggle in an unknown country was quickly ended by a single chieftain, trained juniors and disciplined rank and file. The Civil War on our own soil will be dragged along by changing leaders, untrained juniors and undisciplined rank and file. The brilliant captains and lieutenants of Monterey and Cerro Gordo will be the generals of Fredericksburg and Shiloh. And they will look down helplessly over their hordes of irregulars for two years before the bullet all too sadly will have whipped those masses into shape.

1860 The long arguments over the rights of slave and free states had by the beginning of the year settled into fixed convictions. As the citizen was certain of his position, so the soldier in Fort Yuma, Arizona, knew how he stood. The slow mail from Maine or Louisiana determined his sentiments. Although he eagerly awaited the news of the bickerings that were certain to lead to strife, he went on just the same with the work in hand.

Out of 198 companies in the service 183 were strewn over 79 posts of the wild frontier. The other 15 manned the Atlantic coast, 23 arsenals, and the Canadian border. Seldom was so much as a battalion collected in any one place and often a small company was separated into detachments. Less than 13,000 men attempted to hold in security 3,000,000 square miles of territory.

In these ominous hours only one great hand was raised to increase our resistance. Scott proposed the establishment of a sufficient force of regulars against possible trouble. But among the politicians in Washington, his was a voice crying in the wilderness. With Buchanan and Floyd there was not a chance of conviction that widespread training and discipline would save lives. Besides their apparent sympathies with the South, they looked upon Scott as too old to lead troops and therefore too old to give advice.

All this time the two sides to the issue were sedulously hurling burning brands at each other when there was no fire department to quench the flames. A hose in Oregon, a nozzle in Florida, horses in Texas and an engine nowhere! The army was fighting Indians while the factions were wrangling. Fighting Indians! Hunting wolves while the mother country lay in convulsions!

Jan. 1860

The First Infantry was in Texas, the Second along the Mississippi River as far west as For Kearny, the Third in New Mexico, the Fourth on the Pacific coast from Puget Sound to the Gulf of California, the Fifth in the Mormon country of Utah, the Sixth in Southern California, Nevada and Arizona, the Seventh in Utah, the Eighth in Texas, the Ninth in Oregon and the Tenth in Utah and New Mexico. The First Artillery was in the Gulf States, the Second along the Atlantic coast, the Third in the vicinity of Vancouver Barracks, Washington Territory, and the Fourth in Utah. The First and Second Dragoons were scattered over the west; the Third was mainly concentrated in New Mexico and the Fourth at Fort Riley, Kansas.

Small disturbances were continually prevalent throughout most of the vast territory the army attempted to cover. For example, in New Mexico near Fort Defiance where the Navahos and Apaches were actively hostile, the soldier's life was far from peaceful. Nestled in the mountains at the foot of Cañon Bonita, scarcely 200 men occupied the loneliest corner of the United States and the key to the Rio Grande. It was called a fort but it was not a fortress. The parade ground, quarters, barracks, prison, storehouses and adobe shacks lay out in the open, protected only by the alertness and man power of the few occupants. Early in the year 5 companies of the Third Infantry had driven off a band of savages whom they had chased to Sixteen Mile Pond and beaten. And later a small company was

Jan. 17 1860

Feb. 8 1860

successful in putting to flight other harassing Indians. For over a month thereafter the little garrison had lived in comparative comfort. But one night Lieutenant Whipple, who was officer of the day, had suspicions, from those intangible reckonings that come to men experienced in Indian treachery, that there was going to be an attack. Visiting each sentry he saw that the guard was properly instructed and vigilant. Sure enough, at one in the morning just after the moon had set, the war whoop sounded from the opposite hills and 3,000 Navahos and Apaches swooped down upon the 150, most of whom were asleep. But the guard was awake and watchful. Giving the alarm it placed itself where it would be the greatest hindrance. The delay was enough to allow the rudely awakened officers and soldiers to grab enough clothing to cover them, to assemble in orderly formation as if they were on parade and to sally forth. Forming a skirmish line they fired by file at any moving object they could see. Stumbling in the darkness they even charged some savages who were strongly posted in natural stone battlements. When dawn came, the Indians moved off with many of their numbers dead and wounded. The superior discipline and marksmanship of the trained soldier had told. One man killed and a few wounded was the tally of the little post of Fort Defiance. And affairs there went on peacefully for some time, but the size of the post was always an invitation to the painted warriors.

April 30 1860

Troops in other wild sections were playing their part with equal grit and endurance. When some prospectors were massacred in Nevada, parts of the Sixth Infantry and Third Artillery sought out the plundering tribes. At Truckee River, these troops routed the Indians after a severe fight. Some of the Tenth Infantry in New Mexico, of the Sixth at Mad River, California, and of the Third Artillery at Harney Lake and in the Klamath country of Washington Territory had sharp encounters with the savages of those localities, while the Fourth Artillery, operating as cavalry, kept the roads and mail routes open and escorted emigrants over hundreds of miles of barren country in Utah.

June 2 1860

June 21 1860

The only legislation for the army this year was an act which among other similar things increased the sugar and coffee rations for enlisted men, and created a commission consisting of Senators Jefferson Davis, Solomon Foot, Representative John Cochrane, Major Robert Anderson and Captain A. A. Humphreys to inquire into "the organization, system of discipline and course of instruction at the United States Military Academy." Thirty-two million people were satisfied, so far as their power of resistance was concerned, to fritter their time over coffee and the curriculum of a school while a catastrophe of blood and flame was in sight, while their only real combatant strength was parceled out over so vast a region that months of the speediest journeys could not collect it.

In technic there were a few minor developments. A rifle that was to have some influence on the coming conflict was this year invented by Christopher Spencer. This breechloading weapon was the first of the successful repeaters. It was afterwards thought to be the most finished and ready weapon of the Civil War. It was a seven-shot rifle, loading brass shells through a magazine in the butt. Although the loading was slow, the mechanism was a distinct advance in rapidity over the muzzle-loader. So few of them could be furnished in comparison to the great number of flint and cap lock muzzle-loaders for the myriads of soldiers during the war, that their effect on operations was slight.

Within the army, efforts to improve the tactics for both the *1860* regulars and militia were evidenced by the appearance of *Rifle and Infantry Tactics* and by a translation from the French by Major Robert Anderson, First Artillery, of exercises for artillery. The latter was called *Evolution of Field Batteries of Artillery* arranged for the use of the "army and militia of the United States." The work was sanctioned by the Secretary of War for the exclusive use of the troops mentioned.

Such preparation sums up all our country made for the clash that was at least probable. When South Carolina seceded, *Dec. 20 1860* there were few regular officers who had commanded as much as an assembled battalion. The militia were only so in name. Although an organization here and there might know how to shoulder arms, the state troops had no field-service training whatever. There was no accessible power in the country to prevent armed citizens in any quantity from doing about as they pleased. John Brown's raid was an illustration. The people were waiting to see what was going to happen. Sanguine hopes were fathers to delusions of no war or a short one. The North, especially, lay curious, concerned and idle while the terror was approaching.

Jan 7 to Feb. 1 1861 Florida, Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana and Texas quickly followed the example of South Carolina. These states sent representatives to a "Congress of Sovereign States," *Feb. 9 1861* adopted a constitution, and elected a president who was a graduate of West Point and a former United States senator. The South was quick, keen and farseeing in its movements. It *Feb. 28 1861* empowered its new president to take control of operations in its states and authorized him to accept for twelve months as many *March 6 1861* volunteers as he might require. Accordingly he called out 100,000 volunteers as a start.

The North could have inferred that the South was preparing for war and meant business. Yet the central government sat supinely by waiting for the outbreak. In the east a few paltry companies which had had about 600 recruits added to them were given the task of holding all the forts and arsenals, and the nation's capital. The President of the Union, the commander in chief of all the armed forces, with his Secretary of War, instead of making some attempt to establish a capable force for meeting the well-organized South, continued to try compromises when the time for such futility had plainly passed. Naturally, since the weakly guarded arsenals and forts in the southern states were mockeries of strength, the Confederacy seized them. Besides, General Twiggs, in command of the *Feb. 1861* Department of Texas, had surrendered nearly one fourth of the entire army and all the public property intrusted to him. And yet the central government let the army fight Apaches and waited for Sumter. To Buchanan and Floyd, men with muskets were soldiers.

A few days before the President of the Confederacy had called out his 100,000, the President of the Union was making *March 4 1861* his way in disguise to take his oath of office at the capital of the nation. So little strength had the North that it had to let its chief executive sneak into a threatened White House. There he had to begin to formulate plans against an enemy already well organized and powerful in the speed and efficiency it had exhibited.

Having no regular army in sight, he had to fall back on the old law of 1795 and to turn in desperation to the militia of the states. In the meantime, Fort Sumter was fired upon and seized, and 35,000 well-equipped and half-disciplined Confederates were in the act of taking the southern forts and arsenals. At this juncture, Mr. Lincoln called out 75,000 militia for three months, a force only three-fourths as large and an enlistment only one-fourth as long as for the Confederate army already called into the field. He was thus powerless to suppress a single expression of rebellion.

April 12 1861

To his call for volunteers the governors of those southern states that had not already seceded sent curt replies of refusal. The northern states responded with alacrity and pandemonium. A medley of citizens hastened to adorn themselves as soldiers. With the truly patriotic man there were too often recruited the idler and the adventurer. The contingents—not organizations—were commanded ordinarily by men ignorant of the art of war and frequently without the character necessary for an officer. The soldier chose his commander as he did in the Revolution and all the evils of organization that overflowed Washington's cup poured out on Mr. Lincoln. In an advertisement for recruits one regiment's poster is significant of the view of the untrained volunteer toward the coming three months' excursion:

> "As this regiment is to be constantly garrisoned in the forts around Washington, those anxious to enter the military service will find in it the inestimable advantage of exemption from the hardships and privations incidental to camp-life."

Zouaves were paraded through the streets in showy uniforms. A Massachusetts regiment was mobbed while attempting to go through Baltimore; a Pennsylvania one had to turn back on the same occasion because it did not have arms. And this hasty, irregular, undisciplined lot, called an army, was to evaporate in three months, whereas the Confederates' force would still be in the service nine months longer.

April 19 1861

Furthermore, the small regular army itself felt disintegration. During these months after Sumter, 269 officers out of a total of about 900 resigned their commissions to join the South and 26 were dismissed for the same reason. Sixty-five West Point cadets from the southern states resigned, were discharged or dismissed. But about half of the alumni whose homes were in the South stayed with the North. As to the rank and file those in the service remained with the North with the exception of about 26.

There seemed to be no personal rancor between officers and cadets over the opposite stands they took on secession. Men freely shook hands with each other at parting and expressed feelings of mutual respect. Officers who had resigned left their old regiments on the plains and made long harassing journeys back home to join the Confederacy. It was not without reluctance and tears that they left their old associates and the ties of tradition, friendship, hardship and buffeting bound up with the old flag. Home, friends and the strong organization of the South, which the North in its weakness had permitted, all fixed in them a belief in which they were sincere.

April 20 1861

While the Union was losing the services of these trained officers, the handful that was left attempted to do its bit. Although General Wool, in command of the few trained troops in the East, had not been called upon or consulted by higher authority, he sent to Washington all the organizations he could release. Since he took the precaution to send them around Baltimore, they arrived at the capital without molestation.

In the meantime Washington had been physically severed from the North. The Maryland secessionists had cut all wires and blocked the traffic. The President and Mr. Cameron could not get in touch with the forces that had been called out. Each of these gentlemen suddenly found himself in the throes of managing military affairs of which he was technically ignorant. Mr. Cameron, for instance, rejected offers of regiments of cavalry, because he was doubtful of the value of that arm in our wooded country. Also, cavalry was very expensive. He was perfectly at home, however, in busying himself with dealing out sutlerships to Pennsylvania politicians.

The neglect, throughout the previous decade, of military affairs was reflected in the housing of the War Department. While other bureaus were occupying palatial stone buildings, the activities of this important function of our government were concentrated in a miserable tenement. There Mr. Cameron, after years of legal and political training, pathetically read regulations and treatises on the art of war in order to give to himself at least the appearance of a head of this gigantic military project.

How different in the South! Mr. Davis, an educated soldier, a brave and trained leader, a hero of several battlefields, and a statesman who had served in the Senate and on the Cabinet, combined statecraft with military efficiency. He was the sole executive. The Confederate States had so organized as to allot to him the quick control of affairs and the man power he requested. Such organization and knowledge were to give to a comparatively small force a touch of unity that was to baffle the heterogeneous masses of the Union for four distracting years.

For a great emergency, the constitution of the United States had made little or no provision. Mr. Lincoln now had to break the law and override the powers of Congress in order to build his foundation. By this time all hope of holding the arsenals and forts in the South was gone. That opportunity had inanely passed. Already the militia of the District of Columbia at the President's call had either refused to be sworn in or to serve outside the District. Sinking sand everywhere. Lincoln was beginning to understand that provision can never make up for prevision. Accordingly he was compelled, in violation of the Constitution, to increase the regular army by 22,714 men and to call out 42,834 additional volunteers for three years.[1] The manner of organizing these men was turned over to the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of War having too much to do. In turn, the Secretary of the Treasury was too much occupied to be disturbed by such items, so that he pushed the matter off on 3 regular army officers: Colonel Thomas, Major McDowell and Captain Franklin. *May 3 1861*

These soldiers, acting on sound lines, recommended a three-battalion organization for all regiments, a three-year enlistment and a call for 300,000 volunteers. Although the three-year enlistment was approved, and Congress later had to make a call for a greater number of volunteers, the Secretary of the Treasury disapproved the three-battalion organization for the volunteers because the militia were not "familiar" with it. So the process of making a homogeneous army languished. As usual, the regulars could not be recruited in competition with the inducements offered volunteers. Altogether, the organization of the northern armies was no more developed than Washington's force in 1776.

---

[1] He thus added 9 regiments of infantry, 1 regiment of artillery and 1 regiment of cavalry to the regular army.

No provision was made to utilize the experience of regular and other trained officers with the volunteers. The men of the local regiments still elected their officers. If a civilian, who had been a regular officer, happened to be known in a community he was sometimes selected. But more often he was ignored. Grant, who was in business, wrote to the War Department offering his services, but was not even honored with a reply. No attempt was made to transfer regular officers to the new organizations. Indeed many of them in the service served in modest capacities during the entire war while grocers and bankers led regiments indifferently. The governors accepted whole regiments of about 850 men practically as they had been organized at home. The man who raised, equipped and supplied a regiment or brigade really owned it, and no mere governor or president could dictate to it as to who its officers should be or what rank should be given. If the South believed in states' rights, so did the North in the collection of its uniformed recruits. Generals commanding in the field had to apply to the proper governor before an officer of that state could be promoted. In this way the experienced officer was crowded out and some regulars who had accepted state commissions at high rank came to prefer, after they had come in contact with the politics, chicanery and disorderliness of the volunteers, to return to inferior rank with the regulars. What the North lost by such a procedure is shown by the record of those trained officers who did have a chance: 51 major generals, 91 brigadier generals and 106 colonels came from those officers of the old army who either by having been in civil life or by having accepted transfers during hostilities, had the opportunity of advancement. The other 308 the government to its chagrin submerged. It thus tossed at least two thousand years of training into the discard.

On the other hand, the South acted in no such foolish way. It early made a provision to accept the services of officers of the United States army and to let them have their original relative rank. Note the difference in the figures. Of the 250 who espoused the Confederate cause, 182 rose to the rank of general officer, including such men as Lee, Jackson, Longstreet and the two Johnstons. In addition, the Confederacy made gradations of general officers to suit the units they commanded, as was later found best in the World War. On the southern side there was a general for an army, a lieutenant general for a corps, a major general for a division, and a brigadier general for a brigade, whereas on the northern side there were merely major generals and brigadiers for all four units.

The few regulars on the northern side who could be brought from their stations were engulfed in the great vortex of irregular volunteers. Washington was crowded with regiments. A regular battalion of infantry and a scattering few companies of artillery and squadrons of cavalry were scarcely traceable in the crowds of volunteers who were pouring into the city. The quartering of all these uniformed citizens was such a problem that public buildings had to be used as barracks. Even the Capitol itself was given over for that purpose. A German regiment occupied the floor of the House. Beds were in the corridors, a sergeant sat in the speaker's chair, murals were defaced, members' desks broken up and the congressional hall of the nation given over to pillage and abuse. Uncontrolled drunkenness made the denizen of Washington more fearful of friend than enemy. The farmer colonel and apothecary major in many cases walked about the streets in showy uniforms, drew their pay and did not go near their regiments for weeks. It is possible they earned their salary better by their absence. Again, it was true that it costs a nation more to arm its fears than to awe its foes. Already the country had used in these few months money enough to have supported a sufficient and trained force for the ten years preceding.

In other places, too, there were scenes of waste. The first levies were on their way to aid McClellan in West Virginia, Patterson in Maryland and McDowell in Washington. Around the cities of the North they had been assembled with the over-sanguine conception that the "secesh" would soon "give up." An excursion into the South and the whole thing would be over. The recruits, for they were mostly such, not knowing whether their regiments would be accepted spent their time sight-seeing, spending their money in saloons and generally adding to their demoralization. In their restlessness to be off and their ignorance of what was going to happen to them, they after a time became surly, depressed and often unruly. Since the government had not made up its mind as to what was going to become of the three-month men, rumors would come into camp one day that they were to be discharged, another day that they were going to be accepted for three years, another that it was optional as to whether individuals would reënlist for three years. Orders would arrive only to be quickly countermanded. In this state of anxiety they became disobedient and even mutinous. Many captains, for the first time saddled with authority, pilfered the rations of the companies. One soldier in writing home shows the reaction of such confusion on raw troops.

May, June 1861

"Such a feeling pervades the minds of the soldiers that discipline is played out. Company K refused to turn out to roll call the other morning, and day before yesterday, not a man of them appeared on dress parade. Company F would not come out on parade yesterday.

"Night before last a row broke out in a beer saloon near the depot and some of the Pittsburg boys cleaned out the whole thing, broke in the doors and windows, smashed up the glass and furniture. A crowd collected and Colonel Grant was obliged to call out Companies B, G, and I, with their guns to disperse them. Company G charged down the road and across the railroad track through the thickest of them. They made quite a determined stand on the track, and some six or eight were wounded before they would leave."

With such a state of discipline it is not remarkable that

columns here and there undertook to win battles at will. Butler *June 10 1861*
at Big Bethel, near Fortress Monroe, was repulsed; Lyon at
Boonville, Missouri, dispersed the Confederates; Patterson *June 18 1861*
after occupying Harper's Ferry was compelled to withdraw and *June 18 1861*
send most of his troops for the protection of Washington; and
McClellan prepared for his campaign in the mountains of West *June 23 1861*
Virginia. The Union troops seemed to be dispersed with local purposes of their own, whereas the Confederates had been concentrating in northern Virginia.

In these movements many instances of lack of training demonstrated the unfitness of the forces to do anything decisive. Lack of reconnaissance caused 2 regiments under Butler to fire into each other with loss. When they did get into action, the first volley of the Confederates drove them into the woods from which it took their officers over two hours to induce them to return to the charge. Nearly all of Patterson's troops were three-month men who were clamoring to be gone. They were already largely without shoes and entirely without pay. Colonel Biddle testified afterward as to their conduct:

> "The General then went to the other regiments, but found that it was not feasible at all; from one-half to two-thirds refused to go. He finally got to an Irish regiment and made a very powerful appeal to them, knowing the Irish character very well. He carried them with a sort of shout, and they all said they would remain. They all lifted up their muskets. But he had hardly turned his back when they hallooed out "Shoes and Pants!" "Shoes and Pants!"

McClellan in an eight-day campaign in West Virginia gave *June 6–14 1861*
a touch of morale to the North, even if the results he obtained did not have much effect on the outcome of the war. With 5 ill-disciplined brigades he operated among the Rich and Cheat mountains against an inferior force of Confederates under Pegram and Magruder. Although McClellan's flank attack under Rosecrans was delayed for a day by the weariness of his unseasoned troops, Pegram's men were demoralized from the threat and thrown into disorder in the retreat. Altogether the well-planned skirmishes gave to the side of superior numbers

the possession of West Virginia by the Union. Finally the northern forces were able to disperse the inferior force under Morris at Carricksford merely by their appearance on the scene.

Up until this time nothing decisive had been attempted by either side because of the inexperience of the troops. At Washington scattering musketry was often heard along the Potomac. But the 30,000 troops that had been assembled under McDowell were by no means ready to move. They had to have staffs for their larger units. The Quartermaster, Commissary and Ordnance departments had neither means of supply nor subordinate officers who knew their duties. The few trained higher officers could not impart their knowledge to a multitude in a short time. Soldiers who had come out for a lark could scarcely be made to see the seriousness of obedience or the necessity of orderliness. They knew nothing of the march or how to take care of themselves. They knew less about how to eat or look after their feet. Sickness reduced their numbers and efficiency.

This was the kind of force on which General McDowell had to rely and which he had had no chance to maneuver. But the heads of the government reflecting the cry of the North, "On to Richmond," decided that he should move this haphazard collection of men somewhere. They felt it was better to have defeat than no action at all. Of the 300,000 scattered throughout the North there were approximately 50,000 in Washington, where breastworks had been constructed. Of the latter only about 30,000 were allotted for McDowell's use, and only 800 of these were trained troops.[2] His testimony before the Senate Committee afterwards was plaintive in its logic:

> "I had no opportunity to test my machinery, to move it around and see whether it would work smoothly or not. In fact, such was the feeling, that when I had one body of eight regiments of troops reviewed together, the general censured me for it, as if I was trying to make some show. I did not think so. There was not a man there who had ever maneuvered troops in large bodies. There was not one in the Army. I did not

---

[2] A battalion of 8 companies of the Second, Third and Eighth Infantry, a battalion of marines, a small detachment of the First and Second Dragoons and 6 batteries of artillery.

believe there was one in the whole country. At least I knew there was no one there who had ever handled 30,000 troops. I had seen them handled abroad in reviews and marches, but I had never handled that number, and no one here had."

So McDowell became the scapegoat of a nation that had negligently drifted along.

His plans, however, were laid with the same zeal and intelligence as if he expected victory. His force was to attack Beauregard before Johnston, who was supposed to be kept occupied in the Shenandoah Valley by Patterson, could join the main Confederate Army at Manassas. McDowell was given eight days in which to prepare for this offensive. Although he exerted himself to the utmost in the interim, there was practically no transportation ready for him when the time came for the movement. Nevertheless, he had to go, knowing full well that Confederate videttes were in sight of Washington and that the prop upon which he leaned was weak and rickety. *July 9 1861*

Leaving Washington, the troops carried three days' rations in their canvas knapsacks and everything else that a recruit could stow away. The heat and weariness of the march soon told on them. Throwing away blankets, blouses and even rations, which the camp followers soon picked up, they marked their journey with waste. Feet became blistered. Men left the ranks at will, got water and fruit as they chose, and meandered for miles along the way. Some did not reach camp until midnight of the first day's short march. Units were confused, and amongst this mob of men, congressmen in carriages, women in barouches who wanted to see the battle, the curious on horses and sutlers with their wagons mixed themselves. By such process McDowell was enabled to march most of his troops the enormous distance of fifteen miles in two days. *July 16 1861*

In this sort of excursion without method by the junior officers, it was not surprising that Tyler attacked at Blackburn's Ford prematurely and without orders. Naturally he was repulsed with loss and with a bad effect upon the troops in general. Nor was it strange that a whole regiment and a battery of artillery among the militia shamefully went home in the midst of these operations because their enlistment had expired;

that McDowell had to halt two days in order to reorganize his command and study the country in the absence of maps and reliable guides; and that this delay gave Johnston time to hurry to Beauregard because Patterson, being bereft of decent troops, could not keep Johnston employed.

July 19 1861 McDowell, with less than 28,000 men at this time was to attack a strongly fortified position held by at least equal numbers. But his decision and orders were such that even then had they been properly executed he might have had some chance of success, for the Confederates instead of clinging to their fortifications determined to take the offensive.

July 21 1861 When the main attack did take place, Tyler was slow in getting into position, and Hunter's brigade, which was a part of the command that was to take the Confederates in flank, rested for refreshments a bit too long by the waters of Bull Run. Yet during the morning the bare thousand of the left wing of the Confederates were pushed back across Bull Run to their strong position. Then the southern masked batteries began to do their deadly work. The unreliable troops on both sides were excited. They formed their lines slowly and badly under fire. The rear ranks and hindmost men of the staggered lines were almost as deadly to friend as enemy. The superior officers had a hard time to get their juniors and rank and file forward. So exposed were the higher commanders in trying to urge their troops to the front that a disproportionate number of leaders were killed or wounded. Late in the afternoon McDowell, in spite of his handicaps, had turned the flank of the Confederate position. Then Johnston came upon the scene. These fresh troops were just enough to turn the tide. A regiment of Confederates, mistaken by the Federals for friends, delivered a murderous fire especially upon the artillery. Then the rout began. One regiment fled and then another. The new volunteers were tired and hungry, but they succeeded in jamming the road in their hurry to get away. Newspaper men climbed down quickly from their vantage trees. Carriages, barouches, carts and horses clogged the highway. Soldiers in their excitement, firing in the air or at each other, stampeded across the fields toward Washington. McDowell's so-called army after having sustained a loss of only 5 per cent had disintegrated. Some did not stop until they reached New York City and most of them made their way that night back to Washington. The single battalion of regulars was conspicuous in its orderliness and energetic daring in protecting the fleeing masses from the enemy. Thus was achieved a battle, the loss of many lives, the waste and destruction of much property by unready forces who were incapable of a decisive stroke. Victory did as much harm to the South as defeat did for the North. Again the country, according to Light Horse Harry Lee, had murdered some of its citizens.

At this juncture the first military bill of the war became a law. While disgruntled volunteers who had been present at the exercises of Bull Run groped about the city without direction, with hats, coats and even rifles gone, while these men without order or cohesion blamed their defeat upon their officers, the battlefield, upon anything but themselves and the false position in which their country had placed them, Mr. Lincoln signed the enactment which authorized him to accept 500,000 volunteers for not more than three years or less than six months. In requisitioning the regiments bodily from the states he was not to exceed the proportion of 1 cavalry and 1 artillery regiment to 10 of infantry.[3] A division was to consist of 3 or more brigades and each brigade of 4 or more regiments. To command these higher units the President was allowed to appoint not more than 6 major generals and 18 brigadier generals, who could be selected from the line or staff of the regular army in which organization they were not to lose their grade. The governor had the exclusive right to appoint all the officers below general rank. Only in case of the failure of a governor to do so, had the President authority to furnish officers. To every enlisted man who furnished his own uniform and clothing $3.50 was allowed, and 40 cents a day to every member of a company who furnished his own horse and horse equipment. For each regiment

July 22 1861

---

[3] "Each regiment of infantry shall have 1 colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 1 adjutant (a lieutenant), 1 quartermaster (a lieutenant), 1 surgeon and 1 assistant surgeon, 1 sergeant major, 1 regimental quartermaster sergeant, 1 regimental commissary sergeant, 1 hospital steward, 2 principal musicians, and 24 musicians for a band, and shall be composed of 10 companies, each company to consist of 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant, 1 second lieutenant, 1 first sergeant, 4 sergeants, 8 corporals, 2 musicians, 1 wagoner, and from 64 to 82 privates."

a chaplain, who had to be an ordained minister of a Christian denomination, was allowed to be appointed by its commander according to the vote of the field officers and company commanders actually on duty. A general commanding a separate department or detached army had the power to convene a board of from 3 to 5 officers who were to examine into "the capacity, qualifications, propriety of conduct and efficiency" of any volunteer officers.[4] The law particularly prescribed that vacancies among volunteer officers should be filled by vote. All members of companies were to elect the captain and lieutenants and all regimental officers were to select the remaining commissioned personnel of the regiment. Governors were required to commission such selections. The last part of the law allowed soldiers to send their mail without prepayment, those at home having to pay postage therefor. It also prescribed that the Secretary of War should devise a system of "allotment tickets" whereby the soldier might have some of his pay drawn by his family.

July 25 1861

Three days after this piece of legislation, the President signed another bill which allowed him to call out 500,000 more. Although Congress may not have meant to do so, that body had now given Mr. Lincoln power to summon over 1,000,000 men.[5] The latter half million were to be enlisted for the duration of the war. In addition, the evident absurdity of the few general officers prescribed by the previous law must have caused the lawmakers to add the provision which gave power to appoint as many general officers as were required.

July 29 1861

Now that war in all its fury was upon the country, it acted as if such a catastrophe were quite unexpected, as if it had not been brewing for at least ten years. Now that blood was being spilled, Congress ran to generous extremes. Not satisfied with the unprecedented force it had already voted for, a third bill became a law within four days of the last one. The regular army was theoretically increased by 9 regiments of infantry, 1 of cavalry and 1 of artillery. An infantry regiment was to contain 2 or 3 battalions, a cavalry regiment not more than 3 battalions of 2 squadrons[6] each; and an artillery regiment not more than 12 batteries, each battery to be officered by a maximum of 1 captain, 2 first lieutenants and 2 second lieutenants. In this reorganization of the regulars a wise provision was made for a major with his staff of 1 adjutant and 1 quartermaster for each battalion, and a major for each 4 batteries of artillery. There was as yet only 1 major for a volunteer regiment. An addition of 4 major generals and 6 brigadier generals was also made for the regulars. Thus the North had to remake its army in the face of the enemy.

---

[4] Within eight months 310 officers had to be got rid of by such a board.

[5] Congress had already sanctioned his previous calls of April 15 and May 3.

Enlistments during 1861 and 1862 were to be for three years and thereafter for five years. The recruitment of this additional regular force was to be intrusted to officers appointed from civil life. This same legislation allowed regular officers to be switched from volunteer to regular units or *vice versa* as the commanding general felt would be conducive to the greatest efficiency.

Then Congress, aghast at the war structure it had raised, became panicked at such a possibility for peace times. Without any means of knowing what the future might hold, it now uttered a statute which provided for the reduction of the army at the end of the war to 25,000 men.

July 29 1861 On the same day another act made the militia subject to the same rules as the regular army and their retention possible by the President until sixty days after the next "regular session of Congress."

Aug. 3 1861 Five days afterward, the President signed another bill "for the better organization of the military establishment." Now that an army had been built up on paper it was found that administration and supply were wanting. Accordingly an assistant secretary of war, 5 assistant inspector generals with rank and pay of majors of cavalry, 10 surgeons and 20 assistant surgeons, an adjutant general with rank of brigadier general and 19 assistants,[7] 8 "commissaries of subsistence," 6 topographical engineers, 19 quartermasters, a chief of ordnance with the same rank and pay as the quartermaster-general with

---

[6] Each squadron was to contain 2 companies.

[7] Having respectively rank and pay of 1 colonel of cavalry, 2 lieutenant colonels, 4 majors and 12 captains.

8 assistants[8] were created. To the medical staff was added a corps of medical cadets, not to exceed 50, who were to have the same rank and pay as the cadets at West Point and who were required to have had a "liberal education," to have read medicine for at least two years and to have attended at least one course of lectures in a medical school. "Female nurses" were allowed to be employed by the surgeon-general at 40 cents a day. Any cadet recommended to be discharged from the Military Academy either for deficiency in conduct or studies was not allowed to be reappointed as a cadet or to be appointed to any place in the army before the class of which he was a member had graduated. The oath of the entering cadet was changed so that it might be binding in any question of states' rights.[9] To insure good conduct among soldiers, $2 of the monthly pay was to be retained until his enlistment expired. The ration was increased for the war, but thereafter was to be the same as before. For the first time retirement for officers of long and faithful service or from wounds or disability was made possible by means of a retiring board. The officer could be retired with his pay, or his rations, but not both; or in case his services were not satisfactory, "wholly retired" with one year's pay and allowances.

Aug. 5 1861 Another law, two days later, appropriated $100,000 for fortifications, made it a crime of desertion for any officer who quitted his post after resignation and abolished flogging in the army.

Aug. 6 1861 The next day two bills became a law. One increased the engineers and topographical engineers, each, by 2 lieutenant colonels and 4 majors, gave an extra company to the latter and put promotions of volunteer officers entirely in the hands of the governors. The other increased the pay of the private soldier from $11 to $13 a month.

Such was the mass of legislation enacted in a month. Naturally it could be good only in spots and weak and extravagant in the main. The fact that at first the Congress gave the President 500,000 men with only 24 generals to command them, and was compelled later on to give him no limit in this regard, demonstrates the utter ignorance at the capital of military needs. Of course the election of officers and their appointment by the governors was subversive of discipline and detrimental to success. Hundreds of the original appointees drew their pay without rendering the country anything but harm. Then more money had to be spent in getting rid of these worthless officers. But nothing could repay humanity for the lives such so-called leaders had lost at Bull Run. Congress seeing its error made the matter worse by prohibiting election and by giving the appointment of officers entirely to the governor. Even so, the pernicious system of voting for officers, once inaugurated in the separate states, continued. The hurry of the legislators is again evidenced in the term of service for the rank and file. With the first 500,000 they made the mistakes of our previous wars in giving the option of a six-month enlistment or a three-year enlistment as the recruit chose. With the second 500,000 they tried to rectify their error by making the period for the war. It is easy to see that the recruit chose the six-month period, when three years was long and the duration of the war uncertain. It is easy to see also that when a man could enlist under the laxity of the volunteers he would not undertake the severity of the regular service, so that the increase of the latter establishment languished for some time. Neither did the separate types of organization for volunteer and regular forces add to the facility with which an army should be handled. And then the awful fear of an adequately trained force after the war led the lawmakers, even at this frenzied time, into making it certain that there would be no more than 25,000, no matter what the conditions might be then. It took a war to increase the pay and rations for the volunteer over that which the regular had had to subsist upon under as bad if not worse conditions than civil war sufferings. It took a war to pay just dues to the aged officer of long and faithful service. But in all these enactments there was little or no attempt at unity of control or organization. The heterogeneous character of an army composed of regulars, volunteers and militia with dissimilar units, uniform and equipment was greatly emphasized by these hasty and voluminous laws.

---

[8] One colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel and 6 second lieutenants.

[9] "I, A.B., do solemnly swear that I will support the Constitution of the United States, and bear true allegiance to the national government; that I will maintain and defend the sovereignty of the United States paramount to any and all allegiances, sovereignty, or fealty I may owe to any state, county, or country, whatsoever."

The Confederate States had anticipated the North in its legislation by over two months. Although most of their laws had the same defects as those of the Federals, there were several decided improvements. Mr. Davis was not limited as to the number of volunteers he might accept and he was vested with the exclusive right to commission all officers above the grade of captain. So the Confederacy had not only a single chief for its war activities and a unity of organization, but an earlier start than the Union in training its forces.

At this point the North came to sense the idea that it could not simply hurl animated uniforms at opposing forces with any hope of success. The national murder at Bull Run had caused it to be borne in upon the American mind that possibly there was something in this talk about discipline, training and the soldierly character, that military fitness could not be gained in an hour, and that a lumberman cannot become a captain overnight.

July 27 1861

It was at this time that McClellan was launched on his organization of the Army of the Potomac. Called to Washington after Bull Run he was given command of mixed northern levies for the purpose of drilling, training and disciplining them so that they might work as a single machine. The incoming regiments went into camp in the vicinity of Washington and slowly settled down to the tedious business of learning self-reliance and precision.

The handicaps were colossal. Hordes of soldiers and officers roamed about their tented cities with zeal and inefficiency. They knew little of maneuver, nothing of guard and outpost duty and worse than nothing of discipline and camp sanitation. Everything had to be taught from the ground up. The trained officer was overtaxed and the untrained overworked. All the industrious ones burned the midnight candle and the others fired the flames of discord and demoralization. The soldier in loose blouses, baggy trousers, ill-fitting shoes or boots had a hard time to have a soldierly respect for himself and a harder time to be comfortable and efficient.

His musket was old and too often useless. The Springfield arsenal was the only service manufactory of small arms in the United States, and its output only 2,500 a month.[10] The Confederates had scooped from the arsenals of the South, thanks to Mr. Floyd, 235,000 muskets, so that they were well armed at the outset. But the Federals were so ill-provided that even flintlocks were issued. Few rifles found their way into the hands of the volunteer. The markets of Europe were scoured by Federal agents for any kind of weapon. The result was that they purchased *any kind* at a high price, and the volunteer suffered accordingly. The calibers under such improvidence were as varied as in the Revolution. Few soldiers could use each other's ammunition. Old English Enfields, German and Belgian smoothbores and American arms of many makes and sizes were distributed to the commands. Some companies had only enough good weapons for the performance of guard duty.

As for rifled cannon, none had been adopted until this time. Although Parrott and Rodman had produced the best and most acceptable types, smoothbore guns of iron and brass and of all calibers were to be found in abundance. Since the government had no foundries of its own, these larger weapons were hurriedly constructed and poorly tested. The consequence was that many burst when they were first fired. One regular field battery had three different types of arms, two 13-pounders, two 12-pounders and two 6-pounders. Throughout the service there were smoothbores varying from 6 to 48 pounders, old mortars, howitzers, and columbiads of brass, cast-iron and wrought-iron. There were Parrott rifled guns throwing 100- and 200-pound projectiles and Rodman guns up to 20 inches in diameter. In a subsequent battle 36 different kinds of balls were picked up from the ground.

There were as many kinds of uniform as arms. The impractical zouave type seemed to be the most usual. But gaudy epaulets and feathers soon gave way to the simple buttoned coat and blunted forage cap of blue. In the Confederate service, the uniform was much the same in style as for the Union, but the gray blouse was almost universally worn.

---

[10] The cost of manufacturing a rifle was $13.93 and there was but a small proportion on hand.

The soft gray felt hat and the folding collar were much in evidence.

1861 Although the Federal militia had in many cases its own state drill, Scott's drill regulations were reprinted in three parts for immediate use. Apparently there were no changes over the regulations issued in 1835. The company drilled in 2 ranks and loaded "in twelve times." With the comparatively few weapons having percussion caps and with the breech-loaders, the motions for loading were reduced to nine and less. After the recruit had passed through the "school of the soldier" he was required to be instructed in "target firing." The records of the corporals and privates, who fired from 3 to 5 rounds per day, were kept for the purpose of dividing the soldiers into three classes: "The most excellent marksmen, the next in accuracy and the most indifferent." The largest part of the ammunition was required to be expended on the last class.

A work entitled *The United States Infantry Tactics for the Instruction of Infantry of the Line and Light Infantry, together with Bayonet Exercises,* elaborated on Scott's Regulations and gave to the infantry needed instruction in the knife and triangular bayonet.

A manual on "Heavy Artillery," as intricate as it was elaborate, showed the juvenile state of our readiness. Guns of every type, irrespective of their peculiarities, were treated of because they had to be used. There were 8-inch howitzers on 24-pounder siege carriages; 10-inch siege mortars, coehorn mortars, 10-inch seacoast mortars, 13-inch seacoast mortars, stone mortars, 8-inch seacoast howitzers on barbette carriages; 10-inch seacoast howitzers on barbette carriages; 8-inch columbiads on casemate carriages; 24-pounder howitzers on flank casemate carriages; 8-inch columbiads on columbiad carriages; and 10-inch columbiads on columbiad carriages. Nor were these all the types that were brought into play. All heavy weapons that could be scraped together had to be called into service whether or not they were appropriate. No wonder the cannoneer was required to understand the service of the piece in field artillery before taking up the heavy.

General McClellan's[11] work on *Regulations and Instructions for the Field Service of the U. S. Cavalry in Time of War* dealt with the conduct of marches and the duties of commanders of "the advanced guard, rear guard, flank guard and rear detachments." It treated at great length the subjects of outposts, patrols, videttes, pickets and main guards. Columns and wheelings of twos and fours in open order came into being with this work and added to the facility of movement of cavalry. The terms dragoon and mounted rifles now disappeared. All such mounted troops were called cavalry.

Drill regulations of the several states had individual treatments. The *Manual for Light Infantry,* by Colonel Ellsworth of the New York Zouaves, is an example. This book adapted the requirements of Hardee's *Manual* to the minie rifle. It was really an enlargement and modification of both Hardee's and Scott's regulations. Loading was done "in eight times," and practice in firing while kneeling and lying was prescribed. The sword manual was explained in minute detail.

Hardee's *Rifle and Infantry Tactics* became the regulations for the Confederates. The author prescribed loading to be done "in nine times" and gave methods for the deployment of the battalion as skirmishers. With the Maynard primer, loading was done "in eight times" and for greater rapidity "in four times." Both Hardee's and Scott's regulations caused the company to change direction by marching in file and by wheeling. Turning on a fixed pivot by fours had not yet been inaugurated for infantry.

So McClellan with mixtures of men, clothing, small arms, ammunition, cannon, sizes of regiments, equipage and regulations tried to weld the incoming irregulars into a unit. Staffs had to be trained and organized, and the whole conglomerate force to be disciplined and made capable of maneuvering in the face of the enemy. His task reminds one of Washington's situation at the opening of the Revolution. In magnitude it surpassed even the undertaking of the Father of his Country, for about 300,000 troops were now collected in the East. One regiment refused to obey McClellan's orders, but upon being surrounded by a force of regulars it succumbed and fell into line. On the whole, though, the army liked McClellan in spite of the severity he had to use as an organizer and disciplinarian. He had only 5,000 regulars present to help in the instruction of the raw volunteer. Besides many of their officers had been taken away to fill higher commands and perform staff duties in volunteer brigades and divisions elsewhere. A large number of the junior officers were as green as those in the volunteer regiments because the lieutenants could not be supplied by a Military Academy of less than 220 cadets. However, McClellan parceled out regular batteries to artillery regiments of volunteers and likewise distributed regular infantry and cavalry regiments among the volunteer brigades. But his trained contingent was too small to speed the instruction. Recruiting in regular regiments was so slow that by the end of the year this basic element numbered only 20,334. Further the newly created regiments such as the Sixth Cavalry and Fifth Artillery, because they were numerically larger and had one more battalion than the volunteers, were unlike the volunteer organizations. Thus McClellan had a more or less disintegrated regular personnel whose members had to adjust themselves to new arrangements for themselves while they were trying to instruct a mass of unskilled levies.

---

[11] McClellan was the originator of the McClellan saddle which is still in use.

At any rate, both the main armies of the Federals and Confederates had to stop and train, while the civilian population for a year languished with the burden of war and while not one decisive stroke could be struck. The army in Virginia, though better armed and organized than the Army of the Potomac, was suffering from the victory of Bull Run. The South now feeling that the North was in full flight, fell into such lassitude that recruits could be had with the greatest difficulty. So the armies watched each other by balloons and scouts for many months until they might be prepared for something effective.

In the camps about Washington and Alexandria, the first hundred thousand were drilling, reviewing, parading, maneuvering, doing guard and picket duty, having target practice and learning to adjust and wear their clothing and accouterments. Some slept on the ground and some had cots, but as a whole they were comfortable. As the winter came on, the soldiers built wooden frames around their tents, collected stoves and learned to take care of themselves in the open. Messes in each company were gradually formed so that all soon learned how to prepare their meager fare. But they were almost to a man restless to do something, unable to understand the meaning of all this training and delay. Of course there was much sickness. Dysentery and typhoid malaria resulted from the recruit's ignorance of the proper care of himself in the field. Measles and other contagious diseases ran their rounds. Yet in this apparently passive state the northern army was actually preparing to make successes possible for later generals.

The remaining actions of the year occurred in the West, where the forces of Lyon and Sigel combated those of McCulloch and Sterling Price. On both sides the character of troops and methods of guerrilla warfare prevented effective measures at this stage of the conflict. The fact that the commander of the Federals was Fremont, who was a better explorer than general, was a preventive of good teamwork. Besides, the three-month men left General Lyon in the moment when success might have been possible. A company of regular infantry, a part of the Fourth Cavalry and two pieces of artillery were all the ballast the northern commanders in Missouri could count upon. Poorly fed, trained, and paid, the remainder fought about as they pleased.

The only action of any account was that of Wilson's Creek where General Lyon was killed after carrying out a plan that *Aug. 10 1861* should have had better results, had his troops been inclined to discipline. After surprising the Confederates in their camp, General Sigel's men fell into laxity and disorder to such an extent that they were routed. The whole southern force then turned on General Lyon. The disaster which made little or no impression upon the war, was due entirely to raw troops as at Bull Run. Four hundred and eighty-eight lives were squandered in this hotly contested battle.

The unfortunate selection of Fremont[12] as a major general by Lincoln was nowhere more evident than in his neglect of Colonel Mulligan at Lexington, Missouri. In addition to the great blunders Fremont had already committed, he failed to call together his widely scattered troops for the protection of that city. In vain did Mulligan with his 2,700 men call for reenforcements when he saw the city being encompassed by over 20,000 Confederates under Price. For eight days the little *Sept. 12–20 1861* Union force was besieged, the most lackadaisical interest or effort on the part of Fremont being displayed. Finally heat, hunger, thirst and a hot bombardment told the tale of hopelessness. Even though some of the raw men were armed solely with pistols, Mulligan fought on desperately until a portion of the "home guards" hoisted a white flag without orders and fled. The whole garrison fell into the hands of the Confederates. And another inconsequential action had taken place.

---

[12] Fremont had never had the basic training of a soldier.

In West Virginia Floyd was operating against the Union *Aug. 26 1861* forces under Tyler. At Cross Lanes the Federals went into camp without taking any precautions by patrols or scouts, much as if they were in a peaceful country. The consequence was that Floyd fell upon them, killed a few, captured more and *Sept. 10 1861* dispersed the remainder. Then Rosecrans met Floyd at Gauley Mountain. Late in the day the Union commander undertook to attack the position, but the troops did not respond well. The columns were mishandled and repulsed. Although Floyd retired next day, no particular advantage had been gained by either side. In the retreat during the darkness of the evening, Rosecrans' new troops by shooting at each other added 30 casualties to the list.

Lee, now, being numerically stronger than the Federals in *Sept. 11 1861* West Virginia, took the offensive with his 9,000 men. His plans were well laid but too elaborate for his green command. He and Reynolds played a bold game with each other in the mountains near Elk Water as far as movement was concerned. But when it came to actual attacks Lee, on the one hand, was made timid by his knowledge of the poor quality of his troops. On the other hand, Reynolds after attacking Buffalo Hill found out from the weakness exhibited by his untrained men that it would have been better had timidity been a cautionary measure with him. The leading regiment of the Federals fled in such a decided manner at the first discharge of musketry that they disorganized and panicked the regiments in rear.

While these instructive and costly encounters were in process, McClellan was constructing defensive works, fortified lines and intrenched positions about Washington. With utmost attention to detail, he planned and built breastworks which the most unskilled recruits might hold. He organized 4 regiments into a brigade and 3 brigades into a division. The division thus consisted roughly of 10,000 infantry, a regiment of cavalry, 3 batteries of volunteer artillery and 1 battery of regular artillery. Wagons, mules, ordnance and engineer trains, signal supplies, food, clothing, tentage and a dozen other necessaries had to be assigned to the different units. The staff officers who were to control this outlay of men and material had to be selected in great quantity and be instructed in their duties. The officers as well as the privates had to be taught the rudiments of movement, fire, supply and administration. The signal corps had to be built up from nothing, because the soldiers of the Civil War were the first in this hemisphere to feel the military value of Morse's invention.

McClellan constantly inspected his ever-growing command. He complimented, encouraged, rebuked and classified his men. He placed the new regiments where they would find comrades and learn more quickly. He slowly built a sure foundation of knowledge and morale.

End of Sept. 1861

The Confederates at Manassas and Centreville under Beauregard were similarly training. Mr. Davis took an active part in organizing the industries of the South so as to get to the commander of the Army of Northern Virginia, men, arms, ammunition, horses, and provisions. Everything at the southern seat of government seemed to bend toward aiding the commander in the field. Although the strength of this army was inferior to that of the northern one, the Confederates were skillful in keeping their inadequacy a secret.

When McClellan had about completed his fortifications in the vicinity of Washington, he was embarrassed by an occurrence which did much to destroy the self-reliant spirit he had so successfully built up by his intelligence and personality. He had 7 divisions on the right bank and 4 on the left bank of the Potomac, a total force all told of about 152,000 men and 228 field pieces. Trying to find out about the position of the

Confederates, he ordered General Stone to watch them at Leesburg and to make a demonstration in order to induce them to retreat. Making a cursory reconnaissance, Stone was led into the false assumption that there were no Confederates in the town. He therefore ordered Deven's brigade to cross the river and take the enemy's camp. Accordingly that commander with only 500 landed on the south side of the Potomac and marched on Leesburg. *Oct. 21 1861* The Confederates, however, with about 3,000 men under Evans, had warily concealed themselves in the town until the Federals should commit themselves. Then they sallied forth and drove Deven's back to Ball's Bluff on the river bank. There the Federals were reënforced by the regiment of Colonel Baker,[13] a brave but inexperienced officer; 1,900 Federals, huddled in a narrow space and unprovided with means of retreat, were caught in a trap. The untrained soldiers became demoralized. The well-handled Confederates mowed down the cannoneers, until there were few to fire the pieces. A final charge by the Eighth Virginia threw the already retreating Northerners into a wild panic to get across the river. Baker and many more officers were shot down and a number were drowned in attempting to swim the river; 223 were actually killed. Out of the 1,900, only 800 recrossed. And another useless waste of life had thrown the Army of the Potomac into a state of bewilderment over its leaders.

The affair caused McClellan to withdraw his divisions to the north side of the Potomac and to make an overestimate of the Confederate strength—again to protract the strife, the expense, and the mortality.

McClellan by this time had been drawn in close conference with Mr. Lincoln, to the exclusion of Scott, who was still general in chief. Scott's sound advice was no more sought. Accordingly he resigned his office and went into retirement. *Nov. 1 1861* In his letter he expressed the highest praises of McClellan, who became the general in chief.

Right here should be drawn a distinction between the presidents of the two sides. Lincoln was the greatest of statesmen and men, but was a novice in the science of arms.[14] Davis was a trained soldier both in theory and practice, and had no little experience in statecraft. This difference between the two heads, without aspersions on either one, may explain some of the early catastrophes that befell the North.

---

[13] A former senator and orator.

The year passed out with training and organizing in the North and South and small encounters from Missouri to Maryland. The only action of any importance was a meeting engagement near Drainesville. General McCall sent Ord's brigade to seize the supplies of that town. Stuart with his brigade in the meantime started from a point near Centreville to get some provisions between the lines. The two columns met unexpectedly. The Confederates becoming entangled in the woods fired upon each other; and Ord, by his masterly handling of his batteries, put them to flight with a loss to the southerners of 43 killed. *Dec. 20 1861*

By the beginning of the next year 200,000 Federals in winter quarters lay along the Potomac. Halleck had about 40,000 in Missouri and Buell about the same number in Kentucky. Buell had replaced Sherman, because the latter had told an inspector from Washington that it would take 60,000 men to subdue Kentucky and 200,000 to subdue the West. At the seat of government Sherman was thought to be crazy. As it turned out, Buell was gradually given the reënforcements that Sherman had asked for, because of necessity. *Jan. 1 1862*

When Mr. Stanton became Secretary of War, Mr. Lincoln decided that there should be a movement of the forces. Accordingly there was issued the first of the series of pernicious "War Orders." This one fixed a "general movement of the land and naval forces" for February 22. Such a conception was full of color but absurd to any one of military experience. McClellan realized that battle movements are dependent upon tactical and strategical factors rather than sentimental dates. When he proposed transferring the Army of the Potomac by water so as to attack Richmond, the President vetoed the plan, *Jan. 13 1862*

---

[14] It is interesting to note that Abraham Lincoln was a captain of volunteers who turned out for the Black Hawk War in 1835 and that Lieutenant Jefferson Davis of the regular army administered to him his first oath of allegiance.

Jan. 31 1862 and ordered an advance on Manassas Junction. It took a whole month of argument to get any accession to McClellan's idea. In the meantime the great opportunity had passed. According to the Constitution the President was commander in chief, but the Constitution could not in a twinkling make him a trained soldier. Had he been one, he would have upheld the military maxim that it is wise for the commander who is away from the battlefield and troops to give only a general mission to the leader charged with the execution of a plan and thereafter not to heckle him.

But though McClellan was heckled, the fault was not Lincoln's. Both he and his Secretary of War were forced into a position they had not the technical knowledge to fill. Every previous Congress that had sat during peace was to blame. Those bodies had made no distinction between the duties of a political commander in chief and a trained general in chief. They had even refused to give the latter a standing. Nor had they provided training in the nation sufficient to overcome the wildest disorder. There was no chief of staff in the modern understanding of the term and the general in chief functioned with more fear of Washington than of Richmond. A lawyer was by law the chief of captains and a great and good statesman was by act of man suddenly metamorphosed into a general. The Constitution had made it the duty of the lawmakers to raise and support armies, nor did it even hint that those servants of the public weal were to begin to act only after war was long upon us. Those Congresses had failed in the interspaces of peace to give the country physical stamina and direction. The blood of the first two years of the Civil War lies upon them as much as if they had ordered the execution of brave men.

Where the trained officers were far from the seat of the government and therefore less open to its interference, campaigns ran more quickly and smoothly. Grant under the orders of Halleck in the west advanced from Cairo on the center of the Confederate western line of operation. His movement was audacious and unhampered by his own higher command, so that Feb. 8, 16 1862 he was enabled to capture Forts Henry and Donelson, the key to the Confederate center. As a consequence the Confederates had to withdraw from Missouri, Kentucky and a large part of

Tennessee. This was really the first consequential action since Fort Sumter had been fired on a year before, and the first real victory for the Federals.

On the other hand, back along the Potomac "Little Mac," as he was affectionately called by his soldiers, was having a hard time to get started on his peninsular campaign. Another war order stipulated that a force from the Army of the Potomac, sufficient to make Washington secure, should be left there and that the Potomac from Washington to the Chesapeake should be freed from the enemy's batteries before McClellan's main force should be transferred to its new base. Without consulting McClellan, Lincoln also directed that his army should be organized into four corps and named the commanders. Before the batteries along the Potomac could be silenced, McClellan had to occupy Centreville and Manassas, which the Confederates had abandoned. Then Mr. Lincoln, listening to advice which shook his confidence in McClellan, relieved him as general in chief, but did not appoint a successor. Although McClellan was retained as commander of the Army of the Potomac and the Eastern Department, his prestige was destroyed at the beginning of an offensive.

March 8 1862

March 10 1862

March 11 1862

At the same time, Mr. Lincoln united the commands of Halleck, Hunter and Buell in the west as the Department of Mississippi, and designated the troops intervening between the Potomac and the Mississippi as the Mountain Department under General Fremont. All these army commanders were to report directly to the Secretary of War. It now turned out that a President and Secretary of War without military background, not only virtually, but actually, commanded three large armies.

If the year 1861 is that of unpreparedness, the year 1862 is that of mismanagement.

Not so in the South. While the Union was organizing as a loose Confederacy, the Confederacy was organizing as a close Union. The southern government wisely abandoned states' rights for their army shortly after they had begun to fight for states' rights as a general policy. Doing away with war regiments, voluntary enlistments and the appointing power of governors for commissioned officers, they vested the control in Mr. Davis. They made it a duty for every able-bodied man between

18 and 35 to serve his country. They were the first to enunciate in this country a proper draft law, a thing which afterwards proved to be the greatest single stroke of America in the World War. Virginia had anticipated the Confederacy in this action, so that 30,000 from that state were early infiltrated into their main southern army against McClellan. Such enactments gave Mr. Davis the chance to appoint skilled leaders to higher command, to raise his force disproportionately over that of the North and to have a system of replacements whereby recruits would quickly gain the stamina of the older regiments.

March 1862

On the other hand, the North persisted in the volunteer system, in taking bodily regiments and brigades politically made and in having an old regiment diminished by disease, death and desertion beside a fresh regiment of double the number. Under the state system the governors and local politicians were jealous of their localities to such an extent that men from one state, county or town could not be used in organizations from another. The consequence was that some regiments at the end of the war were as low as 100 men while others had many times that number. The incoming units required a relatively longer time to train, because of the absence of any mixture of veterans. And to cap all, the higher commanders might have a brigade of 1,000 or 2,400 men. The name of a unit meant nothing.

While the South was forging ahead on concentration and unity, McClellan's command was being plucked and dispersed. Mr. Lincoln ordered Blenker's Division to the Mountain Department, thus detaching 10,000 men from the Army of the Potomac. Then, after promising to take no more, he ordered McDowell's Division at the solicitation of General Wadsworth to stay in front of Washington, and finally forbade McClellan to use General Wool's force of 10,000 at Fortress Monroe, an action which prevented the use of that post as a base.

March 31 1862

April 3 1862

The Secretary of War then issued a general order which further scattered the forces under General McClellan's control. The portion of Virginia and Maryland, lying between the Mountain Department and the Blue Ridge, constituted the Department of the Shenandoah under General Banks; and that part of Virginia, between the Blue Ridge and the Fredericksburg and Richmond Railroad, constituted the Department of the Rappahannock under General McDowell. The territory of Virginia and Maryland was now separated into five independent departments, to the detriment of unity, control and strength of the main army that was already launched on an offensive against the enemy's principal force.

The Army of the Potomac, now committed to a campaign, had been so hampered by the central government that it was necessary for its leader to spend more anxiety on convincing the powers at home than on engaging the enemy. In spite of all his discouragements McClellan transported in twenty days his entire force to the shores of the Peninsula; 58,000 out of a possible 109,000 were all he could collect and put in motion when he promptly advanced on Yorktown through the mud and swamps. Then came the well-known actions which pushed back the Confederates: the siege of Yorktown (April 5–May 4), Williamsburg (May 5), West Point (May 7), Hanover Court House (May 27), and Seven Pines (May 31, June 1). *March 17 to April 6 1862* *April 4 1862*

During this time other Federal troops to almost 300,000 were scattered as follows: Department of the Rappahannock, 41,000; Department of the Shenandoah, 6,000; Mountain Department, 15,000; Fortress Monroe, 10,000; General Thomas Sherman in South Carolina, 13,000; Army of the Ohio, 95,000; Department of the Missouri, 80,000; and at the National Capitol, 30,000. Such a distribution was not only a deprivation of force sadly needed by McClellan, who was fighting the principal battles, but was an invitation for defeat in detail.

Meanwhile in the west Albert Sidney Johnston was marching with his army, which had been increased by the draft, toward Grant at Pittsburg Landing in the hope of meeting him before Buell could join him. Surprising the Federals at Shiloh, Johnston threw them back from their own camps. But the struggle was so hot that at the end of the day neither side could advance. Johnston, the general so successful against the Mormons, was at this stage killed. Beauregard, who succeeded him, ordered the fight to cease. The delay was sufficient for Buell's troops to arrive and help drive the Confederates back the next day. Thus, while the troops in the West, far away *April 6 1862* *April 7 1862* from Washington, were being concentrated for a decisive struggle, McClellan's forces were dispersed.

Wounds and sickness by this time had shown Congress, among other things, that there had to be more organized care of the disabled. Legislation made sound provisions for a medical department that was to have signal benefit during the war. A surgeon-general with rank of brigadier general was to be in charge of the department. Associated with him were an assistant surgeon-general and a medical inspector general who were each to have the rank, pay and emoluments of a colonel of cavalry. Also 10 surgeons, 10 assistant surgeons, 20 medical cadets and as many hospital stewards as deemed necessary by the surgeon-general were added to the service. *April 16 1862*

Jackson shortly thereafter began his valley campaign along the Shenandoah. The forces of the Federals separated by over 250 miles, and hampered by voluminous orders and suggestions from chiefs distant from the troops were an easy prey to Jackson working on interior lines. He first defeated Schenck and Milroy at McDowell, West Virginia. *May 8 1862* Then he speedily marched toward Luray where he found that Ewell had been ordered away from his command by Lee. But as soon as he could make known to Lee that he needed Ewell, the order was immediately countermanded. *May 25 1862* Jackson was thus quickly enabled to attack Banks at Winchester and drive him across the Potomac. *May 29 1862* Appearing before Harper's Ferry he brought fear and excitement to the powers at Washington. Moving between the forces of Shields and Fremont, who were not in communication with each other, he retraced his steps and repulsed the superior forces of Fremont at Cross Keys. *June 7 1862* Then he turned on Shields and drove him from Port Republic back toward Swift Run Gap. *June 9 1862* Thus having rid the Shenandoah of peril to the South he was at liberty to join Lee at Richmond and swell the Confederate army opposed to McClellan. With a force never above 20,000, Jackson had paralyzed Banks and Fremont, had caused fright in the Union Capitol and had been enabled to reënforce Lee, while 200,000 misapplied Federal troops lay in a semicircle about him. During this time he had received but one order—one mission from Lee: that he should attack Banks and drive him across the Potomac. On the other hand, the orders, letters and telegrams, first counseling one thing and then another, from Mr. Stanton and Mr. Lincoln, pursued Banks so fast that he, like other commanders along this disjointed line, was in a maze of conjecture.

One result of this campaign was to see the Federal Mountain and Shenandoah Departments united into the Army of Virginia under Pope. *June 26 1862* The other was the reënforcement of the Confederates under Lee not only by Jackson but by 37,000 other troops from the Carolinas and Georgia. Lee, therefore, took the offensive in the Seven Days' Battles of Mechanicsville, Gaines Mills, Savage Station, White Oaks Swamp and Malvern Hill. Though he was severely repulsed at Malvern Hill and lost more than McClellan, he had released himself from the siege and was enabled to compel the Federals to retreat to the James River. Had McClellan not been deprived of troops for the main issue, there is no telling but that the war might have ended here, and several hundred thousand lives have been saved.

As it was, the separated units of the Union were powerless to do otherwise than reorganize and try again. The forces were scattered under eight independent commanders over a distance of about 700 miles. While Lee was moving north on a straight line, Burnside was withdrawing his forces from South Carolina to Fortress Monroe, McClellan was preparing to retire from the Peninsula, Grant was reorganizing in West Tennessee, and Buell was rebuilding the Memphis and Charleston Railroad. Halleck was then ordered to Washington where he was made general in chief. *July 11 1862* No successor being named for his vacancy in the Department of the Tennessee, Grant, Sherman and Rosecrans operated independently.

While Lee was advancing northward as the aggressor against greatly superior numbers and the distributed Federals were trying to collect themselves under the fidgeting of Halleck, legislation buried itself in bounty laws and other matters. One hundred dollars bounty, one fourth of which was to be paid upon enlistment, was given to every recruit. *July 22 1862* The President was authorized to appoint as many as 40 major generals and 200 brigadier generals. Three arsenals were to be built at Columbus, Ohio; Indianapolis, Indiana; and Rock Island, *July 11 1862*

July 17 1862 Illinois. Persons of African descent were allowed to be enlisted to any number the President saw fit. And officers, after they had been borne upon the rolls of the *Army Register* for 45 years or after they became 62 years of age, might retire from active service. However, the President could give them such active duty as they could perform, in which case they were to receive full pay.

Thus while the Confederacy was economically enforcing the draft, we find the Federal government spending $7,500,000 for recruits. Although the Union felt it necessary to take over the telegraph lines, it balked on commandeering the manhood.

Aug. 9 1862 Jackson, in the van of Lee's column, struck Banks at Cedar Mountain. After a good stand by the Federals, the Confederate force was compelled to retire across the Rapidan. *Aug. 29, 30 1862* Then Pope's army met Lee's at Bull Run, where the Federal troops were again beaten and again compelled to retire to Washington. The flight of the Union forces was almost as disgraceful and rapid as at the first Bull Run the year before. The road was filled with fleeing men. Straggling reached its climax; 7,000 skulkers were arrested by the Sixth Corps in half an hour. There were with Pope's army no more than 500 cavalrymen fit for duty all told, and 1 corps was without its artillery. Although the Union force was superior in numbers, the acts of its various generals lacked that simplicity and cohesion which comes of experience in working together. Pope, Porter, Hooker, and McDowell, with forces suddenly brought from everywhere, had had no chance to work harmoniously as a team, whereas Lee, Jackson, Longstreet, Hill and Early had become an understanding unity of parts.

Sept. 8 1862 Nothing now stood in the way of Lee, so that he crossed the Potomac and advanced to Frederick, Maryland.

In the West, Bragg's army had been recruited to 50,000 by the draft. Taking the offensive against the Federals who were losing their one-year draft men and whose commands were not *Aug. 24 1862* in a high state of morale, he crossed the Tennessee River above Chattanooga, marched around Buell, captured 2,100 men at Mumfordsville and returned to Frankfort, Kentucky. There he was joined by Kirby Smith's corps, which had defeated Nelson at Richmond, Kentucky. By this move Bragg had gained many recruits in Kentucky and Tennessee and many supplies and prisoners.

Such action was especially made possible because the Federal army of the Mississippi, which had been collected with great pains, had been split. The reason for such division was the desire on the part of the "advisers" in Washington to take Chattanooga. An army of 100,000 men had been so broken up that neither of its parts could reënforce the other. By such faulty disposition the smaller southern force was not fearful of meeting either fraction.

In the east, the fallacy and ineffectiveness found in thus scattering commands brought the army returned from the Peninsula and Pope's army together. They were both ordered to fall back on Washington. McClellan had to begin to reclaim his united Army of the Potomac from the setbacks of fatal dispersions. The teamwork that had been so skillfully wrought in a united army the year before had been set at naught by the absence of divisions and brigades in separate fields. McClellan's work had in great measure to be done over again. *Sept. 2 1862* Cheers throughout the army greeted his appearance to the assembled command. Spirits rose and again the army of the Potomac freshened its hopes.

But the President urged immediate action while General Halleck counseled caution. It was a pity Mr. Lincoln's good judgment had to be tarnished by his advisers. The bugbear of leaving many troops at the capital caught McClellan again between two fires. On the one hand, he was to divide his force and, on the other, attack. In this state he was to beat an enemy whose force and whereabouts were undetermined. His demoralized army had to be reorganized and rejuvenated on the eve of a vital contest. When the captured order, telling of Lee's advance, revealed 5 Confederate divisions on one side of the Potomac and 4 on the other, McClellan's opportunity was blocked by dismal orders from Washington, which made him *Sept. 16 1862* keep one foot of his command near the capital. Then Harper's Ferry ignominiously capitulated because of raw troops and their inglorious commander. Lee could now unite his forces. Nevertheless, McClellan, moving onward, defeated him at Antietam and caused him to retire south across the Potomac. *Sept. 16, 17 1862*

This victory McClellan accomplished in spite of the fact that many of his troops had been only two weeks in the service, that 71,000 men fit for duty had to be chained to Washington and that he was at first able to attack Lee with only 2 divisions. With the slowness of some of his commanders, particularly Burnside, with the limited knowledge of Lee's strength, with the losses of nearly 20,000 men, with the poor discipline of junior officers and soldiers who were not yet over their demoralization from the defeats of the two Bull Runs, he was scarcely in a position to follow up his victory. Whether it required a month to make certain that this command would not do as the previous ones had done—spend itself in barrenness, chagrin and death—is at least conjectural.

While McClellan was then trying to reorganize his army which was in almost as sad need of discipline and supplies as at the beginning, the army in the west was again active. Buell[15]
Oct. 8 1862 pushed the Confederates back at Perryville, Kentucky, after a
bloody battle. Grant, who had been assigned the command of
Oct. 30 1862 the Department of the Tennessee, began the Vicksburg cam-
Nov. 24 1862 paign. Several weeks afterward the Army of the Tennessee
gained the important victory of Corinth.

Oct. 26 1862 McClellan, meanwhile, as soon as he could make a pontoon
bridge at Berlin, and had put his army again in some sort of
Nov. 2 1862 shape, started the crossing into Virginia. When he had his
main corps safely across, he made plans for striking Culpepper Court House and defeating Longstreet before Jackson could come to the rescue.

At this time McClellan was progressing as rapidly as any
Nov. 7 1862 one could expect. But one night while Burnside and he were
discussing the situation in McClellan's tent, a messenger from the President arrived bearing a brief order. When McClellan had read it he simply remarked to Burnside, "You command the army." Political influences had been at work. Here at the outset of a campaign which had received approval, the Army of the Potomac had to swap horses in midstream. Burnside was as much shocked as McClellan, who was ordered to repair to Trenton, New Jersey, and await further orders. Thus

---

[15] Buell had been relieved by Rosecrans and the name of the Army of the Ohio had been changed to that of the Cumberland (October 3, 4, 1862).

McClellan passed out of the Civil War. It is a curious fact that Lee, who had suffered defeat at Antietam, was backed, aided and encouraged without heckling by Mr. Davis, whereas McClellan, who had won a victory, was practically discarded entirely by the administration. The resentment within the northern army was keen, and its spirits accordingly went down.

Burnside, in getting hold of the new reins, found it no light task to move. Changing McClellan's plans of organization, learning the new situation and carrying on the dampening correspondence with Washington, delayed the Army of the Potomac several weeks. Thus a fine opportunity for ending the war was lost through interference by those who were far from the scene of activities.

Finally, after reorganizing his army into 3 grand divisions of 2 corps each, and after waiting for some time for pontoons, the commander of the Army of the Potomac found himself in the vicinity of Falmouth across the Rappahannock from Fredericksburg. While Burnside was trying to stretch a bridge across the river, Lee was collecting all his forces on the other side and growing stronger each day. It was a long time before the pontoons were set in order. Finally, in the face of strong defenses thrown up by Lee's entire army, Burnside sent his army across and attacked. But, though the troops were brave to the utmost, and the slaughter was tremendous, the heights of Fredericksburg could not be carried. Under the pressure from the Federal capital, Burnside felt it necessary to keep up the offensive at any cost. Though the daring Hooker implored him not to make a fresh attack, Burnside was obdurate. Only more slaughter, defeat and the retreat back across the river resulted.

Nov. 19 1862

Dec. 13 1862

The night after this awful repulse was as bitter for the Army of the Potomac as any force has ever experienced. The frigid cold, the useless loss, the rightful resentment over their mishandling had sunk the soldiers into the utmost gloom. Desertions and absenteeism sprang up almost as in the Revolution. Confidence in Burnside was lost. The men had not been paid for six months. Food and clothing in the midst of winter were lacking. Many at home soon sent packages containing civilian clothing to the men, and the winter sun of the

Dec. 13, 14 1862

second year of the war went down on fruitless, haphazard endeavors of the Union and on a disintegrating, dispirited army.

Only the passive victory of Murfreesborough lent any
Dec. 31 1862 alleviation to the situation. Rosecrans on being attacked at
that town had repulsed the Confederates, who finally withdrew.

Congress did not at once do much more for this situation
than did the Continental Congress during the dark hours of the
Revolution. The central government continued to be the play-
Jan. 6 1863 thing of the war governors. An act allowing 2 assistant sur-
geons to a cavalry regiment and regulating the size of a troop
or company, was followed by an authorization for the Governor
Feb. 7 1863 of Kentucky to raise a force of 20,000 for twelve months. A
commissary general of subsistence was created. Another
Feb. 9 1863 measure secured the pay, bounty and pensions for the men of
Feb. 16 1863 the Department of Missouri. Then came an addition of 30
major generals and 70 brigadier generals to the service in
March 2 1863 which it was wisely stipulated that they be taken from "those
who have been conspicuous for gallant or meritorious conduct
March 3 1863 in line of duty." The topographical engineers were abolished
as a separate corps and consolidated with the corps of engineers, and 19 officers were added to the ordnance. An officer below field rank had to pass, under a board of three seniors, an examination of proficiency before he could be promoted. The bounty had been so extravagantly abused that a provision of law had to prescribe that a soldier on leaving the service in advance of his termination of enlistment must have a discharge certificate for disability before he could receive the bonus. Then for the first time in our history a signal corps was recognized by law, although its parts had been necessarily organized before. It had grown up under the exigencies of war in three phases of work: the aerial telegraph, the field telegraph and the permanent electric telegraph, the last of which the government had taken over in 1861. Now these three were consolidated into a separate bureau. Then came the best and greatest military legislation of the war on the part of the Union. A draft law made every able-bodied citizen between 20 and 45 years of age liable for military service at the call of the President. But the good effect of this act was lessened by the provision for substitution. A man could be permanently exempt

from the draft by the payment of $300 or by furnishing a substitute. The law also held a contradiction when it offered bounties to men who were so plainly told that it was their duty to serve the nation.

At this late date of the war it was found that the tactics *1863* were not uniform or adequate. Accordingly, *Casey's Infantry Tactics* was ordered by the Secretary of War to be followed by regulars, volunteers and militia alike. Its three volumes brought a combination of the best of Scott's and Hardee's works up to date and made certain advances in accordance with the best usage in Europe. It was especially thought necessary in this work

> "to fix the formation to that in two ranks; to increase the rapidity of the gait; to increase the intervals between the battalions and brigades; to make, in the evolutions, the brigade the tactical unit; to hold the troops, when in maneuver in presence of the enemy, in closer order and well in hand; and, as a general rule, to insist upon deployment upon the heads of columns, as the safest and most rapid means of forming line of battle."

The direct step, 28 inches in length, was made at the rate of 90 to a minute; the double quick step, 33 inches in length, was made at the rate of 165 to the minute. Loading was done in "eight or nine times" according to the primer used. In firing at will, loading was done in "four times." Loading while standing or lying down was prescribed. For a company to march by the flank, each man faced in the proper direction and formed fours in column by means of the rear rank stepping over and obliquing into the intervals between the front rank files. The method of deploying and marching skirmishers was delineated at length. Although there was no school for the regiment, there was an extensive one for the battalion. The evolutions of the brigade were covered in the third volume.

Although the volunteer uniform had by this time come to consist generally of the short blue coat with lay-down collar, the blunted forage cap and lighter blue trousers, the regular had his long coat and campaign hat turned up on each side.

Both wore waist belts for their cartridge boxes, but in addition the regular soldier had a strap over the left shoulder in much the same manner as the Sam Browne belt is now worn.

In the army of the Potomac Burnside's position had become embarrassing. Some of his higher officers had let Mr. Lincoln know of the dissatisfaction in all ranks and of the danger of the new offensive on which Burnside was launched. But Mr. Lincoln, instead of relieving the army's commander or of silencing his critics, took a middle course—a compromise political course. He sent word to Burnside, as the general was setting his machinery in motion, that he should not renew the campaign without consulting the President. Burnside immediately tendered his resignation, which was not accepted.

While these difficulties were besetting the Union, the absence of politics in the Richmond government had made Lee's army superior to anything in the United States for discipline and cohesion.

Middle of Jan., 1863

Burnside, having made a new plan of campaign, asked the President to approve it or to accept his resignation. Authorized to carry out his plan, he set to work with avidity, but a heavy rainy season coming on blocked his efforts at crossing the Rappahannock. Then Burnside, unable to bear the criticism against him, asked the President to dismiss Hooker, Brooks, Cochrane and Newton and to take away the commands of Generals Franklin, Smith, Sturgis, Ferrero and Colonel Taylor. The President then relieved him of the command of the Army of the Potomac and put Hooker in his place.

Jan. 21, 22 1863

Jan. 25 1863

The army sorely needed reorganization and morale; 2,922 officers and 81,964 men were absent from it either with or without leave. The political connivings of the states to get men home to vote or to be taken care of in the state hospitals, had robbed the forces at the front of a great number. In addition, nearly 23,000 men, whose nine-month and two-year enlistments would expire in May, had to be used before that time or there would be merely a shadow of an army to oppose the Confederate solidarity. Hooker, therefore, doing away with the grand divisions created by Burnside, began to speed his preparations for the spring.

In the West, at the same time, Grant was preparing in spite of the high water in the Mississippi, to cross over toward Vicksburg. Assembling and preparing his army he had begun to exhibit the skill of fighting things out on his own line. But it must be remembered he was far from Washington.

Almost simultaneously the two northern armies struck.
Hooker crossed two small rivers while Grant crossed one large
one. Hooker having marched 45 miles in three days, estab- *April 30*
lished himself before Chancellorsville, while Grant with 20,000
men cut loose from his base and placed himself in the enemy's
country on the eastern bank of the Mississippi.

Hooker, having sent away his cavalry on a raid and having his forces divided and his flank in the air was attacked by Lee at Chancellorsville. Though "Stonewall" Jackson was killed, this bloody battle was a victory for the South. Hooker had to retire northward.

While the Union army was recovering from this setback,
Grant, along the Mississippi, was forging ahead toward Vicks-
burg. After having taken Port Gibson and Grand Gulf, he was
joined by Sherman with 13,000 men. Driving back a Confeder- *May 7 1863*
ate force from Raymond, Grant then caused Johnston to evacu-
ate Jackson. Beating Pemberton at Champion's Hill and Black *May 14 1863*
River Ridge, he began the offensive against Vicksburg. When *May 18 1863*
two assaults proved that the town could not be taken by storm,
he settled down to a regular siege.

Meanwhile Lee, having made up his mind to invade Pennsylvania, tried to maneuver Hooker out of position behind the Rappahannock. Masked by Stuart's cavalry, Lee started up the Shenandoah valley. When Hooker tried to place himself so as to defeat Lee's forces in detail, he was stopped by the Secretary of War and Halleck, who were disposed to keep Hooker from commanding in another battle. But strangely they let him still keep command of the forces. Thereafter Hooker almost kept pace with Lee by paralleling the southern leader on his eastern flank. Not long after Lee crossed the Potomac at Shepherdstown and Williamsport, Hooker crossed it toward Frederick. Lee then proceeded toward Cashtown, Pennsylvania, eight miles west of Gettysburg.

Meantime Hooker sought permission to cross the Blue Ridge in Lee's rear. When his request was refused, he resigned

June 27 1863 his command. The resignation was accepted. Meade, who wanted Reynolds to have the command of the Army of the Potomac, was given that post. Again the councilors in Washington changed leaders at the beginning of an offensive.

Meade pushed on to meet Lee in Pennsylvania. Although the commanders of each side did not desire then to bring on a *July 1 1863* battle, Longstreet and Reynolds became so entangled at Gettysburg that they induced a general engagement. The three days' fighting, so well known in American history, resulted after *July 4 1863* Pickett's charge in the defeat of the southern army. On the same day Vicksburg capitulated and Grant marched into the city. These simultaneous blows sounded the death knell of the Confederacy.

Most of the soldiers on both sides could now be said to be trained. There were fewer such on the Federal side, because not so many men had remained continuously with the colors. The following statement of conditions after Gettysburg would scarcely reveal an over amount of discipline:

> "Among twenty-four thousand loaded muskets picked up at random on the field of battle, one-fourth only were properly loaded; twelve thousand contained each a double charge, and the other fourth from three to ten charges; in some there were six balls to a single charge of powder; others contained six cartridges, one on the top of the other without having been opened; a few more, twenty-three complete charges regularly inserted; and finally, in the barrel of a single musket there were found confusedly jumbled together twenty-two balls, sixty-two buck-shot, with a proportionate quantity of powder."

But the fury of this battle was unprecedented. Even if the men were frenzied it must be said that both attacker and defender generally kept their faces toward the enemy under fire.

However, depletion in the ranks from many causes required the utmost effort at recruiting in the North. The draft law, with its loopholes, was not proving successful. The call for 100,000 militia for three months, which Mr. Lincoln had made in the middle of June, produced 16,361 men. The draft brought only 35,782, of whom at least 26,000 were substitutes.

The opposition to conscription took hold of the copperhead and the Unionist alike. All sorts of means of evasion were resorted to. In New York City, when the drafting was begun, the antagonism was unconcealed. Two days later a great riot broke out which threw the metropolis in terror. Negroes were hanged and at least a thousand casualties occurred. Finally, 10,000 troops had to be used in putting a quietus on the outbreak. In other cities, such as Boston, lesser outrages were committed. Finally when the people saw that they had to submit, the hatred of conscription was not openly displayed. Among other ills, the bounty jumper sprang into being. Having enlisted and obtained his bonus, the recruit would desert, reënlist and obtain more money. Had the North used a draft act when patriotism was on the high tide at the beginning of the war, it is quite probable that some of these evils might have been avoided. But one good result of conscription was the spur it gave to volunteering.

July 11 1863

July 13 1863

Lee, who was not pursued by the main northern army, moved back to the Potomac. There he was followed by Meade. For the remainder of the year the two eastern antagonists maneuvered in Virginia but produced nothing decisive.

Grant, the victor of Vicksburg, asked to carry on a campaign to Mobile, which would then possibly have accomplished what Sherman later had to do with so much pains. Halleck not only vetoed his plans, but took away from him most of his troops in order to relieve Rosecrans at Chattanooga. But before this reënforcement could be given, Rosecrans was defeated by Bragg at Chickamauga and practically placed in a state of siege at Chattanooga.

Last half of Aug. and early Sept. 1863

Sept. 19, 20 1863

Grant, having been called from Mobile to take command of the newly created Military Division of the Mississippi, went north to Cairo. Thence he proceeded toward Chattanooga.

Oct. 10 1863

Oct. 16 1863

In the meantime, Mr. Lincoln called for 300,000 volunteers for three years. Though he issued the call, he knew that the draft for these troops would have to be deferred until the Enrollment Act could be revised. Consequently the actual collection of these forces had to be put off until Congress could meet. Thus the North was more than two years behind the South in the efficiency of gaining reënforcements.

Oct. 17 1863

Oct. 23 1863 When Grant arrived at Chattanooga he began to concentrate his armies; Sherman, Thomas and Hooker brought their *Nov. 24, 25 1863* troops to join him. At Lookout Mountain, Chattanooga and Missionary Ridge, Grant assaulted Bragg's fortified positions and drove the enemy out. Then Sheridan completed the success by pursuing and capturing many prisoners. Grant immediately started for Knoxville, where Burnside was being held *Dec. 4 1863* in check. His coming forced Longstreet to raise the siege. All the main armies of both sides were now in winter quarters.

When the Federal Congress met, instead of setting to work at once to modify the draft law so as to make it effective, an *Dec. 23 1863* appropriation of $23,000,000 was made for the payment of bounties and advance pay. Still at this late date in the war, the Federal government was persisting in wasting its resources because of state influences rather than exerting its authority in the equable enforcement of military service. It was necessary to get reliable men as recruiting agents. Measures to prevent fraud by these enrolling officers and by bounty brokers, were looked upon by the states as "vexatious obstacles." By such an attitude the nothern states, mainly to avoid having their men drafted, resorted to the payment of bounties many times in excess of those paid by the Federal government. Millions *Feb. 24 1864* were wasted in this way. Finally Congress amended the Enrollment Act by giving the President power to call for such number of men as the "public exigencies may require," to proportion his call on any locality to the number of males liable to military duty and to exempt only those who were physically and mentally unfit in addition to those who had served two years honorably in the war. A fine of $5,000 or five years' imprisonment was imposed for resistance to the draft.

The six-month and three-year men were now about to depart *Feb. 1864* from the service. Mr. Lincoln had to make a call for 200,000 in addition to his 300,000 in October, 1863. Of this 500,000, only a little over 300,000 responded.

While the Union was slowly swinging into line on the draft, a marked advance was made in the control of the army. Grant *March 12 1864* was called to Washington, given a commission as lieutenant general and placed in supreme command of the armies of the United States. The political mismanagement of the forces was ended. A trained soldier took the control of military operations. Three years of war had taught the Union that skilled military men should run armies just as much as educated doctors should manage hospitals. Three years of war had created on both sides veteran soldiers who were the equals of any army of any time. The sad feature, to those who know that armies can be well trained during peace, is that nothing can ever make up for the tens of thousands of lives cast away in diseased camps and on gory battlefields. From now on in this war, the veteran is going to make every engagement decisive, and the Civil War might be said to begin in 1863.

Since the government of the Republic had forced the actual responsibility for the running of its armies on an untrained leader, it was a fortune for the North that the office was filled by so large a soul and so keen a mind as Lincoln's. In a comparatively short time he had sensed his own incapacity, the futility of changing his commanders and the instability of the notions of his advisers, especially the "Aulic Council." For some time he had divined in that sharp, straight reason, so peculiarly his own, that he must fasten on a single man and leave him to his simple purpose. It is almost unbelievable that through the barbed wire of a dozen daily contradictory hints, advices, warnings, propositions and meddlesome propaganda propelled by politicians and mushroom soldiers alike, his vision cut surely forward over a well-surveyed line. He solved his problem long before he could find the man who would put the solution into action. His supreme honesty had declared that he himself was not the man to lead armies. His exceptional judgment had no waste motion. His head was steady and uncluttered and his heart was true and clean. When he found Grant, he acted quickly in the rebound of a great conception. And by this move the North came out of the shadow.

Grant immediately made plans to assemble all the scattered forces into two main armies. Sherman, who was given the command of the Military Division of the Mississippi, was to move from Chattanooga upon Johnston's army, while Meade with the Army of the Potomac was to advance on Lee and Richmond. Grant accompanied the eastern forces. In addition, he made Sheridan the cavalry leader and placed under him most of the assembled cavalry, which up to this time had been unable to cope with Stuart on account of its disjointed organization.

March 14
April 23
1864

Mr. Lincoln, meanwhile, called out 200,000 more men for three years and 85,000 militia for one hundred days.

May 4
1864
May 7
1864
May 13–16
1864
May 21
1864

While Meade crossed the Rapidan, Sherman started from Chattanooga. Meade met Ewell at Wilderness Tavern in a hard-fought contest and finally forced Lee to fall back within his entrenchments. While the Army of the Potomac was maneuvering and fighting for position near Spottsylvania Court House, Sherman was driving Johnson back at Resaca south of Chattanooga. Then, the drawn battle of Spottsylvania caused Grant to transfer the eastern army to the North Anna River.

May 25, 26
1864
May 27
1864

There Meade's army fought furiously while Sherman's forces defeated Johnston again at New Hope Church. While Grant was maneuvering toward Hanover Court House to turn Lee's flank, Sherman was repulsed at Kenesaw Mountain. But the superior numbers and resources of the Union now collected *en masse* were slowly telling. Since both sides to the contest were veteran soldiers, it remained for the one with the larger man power and resources to wear down the smaller one.

June 1
1864
June 3
1864
July 15
1864
July 17, 18
1864
July 19
1864

While Johnston was retreating across the Chattahoochee before Sherman, Grant began the battle of Cold Harbor. Two days later the battle was renewed with fierce fighting but no progress. Then Grant, finding that his attempts to oust the Confederates from their fortified lines were not worth the losses he was sustaining, moved to Petersburg, where he attacked. His continued heavy assaults only drove the Confederates further into their fortified lines. After this contraction Grant sat down to a regular siege so as to coop up Lee and his army within Richmond and Petersburg.

May 20
1864
June 15
1864
July 4
1864

During these movements, legislation, though tardy, came forward with some very wise provisions. A regiment of volunteer engineers for the Army of the Cumberland were authorized to be enlisted for three years or during the war, and to be officered by appointees of the President. All colored men were allowed the same emoluments upon enlistment as others in the service. Enlistments for the regular army might be made for three years during the Rebellion. An amendment to the Enrollment Act allowed the President to call out any number of volunteers for one, two or three years with bounties of $100, $200, and $300 respectively.

A call for 500,000 volunteers made by the President *July 18 1864* brought out 384,882 more men.

While Grant had been drawing his lines closely about Lee, Early along the Shenandoah had attempted to draw Grant off by threatening Washington. Crossing the Potomac at Shep- *July 5, 6 1864* herdstown, he moved against Washington. At Monocacy he defeated General Lew Wallace. But after having given the *July 22 1864* capital "a terrible fright" he retired toward Strasburg.

Hood, having been replaced by Johnston in the vicinity of *July 20, 22 28, 1864* Atlanta, attacked Sherman several times but was finally repulsed, so that he had to withdraw inside his entrenchments.

Early in Virginia attacked and defeated Crook at Kernstown, crossed the Potomac again into Maryland, burned the town of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, and levied contributions upon other towns. Then Sheridan was placed in command of *Aug. 7 1864* the Middle Military Division. Near Harper's Ferry he began collecting and organizing his forces to the number of 43,000. *Aug. 10 1864*

Sherman, in the meantime, being unable to dislodge Hood from Atlanta by direct methods made a diversion towards Jonesboro about 26 miles south of the city. Hood then gave up *Sept. 2 1864* the capital of Georgia, which was promptly occupied by Sherman.

Sheridan, after some maneuvering against Early, finally *Sept. 19 1864* won a victory at Winchester. Then following the Confederates, who were inferior numerically, he inflicted a second defeat at Fisher's Hill.

Hood, after having left Atlanta, commenced to threaten *Oct. 1 1864* Sherman's line of communications by moving back up the route toward Chattanooga. Crossing the Chattahoochee, Hood advanced toward Dallas and then to Resaca, where Sherman had had his first victory over Johnston.

Sheridan in the meantime was putting a quietus on Early, who had started to rout the Federals at Cedar Creek. Sheridan, coming upon the scene from Winchester, turned the morale of the troops and gained such an overwhelming victory that *Oct. 19 1864* Early could not afterwards take the offensive. The Shenandoah Valley was now cleared of Confederates. They could not use it as a base nor as an avenue for raids against the Federals. Sheridan went into winter quarters at Kernstown and Early at Staunton.

Sherman by the threat of Hood, who had destroyed some railway near Dalton, was compelled to detach Thomas to Nashville and Schofield to Knoxville, Tennessee, in order to protect his long line of supplies. Hood's march had been so swift that Sherman could not catch up with him. But when Hood marched across the mountains toward the Tennessee River, Sherman perceived his design. The Federal leader then caused Schofield to take 2 corps to Nashville so as to have the largest possible force collected under Thomas.

Nov. 4 1864 Sherman then assembled 60,000 men in Atlanta. Feeling
that Thomas could take care of Hood and knowing that he him-
Nov. 15 1864 self must get a new base if he was to join Grant, he selected
Savannah. Then began his famous march to the sea for 300
Dec. 10 1864 miles. When he arrived before Savannah, he invested the city.

In the meantime Hood, although he had received a check
Nov. 30 1864 when he met Schofield, pushed on toward Nashville. There he
Dec. 2 1864 invested the city. But Thomas, who had coolly awaited him,
sallied forth from his intrenchments, attacked him and de-
Dec. 15 1864 stroyed his army in the sleet and ice of a very cold battle.

Finally Sherman was able to overcome the resistance of
Dec. 22 1864 Savannah, which city he entered.

Mr. Lincoln had meanwhile issued a call for 300,000 more men whose services were desired for from one to three years. Only a little over 200,000 responded, because the quotas of some localities were already full. However, the necessity for more troops seemed to have passed. In slightly more than a year the President had called out over a million and a half with the result of obtaining 1,249,709.

The winter for the troops around Richmond was exceedingly severe. Although Grant's forces suffered, Lee's tattered and hungry regiments were in a state of torture because of the siege and the dwindling resources of the Southern States. Desertion among the Confederates was thus materially increased.

Feb. 1 1865 Sherman, after completing his preparations at his new base in Savannah, started his march northward in order to effect his junction with Grant. Johnston, who had been restored to the command of the remnants of the Confederate army in the Carolinas, could not join Lee because he had not the means of transportation. He could only await Sherman, who proceeded to cross into North Carolina near Fayetteville.

March 7 1865

While these events were in progress, Congress indulged in very minor legislation for the army. The main four acts gave a chief of staff to the lieutenant general, allowed the payment of bounties to relatives of deceased soldiers, as in the previous extravagant wars, and caused the President to issue a proclamation that deserters returning within sixty days would be pardoned on condition that they would serve out with their organizations their original enlistments. In case a deserter failed to take advantage of this provision he was debarred from citizenship.

March 3 1865

Many northern regiments, without means of replacements, were now so reduced that they were mere skeletons of their former selves. Instead of making a provision for the assignment of new recruits, the lawmakers still further lessened these organizations by taking away those officers who were in excess.

Lee, by this time, felt that something desperate had to be done. He attacked Fort Stedman on the Union right only to have his assault fail. Then Sheridan, who had destroyed or captured most of Early's force at Waynesboro, made the Virginia Central Railroad and the James River Canal useless. Meanwhile, Grant had to suspend his counterattack on Lee on account of rains. Lee took advantage of the delay by turning like a tiger upon Warren and Sheridan. But when Sheridan was promptly reënforced, he won the battle of Five Forks. Grant at the same time bombarded Lee's whole line and assaulted the Richmond entrenchments with success. It was then that Lee withdrew from both Richmond and Petersburg. Grant, occupying both cities, started in pursuit. Guns, wagons, and prisoners were taken. Sheridan cut off Ewell and captured his command. But even in this hopeless retreat Lee held off Humphreys at Farmville. The Confederates having left Richmond with only one ration were now in a state of physical weakness. Supplies failed them. Hundreds of men dropped

March 25 1865

March 29 1865

April 1 1865

April 2 1865

Night April 2, 3 1865

April 7 1865

and died of exhaustion. Thousands let their muskets fall because they could not carry them further. The anguish of these men can scarcely be appreciated to-day except by those who actually experienced those sufferings or similar ones in the World War. When Grant sent a flag of truce to Lee suggesting the "hopelessness of further resistance," the indomitable Confederate leader who had "put out of action more than three" Federals for every man of his own army, replied by asking for *April 8 1865* terms. Then while Lee's troops continued their retreat unmolested except for rear guard actions, the two leaders continued to communicate with one another. Finally, just as Sheridan was driving Lee's advance guard from Appomattox Station and Gordon's remnants were being detained by Ord *April 9 1865* and Griffin, Lee was sending his flag of truce asking for suspension of hostilities. That very day a conference between the two commanders at the McLean house put an end to the struggle in Virginia and Lee capitulated with the honors of war.

It remained then only for Johnston to surrender to Sherman *April 26 April 20 May 26 1865* near Raleigh, for Cobb to surrender to Wilson near Macon and for Kirby Smith to surrender to Canby across the Mississippi and we can close our eyes upon the war of the Confederacy.

The South had organized early. It had taken the utmost advantage of every trained soldier among its adherents. It had quickly concentrated in main armies. It had made the soldier feel at the outset that he was part of a big unit with many other soldiers to help him. It had placed recruits beside old soldiers and had given confidence to the men in ranks. Its government had clung to its leaders in the face of defeat and had not worried them. It had built up morale at every turn.

The North, on the other hand, had displayed the haste and overconfidence of ignorance. Its primary organization was demoralization. It did not seem to know enough to make use of all the skilled soldiers it had. It allowed the uniformed citizen to gain the idea in his first actions that he was alone and that every Confederate weapon was leveled at him. Its administration had pushed excellent leaders into untenable positions and promptly relieved them when they failed. It had by its ignorance of military conduct and by fatal dispersions robbed an army of brave souls of the power it deserved. The result was an inordinate loss of life and public treasure.

The war was dragged out for four years, because training in sufficient force and direction had not been kept alive in the fifties. Dribblings of untrained levies came to the front as late as '64. Bounties as high as $400 per man depleted the treasury. The expiration of short enlistments in the midst of campaign left commanders in the field without an instrument or pushed them hurriedly into actions where life was wasted. Disease and desertion under these conditions were beyond reason. The recruit on arrival in the field ate, marched, slept, and accoutered himself improperly. His ignorance of hygiene made a loss by sickness of 4.7 per thousand in the first year of the war. Where 25 men would be wounded 100 more would be sick. Such loss could largely have been prevented by knowledge and practice during peace. Desertion, too, was easy, where discipline was lax and the confidence in leaders had been vitiated; 199,105 men deserted on the Union side alone.

It is a curious thing that we Americans, who are noted for our foresight in business and economics, are almost stupid in applying prevention to possible national perils.

CHAPTER IX

THE ARMY'S DARK AGES

(1865–1880)

AFTER the curtain falls on the Civil War our view is likely to be riveted on crowds of worn soldiers longingly hurrying homeward, hastily flinging aside muskets, fervidly grasping pruning hooks and feverishly pursuing reconstruction. The tragedy of blood gives place to the social drama. The fighting man plows his fields at the very base of the volcano that has been spouting fire with so much fury. The soldier becomes the civilian, the country becomes complacent and the need for arms is no more.

Such a retrospect would be beautiful, if true. It seems too bad to spoil the illusion by calling attention to conflicts that were snapping their jaws at the very stability of our nation. The Fenians were disrupting Canada and ready to spread their strife across the border. The Indians, more confident than ever because of the withdrawal of the army for the war, were banded together in large bodies and bringing murder and destruction to over half the area of the present United States. The southern states had to be put under military protection until they could resuscitate their control under the coming difficult elections. And Mexico was held by Napoleon, who had made the Archduke Maximilian emperor during the preoccupation of the United States in civil strife. Across the Rio Grande the new government, insecure against the attacks of its republican opponents, was inimical to the interests of the United States and ready to receive with open arms the irreconcilables of the Confederacy.

The situation in Mexico was then thought to be so perilous, and the new empire so much in league with the Confederacy that General Grant ordered General Sheridan, the new commander of the Department of the Mississippi, westward. The degree of alarm felt at this time is shown by the fact that Sheridan was not allowed to remain for the grand review in Washington, where naturally he wished to march with his troops and take his leave of them. *May 17 1865* *May 23, 24 1865*

Arriving in Texas, Sheridan caused one column of cavalry under Custer to go to Houston and another under Merritt to go to San Antonio. Not satisfied with this display of force, he had one division of the Thirteenth Corps occupy Galveston and another Brazos Santiago. Then he ordered the Fourth Corps to Victoria and San Antonio and most of the Twenty-fifth Corps to Brownsville. Such a large army gave pause to the Mexican Empire, principally because Sheridan's divisions were made up of tried veteran soldiers. There was nothing in quality or quantity across the Rio Grande that could stop these disciplined men, and Maximilian knew as much. Sheridan, giving aid to the Republican element both by his moral influence and by furnishing arms, did not make the emperor's position more tenable. *May, June 1865*

Though this threatening empire was set up at our very doors, it was not the greatest menace to our peace. By the end of 1862 all of the regulars had been recalled from the west in order to lend their weight to the absorbing struggle of the Union. The Indians, unchecked, had organized their smaller tribes into large forces and made the country west of the Mississippi a scene of massacre and rapine. The work of the army between 1848 and 1861 had been practically undone, so far as safety in the great west was concerned. Though the settlers banded together and protected themselves as best they could, the strong and subtle savage would conserve his strength and surprise too often small settlements. He grew so bold that he penetrated Minnesota by the end of 1862. By that time he had killed no less than 644 unoffending whites. General Sibley undertook to punish the tribes of the Great Sioux Nation that had been the author of these depredations. After taking 500 of them prisoners, he was compelled to cease operations by the coming of winter. The following spring General Pope organized two columns, one under Sibley and the other under Sully.

Sibley went west from St. Paul while Sully set out from the *Summer 1863* state of Missouri. The former was to drive the Indians back, while the latter should cut off their retreat. Sibley with his 2,000 men drove the Indians before him, but they were a stubborn enemy. Twice they surprised him and were finally enabled to cross the Missouri River near Apple Creek with the loss of only a few warriors, their tents and provisions. Sully, in the meantime, had been delayed. Though the Indians had crossed the river, he still determined to attack them. By careful work he finally surprised them at White Stone Hill where he dispersed them.

Although these and similar actions of the volunteers were momentarily successful, they were indecisive and the west was in no wise safe. It is true that 2 companies of Kansas volunteers repulsed an attack of the Ute Indians at Fort Halleck in Idaho and that Kit Carson a year later (1864) dispersed with 400 men the Navahos in New Mexico. But the Civil War was of so much import by comparison that the savage could only be slapped at now and then, while he, with growing confidence, reddened his tomahawk and glutted his lust in the quivering flesh of the white.

After the Civil War was over, it was difficult to get the volunteers to act against the Indians. They felt they should go home, because the time and purpose for which they had been *May 20 1865* called out had passed. Already the mustering out of 1,034,064 volunteers and militia had begun and the regular army was *Sept. 1865* way below strength. General Connor struck a blow along the Powder River when his small force conducted four pitched battles against the Cheyennes, Sioux and Arapahoes and killed several hundred Indians. But the expedition became mutinous. Supplies did not arrive and about 300 of his volunteers deserted him.

Active campaigns against the western tribes could scarcely be conducted with success under such circumstances. The Indian had become powerful and confident. He believed the withdrawal of troops was an indication of the white man's cowardice and inferiority. It was small wonder that the Blackfeet ran wild in Montana, especially through the Gallatin Valley, that the Cheyennes in force were operating along the

Platte and the Arkansas, the Mescalores were leaving their reservation and going on the warpath, and the Apaches in New Mexico were showing signs of activity. The white men at their little settlements were ambushed, killed, mutilated and scalped, the women ravished and the children and supplies carried into the tepees of the savages. And so went on the outrages in the west while the government was swiftly dispersing its masses of trained volunteers and slowly organizing its few and scattered regulars.

Nov. 3 1865

Equally distressing was the situation in the former Confederate States. About 19,000 Union soldiers were distributed through 134 posts in the erstwhile Confederacy. They were sent there to support the "carpetbagger" and to uphold the stringent laws of a severe Congress. They had to give aid in enforcing, oftentimes, measures in which they did not believe or with which they had no sympathy.

> "The terrible oppression of the Southern people embodied in those acts of Congress," writes General Schofield, "has hardly been appreciated by even the most enlightened and conservative people of the North. Only those who actually suffered the baneful effects of the unrestrained working of those laws can ever realize their full enormity."

Although generals in command of the military districts of the South[1] did their best to carry out the laws with kindness, sympathy and justice, they could do little when they were forced to exclude from office all who had given "aid or comfort" to the secession movement; when those who whipped negroes had to be punished; when the black man had to be used as a witness in court and was allowed to vote; and when judges, juries or district attorneys had to be prodded and have their cases at times taken to military tribunals. Riots, too, had to be suppressed, but usually only a show of force caused the prevention of any great amount of bloodshed.

In the North, many Fenians had emigrated after the War to Ireland in the hope of gaining freedom from England. The movement was similar in some respects to that made by the Irish after the World War. Many prominent individuals in America were sympathetic to the extent of giving large amounts 1865 of money and many arms to further the rebellion. Such acts were embarrassing to the United States government in its diplomatic relations with England. John O'Neill even prepared an expedition within our borders for the purpose of invading Canada. And the Federal government was powerless, with the dissolution of its war army and its meager regular units, to prevent the threatening activity of the American agitators.

---

[1] For actual dispersion of army at this time, see Appendix K. The military organization comprehended nineteen departments, embraced in five military divisions,

If we take into account the Alabama Claims against England, we find the United States, at the end of the Civil War, completely surrounded with hostility.

The trained veterans of a long war were rapidly disappearing. *Oct. 1 1865* By fall 800,963 had been mustered out. The regular army was far below strength, because its recruitment had been unable to compete with the large bounty and the short enlistment of the volunteers. Out of the 448 [2] companies, authorized by law, only 295 stood organized at the cessation of hostilities. This weakness was slightly offset, however, by the fact that throughout the year some valuable veteran soldiers, who were discharged from the volunteers, joined the regular army.

Even so, there was a great dearth of rank and file for the permanent forces. How could it be otherwise when the pay of a private for fighting Indians under awful hardship and in lonely places was the enormous sum of $14.87½ per month? [3] The difference between the pay of a private and corporal was $2, scarcely enough to pay the wash bill. When ambition and even decency were taken away by the government from the recruit, it is not to be marveled at that too great a proportion of the offscourings of the community went west to make up the companies' quotas. The untrustworthy material had to be transformed by the officers into capable and faithful soldiers, or life and property might easily slip away.

---

[2] The existing organization of the regular army consisted of 6 regiments of cavalry, 12 companies each (large enough for cavalry); 5 regiments of artillery, 12 companies; 10 regiments of infantry (old), 10 companies; and 9 regiments of infantry (new), of 24 companies each—divided into battalions of 8 companies—giving 1 colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel and 3 majors to a regiment. The only difference in field officers between old and new regiments was that the new had one more major.

[3] Nominal pay was $16 per month, but $1 was deducted till end of enlistment and 12½ cents for Soldiers' Home.

The work of distributing over the precarious fronts, the regular army and volunteers, when the former were being reorganized and the latter dissolved, was not any simple matter. General Grant cut the Gordian knot by having the regulars spread out over the country as soon as their units could be sufficiently assembled. The Third Artillery was scattered among the coast forts of the northeast from Fort Sullivan, Eastport, Maine, to Fort Adams, Newport, Rhode Island; the First Artillery from Fort Trumbull, New London, Conn., to Sandy Hook, N. J.; the Fourth Artillery from Fort Delaware, Delaware, to the city of Washington; the Fifth Artillery from Fortress Monroe, Virginia, to Dry Tortugas, Florida; and the Second Artillery from Canada to Mexico on the Pacific coast. The Second Cavalry joined General Sherman in the Division of the Mississippi and the Sixth Cavalry General Sheridan on the Mexican border. The 12 companies of the Fifth Cavalry were equally split between the Middle Department, Department of Washington and the Division of the Tennessee. The Fourth Infantry was scattered among the northern forts of Brady, Wayne, Niagara, Ontario, Madison Barracks and Rouses Point as a protection against the Fenians. The Third, Tenth and Eighteenth Infantry joined General Sherman at St. Louis for distribution over the west. The Second Infantry went to Newport Barracks, Kentucky. The Seventeenth and part of the Fourteenth were at Hart's Island, held in readiness for emergencies. Other regular regiments were in process of reorganization near Washington, with Sheridan in Texas or scattered through the southern states. *Oct. 18 1865*

Altogether, our land forces in the latter part of this year were in a most jumbled state. The volunteers in the south and west were restless and unruly, now that the big fight was over. One northern regiment had been disarmed at San Antonio, Texas, for mutiny. Brevet major generals and brigadier generals in the volunteers had to a great extent been discharged, and those regulars who had been attached to the state troops *Fall 1865* were back with their regiments and were serving in minor capacities as field and company officers, or sometimes in the mediocrity of a lieutenancy. Regiments and battalions of United States troops were more scattered than ever, because the army was too small to take care of all the nation's troubles, especially since the volunteers were going out so rapidly. By the end of the year about 900,000 of the war troops had been discharged. More work was thus saddled on the regular and less pay given him in return.[4]

1865 However, by the end of the year, the army had accomplished much in spite of its handicaps. General Sheridan, though forbidden by the State Department to take an active part against Maximilian, had marched his troops, reviewed them and obtained large supplies and much ammunition. The emperor's party was so convinced that this excellent United States army was going to swoop down on Mexico that it withdrew its forces far to the interior from the northern boundaries. The republican side could then gain many adherents and have scope in which to work.

Much had been done to conciliate the red man who had been mistreated by the Indian agents. In too many cases theft and broken promises on their part had made the work of the army difficult. There was a well-ordered attempt on the part of the officers in command in the west to understand the Indian's viewpoint, and to make peace with as many of them as would abide by law and order in return for good treatment and food. When, however, the civilian representatives of our government made profit by delivering poor food and carelessly overturned previous agreements, the Indian lost faith in all white men and looked suspiciously upon treaties. In spite of these conditions, Colonel Leavenworth and Brevet Brigadier General Sanborn made peace with many of the Apaches, Kiowas and Comanches south of the Arkansas. The agreement was characteristically signed by such gentlemen as Little Mountain, Lone Wolf, Heap of Bears, Bear-Runs-Over-a-Man and Raw Hide Blanket. *Latter part Aug., 1865*

Although the volunteers were going out as fast as it was possible to let them go with safety to the country, they held a grievance against the government. They claimed that the United States had violated its contract with them in keeping them longer than their enlistment called for. Such attitude dispatched their departure into civil life. By the middle of the year, 1,001,670 had been discharged. *June 30 1866*

---

[4] The pay of a colonel was $211 per month; of a lieutenant colonel, $187; of a major, $163.

Restlessness in the regular service was manifested by desertion of enlisted men, mainly because the proper type could not be obtained under the pay and subsistence offered. Officers, too, who suddenly found themselves acting as captains, after they had been general officers through four years of supreme test, could hardly be at the height of their zeal and energy. The sop of brevet rank, which amounted only to a matter of title and uniform, did not help much.[5]

In spite of these handicaps the army went forward in bettering social and technical conditions. In the South situations of the gravest tension were overcome. In the West, peace with many Indian tribes was made, and on the Texas border the demonstrations by Sheridan were making the Mexican throne tremble. When O'Neill led some American forces into Canada in the furtherance of the Fenian movement, General Meade, in command of the Military District of the Atlantic, stationed soldiers of his forces so as to prevent further trouble. Although the wires were cut into Canada no further outbreaks were allowed. *June 1 1866*

Within the army, the Freedman's Bureau, which operated to give succor to the destitute, was governed wisely by Brigadier General O. O. Howard. In one year alone over 15,000 freedmen and their children attended schools established by the Bureau. *1866*

That the army was not asleep along technical lines is testified to by the improvements adopted. One of the two authorized mounted batteries in each artillery regiment was armed with four Napoleon and four 3-inch rifled Rodman guns. Boards of officers were preparing to adopt a standard breechloading weapon for the service. Another arsenal was allowed by Congress at Rock Island, Illinois. A manual for *June 27 1866* military gymnastics appeared, which showed the soldier certain direct methods of keeping fit.

---

[5] Grant was made a full general by Congress and Sherman a lieutenant general. Besides, the latter was given $30,000 for a residence by the people of St. Louis.

Against the tides of discord that were rising around the nation, the army was striving to be a barrier. But again its attempts were pulverized by the splitting of its units throughout the vast territory of the United States.[6] Since the opening of the year, Congress could not help but see that a larger regular force was necessary if peace was to be assured. But the members haggled from that time until summer. The Senate had seen fit to give a substantial strength to the army and had passed such a measure as early as March, but the House, as always, demurred. Finally, late in July, over a year after Appomattox, the law, which prescribed a certain amount of protection against the country's many enemies, went into effect.

July 13 1866

The legislation started off with a provision in the appropriation act for detailing as Superintendent of the Military Academy an officer of any arm of the service. Heretofore that position had been confined to officers of the engineer corps. This change heralded the transition of West Point from a purely scientific school to one of general education and basic training for all branches of the service.

July 28 1866

Fifteen days later the President signed an act making the army consist of 10 regiments of cavalry, 5 of artillery and 45 of infantry. The companies of cavalry and artillery numbered 12 to a regiment and those of infantry, 10. The authorized strength of the line branches totaled 630 companies. Though the cavalry was increased by 4 regiments, the infantry was not actually brought up from 20 to 45 regiments as the face of the bill would infer. It must be remembered that there were in the service 10 infantry regiments of 10 companies each and 9 of 24 companies each. Congress, instead of making the smaller units into larger ones, did exactly the reverse. It robbed the larger ones in order to make the whole 45 into smaller ones of 10 companies each. In this way it added only 134 companies, a number only half as great as 25 regiments of 24 companies each would require. By such process the standard size of the regiment which had been found most efficient and economical in the Civil War was decadently abandoned. When it is considered, also, that 4 of the 45 regiments were to be composed of men who had been wounded in the service—the Veteran Reserve Corps—the activity of these units was further diminished, since this new corps could be held only for garrison duty. Besides, 2 of the cavalry and 4 of infantry regiments were to be composed of colored men.[7]

---

[6] For general dispersion, see Appendix L.

The company strength was made elastic. The President could have a minimum of 50 privates or a maximum of 100 for infantry and cavalry, and a maximum of 122 for artillery. As a start, the commander in chief made a standard of 64 privates for all companies except 10 batteries[8] of light artillery which were to have 122 each. Thus the paper strength of the army after the act amounted to 54,302 rank and file.[9]

Lieutenants had to be selected from volunteers. Grades above lieutenancies had to be filled in equal numbers from the volunteers and the regular army and by men who had had at least two years' service during the war and who had in that service been "distinguished for capacity and good conduct in the field." Regular officers who had held volunteer commissions were not to be considered volunteers but regulars under the above selection. Commissions had to be distributed over the states and territories in proportion to the number of troops furnished by them. With all these strings to selection, it was difficult to cull proper officers.

Several miscellaneous items might be noted in this legislation. A force of 1,000 Indian scouts could be enlisted in the west for aid in operations. The enlistment period for regular cavalry was for five years and for artillery and infantry, three. The general officers consisted of 1 general, 1 lieutenant general,

---

[7] The beginning of the Ninth and Tenth Cavalry and later the Twenty-fourth and Twenty-fifth Infantry.

[8] Two for each artillery regiment.

[9] "Each regiment of infantry provided for by this act shall have 1 colonel, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 1 adjutant, 1 regimental quartermaster, 1 sergeant major, 1 quartermaster sergeant, 1 commissary sergeant, 1 hospital steward, 2 principal musicians, and 10 companies; and the adjutant, quartermaster and commissary shall hereafter be extra lieutenants selected from the first and second lieutenants of the regiment. Each company shall have 1 captain, 1 first lieutenant and 1 second lieutenant, 1 first sergeant, 1 quartermaster sergeant, 4 sergeants, 8 corporals, 2 artificers, 2 musicians, 1 wagoner." (Extract from Act.)

5 major generals and 10 brigadier generals. Staff departments had in addition an adjutant general, judge-advocate general, quartermaster-general, commissary general, surgeon-general, paymaster-general, chief of engineers,[10] and chief of ordnance, all with pay and emoluments of a brigadier general. The inspector-general's department and the signal corps were apparently left out of this calculation, because 4 colonels with rank and pay of colonels of cavalry headed the former bureau and 1 colonel the latter.

All officers, before being commissioned, were required to pass an examination before a board of five officers from the arm of the service in which the applicant was to serve.

Sutlers at military posts were abolished and the subsistence department was to furnish officers and enlisted men with "such articles" at cost as the inspector generals designated.

Twenty officers from the army could be detailed to act as president, superintendent or professors at colleges and schools in order to further the knowledge of military science. Schools at posts for the basic education of enlisted men were also authorized.

Any officer who had served in the Confederacy in any capacity was debarred from being commissioned in the regular army. Federal officers could be retired with their full rank held at the time they received their wounds or disability. Brevet rank entitled an officer to wear the insignia and bear the title of his highest brevet grade, but debarred him from the corresponding "command, pay and emolument."

Such was the act which was to provide for the common defense. Although it was framed in weighty words, its limiting provisions restrained even the force authorized from stretching out in size great enough to awe the warring tribes and factions so as to prevent bloodshed. By this time most of the volunteers had left the service. Since about 1,015,000 had been mustered out, the regular force above prescribed was practically the sole defender of the nation. *Aug. 1 1866*

---

[10] "SEC. 19. *And be it further enacted,* That the Corps of Engineers shall consist of one chief of engineers, with the rank, pay and emoluments of a brigadier-general; six colonels, twelve lieutenant colonels, twenty-four majors, thirty captains, and twenty-six first and ten second lieutenants, who shall have the pay and emoluments now provided by law for officers of the Engineer Corps.

"SEC. 20. *And be it further enacted,* That the five companies of engineer soldiers and the sergeant major and quartermaster sergeant heretofore prescribed by law shall constitute a battalion of engineers, to be officered by officers of a suitable rank detailed from the Corps of Engineers; and the officers of engineers, acting respectively as adjutant and quartermaster of this battalion, shall be entitled to the pay and emoluments of adjutants and quartermasters of cavalry."

The boards for commissioning officers and the slow recruitment of proper enlisted personnel caused the actual strength of the regular army to be only 38,540. At the end of the year not more than 10,000 volunteers were left in the service, a great part of them being colored. *Sept. 30 1866*

When the staff, heavy artillery and the outgoing volunteers are deducted, it can be seen that not more than 25,000 soldiers fit for duty constituted the entire bulwark to be held in readiness for Mexico, to enforce law in the south, to ward off Fenian uprisings in the north, and to hold in check the great masses of Sioux, northern and southern Cheyennes, Assiniboines, Piegans, Arapahoes, Kiowas, Pawnees, Miamis, Comanches, Nez Percés, Flatheads, and many lesser tribes, which swarmed over the country from Canada to the Rio Grande and from the Mississippi to the Pacific.

In addition, marauders in Missouri were repeatedly committing outrages upon innocent persons, especially negroes. The communities in that region were in a state of terror. It was with great difficulty that troops at the direction of General Sherman were able to drive these desperadoes out of the state. *1866*

But the great west with its constant forays of hosts of redmen was the frightful problem for the reduced army. New strongholds had to be built and telegraph wires installed, with death lurking behind the trees, in the sagebrush or down in the cañon. The Indians were legion and the American defenders corporals' guards. With hammer in one hand and gun in the other, the soldier alternately built and fought.

Even the main forts such as Reno and Phil Kearny, in process of construction, held but a few hundred men. At the latter Colonel Carrington was attempting to complete the buildings and stockade, which he had begun. The small outpost of civilization measured only 800 by 600 feet. The occupants had several times been attacked by Indians when the wood parties would go into the forest, but almost miraculously had succeeded in beating off the savages. The soldier-builder was armed mostly with the old Springfield single loader and was quite at a disadvantage against the Indian who had been furnished by the Indian agents with modern repeaters. Once, in meeting a party of the red men, the soldiers were afraid to shoot, because their enemies were armed with revolvers and would slay them before they had time to fire again.

Dec. 21 1866

While the few at the fort were busily completing the headquarters building and a one-company barracks, 90 men, who had started for the pine woods for more lumber, were surprised by a large body of Indians. Under Brevet Lieutenant Colonel Fetterman, 84 officers and men started out in relief. The rescue party tried to cut off the retreat of what was afterwards learned to be about 2,000 warriors. At first the fort could plainly hear the firing and by noon the rattle of musketry was quite brisk. But soon it ominously decreased in volume. Captain Ten Eyck with the remaining 76 men, all that could be collected, including teamsters and civilians, started out as a second relief about one o'clock. By the time he got to the ridge overlooking the battle ground the firing had altogether ceased and below him in the valley the only thing to be seen was a large band of whooping savages who shortly began to draw off. Not a man of the Fetterman party was left to tell the tale. To this day the manner of death of that gallant detachment remains a mystery. The bodies were found so shockingly mutilated that many could scarcely be recognized, and the details of their appearance could not be printed. Some of the dead could not be located. The body of Lieutenant Grummund, whose wife was in delicate health at the fort, was after long search found next morning. Here lay a half-completed stockade, a handful of protectors and a stricken community in the wildest part of Nebraska. That the Indians did not return to scoop the survivors was no fault of our government.

While such outrages were being committed, the populace at large was quite skeptical of making any systematic effort with sufficient troops for the police of the west. J. P. Dunn, a scholar intimately conversant with conditions then existing beyond the Mississippi, says:

> "It was the era of peace—in Washington. The Indians, in the annual reports, were doing nothing but defending themselves from the encroachments of lawless whites. They were ready and willing to do anything, if they could only secure schools and churches. Mr. Bogy, the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, sat back and smiled sarcastically at reports of hostilities. The peace people were busy, working themselves into a white heat over the wrongs to the Cheyennes. The entire country looked contemptuously on the strength of the red men. What! we, who had just put down the greatest rebellion the world ever knew, to be terrified by a few half-starved Indians? Oh, no! The army was cut down to its lowest possible figure, and much of it was employed in the late insurrectionary states. Its arms were chiefly old-fashioned muzzle-loaders, notwithstanding the wonderful improvements that had been made in weapons during the war. The Indians were better armed."

However, the loss at Phil Kearny made the public at least take notice. It was shocked—quite shocked. But its efforts were spent in investigations of the officers in command rather than in an attempt at adequate protection.

But the army itself sent relief. The other troops of the Eighteenth Infantry, who marched to the beleaguered fort, had the first touch of winter campaigning. Advancing through blizzards, with the thermometer ranging from 10 to 30 degrees below zero, these men suffered from frostbite and were sometimes frozen to death. The torture that these soldiers endured without any alleviation through the endless ice and snow was indescribable, but they trudged on. Awakened from their little dog tents when it was too dark to see, reveille was a farce and breakfast in a foot of snow not much better. Often it was not possible to see more than twenty feet ahead of the little column of twos. So strained were their nerves by the constant tension that in several cases a touch or a word would result in the same reaction as shell-shock during the World War.

While the Indian was thus in full cry on the plains, and our troops there were fitfully trying to check him, the situation in Mexico was reaching its climax. The Republic there, by the backing it had received from a large veteran army of Americans, was by now in the ascendancy. Early in the year the French troops were withdrawn by Napoleon's order. The monarchy was doomed, and European control of the country of the Montezumas was at an end. How had such a radical overthrow come about without a war involving the United States? When Sheridan first appeared near the Rio Grande frontier, the republican forces were worn and weak. They could see no hope of ultimate power. Now after less than two years, they came into possession of the government. The reason is contained briefly in the great trained force Sheridan displayed in Texas. All Mexico knew its potential ability. So again history records the axiom that a mere show of actual strength often makes unnecessary the sacrifice of human life.

Jan. 1867

After Napoleon's forces were gone, many of the regiments that served in this enterprise could be released for use elsewhere, especially the cavalry. The army could be organized for work primarily in the south and west. With Grant as full general, Sherman as lieutenant general, and Meade, Sheridan, Thomas, Sickles, Steele, Hancock, Hooker, Canby, Schofield, McDowell, Ord, Cooke, Pope, Howard and Terry as major and brigadier generals the troops were distributed in thirteen departments over the country.[11] All the new regiments were at least skeletonized by recruitment or by transfer from other units. Yet the posts were small and the line was thin.

The soldier's life held no great comfort. That sort of thing he rarely expected. Yet he did wish to live decently and be free from debt. It was difficult enough to have to exist in tents and shacks in isolated places, to wage an uphill fight against Indians and to suppress riots, but when the pay was inadequate, he felt himself to be unjustly treated by a government for which he was constantly ready to risk his life.[12]

At the opening of the Civil War a captain, for instance, received the equivalent of $150 per month. When the volunteers came into the service, Congress, feeling that such amount was not enough for a nominal captain, raised the pay by the equivalent of $83 a month. But as soon as the volunteer went out, Congress immediately took away the $83 from the experienced captain. In the meantime prices had soared almost 100 per cent since 1861. The captain was left with his same $150 minus $5 for war tax. The reduction was relatively the same throughout all grades of the army. The consequence was that the regular could barely exist. He naturally asked himself why the volunteer needed so much more for his nourishment and comfort in the marches and battles of the Civil War than did the fighting man in the constant jeopardy and remoteness of the west.

---

[11] For organization of army at this time, see Appendix M. The organization of Military Departments and Divisions.

[12] See Appendix D for complete pay schedule.

After much urging and great arguing, the Congress, which had increased its own salaries 100 per cent since the war, *March 2 1867* finally passed a pay bill which partially relieved the beggary of the man who bore the brunt of the nation's perils. All officers below the rank of major general received a flat increase of 33⅓ per cent; "field and other mounted officers," the same emoluments as cavalry officers of like grade; and the enlisted man for three succeeding years, only, the same pay as the volunteer at the close of the Civil War.

How little the lawmakers were interested in having an economic and adequate second line is seen in their action on a possible militia law. After having been shown by plea and example that such a thing was necessary, they went to the radical extreme of striking the word "white" out of the old law of 1792, so as to include colored soldiers. That was all. The government persisted in using a fruitless provision that was seventy-five years old, although the states in many cases had established their own National Guards.

It was during this year especially that the ex-Confederate *1867* leaders of the South did their best to establish peace, law and order in the southern states. The great generals came out openly with earnest requests for the people to abide by the law. So insistent were they in this matter that they were criticized and sometimes lampooned for their stand. One southern writer claimed that Beauregard, Longstreet and Hampton were little more than "burglars because they counseled submission to military acts." Of course, the aim of the northern leaders was the same as that of their former antagonists—and sometimes classmates. It was another instance where the trained soldier of both sides worked in his community toward cementing the bonds of peace, while those with lesser experience in war wished to prolong the strife.

On the plains, too, the soldier was trying to make lasting settlements with the Indians. He encouraged friendly relations and tried to overcome all controversies by a square word rather than a round bullet. His record will show that he preferred reason to rifles. Nevertheless, he tried to keep himself prepared and ready for his foe, so as to show his superiority speedily when the crisis came, to give the marauder a wholesome respect for the American soldier, and to make the redskin think twice before he started on the warpath. When in the peace conferences, the Indian claimed dishonesty on the part of the Great Father in Washington, it was sometimes embarrassing. An extract from a contemporary newspaper may allow one to read between the lines:

May 1867

> "For the rest, General Hancock's campaign is now ended. His object was to make peace with tribes which would accept it, and to make war with the rest. In the hostile part of the expedition, little has been accomplished; but the pacific conferences with the Comanches, Arapahoes and Kiowas promise good results. The great 'talk' with the Kiowas at Fort Larned, Kansas, was the last, and in many respects the most important, of the Indian conferences. The great chief of the Kiowas, Satanta, made a fine defense of himself and his tribe in his oration, disclaimed the desire for war, and fastened upon the Indian agents the charge of embezzling the annuity goods. To the latter accusation, General Hancock essayed no reply, but referred it to Washington."

In these conferences it was hard for the officer to justify to the Indian the wrongs he felt were taking place. At that point he had to keep silent. It was difficult, too, to get action in Washington, when he reported the misdeeds of other government agencies. Politics usually intervened.

While the generals were having their "peace talks," the Indian was carrying on just the same his war of extermination on the whites, whether soldier or settler. Communication between the widely separated outposts of the army was usually dangerous and fatiguing. One officer at a lonely post wrote back east the following sketch:

"We have finally succeeded in opening communication with Fort C. S. Smith, ninety miles above here on the Big Horn River. Up to three days ago we had heard nothing from them for two months, and were very anxious about them; but after repeated trials by mountaineers and miners near here to go through, we at length succeeded in sending two messengers, Sergeant Grant, of my company, and Sergeant Graham, of Company G. They started from here on foot, with snowshoes, and took to the mountains, with only ordinary clothing and six days' rations of hard bread and lard. Each night they *cached* one day's rations, and left a memorandum of what had happened to them. They finally, after much suffering and hunger, reached Fort Smith with our dispatches. They stayed two days, and were sent back with a half-breed named Boyer, each mounted, and with two pack mules. When they came to the Little Horn River, they saw where a buffalo had been killed, and moccasin tracks around it, and immediately left the road and made for the hills. When they had gone about five miles and crossed a hill they stopped, looked back and saw about fifteen Indians after them. Their horses were blown, and Sergeant Grant had to shoot his. The other two men, getting frightened, ran away from him and left him afoot. He ran toward a clump of pines, about five hundred yards distant, and while so doing, he fell into a hole in the snow, and found that he had been running on the edge of a precipice of a sheer two hundred feet fall, and had fallen on a little ledge of rocks, the entrance of which was through a hole that was covered with snow. He sat down under the cliff and waited. He had a Spencer carbine, breech-loading, and eighty rounds of ammunition, and he says he felt perfectly safe. He heard the Indians yelling about him, and soon they commenced to throw stones down the hole, which was about ninety feet deep, and just sheltered him. Then one

Indian jumped down into the hole, armed with a Henry repeating rifle. When he (the Indian) saw Sergeant Grant he dropped his gun and gave a yell, and starting back fell over the ledge, which was narrow. In a few minutes another Indian let himself down, and Grant shot him, and threw his body over the bank. This was about nine o'clock in the morning. The Indians stayed near the hole until nearly dark, when a thick fog came up and they went away. He cautiously followed them, keeping in their trail for about three miles, till they again struck the river, when he tore up his overcoat and made wrappings of it for his feet to hide the shoe nails, and went up the river on the ice. He traveled four days and on the evening of the fourth day got into the post.

"When Grant made his appearance, covered with ice, and with the Henry rifle he had captured, Graham thought it was his ghost. He is very sick in the hospital now, with pleurisy and exhaustion, resulting from his suffering and exposure."

Space prevents recording the many acts of daring and times of suffering daily connected with the life of the little forts. Glimpses, here and there, into the thickest of the fights, the wayside heroism of individuals, the straining alertness of small detachments, and the general spirit of troops anxious to make peace, but ready to fight to the last ditch, can but sparingly reveal the never-ending self-sacrifice of the soldier. What he gave to his country, he tossed off without a whimper.

Although it is natural to dwell on this phase, it must not be forgotten that the staffs back east were working toward the technical and practical advancement of military work.

The Ordnance Department was adapting and standardizing weapons from knowledge gleaned in the Civil War. All sorts of breechloading repeating rifles were tried out with the hope of getting the best arm for the service. Rodman's, Remington's, Spencer's and Roper's patents underwent test. But the hitch came when money was asked for to equip the army. Large rifled cannon had nevertheless come to stay, as well as metal carriages. The Gatling gun, firing from 80 to 100 cartridges in a minute, gave the service a rapid-fire weapon.

It was in this year that *Upton's Infantry Tactics* for drill in double or single rank was adopted by the War Department. This system was the greatest single advance in exercises and maneuvers since the regulations of Steuben. Heretofore we had borrowed principally from the French when we wished to improve our systems. Brevet Major General Upton ingeniously devised, principally from his understanding of the Civil War, a set of regulations, peculiarly suitable to the American soldier. His results were obtained mainly from experience with troops. At West Point he tried out his methods with cadets and was able, in an exhibition drill given there, to take a company with no previous knowledge of his new regulations, and in an hour and a half make it go through the entire school of the company without a break. *Aug. 1 1867*

The manual was far simpler of execution than in any previous work of the kind. The marchings were made notably more facile and precise. The secret of the new movements depended upon the wheeling by fours, which was then for the first time enunciated in our country. This practical arrangement allowed the front rank to keep its place under any conditions and obviated the facings, inversions and cumbersome turnings previously thought necessary to cause a unit to change direction. Although we now call Upton's marching unit a squad, in reality it is nothing more than his set of fours. "Fours right about," "Right forward, fours right," and similar movements for the first time came into vogue. The fixed right and left was done away with, so that commanders had liberty of action on the march and for formation in battle. The skirmishers had supports which infiltrated into the line when needed. When two ranks were not necessary, a single rank could be formed so as to lessen the growing casualties due to the range and effectiveness of advanced weapons. The main features of Upton's tactics are still in use.

While the army was thus striving to better its efficiency, it was still kept busy with the Indians over a wide region. The extent of operations was widened by the purchase of the new country of Alaska. A garrison of 250 men, consisting of a company of artillery and a company of infantry, under Gen- *Dec. 1867* eral Jefferson C. Davis,[13] who had his headquarters at Sitka, attempted to police that new territory. One night a sentry on duty near the powder magazine saw a moving light in his vicinity. After challenging and receiving no answer, he fired and wounded an Indian. The chief of the tribe the next day asked General Davis for compensation for the injury. When the request was denied, the chief raised the British flag over the village. Davis then sent word that if the colors were not replaced by the United States emblem, he would open fire. The Stars and Stripes were raised the next day, but the Indians became surly and threatening for some time.

With such a small force in the midst of so many hostilities, *June 1868* the army's situation was precarious. Accordingly the Second Artillery was stationed on the island of Kadiak and several companies of the Twenty-third Infantry established a post at Cook Inlet. The difficulties of transit in this remote country *July 16 1868* were unbounded. One vessel on the uncharted coast was broken up, and everything was lost but the lives of the troops. After one month of great hardship, the survivors were rescued. Nevertheless, in spite of handicaps General Davis succeeded in holding the natives in check.

While all this was going on in the extreme north, the position of the army in the southern states was changed by Congress. The former commonwealths were restored to the position *June 25 1868* they occupied before the war. The various military departments stationed there no more exercised enforcement or military control, unless called upon to do so by the civil government. The obnoxious duties of the soldier were somewhat lessened. But there were still to arise many occasions where the state governments called for force. Whenever such action was taken, destruction of life and property was prevented.

Although the soldiers were dispersed over a vast country and had diverse tasks to perform, Indian troubles were the main consideration of the army, for it was never for a minute allowed to forget them. Hardly a week passed, during those seasons of the year when Indians could operate, that the War Department did not receive some report of raiding, outraging, or murdering the ranchmen and their families. When the soldier husband left the fort to punish the redman for his misdeeds, the soldier wife fed and ministered to the homeless survivors who had taken refuge in the army's stronghold built by the army's own hands. By succor and punishment the little companies pressed civilization into the remote nooks of our great land.

---

[13] Not to be confused with Jefferson Davis, President of the Confederacy.

But it was a little disappointing sometimes to see the fruits of gruelling labor destroyed. Often after the army had spent years in building up a fort out of the wilderness, the stronghold had to be carted away or demolished. Back in Washington it would be decided that the site of the stockade would make a good reservation for the Indians or that the government needed it for other uses. Thus was Fort Defiance, New Mexico, abandoned and moved seventy miles. *Aug. 15 1868* Fort Reno was demolished. Fort Phil Kearny, which had been built, as we have seen, through almost daily bloodshed, was similarly discarded.

During these three years succeeding the Civil War the Indian had in no wise been intimidated. The tiny forts, far from each other, could do little more than drive back the red warriors after the outrages had been committed. The Indian respected one thing only—force—and when that was not forthcoming he grew bolder and more cruel. The victory at Fort Kearny had whetted his appetite. His increasing strength allowed him to molest parts of the country the meager army could not reach. By now the whole savage west was infected with lust for the destruction of the whites. Conspicuously, the Cheyennes under Roman Nose, a physical giant, had in one month killed or captured 84 settlers in Kansas. In that sparsely settled country they practically swept that state bare and even attacked the builders of the Kansas Pacific Railroad.

Major Forsyth, of Sheridan's Staff, collected some 50 scouts in order to trail this band and locate its whereabouts. Each man's equipment consisted of a horse, saddle, bridle, haversack, canteen, blanket, knife, tin cup, Spencer repeating rifle and a heavy Colt's revolver. Four mules bore the small extra supplies and ammunition. No tents were carried.

For six days they scoured the country (they had only seven days' rations), finally coming up with the Indians at the Arikaree River. While the little detachment was encamped there, it was awakened early one morning by the cry from the sentry, "Indians." Forsyth barely managed to keep most of the horses from being stampeded and to draw off his party to a little island in the partially dry river bed. Hundreds of savages surrounded him on all sides, firing from both banks and hemming him in. His scouts dug in and the fallen horses formed a sort of breastwork. Roman Nose charged down the river bed with several hundred warriors. Half a dozen times he came on, only to be repulsed at each assault. Once a few braves gained the island, but could not retain it. When Roman Nose splendidly leading his last charge, was killed, the attacks became weaker. But the Indians, although they did not rally any more to the offensive, hovered about. Possibly 80 warriors had been killed, while Forsyth's 51 had suffered 23 casualties, nearly 50 per cent. Forsyth himself was wounded in three places and his second in command, Beecher,[14] was dead. The little force, with such a hindrance of wounded, could not make a break for it. After harrowing trials a messenger finally made his way through to Fort Wallace. For nine days the unscathed, wounded and dead were huddled together for protection, and subsisted on putrid horseflesh and a few plums. Then the wretched and delirious survivors were rescued by troops from the fort. Such were the acts and the fate of a small party of soldiers who sallied forth into the wilds.

Sept. 16 1868

Aside from engagements of that character, battles and skirmishes which could have been avoided, were by mismanagement often forced on the army. The Indians were at this time managed by the Peace Commission and the Indian Department. These two independent controls seldom jibed and rarely settled a difficulty without ruction. The army had to be called in as a last resort, usually after affairs were so snarled that a fight was the only recourse. It did not help the spirit of the military man to be left to catch all the kicks and cuffs after he had been ignored in council. Many times he had a reasonable notion that his advice, if heeded, might have prevented hostilities.

---

[14] Nephew of Henry Ward Beecher.

Some 300,000 Indians now roamed the plains. To overcome the main force of these, General Sheridan had all told 1,200 cavalry and about 1,400 infantry. While the savages were moving in such quantity, he had too few troops to do the double duty of scouting and winning decisive victories. Accordingly he determined to wait until winter, when the failure of grass and the blight of cold weather would collect the redmen in large enough bands to make it worth while assembling his troops for attack. At that time 107 people had been killed, 57 wounded, 14 women outraged and murdered, one man, four women and 24 children taken into captivity, 1,627 horses, mules and cattle stolen, 24 ranches and settlements destroyed, 111 stagecoaches attacked and 4 wagon trains annihilated. This enumeration does not include the soldiers who had fallen in many actions. In committing these atrocities, the Indians had lost only 11 killed and 1 wounded. Sheridan felt that something decisive, no matter how desperate, would have to be undertaken, if further depredations were to be hindered.

Fall 1868

From Camp Supply in what is now Oklahoma, he started his campaign. One column, the Seventh Cavalry under Custer, was to go south while the remainder was to go northward later. Custer set out at four o'clock in the morning amidst a blinding snowstorm which sunk the thermometer to its depths. To Wolf Creek, fifteen miles distant, he had to make his way entirely by compass. Camping there in the snow with the temperature 7 degrees below zero, his little command fought the sleep that foretells death by freezing. Along the banks of this stream he continued his march until he came to the Canadian River. The water there was not frozen enough to bear the troops so that they had to break the ice and ford through the icy current. Not long afterward, one of Major Elliott's scouts reported the fresh trail of Indians. Custer left his wagons under guard and had his troopers take one day's rations of coffee and hard bread. Many of the soldiers and some of the officers were by now suffering with frostbite and snow blindness. That terrible Thanksgiving night the dinner consisted of hardtack and coffee. Here were men staving off death from cold in order to fight a hard battle with savages who showed no mercy. In the moonlight the troops continued their march by following the Indian

Nov. 23 1868

Thanksgiving Day, Nov. 26 1868

trail. When within a mile of one of the outlying Indian fires, an Osage scout said he smelled smoke. Shortly afterward, by stealthy movement through the snowdrifts, the officers could make out a patch of black under the dim rays of the moon. It turned out later to be the camp of Black Kettle's band of Cheyennes formerly led by Roman Nose.

Custer gave orders to his officers, who worked quietly without their sabers, to lead their various squadrons into designated positions surrounding the village, which could be plainly seen to be on the banks of the Washita. When the troops had taken their assigned positions in utmost quiet, the pain and discomfort grew more bitter than ever. Four hours until dawn had to be spent in the intense cold of the night without so much as a beating of the hands to ward off the cold. After the suspense and suffering of a lifetime, a bugle broke the stillness just as the dawn was beginning to show. It was the signal for the charge. Though almost numb the horsemen grasped their reins, mounted and were nearly upon the camp before their presence was suspicioned by the savages. In an hour, Black Kettle's band of 103 was no more. The squaws and children, though some of them had used rifles with success, were taken prisoners.

Nov. 27
1868

But just as Custer was about to complete the destruction of the tepees, the valley below seemed to be alive with warriors. It was then realized that the principal bands of Kiowas, Arapahoes, Cheyennes, Comanches and Dog soldiers had had their camp of about 2,000 red skins close by. The situation for Custer was grave, almost as much so as in a more fateful battle later. His ammunition was running low, the men were suffering extremely without their overcoats and the Indians were coming on with a rush. Dismounting his men and forming them in a semicircle about the camp he had taken, he awaited the onslaught. The issue of the battle swayed back and forth and it looked doubtful for the little handful of soldiers at this juncture. But Major Bell, the quartermaster, having heard the firing, drove a wagon of ammunition right through the midst of the savages and on into his own lines. The day was saved. Although the fighting continued during the remaining daylight, the Indians finally withdrew.

An unknown number of Indians were killed in the fight subsequent to the taking of the village. Altogether, 53 squaws and children were captured, together with 875 ponies, 1,123 buffalo robes and skins, much powder, lead, arrows, tobacco, rifles, pistols, beef and other supplies. The Black Kettle village was burned. But Major Elliott and Captain Hamilton[15] and 19 soldiers had been killed and many were wounded.

Custer had struck a blow at the depredations of these tribes. With the loss of so much material and warriors their future activities were curtailed. But he and his command were in a delicate position as to their own safety. With all possible dispatch he made his way back to Camp Supply with such harrowing sufferings to men and animals as few commands have ever experienced.

The main tribute that Custer and his troops received for their work was a series of articles in the public press branding him as a slaughterer of the innocent.

Another detachment under Major Evans, consisting of 7 companies of the Third Cavalry, 1 company of the Thirty-seventh Infantry and a battery of mountain howitzers, left Fort *Nov. 18 1868* Bascom, New Mexico, for the punishment of the Comanche and Kiowa Indians. The troops marched the distance of 185 miles *Dec. 7 1868* down the Canadian River, where they constructed a redoubt for defense. Pushing out from there without tents, they spent *Dec. 18 1868* their Christmas eve at a dry camp near the Washita Mountains. That was a satirical holiday never to be forgotten by those soldiers. Hunger, cold and thirst conspired to rob their comfort. Indeed they were glad to exist through the night. At a cañon in these mountains, a band of Comanches was finally met who tried to defend the pass. But when one of the howitzer shells burst in their midst, they scattered over the country in every direction. Sixty lodges, containing buffalo meat, corn, meal, flour, tobacco, coffee, sugar, salt, axes, hammers, hatchets, knives, powder, lead, bullet molds, saddles, lariats, bow and arrows and some very fine rifles were taken by the troops. As a result, many of the Cheyennes, Arapahoes and Comanches came in and surrendered unconditionally and without blood-

---

[15] Grandson of Alexander Hamilton.

Jan. 13 1869 shed. Major Evans, when he returned to his depot, had covered in the dead of winter 400 miles in 29 days.

General Grant was now the President-elect. Though he showed conclusively in his reports that the existing forces were insufficient to cope even with the Indians, there was a general cry in the east for the reduction of the army. Grant knew that the best way to have peace in our territories was to have a force of sufficient size to establish it. Yet the public clamored for chopping expenses irrespective of results. There was a war party who strove for a quick peace by means of adequate protection and a peace party who brought on indecisive engagements by the establishment of weakness. The so-called peace party won. The army, in its already weakened state, was sliced and large fragments cast away.

The very day before Grant took the oath of office, a clause March 3 1869 of the appropriation bill decreased the 45 regiments of infantry to 25. No new commissions, promotions or enlistments could be made until the contraction was complete. The enlistment for all troops was to be for five years.

The incoming President was saddled with a law which he knew would cost the country the lives of valuable men. In his appointment of General Schofield as Secretary of War and General Cox as Secretary of the Interior, he did as much as he could to overcome the woes that had been forced on him.

General Schofield was in a sad state of embarrassment over the army. If he waited to contract the infantry until casualties would take off the proper number of officers, the men enlisted in '66 and '67 for three years would all be gone. Many forts would have to be abandoned, to the great waste of life and property. He therefore, had to produce the shrinkage at once in order to reorganize for the immediate future. Accordingly, field officers who were to be retained were chosen in Washington; and the junior officers, in the departments. The senior in each grade was kept in the service in so far as such disposition was thought to be in the interest of efficiency. Many officers, who happened to be absent from their commands, were peremptorily cut off from the service. Excellent men of heroic record in the war and on the plains, who had a few years before been practically promised a life vocation by the government, were cast back into their communities with lost years and a sorry face before their friends. They had borne their share of suffering and hardship for their country only to have the sieve of politics hold them as dross.[16] The "Benzine Board" had the unwholesome task of sending out over 750 officers with one year's pay. The effect of this discard was to stagnate promotion for years and to make the retained soldier of gallant service feel unsafe in his position against the whims of party leaders.

Under these recurrent blows that kept striking the army during these years, officers and men may at times have grumbled, but they at no time became slack in their work. The newly organized units were sent in larger measure than before across the Mississippi.

While the regiments were plodding toward waste places across the continent, let us note for a moment a massive project of civilization for whose success the military man was responsible. The Union Pacific Railroad was completed this year, connecting the two oceans and binding the country together. General Dodge, an army officer of Civil War fame, had been the Chief Engineer. General Sherman had aided the work in every way by personal help and by ordering troops for its protection. At vulnerable points, soldiers had constantly driven off the Indians who were especially hostile to this inroad of the white man. Their buffalo hunting ground was cut in two and their country was about to be overrun with the palefaces. As a consequence, the railroad builder had to work and fight. The gangs were mostly discharged veteran soldiers who were organized into companies and battalions and who could drop their picks and grasp their rifles in a twinkling. General Dodge, who had served under Sherman, writes:

May 10 1869

"The organization for the construction of the Union Pacific Railway was upon a military basis, nearly every man upon it had been in the Civil War; the heads of most of the engineering parties and all chiefs of the construction forces were officers in the Civil War; the chief of the track-laying force, General

---

[16] Repeated after the World War.

Casement, had been a distinguished division commander in the Civil War, and at any moment I could call into the field a thousand men, well officered, ready to meet any crisis or any emergency."

Sheridan and Crook also more than satisfied the heavy demands of the railroad chiefs. So great was the dependence on the army itself that Oakes Ames said, "What makes me hang on is the faith of you soldiers." It is fair to state that this great bridge of progress and unification could never have been built had it not been for the army and army training.

The regimental band and 4 companies of the Twenty-first Infantry were present at the driving of the golden spike, a few miles west of Ogden, when east and west were made into one. It is said that the soldier musicians piped lustily at the exercise.

Since the army was pared down to almost laughable size, the Indian tribes underwent no setback, as the troubles of the railroad alone will show. Hundreds of settlers were being killed, and not a day passed that some company "somewhere in the west" was not called upon for rescue or control work.

Because the Piegans were especially active, a battalion of 4 companies of the Second Cavalry under Major Baker was sent to Fort Ellis in Montana. Many crimes had been committed there by some of the tribes of the Blackfeet, Bloods and Piegans. Since most of the Blackfeet were in British territory, the only Indians that could be reached by the army were the Bloods and Piegans. Major Baker left his post with his 4 companies and proceeded to Fort Shaw where he picked up 2 companies of mounted infantry. The weather was intensely cold and, to make matters worse, the marching from Fort Shaw had to be done at night on account of the necessary secrecy. For five days the troops camped in ravines in the snow, only to march again through the cold night. Near the Big Bend of the Marias, they came upon the camps of Bear Chief and Red Horn consisting of 37 lodges. The attack was a complete surprise, especially since smallpox had broken out among these tribes, so that even the few precautions taken by them in winter had been overlooked. In all, 173 Indians were killed, includ-

Summer 1869

Jan. 6 1870

Jan. 19 1870

Jan. 23 1870

ing Red Horn. Many squaws and children were captured and 300 ponies were taken. Hastening on to Mountain Chief's camp the troops found only a deserted village, which they burned. Pressing forward into the country of the chiefs of the Bloods, Baker called upon the warriors to give up the stolen horses in their possession or receive the treatment of the Piegans. The horses were discreetly turned over and the little force made its way back to the forts. Whatever else may be said of this spirited expedition, it quieted the Piegans and the Bloods who forever thereafter ceased their pillaging of the unprotected whites. The very people in the east who made outcry against this mode of warfare, were the ones who were responsible in many cases for starving these Piegans later, because of insufficient appropriation and care.

It was at this time that the Apaches, the most subtle savages we have ever dealt with, broke out from their reservations. *1870* From their fastnesses in New Mexico and Arizona, they would sally in small groups, never in large bodies, and pounce upon their prey much as did the mountain lions, their neighbors. To stalk these human animals was impossible for a white man. General George Crook was sent to command the Department of Arizona in the hope that he could solve the problem. Never did the War Department choose a more suitable commander. How closely he followed Steuben's plan of discipline is shown by Bourke's estimate of him:

> "This was the point in Crook's character which made the strongest impression upon every one coming in contact with him—his ability to learn all that his informant had to supply, without yielding in return the slightest suggestion of his own plans and purposes. He refused himself to no one, no matter how humble, but was possessed of a certain dignity which repressed any approach to undue familiarity. He was singularly averse to the least semblance of notoriety, and was as retiring as a girl. He never consulted with any one; made his own plans after the most studious deliberation, and kept them to himself with a taciturnity which at times must have been exasperating to his subordinates. Although taciturn, reticent, and secretive, moroseness formed no part of his nature, which

was genial and sunny. He took great delight in conversation, especially in that wherein he did not have to join if indisposed.

"He was always interested in the career and progress of the young officers under him, and glad to listen to their plans and learn their aspirations. No man can say that in him the subaltern did not have the brightest of exemplars, since Crook was a man who never indulged in stimulant of any kind—not so much as tea or coffee—never used tobacco, was never heard to employ a profane or obscene word, and was ever and always an officer to do, and do without pomp and ceremony, all that was required of him, and much more.

"No officer could claim that he was ever ordered to do a duty when the Department commander was present, which the latter would not in person lead. No officer of the same rank, at least in our service, issued so few orders. According to his creed, officers did not need to be deviled with orders and instructions and memoranda; all that they required was to obtain an insight into what was desired of them, and there was no better way to inculcate this than by personal example."

General Crook at once undertook to put a quietus on the lawless in his most characteristic way. Bourke again says:

"A campaign against the Apaches in their eyrie fastnesses among the rugged Sierra Madres could but be a series of detached fights. In fact, for many years and until the various bands of the whole tribe were finally rounded up, that was all there was to it, but it involved nearly twenty years' heartbreaking work, exhausting privation, bitter disappointment and the loss of many a gallant soldier, and was eventually accomplished only when our own troops, by persistent endeavor and repeated scouts, had mastered the general trend of valley, stream, and cañon, learned the location of the few water holes in the beds of the dry water courses, the rare springs in the hills, and the isolated passes through the unexplored mountain ranges, together with the stern fact that a trail once discovered must never be abandoned, but doggedly hung to and searched out, hour by hour, day by day, or on very rare occasions cornered and obliged to fight to a surrender or annihilation.

"General George Crook, who was, without doubt, one of the very best and ablest Indian campaigners our Government has ever had, and at the same time one of the most absolutely just and true friends the Indian has ever known, when he was assigned to the command of the Department of Arizona adopted and put in practice a new course toward this people. First, he personally went over the country and obtained all possible knowledge of it and of the Apaches. Then, by guaranteeing their safety, he finally, after much trouble, succeeded in getting some of the leading Apache warriors to come in for a talk. His reputation as an honest and true man had reached even this people in the fastnesses of the Sierras, and finally, after much hesitation, a few of them came. He told them that their stay on the war path meant eventual extermination. That things were changing in their section of country and civilization was advancing, and would continue to do so, and set forth the advantages of peace, offered them immunity for the past, and protection for the future if they would surrender and settle down to a peaceful life. Otherwise, he must and would fight them to extermination. Furthermore, if all the bands would not accept the offer of the United States Government and come in, he would gladly offer immunity to those who would accept it, and wished them, in case the bad Indians would not give up the war path, to assist him in their capture; that there were both good and bad white men and good and bad Indians, but the good white men forced the bad ones to obey the law, and he expected that the good Indians would assist him, just as the good white men assisted the officers of the law in keeping peace and maintaining order. Runners were sent out to the various bands, and in a few months all the well-disposed Indians came in and surrendered. After a suitable length of time he put his troops in motion against the defiant bands.

"But when our troops moved against them it was with this tremendous difference: Each small command moved with eight or ten friendly Apaches, duly enrolled, clothed, equipped, and paid as United States scouts.

"In pursuit of the Indians all the soldiers divested themselves of every superfluous garment, and did not load themselves down with even a single ounce of impedimenta that they could possibly do without. In summer they were almost as naked as the savages themselves, and were sunburned to the color of mulattoes, while in place of boots and shoes they wore buckskin moccasins or rawhide sandals tied to their feet with thongs of the same material, which enabled them to follow their foes on the rocky trail at night silently, and with such sleuth-like movements that on several occasions, all undiscovered, they traced them to their very lair."

Fall 1870

General Crook, as Sheridan had done, decided upon a winter campaign, because he believed the Apache would have to come down from his high mountains on account of the cold. The Fifth and some of the Third and First Cavalry, and Twenty-first Infantry set out late in the fall.

Winter 1870–1871

Against only those Indians who refused peace on any terms did Crook proceed. The progress of the troops, especially in the Tonto Basin, was tedious and difficult. Through deep cañons and over alkaline deserts they marched and countermarched as the Apache would double on his trail. In five years, one of these regiments had 97 engagements and another marched over 6,400 miles.

A happy climax of General Crook's efforts was to be expected. The Apache saw the fruitlessness of trying to escape the cunning scouts of his own tribe, backed up by the power of the trained, hardy soldiers. After five years most of these Indians came into the reservations and submitted. No fewer battles and actions under such wild conditions and against such a resolute enemy have ever been recorded.

July 1 1871

While the soldier in Arizona and over the west was thus straining himself to make the wilderness safe for democracy, the Congress pleasantly set another mark against the army by reducing the number of major generals to 3 and brigadiers to 6.

Aug. 9 1871

The incongruity of such a measure is further shown by the fact that troops had still to be in the south as well as the west. The New Orleans riots shortly afterward broke out. The main one occurred near the customhouse. It seems that the two factions of the state were bitterly divided over the election of Governor Warmouth. Some 4,000 whites and blacks collected near that public building and became so threatening that

3 companies of infantry were sent by General Emory to the scene of the demonstration. With 2 Gatling guns this little group of 150 soldiers pushed through the infuriated mob and dispersed the throng without bloodshed. Such instances of trained troops acting as preventive medicine are so replete in our history that elaboration is unnecessary.

1872 By the beginning of the next year the shrunken army had been completely reorganized. But it had to stretch itself far in order to cover the entire United States and Alaska. The heavy artillery naturally had to cling to the Atlantic. Only 2 light companies of each artillery regiment could be used for service elsewhere. Rarely were as many as 2 companies of any branch assembled at any one post.[17] General Sherman supervised the army from Washington. *Sept. 1872* Lieutenant General Sheridan commanded the Division of the Missouri. Under him were Major General Hancock, commanding the Department of Dakota, Brigadier General Pope, commanding the Department of the Missouri, Brigadier General Ord, commanding the Department of the Platte, and Brigadlier General Augur, commanding the Department of Texas. Major General Meade commanded the Division of the Atlantic. Under him were Brigadier General McDowell, commanding the Department of the East, and Brigadier General Cooke, commanding the Department of the Lakes. Major General Schofield commanded the Division of the Pacific. Under him were Brigadier General Canby, commanding the Department of the Columbia and Lieutenant Colonel George Crook, commanding the Department of Arizona.

1872 It was in this year that the full-dress helmet with its plumes and the coat with its aiguillettes were made a part of the uniform. The forage cap was of a little higher crown than the one in the Civil War. The campaign felt hat without trimmings persisted. The fatigue uniform of blue was worn in the field except where commanding officers had to make such appropriate changes as did General Crook. Brevet uniforms, while officers were on duty, had been prohibited. (July, 1870.) Only actual rank was permitted to be referred to in orders. However brevet insignia could be placed on the collar of the coat.

---

[17] Tremendous distribution of units, September 1872. See Appendix "G."

Nov. 1872

Target practice was emphasized to a greater extent than ever before. Estimating distant drill and the construction of butts and pits were required much as they are to-day. The sliding target had not yet come into use. Wingate's *Manual of Rifle Practice* covered a course of 90 rounds for each man.

In upper California and lower Oregon a tribe of Indians called the Modocs broke into prominence mainly because of the unfair treatment by the government of these heretofore peaceable redmen. They had always been tractable and in one case had gone so far as to help voluntarily in saving a white settlement, the town of Yreka, from the flames. It seems that the government in Washington had made a treaty with these Modocs which it failed to put into force for four years. At the end of that time it refused to carry out all the provisions. Nevertheless, the Modocs continued to dwell peaceably on their reservation in upper California until the Klamaths of lower Oregon (their ancient enemies) began hectoring and bullying them, saying that they had stolen part of their reservation. The Modocs complained of their situation and asked to be moved to a small strip of land bordering on Lost River and unoccupied by any white settlers, so as to be undisturbed.

General Canby, with his well-balanced and upright character, saw the point of view of the Modocs and tried to persuade the Indian agents to grant the tribe at least the equivalent of their request. Canby had so well tried to understand the redman that by many savages he was called the "Indian's Friend." But the agents could not agree to such compliance with Indian wishes. They insisted that the Modocs be conducted to the Klamath reservation. General Canby then tried to convince the authorities that they were doing the Modocs an injustice. But the agents, who did not have to fight, were impatient and desired to use force. Finally Canby was compelled to join the troops who were then in the lava beds, whither the Modocs had gone. The Modocs by this time were thoroughly and justly enraged at the duplicity of the government. On account of annoyances of being moved hither and yon, they had many times lost their crops and other subsistence. But it was a hard matter for the troops to round them up as long as they retreated from boulder to boulder and offered no target in the pedregal, where one place

Feb. 16 1873

looked like another. After a time, but too late, the authorities in Washington decided to have a cessation of hostilities. Peace commissioners were appointed, but the Indians, knowing the caliber of the appointees, would not treat with them. Finally General Canby, Dr. Thomas, Mr. Meacham, and Mr. Dyer seemed to be agreeable to both parties at issue. An overture from Bogus Charley, the Modocs' representative, suggested a meeting of the commissioners with the chiefs, all unarmed, at a neutral spot. After some hesitation, in which the commissioners sensed treachery, they repaired dutifully to the place appointed. When they were all seated, the chiefs drew revolvers from under their clothing and killed every one of these excellent men. *March 10 1873*

The mishandling of this whole matter by the Indian agents now plunged both sides into real war; 2 companies of the Fourth Artillery, 1 company of the Twelfth Infantry and 14 friendly Indians, while making a reconnaissance, were entrapped in the lava beds. The recruits who had just joined, ran disgracefully. All of the officers, noncommissioned officers and most of the old soldiers were either killed or wounded. *April 26 1873*

General Jefferson C. Davis, who had taken General Canby's place now put bivouacs all over the lava beds and succeeded in running the Modocs into the open country. Captain Jack, the Indian's Chief, was finally captured. When met by his pursuers he was sitting on a log. All he said was, "My legs have given out," and then he remained silent. *June 3 1873*

Captain Jack, Schonchin, Boston Charley and Black Jim, were finally hanged at Fort Klamath, Oregon. Thus the Modocs were forced on the warpath, hunted down and largely exterminated. General Canby, Dr. Thomas, Meacham and Dyer were sacrificed on the altar of mismanagement and high-handedness. It is small wonder that Dr. Thomas' son has since contended that the government murdered his father, because it did not heed General Canby's plainly sound advice in the first place. But the tragic irony of the whole affair was that after all this terrible loss had taken place, the general's counsel was found best to follow. The remaining Modocs were transported to a reservation away from the Klamaths, all they had asked in the beginning. *Oct. 3 1873*

In spite of its difficulties, the army showed a spirit of general progress. 1873 Lieutenant Ruffner, of the engineers, explored the Ute country, which was heretofore unknown, and made a complete map of the geological and topographical features of the whereabouts of the tribes located in that region. When, shortly afterward, some miners killed a few of the Ute warriors, that powerful and intelligent tribe rose to crush the whites. It was due largely to Ruffner's informative maps that the troops were able to punish the miners and bring the Utes to terms.

1873 About this time, too, the Springfield rifle, model '69, was adopted. It was a breechloader, but for single shots. Its caliber was reduced to 45 and its muzzle velocity was 1,350 feet per second. It was a dependable weapon, but the Henry and Remington repeaters were better, and officers and men provided themselves with the latter whenever they could afford to do so. Consequently the soldier had to buy for his own and the country's defense, a weapon that the nation should have furnished him.

1874 In the next year the army's work became more and more unappreciated. The enlisted strength of the companies which had had to be expanded was cut down to make a total of 25,000. The number of general officers was reduced in proportion. Altogether about a modern brigade was left to take care of our entire country. The army with all its high-mindedness and exertions was unseen, unknown and unpopular. It was difficult for the service to get even the most mediocre recruits. Emigrants and derelicts, many of whom could scarcely read and write, were put on lonely posts, to become the expert defenders and protectors of our country.

Here and there little fusses with the Indians put some soldiers in their graves. Here and there were long marches and excruciating suffering. Here and there the little remnants worked with might and main to acquit themselves nobly. And the country seldom looked beyond the Mississippi to hear the ominous sounds of massacre and depredation that the troops were trying vainly to suppress.

It is seldom one hears even now of the many minor engagements then prevalent throughout the west. *Aug. 30 1874* Five companies of the Sixth Cavalry, for instance, drove off a superior force of Comanches and Kiowas near the Red River. Captain A. R. Chaffee was conspicuous in leading a charge that saved defeat. Then Lieutenant Baldwin, with 3 men, while bearing dispatches for reënforcements, held off 125 Indians for one whole day. His little party dug pits, kept up their fire and, although one man was seriously wounded, made their escape in the night.

In addition to the prevalent actions in the west, the army was called upon to keep the peace in all manner of ways. Fearing trouble in the legislature in New Orleans, President Grant sent General Sheridan to the scene of the difficulties. Troops were stationed about the state house when the legislature assembled. The attitude of the community was grave and ominous. *Jan. 4 1875*

General Sheridan's account is graphic.

> "One Wiltz jumped on the platform, seized the speaker's chair and gavel, and declared himself speaker. On motions from the floor, and without ballots, he in the same way declared other gentlemen elected secretary and sergeant-at-arms, and having directed the latter to appoint assistants, a hundred or more men scattered about the hall, suddenly opened their coats, displaying badges on which was inscribed 'assistant sergeant-at-arms,' and the minority were in possession of the legislature. The excitement was intense; knives and pistols were drawn; several fisticuffs occurred; the shooting was so deafening that little could be heard.
>
> "In all this turmoil, in which bloodshed was imminent, the military posse behaved with great discretion. When Mr. Wiltz, the usurping speaker of the house, called for troops to prevent bloodshed, they were given them. When the Governor of the State called for a posse for the same purpose and to enforce the law, it was furnished also. Had this not been done it is my firm belief that scenes of bloodshed would have ensued."

As little groups of soldiers were allaying troubles in the south, so were similar detachments attempting to quell the growing Indian uprisings. So small was the army by this time that the little posts with their utmost energy could not stem the rising tide of Indian consolidation. Since 1869 there had been no less than 203 actions with the redmen. The Sioux especially, *End of year 1875* having allied themselves with the Cheyennes, formed a strong nation of intrepid warriors. Something determined had to be done in order to rescue the central west from the grip of these savages, who had left their reservations. It was decided that 3 columns under Generals Gibbon, Crook and Custer were to strike the tribes who were in the vicinity of the Big Horn near the sources of the Powder River. Crook was the first one to make a start. General J. J. Reynolds, in the van of the column, with 10 troops of the Second and Third Cavalry, surprised the *March 17 1876* village of Crazy Horse. The troops, under a severe fire, were eagerly destroying the lodges of this tribe when Reynolds for apparently no reason suddenly decided to retreat. So unexpected was his retirement that several wounded troopers were left to the mercy of the Indians, who followed the cavalrymen and recovered a herd of 700 horses. The loss to Reynolds' command was 4 men killed, 6 wounded and 66 badly frostbitten (the temperature being about 30 below zero). Crook, coming on the scene with the infantry, behaved toward Reynolds much as Washington did with Lee at Monmouth.

After this defeat, it was necessary to reorganize the command at Fort Fetterman, Wyoming. The new force consisted of 10 companies of the Third, and 5 of the Second Cavalry; and 3 companies of the Ninth and 2 of the Fourth Infantry—in all *May 28 1876* about 1,200 men. Crook personally took command. The expedition started toward the villages of Crazy Horse and Sitting *May 29 1876* Bull somewhere on the Rosebud River. The country in that vicinity was little known and the whereabouts of these chiefs less so. When Crook neared the Tongue River he received a defiant note from Crazy Horse warning him that there would be *June 9 1876* trouble if he crossed the stream. One evening shortly after the command had passed over the river, the Indians opened fire on the tents of the camp. But the soldiers were not occupying their nomadic home at that moment. Crook immediately attacked the redskins, who fled. There was little loss on either side, and the action was indecisive.

Crook now saw that he must get rid of his wagon train and move with dispatch if he was to overtake his prey. Not having sufficient horses he mounted the infantry on mules. The foot *June 16 1876* soldiers had a few riding lessons on their long-eared steeds and the command moved off again. About 250 Crow and Shoshone scouts now accompanied the 1,150 mounted men. The soldier had but one blanket and no tent.

Crook knew that his movements were known to the Sioux, so that surprise was impossible. The second day of the march, *June 17 1876* at eight o'clock in the morning, some 6,000 Indians charged down upon the little body of soldiers. The fighting was hot and furious, the cavalry in 3 columns charging at once. Charge and countercharge seemed only to cause the Indians to spring from the ground at each fresh assault. So fierce was the contest and so soon did Crook's command come to find that it was fighting for its life, that Mills, who had been sent on down the cañon to destroy the villages, had to be recalled. Colonel Guy V. Henry, with half of his face shot off, kept to his saddle and led his men until he fell from weakness off his horse.

There were too many Indians and too few troops. General Crook, although he drove off the savages, had to retire to his wagons back at Goose Creek, because he lacked ammunition and had many wounded.

While Crook was preparing for another offensive at his camp, Terry's command, which now combined Gibbon's and Custer's troops, was on the move. The whole force, consisting of the Seventh Cavalry, 4 companies of the Second Cavalry, 6 companies of the Seventh Infantry, 6 of the Twentieth Infantry, and a battery of 3 Gatling guns, encamped on the Yellowstone *June 21 1876* River. Not a soul of Terry's command had an inkling that there was abroad a force of such size as Crook had just met and had narrowly escaped. Even had they been aware of the strength against them, the knowledge could have made little difference. This was all the force from the little United States Army that could be spared and it had to act.

Custer with the Seventh Cavalry was ordered to advance down the Rosebud until he struck the headwaters of the Tongue River. Gibbon was to go directly to the mouth of the Big Horn so as to shut off the Indians from that direction and to reënforce Custer. The latter started down the Rosebud as *June 22 1876* ordered, but when he fell upon a fresh Indian trail he followed it instead of keeping to the course directed. Several days later *June 25 1876* (Sunday) Indian signs showed him to be near the camp of the hostiles. He must have known from the Indian footprints, which crossed his trail, that his whereabouts were known to them. At any rate, he then ordered Benteen to move along the bluffs on the left and Reno to move straight up the valley on Benteen's right. When Reno discovered the Indian village, he reported the fact to Custer who ordered him to charge it. In the meantime Custer himself struck out along the bluffs on the right. Reno, who had no experience in Indian fighting, but had had a splendid record in the Civil War, delivered a faint-hearted charge and finally retired to the bluffs to the right of the river, where he was hemmed in on all sides by hordes of savages. Benteen, with his column, finding nothing in his path, received an order from Custer to come on as quickly as possible with the ammunition packs. Not knowing where Custer was, Benteen charged down the valley only to find Reno's command in desperate straits. Dividing his ammunition with Reno he helped in holding the mass of warriors there in check. For hours this little group was huddled together on the bluffs. The unscathed and wounded alike were parched with thirst. Much firing could be heard about two miles further on where Custer evidently was. Then the shots grew fainter and finally stopped. Reno's force was promptly attacked by a large force of warriors. Night fell with Reno's command, after making a hazardous counterattack, settling down to strengthen and defend its positions under conditions of utter discomfort and apprehension. *June 26 1876* The next day the Indians renewed their attack, but a splendid charge by Benteen, followed by Reno, drove them back. *June 27 1876* By night the savages had packed up their tepees and left the valley. The next day Terry and Gibbon came upon the scene to the rescue. A detachment was sent to find Custer's command. On a ridge about two miles away 212 bodies were discovered. The clothing had been removed and most of the bodies were unspeakably mutilated and scalped. The Seventh Cavalry lost in this engagement 265 killed and 52 wounded. The Indians, too, had doubtless suffered but they had made good their escape. The disaster was complete with no good effect for the whites. Whatever else may be said, a small band of soldiers was made to operate on exterior lines, seek out a powerful and doughty enemy and try to overwhelm him. Besides, the Seventh Cavalry was armed with inferior carbines, whereas the Indians had splendid repeaters furnished by the government.[18] Again, there seemed to be no money to buy the best arms for the soldiers but somehow there was plenty with which to furnish excellent weapons to the Indians.

The Custer annihilation produced a tremendous sensation on the public mind. Every one implicated was blamed and many were investigated—except the government which by its reductions had caused the frightful carnage. The whole effective army would scarcely have been enough to have rounded up the Indians of this region. On the other hand, a sufficient force of trained men could have saved the great spilling of blood and Custer's command.

At any rate the army kept on at its task. Crook was reënforced with Merritt's Fifth Cavalry, which gave him in all about 2,000 men. He immediately moved out with each man carrying no change of clothing—only a blanket, 4 days' rations, a poncho and 100 rounds of ammunition. After several marches in the stifling heat, dust and finally rain, the suffering became keen. Finerty's diary says: *Aug. 4 1876*

"We had no tents, and had to sleep in puddles. The rain kept pouring down until the afternoon of the succeeding day, retarding our march and making every man of the command feel as if possessed of a devil. Officers and men slept in rain and dirt, drank coarse coffee and ate hardtack and raw bacon. *Aug. 11 1876*

"The rain and mud made the marching terrible, and some of Terry's young infantry (recruits)—they had met General Terry's command, and remained and marched with it for some days—lay down exhausted in the dirt. Many of them had to be placed on pack mules or carried on travois. . . . Every company of the Second, Third and Fifth Cavalry had to abandon or shoot used-up horses. . . . We made thirty miles over a most infernal country before halting. Chambers' 'astonishing infantry' made the full march—not a man fell out of ranks. The Roman legions or the army of Austerlitz never made better *Aug. 13 1876* time than the splendid detachments of the Fourth, Fourteenth, and Ninth Infantry. . . . There was very little wood. We had to sleep at night in pools of water, thankful to get a chance to lie down.

---

[18] It is interesting to note that while all this slaughter was taking place on account of our insufficiency of troops, Congress was reducing the Medical Corps (June, 1876).

"The horses staggered in the columns by scores. Very frequently a played-out horse would fall as if shot. Dozens of dismounted cavalrymen toiled painfully along over steep, rugged hills in the rear of the column. . . . Our whole line of march was dotted with dead or abandoned horses. Some of the newly enlisted infantry grew desperate, their feet bleeding and their legs swollen from the continuous tramp. . . . Many of the young foot soldiers seemed injured for life.

Aug. 15 1876

"Gibbon's men marched like Romans, Chambers' men rivaled O'Leary and Weston (but these were all veterans)."

Sept. 7 1876

It came to the point where Crook realized that food and forage must be obtained at once or they would all die in the wilderness. Captain Anson Mills with 150 men, all that could still march, was to make his way to Deadwood City, Dakota, and get any kind of provisions he could find. The Indians had combed the country of game and the sun had killed the grass. The last hard tack had been eaten the day before. Wild onions and a little horse meat remained.

Sept. 8 1876

Sept. 9 1876

Mills started out without hesitation and without rations, his men and horses being mere shadows of their former selves. The next day, he came upon the fresh tracks of Indians. Lying in a ravine and locating the warriors' lodges by means of scouts, he moved out at dawn the next morning. This gasping force in 3 well-ordered columns attacked and surprised the savages, killed and captured a few, and drove the remainder to the hills. The Indian camp, which was full of supplies, now had to be held against a counterattack of the redskins. Disposing his men carefully, Mills sent word to Crook of his plight and of the provisions at hand. Crook immediately took the trail, arriving at eleven o'clock in the morning and finding that Mills still held sway. At the approach of these reënforcements the Indians, who were still firing from the bluffs, retired, but a small group that had taken refuge in a formidable cave refused to submit and kept up a heavy fire. Crook, realizing that there must be a prominent Indian concealed there, besieged the little party and finally succeeded in inducing those who were not killed or wounded to come forth. American Horse, the chief of this tribe, was borne out by two young braves. He had been terribly wounded in the abdomen, and held a piece of wood between his teeth in order not to show his torture. Throwing his rifle on the ground, he submitted. He died that night.

In the meantime Crazy Horse, who had been a few miles away with 600 warriors, charged the troops. Crook's assembled command drove them off. The effect of this entire engagement was to capture American Horse and a few Indians and to save Crook's men from extinction. But nothing decisive against the savages was yet accomplished.

Crook, realizing the hopelessness of this kind of work, repaired to Fort Fetterman in order to organize a winter campaign. His force finally consisted of 2 companies of the Third, 6 of the Fourth and 2 of the Fifth Cavalry; 6 companies of the Ninth, 2 of the Fourteenth and 3 of the Twenty-third Infantry; and 4 batteries of the Fourth Artillery.

While Crook was thus preparing his column for an advance, General Miles with only 500 men of the Fifth Infantry was in the vicinity of the mouth of the Tongue River. In the way of comfort, clothing and supplies Miles' command was well provided against the cold. It was indeed fortunate for the men that they were well equipped with fur caps and mittens, because the mercury actually froze several times during the winter. Colonel Otis, with 4 companies of the Twenty-third Infantry, having pushed back a large force of Miniconjous, San Arcos, Brules and Unkpapas under the instigation of the medicine man, Sitting Bull, joined Miles' force. Since Otis had captured a wagon train of supplies, his reënforcement was *Oct. 18 1876* especially acceptable. The whole command now numbered about 850 and one gun. Miles then marched to meet Sitting Bull who *Oct. 21 1876* at a parley asked that the Indians solely occupy the west and that the whites vacate. The old medicine man was so obdurate that Miles, finally despairing of a peaceful settlement, gave him fifteen minutes to prepare for battle. The attack was bloody and doubtful for some time. Though the odds were 4 to 1 against them, the troops succeeded in driving the Indians forty miles up the valley from their village, in destroying it and in capturing most of their supplies. The result was that the large body of savages could not subsist. Several hundred broke into small parties and scattered, but 2,600 of them surrendered under promise of good treatment. Miles, who could not take them along with him on account of his slender stock of provisions, told them to report at the Spotted Tail or Red Cloud Agencies, which most of them ultimately did.

Oct. 24 1876

Meanwhile, Crook at Fetterman had managed to find out from a captured Cheyenne that the principal village of his tribe was located in a cañon through which ran the headwaters of Crazy Woman's Fork of the Powder River. Immediately Crook sent out Colonel Mackenzie with 10 companies of the Second, Fourth and Fifth Cavalry, and 350 Pawnee, Crow, Shoshone and friendly Cheyennes—1,100 men altogether. They reached the cañon which proved to be a gloomy, icebound gorge in the Big Horn Mountains, there about 3,000 feet high. Numerous icy creeks made the channel almost impossible to follow. The sufferings of the men as they plowed through this great fissure in the earth were, though different, just as intense as those Crook had borne earlier in the year. On the other hand it was a blessing for the troops that the Cheyennes believed their position to be impregnable. The Indians had put out little guard. Moving forward in the frigid, moonlit night, Mackenzie surrounded their position in the same noiseless way as Custer had done with another tribe several years before. At daybreak the camp was completely surprised. The Indians fled naked from their wigwams or cut slits in their tepees from which they fired. Many of their number were killed, their horses taken and their Chief Dull Knife lost. Although their bodies were entirely nude, they swarmed back to the village in the freezing weather. Then McKinney's company charged a rocky height and drove them back, but when he was returning a terrific countercharge resulted in his death and the wounding of a half dozen troopers. There was some confusion over this occurrence. Hand to hand fighting took place in which the whole force surged back and forth. Then the Indian scouts on the flanks saved the day by charging to the assistance of the troops. However, the fighting had to continue until dark in order to hold the savages back while

Nov. 24 1876

their village was being destroyed. Great quantities of supplies, all that the Cheyennes had, fell into Mackenzie's hands. The Cheyennes then began to draw off and to take up a strong position six miles further up the cañon from which Mackenzie could not dislodge them. Eventually he had to return to his camp. *Nov. 27 1876*

The sufferings inflicted upon the Indians were frightful. They had no clothing or food in this awful weather. Many babies and children froze to death in one night. One infant was saved by the ghastly device of sticking him in the warm entrails of a freshly butchered horse. Making their way to Crazy Horse the Cheyennes asked him for succor, but that chief said he had nothing to give and dismissed them. So angered were they at this rebuff that they set out forthwith to the nearest reservations, gave themselves up and went out against Crazy Horse with our troops later.

The main mission now was to capture or destroy Crazy Horse's band. Miles with 5 companies of the Fifth Infantry, 2 of the Twenty-second and 2 Napoleon guns started for the camp of that chief in the valley of the Tongue River south of the Yellowstone. *Dec. 29 1876* At first there were a few skirmishes with the advance parties of Indians, who kept moving toward the mountains. Finally there were captured a Cheyenne warrior and woman who informed the officers of the exact location of Crazy Horse's villages. Miles moved directly toward them. He found the redskins occupying a height which could be easily seen. *Jan. 8 1877* The place was very difficult to attack. The troops would have to ascend steep cliffs from where the Indians could pour in a converging fire. Seeing that Crazy Horse was willing to accept battle, Miles had his men out of range eat breakfast in full view of the gesticulating savages. After the meal, the troops began a very odd pitched battle in which there was neither surprise nor ambush. Miles' men with great difficulty ascended the cliffs under a galling fire. The artillery, which had been carried concealed in the wagons, suddenly unlimbered and dropped shells upon the savages, who were greatly surprised at this proceeding. The attack all along the line was scarcely a charge. With their heavy ammunition and winter clothing, it was slow, toilsome work for the soldiers to scale the icy, snowbound cliffs. But

Miles' men doggedly crawled to their goal. Then ensued some stubborn hand to hand fighting, some enfilading of the Indian position and Crazy Horse retreated. The last of the battle was fought in a blinding snow storm. In their fight the Indians left much baggage. So bereft were they of supplies and ammunition that the next spring Crazy Horse and his band came into the agency.

May 1877

Only one band under Lame Deer and Iron Star remained to be subdued. In the spring Miles pursued it, overtook it and captured its village. Lame Deer and Iron Star were killed, although Colonel Miles did his best to take them alive. It seems that after the engagement was over, an unfortunate accident occurred. The Indians misinterpreted the meaning of the movements of one of the soldiers. They thought the position of his rifle indicated treachery. The chiefs took point-blank aim at Colonel Miles and would have killed him, had they not been shot down in the nick of time.

Further west the Lower Nez Percés were driven to desperation by the unjust and inhuman actions of the Interior Department. This tribe for seventy years had been uninterruptedly the friends of the whites, had always stood out for peace and had to their credit a long list of benefits rendered to the settlers from the time of their befriending the Lewis and Clarke expedition. When low white characters killed some of their number, they did not retaliate; neither did our law punish the offenders. When the government decided to put them on a reservation, all these redmen asked for was a little strip of poor land in the Wallawa region. Of this they had already been defrauded: the agents, having promised it to them, had afterwards for no good reason reversed their decision. General Howard, the department commander, saw the point of view of these high-type Indians, and recommended that they be not confined to any reservation until they committed overt acts. Our avarice, however, decided differently. Howard with his troops was ordered to put them on the Lapwai reservation, whither they did not want to go. The movement would deprive them of their herds and other property. Already the insults the whites had heaped upon them were sufficient to cause any normal person to be enraged. But when they felt they could not subsist under the new order, they felt themselves to be at the end of amicable relations.

Even then Young Joseph, their chief, did not want to resist. Captain Whipple had to tell him that a higher authority than any army officer had decided he must go. Then Joseph was induced by his warriors to take up arms. After attempting to ward off the blow for some little time the Lower Nez Percés, about 300 warriors, were forced on the warpath. Regretfully the army and these Indians went into conflict.

Captain Perry, with 2 small companies of the First Cavalry, 90 men, all that could be spared for the duty, was sent to compel them to go on the reservation. He met the Indians at the head of White Bird Cañon. They had been watching his movements by scouts and even with field glasses. Besides outnumbering him over 3 to 1, the Nez Percés were superb physical specimens, well-educated and well-disciplined. They could march in column of fours, form twos and line from a gallop, build fortifications and maneuver well in action. It is not surprising, then, that Young Joseph skillfully ambushed Perry's command, drove them back and killed 1 officer and 33 men. It was with the utmost dexterity and bravery that Perry succeeded at all in extricating the surviving soldiers. *June 17 1877*

General Howard now had to collect more troops and hurry forward with them in person. He took 1 company of the Fourth Artillery, acting as infantry, 5 companies of the Twenty-first Infantry, 2 troops of the First Cavalry, 2 Gatling guns, and 1 howitzer, 227 men in all. Joseph had by this time about 400 braves. Howard came up with the Indians at the Clearwater. All day long Howard charged and the Indians countercharged. Finally the soldiers' lines had to be extended to two miles and a half in width. At night each side strengthened its breastworks. The next day Howard was reënforced by a fresh company of the First Cavalry, which attempted to turn the left of the Nez Percés line. Then the Indians fled and made good their escape with their supplies. Although Howard took their village, Joseph's band got out of the valley and over the Lolo trail faster than the troops could follow. The route covered is probably the most difficult one in the west, so that the Indians naturally outmarched General Howard's force. *June 22 1877* *July 11 1877* *July 12 1877*

General Gibbon at Helena, Montana, had in the meantime been warned by telegraph of the flight of the Nez Percés. He set out to meet them with a mixed force of 17 officers, 132 cavalrymen and 34 citizens, all he could collect. Learning of their whereabouts he waited until the night and at dawn attacked *Aug. 9 1877* their village, completely surprising them. Though the Nez Percés were driven out, they returned and reoccupied their village and incidentally took Gibbon's howitzer. The soldiers, driven behind barricades and trenches, defended themselves as best they could. That night the redmen drew off, leaving Gibbon's command crippled and unable to follow. Gibbon himself was severely wounded. His force was so small that he, a general officer, had felt himself obliged to use a rifle and help in the fire as a private soldier. He suffered a loss of 29 killed and 40 wounded in the action.

The Nez Percés now crossed the Great Divide and camped on the Camas Prairie. But the telegraph was clicking its news to other troops in the path of this tribe. Colonel Sturgis proceeded from the Powder River country with 6 companies of the Seventh Cavalry and some Crow scouts, in all about 350 *Sept. 3 1877* men. He overtook Joseph's force across the Yellowstone, pur- *Sept. 14 1877* sued him, and took over 400 ponies. Nevertheless the Indians, fighting a rear-guard action, made their escape along the Mussel *Sept.23 1877* Shell River to Cow Island on the Missouri.

In the meantime, Colonel Miles left Fort Keogh with 4 companies of the Seventh Cavalry, 4 companies of the Second Cavalry, a company and a half of the Fifth Infantry, 1 company of scouts, a breechloading Hotchkiss and a 12-pounder *Sept. 30 1877* Napoleon gun. Meeting the Indians in their camp on Eagle Creek near the Bear Paw Mountains, Miles drove them to the ravines where he was unable to dislodge them. The fighting was severe and at close quarters. Joseph's position could be carried only with great loss and that chief could not escape because he felt he could not leave his wounded. Although the army howitzer did some damage, the siege was kept up for four days with intense suffering on both sides. At the end of that time, after having fought his way for justice through three territories, after never having scalped, outraged or mutilated the whites, after having bested and outwitted the few soldiers sent against him, Young Joseph came out to Colonel Miles under protection of a white flag. Pointing to the heavens, this warrior, superb in face and stature, said simply, "From where the sun now stands I fight no more against the white man!"

Colonel Miles promised Joseph, according to the government's agreement, that he should be returned to the Lapwai reservation. But the government promptly stultified Miles by sending this tribe to an unhealthful region in the Indian territory where 50 per cent of their number died. Thus passed out the Lower Nez Percés and many a gallant soldier because General Howard's advice at the outset was not followed. Subsequently Colonel Miles, after efforts of years, had the remnants of the tribe transferred to the land of their nativity (1884).

The Nez Percés' uprising was not the only outbreak of this year. The Bannocks, the Mexicans across the border, the Indians of Alaska and the communists of our own country were bringing trouble in various parts of the land.

In Pittsburg and other cities, especially of Maryland and Pennsylvania, labor uprisings had so shaken the country that one city was burned and the National Guard of three states *July 1877* had to be called out. Even 30,000 militia could not quell the riot in Pittsburg. It took a small force of regulars to overawe the mob and restore tranquillity.

While all this was happening and the army was striving to save the nation from its enemies and errors, a great outcry arose against it in the interest of economy. There seemed to be no uneasiness over the inhuman loss of life of the soldiers due to their small numbers. This history cannot record the innumerable, unheralded affairs that kept sending soldiers into eternity, nor can it show in detail that hundreds of skirmishes and battles had never occurred if a sufficient army had existed. The Yellowstone expeditions of 1871, 1872 and 1873, the Indian Territory troubles of 1874, the Nevada disturbances of 1875 and the Ute and Snake uprisings of 1878, could not have been born, had there been on the scene of action a force sufficient to awe the Indian, and see that the proper provisions were given him. Similarly, the building of the great railways could have moved along rapidly and without hindrance or bloodshed, had there been troops enough to make the crafty Indian think twice before he struck. In a few places where the commands were comparatively large, the assembled soldiers would be paraded before the Indians, when it was suspected that the redmen were about to break out from their reservations. This show of strength usually calmed the savage breast.

An instance in point is the rising of the Bannocks at this time. They had lost their hunting lands, been forced on an inhospitable reservation, had to face continued encroachments of the whites and, to cap all, had to subsist on an appropriation that allowed them only two and one-half cents a day per capita. Naturally they grew arrogant and hostile. When a drunken Indian shot at and wounded two teamsters, he was arrested at the expense of the killing of an agency employee. Troops were called for as a result. The Bannocks later left their reservations mostly on account of insufficient food, and fled to the Camas Prairie where they killed several settlers. A vigorous campaign *Aug. 1877* by General Howard resulted in the capture of 1,000 of them. At Clark's Fork a battle had to be fought in which 20 Bannock *Sept. 5 1877* lodges were taken.

While the army was making its uphill fights and was losing its men more by its slenderness than any other cause, back east the legislators were doing much to increase the mortality.

The Fifty-fourth Congress, a most responsive body of politicians, while soldiers and officers were sacrificing themselves on the altar of patriotism, failed to pass an appropriation bill *Fiscal Year 1877–1878* for their pay. Officers had to borrow funds at interest in order to live through the year. For this period the army's services were gratuitous.

1878 All through the winter and spring advocates on the floor of the House, without promptings of their constituents, attacked both the services[19] in the bitterest of terms—"for the sake of economy." It was pleasing to stone an institution that could not retaliate. As long as the soldier, in his remoteness, had no domicile in order to vote—did not influence the district at home—he was harmless to the congressman. It looked at one time as if the army would be reduced to 10,000 men. Seeing the great range of territory over which the soldier had to be constantly on the alert and fighting, it seems hardly possible that intelligent men could have taken this view.

---

[19] Army and Navy.

However, the outcome was not as bad as might have been expected. After a year had passed, the appropriation bill came through with the pay. But legislation stopped all promotions above the grade of captain and reduced considerably the allowances of officers. For the heroism of the army, as outlined on these pages, Congress chastised, rebuked and derided but seldom rewarded. *June 1878*

Indians to the number of 375,000 had to be held in check on their reservations. In addition, Sitting Bull across the border in Canada was collecting a combined force of the tribes already there and of those who had taken refuge from the United States. The whole mass might strike at any moment. The Mexican outlaws, too, in large bodies were making regular incursions across the border in the south.

The army had grown so small that many of the troops of Alaska had to be withdrawn. Such action was an invitation for outbreaks in the far north. Many tribes in the United States were so ill-treated and starved by the Indian agents and the stinginess in Washington that they were ready to fight anybody. The Bannocks and Pi Utes left their reservation for this reason and went upon the warpath. Captain Evan Miles, with 75 picked men and as many Crow scouts, while on his way to the Yellowstone, heard of this tribe's withdrawal. He was soon reënforced by 7 companies of the Twenty-first Infantry, 2 foot batteries of the Fourth Artillery and 1 troop of the First Cavalry, all of which were on separate errands in that vicinity. With these troops he took up the pursuit at once. Making a record march of thirty-five miles in one day, he overtook the Indians near the Umatilla Agency, Oregon. Surprising them in the early morning, he took several hundred prisoners, killed 11, wounded many and captured 250 horses, with a loss to himself of several soldiers among whom was Captain A. S. Bennet, Fifth Infantry. The Bannocks were thus pushed back toward their reservation. *July 13 1878*

So uninviting, on account of pay and the arduous, thankless duty of the soldier, had the army become, that its effective strength was below 20,000. Desertion had played its part naturally and heavily. The recruits were largely desperadoes or those who couldn't read or write. In short it was all a high-minded officer could do to keep himself and the wheel going. But he was high-minded or the development of the United States would have rocked and tottered.

1879 The number of general officers was reduced to a mere handful. Sherman was general of the army; Sheridan, lieutenant general; Hancock, Schofield, and McDowell, major generals; and Pope, Howard, Terry, Ord, Augur, and Crook, brigadier generals.[20] The few thousand mobile troops were spread over 3 divisions, 8 departments and 11 districts in trying to compass the territory of the United States.

While there was constant fighting for these inadequate numbers, the service did not shirk its duty in improving itself. The effort to have a well-regulated method of target practice is an *Aug. 7 1879* example. The Laidley system was adopted. The Ordnance Department tried to equip the army with better targets. Each man was to have an allowance of 20 rounds of ammunition per month for this purpose and prizes and furloughs were to be given to the best shots.

The Sioux again were on the warpath. General Miles, with 9 companies of the Second Cavalry, 7 companies of the Fifth Infantry and some scouts, crossed the Missouri at Fort Peck and proceeded to the Milk River. There the troops encountered a number of Indians under the leadership of Sitting Bull. The *July 17 1879* force was too small to capture the tribes. After a severe engagement which was begun by a daring attack on the part of the few soldiers, the errant redmen fled across the 49th parallel and were safe.

It was not long after this that the Utes grew restless and quite antagonistic toward the Indian agent at the White River Agency, Colorado. Major Thornburg, accordingly, was ordered to move from Fort Steele. He collected 3 companies of the *Sept. 21 1879* Fifth Cavalry and 1 of the Fourth Infantry, about 200 men altogether, and marched toward the scene of the trouble. When he had been about a week on his way, he was attacked by about 300 well-armed warriors. Thornburg and 10 of his men were killed. Captain Payne gathered the remainder and retreated to the wagons where he prepared to make a stout defense. *Sept. 29 1879* So outnumbered was this little band of regulars that all it could do, trapped as it stood, was to keep itself from being exterminated. A message finally found its way through to General Crook, who ordered Colonel Wesley Merritt, with 530 men of the Fifth Cavalry, to hasten to the relief of Payne's command. When Merritt reached the beleaguered soldiers, he found that a company of the Ninth Cavalry had arrived the day before. Generals Sheridan and Crook, by rushing reënforcements to Merritt, *Oct. 5 1879* swelled his command to the gigantic figure of 1,000 effectives. Merritt then pushed on to the agency. There he found the houses burned and the Indian agent and 10 of his employees murdered. The Utes had again taken their vengeance. While Merritt's command was held in the vicinity of the White River Agency until further developments, Lieutenant Weir and William Hammer, chief of scouts, while hunting deer, were attacked and killed by the Indians. Great alarm was now felt throughout Colorado. Colonel Merritt's force was raised to 1,500 men by robbing other parts of the country of its protection. In addition, Colonel Mackenzie, with 6 companies of the Fourth Cavalry was brought from Fort Clark, Texas. Colonel Hatch with 450 men of the Ninth Cavalry came from New Mexico. The Utes at last being awed by this army of troops, being pacified by the overtures of General Charles Adams of Colorado (who incidentally succeeded in having released 3 white women and 2 children held by the Utes) and being convinced by the persuasive words of their head chief, Ouray, fell into a state of quiescence. Up to this time, 11 citizens, 2 officers and 12 soldiers had been killed *Nov. 1 1879* and 41 soldiers wounded by this outbreak.

---

[20] See Appendix I for organization of army—1879.

Most of the troops of this expedition were shortly thereafter returned to their posts. But 4 companies of the Fifth Cavalry and parts of the Fourth, Seventh, Ninth and Fourteenth Infantry regiments remained near the ruined agency. They hutted and sheltered themselves as best they could through a severe winter and with great privation and suffering. In the summer *July 7 1880* of the next year they were relieved by 6 companies of the Sixth Infantry.

As the army fought and bore the brunt on the one hand, so 1880 it prepared itself in its technic. A new *Cavalry Drill Regulations* was published at this time. It seemed to adapt the movements of the mounted service more thoroughly to the work on the plains. Provision was made very carefully for handling each contingency of march or action. Besides a dismounted drill in 2 ranks made the use of the Cavalry more extended. The captain's command was still called a company, the major's a battalion, and the lieutenant's a platoon.

Thus the army in this period after the Civil War plodded along, too dispersed most of the time to collect in even respectable detachments. It marched through parching heat and arctic cold only to find precarious battle or distasteful execution of bureaucratic injustice at the end. Through blood and hardship it tried to square the government for its criminal blunders. Hungry, thirsty, exhausted and wounded the soldier too often fought in actions which he did not believe justified. But his loyalty made him answer the command of his nation and he went forward.

And he carried on in the face of the deepest ingratitude of his people. His pay was cut, his comrades summarily discharged, his supplies and arms made inferior to those of his enemy and any hope of promotion blotted out. Surrounded by thousands of savages in a vast prairie, he could count at most a few hundred with him to help hold them in check. Why he went on, why he went through the agonies of hell for a nation that kicked him at every turn, is almost beyond human analysis.

And yet the awful marches and these heroic fights were the soldier's main dependence. He got away from the most provincial garrison life into which any government ever forced an army. Living in flimsy shacks, without the commonest conveniences found in the east, he froze in winter and stifled in summer. Tenderly reared women heroically went through these hardships with their husbands. Breakfast was often eaten when the water in the tumblers had a crust of ice upon them. Dinner at other times was served when swarms of insects would rob the appetite. Winter or summer, in or out of the fort, there was no escape from the rough life of the frontier. But through these grim days there was time to find compassion and succor for the suffering squaw or the white family driven in from their settlements. The post was the haven of all classes, and in this comfort many a soldier's wife found an outlet from the dread monotony.

With stables in the morning early, with breakfast next, then parade, then drill and stables in the afternoon, the work of the day, except the endless fatigue, was over. There could be no more than rudimentary exercises for from 38 to 50 men. There could be no training. When lieutenants and captains expected to hold their same grade for 20 or 30 years and were not afterwards disappointed in this, and when these very officers had been generals over large commands in the Civil War, a great wave of ambition and spirit could hardly grip their energies. With few books, an occasional mail, no golf courses, no tennis courts, no activities to arouse the interest even of a spectator, the soldier was really closed to the recreation of the bottle and cards. The sutler's store was the only club and its rough boards and hot stove a place of rare comfort. But with all this desultory life, there was little trouble over gambling and a surprisingly small amount of drunkenness. In this age of fulsome entertainment, one cannot visualize the barrenness that then enclosed the soldier's life.

When the commanding officer had too great a proportion of illiterates and desperadoes in his organization, when savagery, rudeness and the outbreaks of the lawless loomed on every hand, he had to have a hard discipline that looks severe in the New York Library. He had at times to resort to the ball and chain, to close confinement and the harshest restrictions of his officers and men. He had to have the most rigid formality at the mess table, to inculcate an unwavering respect for rank and to notice the smallest details of official and social customs. He had to be a czar or he could not have lived peaceably in his military oasis on a threatening desert. He had to watch the little things of his small province or soon they would be big things. The very life blood of his command depended upon his supervision of what appear to us now to be the pettiest of details. He had to be "hard boiled" or he, his handful of soldiers and the surrounding country could not have survived.

The nation forced him into this position, as it forced the demise of Thornburg, Canby and even Custer's command and the death of many another soldier, when it made beggarly detachments fight an overwhelming quantity of wily savages on their own soil. The government as usual scrupled on money for an army, but it did not seem to be anxious about the loss of life that resulted from parsimony. And so the army was thrown into dark ages of hopelessness. Though he grumbled, the soldier did more than his duty, sustained by an unfaltering honor that faced death for an ideal.

CHAPTER X

THE ARMY'S RENAISSANCE

First Phase

(1881–1898)

NOTWITHSTANDING the cudgelings of stress, neglect and hostility that beset the soldier, the army began to be restless for something better. The stir of honest ambition, that lies close to true American hearts, plainly started *1881* to transform itself into concrete movement. If the powers denied to the service a chance of handling the larger units in maneuver, then the military man would do the next best thing and move imaginary forces on paper and would read of the best technic and tactics from books. If the government prevented practice, at least the officer could voluntarily absorb more theory. He could thus have some advancement in the knowledge of the most intricate and extensive profession found in civilization.

When the general of the army[1] laid the foundation of the School of Application for Infantry and Cavalry at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, he sowed the seed of advanced learning in the *May 7 1881* service. Although the course of instruction then prescribed for this institution was primitive and elementary, the very installation was the beginning of general and special service schools that were to spring up later and make our officers the peers in the art and science of war of any in the world. Thus the army began to wake itself, unaided, from the dark ages of provincial life into which the nation had thrown it.

---

[1] General Sherman.

The nucleus of progressives who built up a first- and a second-year course at Leavenworth little knew that the efforts of this institution were to be one of the great factors in the successes of two modern wars. Neither did they realize that their onward-looking efforts would step by step cause an officer to have a continuous education throughout his career. At first officers were detailed from their regiments to be students and those who were in command of troops at the school were in general to be instructors. The first year[2] was taken up with the rudiments of a general education and the second with certain books on the science and art of war. Papers by both students and instructors were to be read at various times.

1881 The beginning of any renaissance is too dim, as we know, to throw a full light upon conditions at once. The army went along in this year without much to alleviate the load of its irksome and humdrum duties. In fact, Congress let it rest dormant for the next seventeen years without doing a single vital thing toward its strength or monetary needs. But within the service there was a decided ripple of constructive unrest which tended toward practical and theoretical efficiency in spite of the unsympathetic aloofness of the government.

---

[2] FIRST CLASS:
Mahan's Outposts.
Myer's Signaling.
Mahan's (Wheeler's) Field Fortifications.
Woolsey's International Law and Laws of War.
Ive's Military Law.
Operations of War (Hamley).
The Lessons of War as Taught by the Great Masters (Colonel France J. Soady).
Lectures by professors and essays prepared by students from general reading.
Practical instruction in surveying and reconnoitering by itineraries and field notes, as prescribed for the use of the army.

FOR THE SECOND CLASS:
Correct reading aloud, with care and precision, with proper accent and pauses, to be heard and understood.
Writing, a plain hand easy to read, designed for the use of the party receiving, and not an exhibition of haste and negligence of the writer, especially the signature.
Grammar (Bingham).
Arithmetic (Hagar).
Geometry (Chauvenet).
Trigonometry (Chauvenet).
General Sketch of History (Freeman).
History of the United States (Seavey, Goodrich).

Emory Upton

A distinct evidence of this movement toward higher standards was the work of Brevet Major General Emory Upton. He had been sent abroad to study the workings of the armies of Europe and Asia. His report upon his return had led him to make an exhaustive study of the organization and management of our armies in the past. The work was entitled *The Military Policy of the United States.* His research and comments clearly demonstrated that our country had really had no sound policy up to that time. Unfortunately he had finished only the review of the use and abuse of our military forces down to the middle of the Civil War, when he died. *March 15 1881* It was many years later, as we shall see, that the fruits of his tireless labors were brought to light by a fearless Secretary of War. It was also a long time afterward, when we had successfully miscarried, that the recommendations of his report upon his tour abroad met with favor from the politician. But every one of his precepts was followed to the letter and to the country's betterment, even if it did take a long time to move our legislators to act toward that end. The 3-battalion organization for infantry and cavalry, the interchangeability of line and staff officers, the examination as a condition to promotion, the establishment of a general staff and the extension of military education were embodied among his conclusions; and they were all afterwards put into effect, though most of them did not reach fulfillment until we had had another war with its needless death rate.

Fighting Indians went on with frequency in the west during this year, but the actions though difficult and full of hazard, were small. One matter of importance occurred in concluding affairs in the Sioux country. Sitting Bull, with his followers, had kept to the British possessions well out of reach of our soldiers. But forays into the United States by some of his warriors had been so severely met by detachments of the army, that the savages had either been driven back with heavy loss or had come into the reservations. His force had grown feebler, too, by hunger and disease. His influence was gone and most of his people had abandoned him. Worn out and unable to exist longer in his cold habitat, he came into Fort Buford, Dakota, *July 20 1881* and gave himself up. With him were 45 warriors, 67 women and 73 children. This act marked the termination of the bitterest conflicts with the savages.

But the Indian fights were not over by any means. The Indian agents in Arizona had so harshly mishandled the Apaches, whom Crook had left in a peaceable state after years of the utmost toil, honesty and care, that the President felt obliged to reassign that officer (who was now a brigadier general) to the command of that department. When Crook arrived, he found that his labor during the seventies was absolutely undone. These tribes had been so defrauded and abused, in the interim, that they were all upon the warpath. From semi-civilized quiescence they had lapsed into barbarous strife in a space of half a dozen years. The agents had ejected them from their reservations because silver had been found in the ground that they occupied. These members of the "Indian Ring" had flung them into prison to languish for months without charges against them, had starved them, had taken away their crops, had given them little hearing in a court of justice and in general had treated them like cattle. As one reads of the outrages perpetrated on these savages, one can hardly believe them to be the work of white men.

Summer 1882

General Crook again went into this difficult and tremendous country of huge mountains, deep cañons, cactus, and sultry dust. He could have led his troops against these spurned savages with glory to himself and without criticism from any one. Being a man of character and training he set for himself the task of winning back the Apaches' confidence by peaceful means. With a small escort he visited these tribes and heard their grievances at great personal risk. He investigated their complaints and in almost every case found that the Apaches had been heinously treated. The old chieftains and squaws told him stories that would have wrung pity from a hardened criminal. The way in which they met him—a real friend and champion after all these years—was pathetic in its childlike appeal. The faces of the old men brightened and the squaws wept when they again saw his face and heard him in council.

The government wisely put the complete control of Indian affairs in that district in his hands. It was not long before he again restored order, confidence and peaceful conditions among the redmen without resort to a single battle. Old Pedro's outburst shows clearly that the army officer more than any other individual served his country by clinging to peace until every proper means of persuasion was exhausted:

> "When you (General Crook) were here, whenever you said a thing we knew that it was true, and we kept it in our minds. When Colonel Green was here, our women and children were happy and our young people grew up contented. And I remember Brown, Randall, and the other officers who treated us kindly and were our friends. I used to be happy; now, I am all the time thinking and crying, and I say, 'Where is old Colonel John Green, and Randall, and those other good officers, and what has become of them? Where have they gone? Why don't they come back?' And the young men all say the same thing."

While Crook was using his power in this fruitful and pacific way, the "Indian Agent Ring" was sending out newspaper stories of murders and depredations committed by the Indians. Their purpose was to involve General Crook in a fight, so as to drive the Apaches away from land on which they wished to profiteer. The General investigated each case, found it to be a fiction and stopped the rumor. Thus he reached out with one hand and throttled sinister threatenings and with the other soothed the maltreated tribes of Arizona. He set the Indians to work and made them satisfied by his justice, kindness and lack of compromise.

But there was one tribe, the Chiricahua Apache, that had taken refuge in the Sierra Madres over the border in Mexico. With these redmen General Crook was unable to treat. It seems that their flight took place after an incident which was a culmination of many previous wrongs. A police officer in attempting to arrest a young Indian on a minor charge fired into a group of Apaches into which the young buck had fled. The result was that the policeman killed a squaw instead of his quarry. The Indians immediately retaliated by killing the officer and playing football with his head. Fearing vengeance they escaped into Mexico.

March 1883 Later, a band of this tribe under Chato conducted raids
from their strongholds in the mountains on settlers and citizens
in the United States. It was necessary now for General Crook
April 23 1883 to take action. After having proceeded across the border and
having conferred with the Mexican military leaders, who encouraged
him, he set out from Willcox with 7 skeleton companies
of the Third and Sixth Cavalry, all that he could assemble.
Later on, Captain Crawford, Third Cavalry, joined
April 28 1883 him with 100 more Apache scouts, making the whole command
about 50 officers and soldiers, and not quite 200 friendly Indians.
Was not this a pretty force for a rich, sizable nation to give
a general officer for the purpose of whipping hundreds of
Indians in one of the most natural strongholds God ever made?
May 1 1883 The command pressed on across the boundary line and came
into the high broken country of the Sierra Madres. The
May 15 1883 scouts in advance came up with the Chiricahuas and succeeded
in frightening them off and getting their camp. General Crook
then let a young squaw and a boy, whom the scouts had captured,
make their way back to the camp of Geronimo, their
leader. When that chieftain heard that General Crook was in
command and that all the Apaches of Arizona had come back
as friends of the white man, he immediately sent out runners
to notify all the tribe to come in. He then came in himself.
Over 200 of the Chiricahuas finally gave themselves up and
July 1883 Arizona was at peace again under a just administrator. In
two years, General Crook had restored to tranquillity a territory
that would have taken a decade to conquer. How much bloodshed
might have been saved in the seventies, had men such as
Canby, Howard, Miles and scores of others been given complete
control, is inestimable. As it was, untrained civilians by their
connivings for gain, became the agitators who fomented war.

While these activities were going on with the Indian, the
1883 army showed more signs of interior improvement. General
P. St. George Cooke gave to the service a new *Cavalry Tactics*
as the result of his experience and investigations. The manual
is both interesting and instructive. He developed from previous
recommendations the double column of fours so as to form
mounted units into more compact bodies. He called the company
organization a "troop," for the first time it had so been

termed in regulations. He assigned the troop officers to positions which are similar to the ones they now occupy and sized the troopers from the tallest in the middle to the shortest on either flank.

Through the efforts of the Ordnance Department, the rifle was improved as far as it could be with the money allotted by Congress. Though the Lee magazine rifle had been adopted (1882) it could not be issued in large quantities because there seemed to be no funds for that sort of product. So the Springfield model was improved as a single loader. *1884* It was fitted with the Buffington rear sight, which for the first time equipped our rifle with a device that allowed for the drift of the bullet. It was a 45-caliber weapon and shot fairly accurately at 200 and 300 yards. To it could be attached 3 types of bayonet, the triangular, the spade or trowel, and the cylindrical ramrod.[3] It was as good a single-shot, black-powder weapon as then existed, and the best the army could produce with the funds at hand.

The blue uniform with red facings for artillery, sky blue for the infantry and yellow for the cavalry was not much *Aug. 14 1884* changed in cut over that of the Civil War. The fatigue cap was somewhat lower in crown.

The noncommissioned officers wore above the elbow large chevrons of cloth for the fatigue blouse and of gold for the dress coat. On overcoats the chevron was worn below the elbow. The fatigue coat had a low falling collar.

Improvements in seacoast fortification had been let run along by the reluctance of Congress to such a degree that all sorts of guns of obsolete type presented a picturesque but useless array on our shores. Finally by suggestions of certain progressives in the army and House and Senate, an act was passed which authorized a board of officers to draw up a scheme of *March 3 1885* modern fortifications for our seacoast defenses. As a result the Endicott Board really enunciated the scheme of protection of our shores which proved twenty years later to be most useful. The recommendations contemplated the establishment of 2,362 guns and emplacements. Up to the war with Spain only 151 of these had been installed.

---

[3] This weapon was largely used in the war with Spain.

To return to Arizona, we find that for two years General Crook had succeeded in keeping the Apaches satisfied, peaceful and industrious. Such conditions were evidently too drab for the Indian agents who felt that they had been robbed of their control in that vicinity. On one occasion they refused to let the Indians have an irrigating ditch which had been staked out by certain army officers. At various times the agents tried to throw aspersions on Captain Crawford's character because he had taken the Indians' part. They also allowed the sale of liquor to the savages. As long as greed and avarice were at the bottom of the civilian agents' motives, there naturally followed argument with the military man. The result was that the Indian was led into uncertainty. While authorities of the Interior Department haggled and when one white man would give an order or permission only to have it countermanded by another, it was impossible for the savage to discriminate between the parties at issue or to understand the causes of his treatment. He did not know what to expect. As a result Geronimo and *May 17 1885* Nachez with 124 Chiricahuas left their reservation for the Sierra Madres. General Crook pursued the same tactics that had been so successful before. With Apache scouts, led by officers of the army and backed by the troops, he hunted down the warriors in their little groups. It was a taxing and endless job that occupied the summer and fall, but Geronimo, finally seeing the hopelessness of further struggle, sent word to General Crook that he desired a conference. It was not long before the general met him at a picturesque spot called "Cañon de los Embudos." For several days Geronimo argued his point and *March 27 1886* refused to accept the terms offered, but when "Chihuahua," a fine old chieftain, voluntarily surrendered, Geronimo followed suit. But Geronimo was not yet ensconced upon the reservation. On the way in, he must have changed his mind for he *April 1886* gave the troops the slip. It was at this time that General Crook was superseded by General Miles. With detachments, mostly of the Fourth Cavalry, the new commander followed up Crook's plan. But it was several months before the wily *July 1886* chieftain could be taken. Captain Lawton and Surgeon Leonard Wood rendered conspicuous service in finally capturing him. Although there were minor outbreaks of Apaches afterward, this episode marked the virtual end of the conflicts with these tribes.

While Crook and others were rounding out the salvation of the Apaches with little bloodshed, the army in other parts was called upon to do a different sort of national police. The Chinese laborers in the mines of Wyoming were having violent troubles with their employers. When part of the army was called out to suppress this uprising, it did its usual work of restoring order with little bloodshed. *Sept., Oct. 1885*

The schools in the army were by this time on a fair road to substantial advancement. It was little thought, when Lieutenant Arthur L. Wagner was sent to Leavenworth as instructor of military art, that he was going to be such a great factor in developing the curriculum of that school. For eleven years he was to influence its standards, he being there without intermission throughout that time. It was during this period that he wrote the *Campaign of Königgrätz* (1889), *The Service of Security and Information* (1893) and *Organization and Tactics* (1895). These works were particularly needed by the service. They suited the requirements of all branches and remained for years standard authorities on these important phases of military instruction. They were the result of wide research and able condensation and suited to the everyday use of troops. Ever since their issue the service at large has been influenced by them. It was through Wagner's efforts that the courses at Leavenworth were raised to a higher standard, especially in the field of military art. His fine personality and tireless energy made him truly the Sylvanus Thayer of the General Service schools. *Nov. 1886*

From the impetus of the Leavenworth courses came a desire for more specific professional learning in the various branches of the service. Not only was it apparent that officers should be cognizant of strategy and tactics in general, but that they should also be experts in the technic and tactics of the various arms to which they belonged. After much persuasion, a "school of instruction" of drill and practice for cavalry and light artillery was authorized by Congress. Although the institution was not established until five years later, the authorization was at *Jan. 29 1887* least certain for future possibilities. At length, such a school was placed at Fort Riley, Kansas (March 14, 1892).

While the army was improving its mind in order to be more efficient to fight, it was woefully deficient in materials for war. The large guns in the service seemed to be ill-supplied because of the usual lack of funds. Existing weapons and ammunition were obsolete. The 8-inch shell for instance had

March 21 1888

a cast-iron point and was unsuitable for armor-piercing purposes. Black powder was still in use at this late date in modern discovery. Tests were conducted by the Ordnance Department at Fort Hamilton, New York, with a pneumatic, dynamite,

April 24 1888

torpedo gun. The results as reported by the chief of that branch were fair, and he consequently recommended experiments with explosive gelatine or dynamite so as to increase the range and

June 14 1888

power of projectiles. But he later complained that Congress in its last two sessions had made no appropriations, so that experiments and the purchase of guns and ammunition for this purpose had to stop.

However, the next year the Congress did appropriate a sum for experimenting on the Pacific coast with 3 pneumatic, dyna-

June 1889

mite guns. But it so happened that the Watertown Arsenal had to suspend work on rifles of large caliber, because the plants of Watervliet and Watertown were too small to accommodate the manufacture of both cannon and small arms. Since the latter were in demand by the army, they had to take precedence to the exclusion of the larger weapons.

If lack of legislative attention deprived the army of many of its necessary tools, at least it could improve itself in its training and organization to the limit of its internal powers. The urge of progress in the service was growing rapidly and was manifesting itself in several ways. Where the work of the soldier was most tangled, where marching to and fro was incessant, where operating and guarding stage lines, quieting Indians, holding off desperadoes, allaying labor troubles and safeguarding the settlers was all in the work of the week, there was still time found for training. When it is realized that 1 company of the Second Infantry in a short campaign against

Spring 1889

the Bannocks marched over 1,300 miles, it is remarkable that the units of the service could thus find time for betterment toward no personal or selfish ends. An instance of such a thing is found in the field maneuvers of the Twenty-first Infantry at Camp George Crook near Fort Robinson, Nebraska. Not only was the practice beneficial, but it was the first time the regiment had been assembled for twenty years. *Summer 1889*

Further, the service was anxious to better its standards and organization. The next year Congress was prevailed upon to pass a law which required no outlay of money. Promotion below the grade of brigadier general was to be within each arm, corps or department of the army. Officers could now be transferred inside their branches without loss of rank entailed by the previous narrow limits of regimental promotion. The entire service by this move became more flexible in the interest of efficiency. To the same end this legislation provided for a rigid examination for promotion of all officers below the grade of major. *June 16 1890*

While this progress was being fostered in the service, some sorry Indian troubles again come into prominence. The great Sioux nation on its various reservations had become saturated with a new religion whose principal tenet was that an Indian Messiah was shortly to come, who would give the red race domination over the white. The belief provoked a fanaticism that entailed fasting, vapor baths and ghost dances, and drove many of these superstitious people to leave their reservations. A large force of savages had collected in the Bad Lands, 1,800 alone having stampeded to that place when General Brooke came to Pine Ridge with 5 companies of infantry and 3 of cavalry. Sitting Bull had been killed and a riot had ensued when the Indian police had tried to arrest the old medicine man. *Dec. 15 1890* Sitting Bull's followers then made their escape to Big Foot's village, 40 miles to the northwest. It became a matter of moment then to keep Big Foot from slipping away into the Bad Lands, from which place incursions could be carried on at will. General Brooke ordered Colonel Forsyth to intercept Big Foot's band and to disarm the Indians peaceably if possible. With 2 battalions of the Seventh Cavalry and some Hotchkiss guns, Forsyth surrounded the camp at Wounded Knee Creek and invited the warriors to a council, whereupon 106 of them came out and sat on the ground in front of their tepees. The *Dec. 29 1890*

Indians were then sent in groups of 20 to bring out their arms. The first group could discover only two weapons, whereupon Forsyth had to order soldiers to search the premises. They found fifty rifles. While this operation was going on, one of the seated Indians drew a rifle from under his blanket and fired upon the soldiers. In a second the whole camp was ablaze. The other warriors who had similarly concealed their weapons opened at once upon the troops. Though taken by surprise, the soldiers soon collected themselves. The battle raged from a little after eight in the morning until three in the afternoon. There were little tactics involved, but each soldier went about his business in an orderly way. When it was seen that there was no more danger, Colonel Forsyth ordered his men to desist, saying, "We did not come here to butcher them." It had been a bloody affair, 146 Indians having to be buried on the field and about half that number of officers and soldiers having been killed or wounded. Colonel Forsyth took the remainder of the redmen back to the reservation. Some troops of the Sixth, Seventh, *Dec. 29 1890* Eighth and Ninth Cavalry and Second and Twenty-first Infantry then surrounded other errant bands. The work was taxing in this very cold winter and it was not what one might call holiday pleasure. While the soldiers on all sides were *Jan. 14 1891* closing in, the Indians saw the hopelessness of further resistance and surrendered. To show the Indian the power of the white man, this large command, which finally included several regiments of infantry, was reviewed by General Miles in the presence of the redmen. The warriors were so highly impressed that no further outbursts of a grave nature have since occurred with these tribes.

Feb. 1891 Right upon the heels of this action came several internal improvements in the service. Congress passed a law which compelled the retirement of officers upon reaching the age of 64. By opening up an unlimited list for those who were over age, men who had outgrown their fitness for activities in the field could be properly cared for. More efficient work could thus be had by younger men at the head of troops.

This year also marks the first issue by the War Department *Oct. 3 1891* of three separate sets of drill regulations for "Infantry, Cavalry and Artillery." They represented the work of the best minds of the service in contradistinction to the output of private publications. The infantry drill included "setting-up exercises" and a "bayonet exercise" by the count. Loading was executed quickly and without motions. The soldier half cocked his piece, opened the chamber at the breech, took out the empty shell, inserted a loaded one, closed the chamber and was ready to fire. For drill, such complicated movements as "fours right, left front into line faced to the rear" still persisted and showed traces of intricacy. But as a whole the marchings were comparatively simple. For the cavalry, the troop in single rank was divided into 2, 3, or 4 platoons, depending upon the number of fours. The squadron consisted of not more than 4 and not less than 2 troops. For the artillery, the battery consisted of 2 or 3 platoons and a platoon of 2 sections. A section was composed of a piece with its caisson. Each carriage was drawn by six horses. The battery officers consisted of 1 captain and 4 lieutenants. The gun detachment for field batteries was composed of 5 privates and 2 corporals; for heavier and seacoast batteries, the service of the piece required more than that number.

It was in the latter part of this year that troubles along *1891* the Rio Grande sprang up, much as they did twenty-five years later. One Garza was a leader of a large band of outlaws who committed depredations, stole property and killed Americans. His retinue was composed of bandits on both sides of the boundary line, who were liable to appear at any point between Brownsville and the source of the river. The troops had to cover tremendous distances and be ready to fight at any moment. The Third Cavalry, under Colonel Anson Mills, was conspicuous later in helping to quell these disturbances, which lasted over two years.

It was at this period that the Ordnance Department made *1892* its great advance in small arms when it adopted a foreign rifle, the Krag-Jorgensen, and started this weapon's manufacture at the Springfield armory. Money for its production was so limited that it was all the department could do to supply the regular army. But the powder was at last smokeless and the weapon had a magazine which held 5 cartridges. Each cartridge was loaded with 40 grains of powder and a bullet .308 of an inch in diameter. The muzzle velocity was about 2,000 feet per second. This was the most marked advance in small arms since the application of the percussion cap, and of much greater value, as shall be seen in a war which is soon to come.

The next year hard times struck the country like an avalanche. 1893 Labor uprisings began to take place. The panic spread through most of the United States. The militia either would or could not quell these gigantic outbreaks. Mobs of the worst classes burned and looted cars. The Governor of Illinois refused to call out the militia of his state for the suppression of lawlessness. President Cleveland acted at once for the protection 1894 of national mails and the restoration of order. The federal troops were ordered to the scene of difficulty, wherever they were available, and in every instance brought quietude with little or no bloodshed. In this connection it should be noted that the soldiers were used between 1886 and 1895 in 328 different civil troubles extending through 49 states and territories.[4]

These hard times, driving men from a livelihood in civil life, caused a tremendous number to apply for enlistment in the service. It was possible to recruit the army up to strength and to select the best men from among the many who applied. The result was the recruitment of an army enlisted personnel of such a quality as has seldom, if ever, been known in our history. Although it is a travesty on any nation to produce an army from the ashes of a labor conflagration rather than by direct inducement, the effect of this slump in business was to give to the regulars for the war that was approaching, an efficiency that served the country well. What Congress failed to create, Providence provided.

While the army was taking on a more efficient complexion, rumors of Indian troubles again put some of its forces on the move. It seems that the Bannocks had been once more aroused. The difficulty arose when certain lawless civilians killed two Indians and one child while the latter were on a hunting expedition. The Governor of Wyoming and the Indian agent at Fort Hall, Idaho, asked for troops on account of the resulting threatening attitude of the Bannocks toward the settlers. A squadron of the Ninth Cavalry and a battalion of the Eighth Infantry under Major Adna Chaffee were sent by rail to Market Lake, Idaho, whence they marched to the scene of possible trouble, in order to prevent collision between the Indians and the settlers. General Coppinger accompanied the expedition. *July 31 1895* When this force arrived at Jackson's Hole, the excitement promptly subsided. The main body was shortly withdrawn, but 2 troops of the Ninth Cavalry remained at Jackson's Hole and Teton Pass in order to keep order until a judicial settlement of the affair could be made.

---

[4] For fuller details see Appendix B.

1896 These were times of improvement not only in schools, but in small arms and in drill regulations, about the only features the army could perfect without money. The Krag was rebuilt so as to make it a steadier and more dependable weapon for expert shots at long ranges. The powder was more carefully manufactured so as to give it greater uniformity. A separate drill regulation for light artillery and a new one for the cavalry, expanded the former regulations to meet the requirements of the batteries and troops at full strength.

The service was affected by the discovery of gold in the Yukon valley of Alaska which caused a tremendous rush to *Fall 1896* that region. To the army fell the lot of policing and exploring this vast unbroken stretch of valuable territory. The Fourteenth Infantry, and parts of the Twenty-fifth, Fourth, Second, Eighteenth Infantry and of the Eighth and Ninth Cavalry, for the next two years, were constantly at work surveying routes and estimating the resources of this new country. Through snow and ice, over glaciers and rivers, by snowshoe and reindeer sledge, they gained minute information as to the mineral resources, topography, vegetation, timber, animals, birds and in fact everything of commercial value. This inestimable knowledge was achieved in addition to the labor of policing the country and making it safe.

1897 In the United States proper the gradual conquering of the Indian and the growth of railroads helped the army to begin to concentrate in regimental units, so that it could train in the art of war. Of such preparation it had been heretofore deprived, because it had had to be scattered about in so many different posts. All through the latter part of the nineties decided effort was made to collect the small isolated units, so that practice marches and small problems could be undertaken. For instance, the Twelfth Infantry had been concentrated at Buffalo (July 26, 1887) for the first time it had been brought together since 1869. Several other regiments later were likewise gathered in from various places. So the Leavenworth and Riley graduates were slowly being accorded opportunity to test the results of their courses in tactical, strategic, and logistical studies, as well as in technical knowledge. The regular army, although still well spread out, was more highly developed and efficient than at any time in our previous history.

Beginning of 1898

However, there were less than 25,000 effective regulars[5] against a population of 73,000,000 people, the smallest proportional regular force existing at the beginning of any of our wars, except the Revolution. Congress for nearly thirty years had almost totally confined itself to ignoring or paring and cutting its land forces, while the territory of the country was expanding. Out of the 2,362 guns for seacoast defense recommended by the Endicott Board, whose plans had been adopted, barely 6 per cent were in position. There were no adequate staff departments and no general staff. Though the War with Spain had been foreseen for some time, nothing had been done toward changing our ludicrous, defensive weakness, let alone our offensive incapacity. Even the militia law was more than one hundred years old. The Spanish army on a peace footing numbered 128,183, and for all we knew was well trained. The

---

[5] AUTHORIZED STRENGTH OF THE ARMY

Departments	Officers	Men
Infantry, 25 regiments	877	13,125
Cavalry, 10 regiments	432	6,170
Artillery, 5 regiments	280	4,025
General and staff officers	362	
Ordnance department	56	605
Engineer department	109	500
Hospital corps	......	706
Miscellaneous	......	575
Total	2,116	25,706

militias of the various states as a whole had little understanding and less practical knowledge of conduct in war, mainly because of their negative treatment by legislators. The situation of the United States would have been comic had it not turned out to be tragic.

Feb. 15 1898

Even after the battleship *Maine* had been blown up in Havana Harbor and war was inevitable, Congress, instead of building an army on broad and efficient lines, rejected the excellent Hull Bill and contented itself with simply adding to the regular forces 2 regiments of artillery.[6] This move brought the regulars up to a paper strength of 28,747, almost 100,000 less than the Spanish forces.

March 8 1898

April 25 1898

When war was finally declared, the War Department machinery found itself clogged with thirty years' mold. The management of small detachments, which already knew pretty well how to take care of themselves, was as much as had been necessary. The shrinkage and setbacks of the army during the previous three decades were most apparent in the offices in Washington. There the reflection of an overconfident and militarily careless people was clearly mirrored. Humdrum methods and a tiny personnel brought little of value to an active, fighting force. What would happen were the Farmer's Bank of Smithville suddenly compelled to take over the business of the Bank of Commerce in New York City? Just what happened in our war offices at the outbreak of the war—an attempt to transform provincial methods into international facilities. And Congress had just crushed a bill which offered to remedy these defects. As a consequence, there were no accurate maps of the scene of activities and no secret information of the new enemy's resources. The commissary, quartermaster and medical departments had, all told, only 258 officers fit to carry on luties in the field. In addition, the ordnance department had no modern guns and ammunition available, except for the little regular army.

The regulars were still scattered over our wide country. One regiment, the Fourteenth, had to be brought later clear from Alaska to the front. Notwithstanding the news-stand size

---

[6] The Sixth and Seventh.

April 15 1898

of the War Department, it was not inert. Even before the declaration of war, being exasperated by the "masterful inactivity" of Congress, it had issued orders for the concentration of the infantry of the regular army at Tampa, Mobile and New Orleans.[7]

April 22 1898

April 23 1898

April 24 1898

While the regular soldiers were thus on the move, Congress decided as usual after we were committed to the conflict to make its own reorganization of the forces. All able-bodied male citizens between 18 and 45 were to be liable to military duty. The volunteer system of 1861 repeated itself with most of its mistakes. The enlistment was to be for two years or for the war, a term over which the recruit might gamble. For these temporary troops, the governors were to appoint officers in such a way that for any state or territory they would be in proportion to its population. Generals and higher staff officers were to be selected in Washington. Following this enactment the President issued a call for 125,000 volunteers. The next day legislation more than doubled the size of the regular army

---

[7] The general officers of the regular army, just before the war, were Major Generals Miles (commanding the army), Merritt, and Brooke; Brigadier Generals Otis, Coppinger, Shafter, Graham, Wade and Merriam; and the heads of the staff bureaus: Brigadier Generals Greely (chief signal officer), Breckinridge (inspector general), Flagler (chief of ordnance), Sternberg (surgeon-general), Lieber (Judge-Advocate-General), Stanton (paymaster general), Wilson (chief of engineers), Ludington (quartermaster-general), Corbin (adjutant general), and Eagan (commissary general).

The following army corps were organized during the war:

CORPS ORGANIZED DURING WAR

Corps	Commander	Where organized	Strength, June 30
First	Major General Brooke	Camp Thomas	58,548
Third	Major General Wade		
Second	Major General Graham	Camp Alger	23,511
Fourth	Major General Coppinger	Mobile	20,816
Fifth	Major General Shafter	Tampa	15,736
Sixth	Major General Wilson		
Seventh	Major General Lee	Tampa (moved to Jacksonville)	19,156
Eighth	Major General Merritt	San Francisco and Manila	22,989

The Sixth Corps was never organized; General Wilson was assigned to command a division of the First Corps.

(62,597 men) by allowing the smaller units to recruit to larger strength and by adding a third battalion to a regiment in time of war. Another second lieutenant was given to each artillery battery. The war pay of the soldier, now that the volunteer appeared, was increased 20 per cent. But Congress was wary. It was careful to provide that as soon as hostilities were over the army should return to its former impotent size.

Such disjointed and impractical legislation could hardly give birth to anything other than hectic results. It was the same old story over again with the recruit, who preferred to go into the volunteers where he found comrades and an easier life. Neither could the regular army gain the numbers authorized by Congress before being launched into the scene of activities. Provision for adequate staff departments was still wanting, and volunteer office seekers overran Washington.

The plan for concentration camps at the southern ports had to be abandoned before being carried out, because these places were unsuitable for troops. Two other concentration points were designated—Camp Alger at Falls Church, Virginia; and Camp Thomas at Chickamauga, Tennessee. From these places troops could then be sent to Tampa, Jacksonville and Fernandina, Florida. The Seventeenth (regular) Infantry was the first to move from Columbus Barracks, Ohio, toward Chickamauga. *April 18 1898* Indeed, the trained forces were naturally the only ones for some time to show signs of mobility, because they were the most ready.

The volunteers who flocked to respond to the first call of the President were generally in a sad state of uselessness. Although a few were well equipped with uniforms and equipment and under excellent control by their officers, the greater part lacked so much discipline, equipment and organization that they proved to be as much of a menace to friend as foe. On the other hand, the comparatively good volunteer regiments were so in spite of the neglect they had suffered.

May 11 1898 Congress now began to reek with measures for a more adequate force. Our highest legislative body at this juncture in war reminds one of the calf that had to have its ears pulled off to get it to the cow and its tail pulled off to get it away. A volunteer brigade of engineers was allowed, as was also an

May 12 1898 additional force of 10,000 enlisted men who should be immune
to tropical diseases. The Medical Corps was increased by 15
assistant surgeons and as many contract surgeons as might be
May 18 1898 required. A volunteer signal corps for service during the war
and 2 additional assistant adjutant generals were also provided.
This medley of acts was largely useless as later events proved.
The country was again to learn that it is difficult to make up
for lack of intelligent forehandedness.

May 25 1898 Against General Miles' advice the President issued a second
call for 75,000 men. The General thought that 50,000 highly
trained soldiers would be better than a mass who could not be
so easily disciplined and handled, and might simply be a burden
to the country. We shall see the dire effects of ignoring General
Miles' suggestion.

Then, Congress made provision for allowing regular officers
May 28 1898 to hold staff appointments in the volunteers without losing rank
and grade in the army. This measure was good, as it had shown
itself to be in the Civil War.

While all this legislation was taking place our potentiality
was in chaos. Volunteers of every variety were rushing to
May 1 1898 enlist, and then trying to struggle to the front. Dewey had
won his battle of Manila and was waiting at Cavite for troops
in order to take and occupy that city. Little expeditions with
arms, ammunition and supplies had tried with more or less
success to land at Cuban ports so as to give their cargoes to our
allies in that country. Lieutenant Rowan had delivered his
message to Garcia after a most racking and winding journey
through tropical forests and over tortuous mountains. In a
small fishing smack he had safely returned. But the army was
not on the move. Supplies of all sorts were lacking, and Tampa
had but a single-track railroad. For the troops that had assembled
there, this was an irritating and protracted delay. One
correspondent termed it the "rocking chair period." But the
trained regulars were not idle. Drills and practice in making
hasty intrenchments were the incessant work of troops under
General Shafter. The movements and character of our soldiers,
as they charged through the palmetto groves, rode their horses
through the streams and worked with the precision of a fine
machine, brought forth the highest comments from the foreign

attachés. One war correspondent when admiring the physiques of these rugged, cheerful and canny men, remarked that it was only a pity there were not more of them.

But the supervision of the corps with its small and improvised staff could not overcome the difficulties that foresight alone should have prevented. The populace as usual was crying "On to Havana" as it had previously done with Boston, Canada, Mexico and Richmond. There was the customary shortage of rifles, ammunition, supplies, clothing and even food. Beside the regulars, there was a great lot of excellent youth—untrained. There were box cars on the sidings with provisions and clothing of many varieties, but the outside was unlabeled. An officer looking for beans would open a car to find patent-leather shoes. The volunteer soldiers were sometimes seen begging for food in the streets, while supplies in the cars lay rotting. There were no storage facilities. The docking space at Port Tampa was so limited that there was room for only eight vessels out of the thirty troop ships collected. Once, in docking, two vessels collided with serious injury to one boat.

But the administration in Washington grew so impatient to have the troops be off that urgent messages were sent to embark. General Miles was instructed to send 70,000 troops to Havana. *May 8 1898* When it was shown that there was not enough ammunition for such a command to fight one battle against 125,000 Spanish troops well armed with Mausers and protected by the strongest kind of fortifications, there was pause. General Shafter was then ordered to proceed to Mariel on the north coast of Cuba and establish himself there, but the navy could not furnish the requisite number of convoys. Orders were then issued to take *May 10 1898* 12,000 troops to Key West, but this plan had to be abandoned, because of the unsuitability of that place for soldiers, especially on account of the dearth of water. In the meantime the War Department was taxed to its utmost capacity, because the military forces were now bloated abnormally by the influx of thousands of volunteers.[8]

---

[8] During the war, camps were established for military purposes at Tampa, Fla.; Mobile, Ala.; Camp George H. Thomas, Ga.; Camp Alger, Va.; Camp Poland, Knoxville, Tenn.; Jacksonville, Fla.; Miami, Fla.; Fernandina, Fla.; Camp Wikoff, N. Y.; Camp Hamilton, near Lexington,

Finally General Miles left Washington for Tampa. There he found the disorder that always follows national apathy. Troops had to be camped so far from each other on account of sanitary and water facilities that there could be little cöoperation. It was impossible for receiving officers to supply the organizations quickly. The loading of transports was chaos. A battery would be placed on one vessel and its ammunition on another. Regiments were broken up and scattered among the troop ships. Medical stores were placed in the hold under all sorts of other freight. Lieutenant Colonel Roosevelt, in trying to get aboard the transport assigned to his Rough Riders, found it already occupied by 2 other regiments. General Miles wired Washington:

June 5 1898

> "This expedition has been delayed through no fault of any one connected with it. It contains the principal part of the army which for intelligence and efficiency is not exceeded by any body of troops on earth. It contains fourteen of the best-conditioned regiments of volunteers, the last of which arrived this morning. Yet these have never been under fire. Between thirty and forty per cent are undrilled, and in one regiment over three hundred men had never fired a gun."

Then the President directed that the Fifth Corps sail at once with whatever force was ready. Nearly 16,000 men were crammed into the troop ships. The decks were so full that there was scarcely room to stir. Men who had brought blankets and overcoats lay down beside men in white and khaki trousers. There was every kind of hat from plain straw to sombrero. The

---

Ky.; Camp George G. Meade, Pa.; Camp Wheeler, Huntsville, Ala.; and Camp Shipp, Anniston, Ala.

Volunteer Army, May 30 to August 31, 1898

	Officers	Men	Total
Volunteer Army on May 30, 1898	6,224	118,580	124,804
Volunteer Army on June 30	7,169	153,355	160,524
Volunteer Army on July 31	8,633	203,461	212,094
Volunteer Army on August 31	8,785	207,244	216,029

heat and odors made men temporarily ill. But after their torment they were off at last, and every one breathed satisfaction and hope. But joy was short-lived. Some of the navy convoy had sighted what were supposed to be Spanish war vessels, all of which were then thought to be bottled up in Santiago Harbor. The Fifth Corps at sea was turned back to Key West. There it waited in anxiety, disappointment and discomfort. Finally, came the verification that Cervera's fleet was just where it was supposed to be—in Santiago Harbor. And the transports[9] again set sail for the southeastern end of Cuba. *June 13, 14 1898*

The voyage was not one of unadulterated pleasure. Those who were putting to sea for the first time, never wanted to go again. When the roughness of an inter-island passage is combined with crowding, poor food, little water, pine cots, the neighing of horses and the noxious odors of congestion, the traveler desires land and land only. The boats moved at the rate of seven miles an hour, four miles an hour and often not at all. Though disheartened, this body of men, most of whom were fine specimens of manhood and well trained, were only waiting to get a foothold on land so as to have this whacking business over with in able style.

While they were still on their voyage, Congress was in process of passing another military law. Though the act seems out of harmony with the happenings of the day, it was nevertheless a good one. It authorized the summary court or trial of enlisted men by a single officer. More speedy and simple justice could thus be rendered and much red tape and overhead saved. There was not much that Congress could now do, but it was trying hard to show interest after the country had let military training fall into dry rot. *June 18 1898*

By the time the troops reached Daiquiri, they were very ready to go ashore. But the civilian captains of the transports, who apparently were not amenable to orders, thought otherwise. They actually feared so much for the safety of their ships and themselves, that they refused even in this critical moment to go near the land. They stubbornly remained from two to twenty miles from shore. And they were thus immovable in the face of *June 20 1898* the fact that the Navy had so pounded the Cuban coast that what Spanish troops were there had fled inland. It took a great part of a day to locate one of the troop ships. In this state of affairs every boat and launch of the navy had to be utilized in the transfer. Since there were no lighters and flats, the animals had to be dropped into the water and made to swim ashore. Some fifty of them became confused, swam out to sea and were drowned. The movement of officers and men from vessel to vessel was so dangerous in the rough sea, that Colonel Van Horn received a mortal injury. Two men drowned in getting to shore because of the absence of landing facilities. Five days were thus occupied in getting the Fifth Corps from the water to the sands. Finally some 6,000 under Lawton found themselves at Daiquiri and the remainder at Siboney under Wheeler. *June 25 1898* No more than the supplies for daily consumption could be placed on shore until two weeks later.

---

[9] For exact organizations and commanders, see Appendix N.

Shafter's plan was to have Lawton occupy a strong defensive position between Santiago and Siboney, and Bates secure some point between Siboney and Daiquiri. But General Wheeler, eager for the fray, sent General Young to attack the enemy in the vicinity of Las Guasimas, which lay in the direction of San Juan.

June 24 1898 Young advanced in 2 columns with the First and Tenth Cavalry on the left and the Rough Riders on the right.[10] He had only 2 guns and they were limited to 50 rounds of ammunition all told, although the Tenth had a Hotchkiss battery. The columns deployed in the thick jungle. To any one who has never seen a tropical forest, it is impossible to picture the density of these Cuban copses. Spanish bayonets that jag and arrest, matted vines that form layers of strong walls and undergrowth that ties the feet to the ground, make progress nigh impossible without a machete or large knife. Hampering the progress still more, the Spaniards poured in a hot fire. The troopers, advancing cautiously through these indescribable thickets and wire fences, could not see their targets and therefore could not reply to the fusillade. Colonel Wood's command

---

[10] All the cavalry acted as foot soldiers. There were few horses and it is doubtful if they could have been used in this campaign. The Rough Riders really became dogged walkers.

(then immediately led by Lieutenant Colonel Roosevelt) while deploying late, was caught in column. Several of its members fell, and Sergeant Hamilton Fish was killed. But the whole line broke its way onward until the men could see the enemy, when they opened fire. The regulars pressing in front and the Rough Riders on the flank, caused the Spaniards behind their strong intrenchments to leave in haste. The whole engagement had occupied but an hour and a half. Considering the fact that the Rough Riders had received their Krags only the day before and were not familiar with them, great credit is due them in this action. And of course, the regulars acted as troops of long training should. The men were all so exhausted by the intense heat and fatigue that they could not pursue.

During the delay of six days, while General Shafter, suffering with gout, remained on the transports, and General Wheeler, the senior on shore, was straightening out his lines a little beyond Las Guasimas, from where El Caney lay to his right front and San Juan before him, another expedition was in progress on the Pacific. After having captured Guam where there was no resistance offered, General Anderson pushed on *June 20 1898* toward Manila. He had 2,491 men: the First California, the Second Oregon and 6 companies of the Fourteenth Infantry. Two months after Dewey had won his fight against the Spanish *June 30 1898* squadron at Manila, the first troops of the United States reached him. In the meantime, he had had to sit passively at Cavite, because he had no landing forces. Once he felt he would have to quit the island when he received rumors that a Spanish fleet was leaving Spain.

On the very day that Anderson arrived at Manila, General Shafter, who by now had alighted upon the Cuban shores, decided to strike at once. In the meantime, General Duffield with the Thirty-third and part of the Thirty-fourth Michigan *June 27 1898* volunteers had landed from Camp Alger. But this reënforcement was more of an embarrassment than a help, principally because of the lack of supplies. Shafter had not been able to land his heavy guns and the diseases of the rainy season were imminent. He himself said:

"These preparations were far from what I desired them to be, but we were in a sickly climate; our supplies had to be brought forward by a narrow wagon road which the rains might at any time render impassable; fear was entertained that a storm might drive the vessels containing our stores to sea, thus separating us from our base of supplies; and, lastly, it was reported that General Pando, with 8,000 reënforcements for the enemy, was en route from Manzanillo, and might be expected in a few days."

Lawton's division, supported by Bates' brigade and Capron's battery, were to assault El Caney at daybreak the next day. The other 2 divisions were to march directly toward Santiago by the road through San Juan, with Kent on the left and Wheeler on the right. The Thirty-fourth Michigan back at Siboney was to be the reserve. General Duffield from that point was to threaten the Spanish detachment on the left at Fort Aguadores.

General Lawton marched all night, and, due to General Chaffee's fine personal reconnaissance, was in position by daybreak. The attack upon El Caney was to be a slow affair. It does not portray the conditions to say that the country was thick, the enemy's blockhouses scattered and the Spaniard's resistance more fierce and heroic than at any other time during the war. Little by little in the maze, dimness and heat, the regiments closed in semicircular order upon the enemy. Since it was difficult to keep in touch, and the fire of the enemy was destructive, it took many hours to work slowly through the obstacles of man and nature. The Massachusetts regiment, the only volunteers with Lawton, had to be withdrawn because their old black-powder rifles were ineffective and simply threw up clouds of smoke which drew effective fire from the fortified enemy. It was three o'clock before the lines were in a position which averaged a distance of about a thousand yards from the enemy. Lawton's one little obsolete battery of artillery was ineffective. And so it turned out to be an infantry, bushwhacking fight.

July 1 1898

In the meantime, Sumner and Kent had formed their divisions so as to pass through the dense country to one of the streams in their front, and thence through cultivated fields and over high ridges to their goal of San Juan. It took the 2 divisions more than six hours to advance through the woods to the first stream. The fighting thereafter reminds one of the individual methods of Resaca de la Palma. These troops suffered most of their losses while they were advancing through narrow and crowded trails and thick country and before they could reply to the fire of the Mauser bullets coming from an unknown direction. The soldiers generally displayed heroism, fortitude and dogged determination while all this was happening. The great exception was that of a well-known volunteer regiment whose officers skulked in large measure and whose men, therefore, except small detachments who joined the regulars, did likewise. While regular officers and soldiers were being killed and wounded, these untrained men hid along the trail. The regular cavalry and Colonel Leonard Wood's regiment could not keep such an orderly advance as Kent's infantry, principally because of the thicker country over which they had to operate. But they all plodded along heroically except the one volunteer regiment. The following is an extract from the report of the inspector general who was on the scene during this defection.[11]

> "As stated, the Sixth and Sixteenth United States Infantry took the right-hand fork. General Kent indicated the left-hand route to Col. W. A. Downe's regiment, the Seventy-first New York Volunteers, an organization then having present for duty 44 officers and 855 men, 3 battalions, commanded as follows: First, Major W——; Second, Major W——; Third, Major K——. The First Battalion headed into the left-hand trail, but retreated or hunted cover in a panic occasioned by the explosion near by of a shrapnel and the loss of some of the Seventy-first's men.
>
> "General Kent and every officer of his staff ineffectively tried by mandate, persuasion, and action to force the battalion into and along the pathway, but the men were thoroughly and,

---

[11] This inspector, afterwards a brigadier general in the regular army, before his death gave to the author the only copy of this report known to be in existence. The Secretary of War had ordered all the copies burned immediately after their printing, but the inspector saved one for himself.

all things considered, naturally demoralized. Confusion ensued, and the left-hand route to San Juan was congested by the First Battalion of the Seventy-first, some of the men of which prostrated themselves in the path. The majority of them crept into the bushes lining the route. The Third Battalion, Seventy-first New York Volunteers, Major K—— commanding Companies B, L, K, and E, was headed in by officers of General Kent's staff, encouraged by the division commander himself.

"This battalion passed somewhat farther into and along the left trail than the preceding one of the same regiment had done, but the tendency of the regiment was so obvious that it was apparent the Seventy-first as an organization, could not be gotten into its proper position, viz., on the left of the Sixth and Sixteenth United States regiments of infantry. The indecision of the occasion caused confusion, and the action of the Seventy-first New York Volunteers blocked the advance of the Third Brigade.

"Major Sharpe ran to order the Third Brigade to pass the position of the Seventy-first, panic stricken, as stated. He was aided in this duty by every officer of the division staff, including General Kent; and, without hesitation, the Ninth United States (Lieutenant Colonel Ewers), the Thirteenth (Lieutenant Colonel Liscum), 73 officers and 1,345 men, swung into the left path over and past the Seventy-first New York, and kept steadily on, exposed to a vicious fire from an, as yet to them, unseen foe."

Although this is a plain statement of facts, the Seventy-first New York should not be made to bear censure or ignominy. Suppose some of their officers did funk the fight. Suppose, too, that some of the men skulked in the bushes. What was the cause? A man ignorant of the habits of bugs and bees finds himself in an apiary. He is asked suddenly to open a hive and take out some honey. He hesitates, balks and finally refuses. He is keenly alive to the thousand darting stings that lurk within and swarm without. On the other hand, the keeper of the place walks boldly up to the hive and with a few deft movements takes out a toothsome comb. Could it be said that either of these men was more cowardly by nature than the other?

Their only difference in this instance lies in knowledge and training. Transform the stings of the bees into deadly bullets and the hives into blockhouses full of hostile, thinking, human beings, and we have the situation of the Seventy-first New York, as opposed to the troops of long training and discipline. It is the old story of the use and abuse of amateurs in war. These New York men had patriotically volunteered, had left their homes, business and pleasure, and had undergone great hardship. They were the victims of those superficial politicians who loudly contend that you can develop a clerk into a soldier overnight without murdering him or holding him up to shame in battle.

To go on with the story, the rest of the fight was mainly carried on by regular troops. Little clusters here and there climbed slowly the heights of San Juan. The men fired in groups, standing up in the long grass to take aim. Right along with the regulars went the Rough Riders. If they can be criticized at all, it is that their eagerness sometimes exceeded their technic, so that a colored regular regiment had to extricate them at one point. But they were picked men of no little experience in war or actions kindred to war. There was some artillery firing, when most of the troops were near the summit, and finally the garrison of the main blockhouse went flying, pursued by a murderous fire from the Tenth and Colonel Wood's cavalry. The cavalry that had taken Kettle Hill was also closing in, and before dark San Juan was in possession of the United States forces. Lawton over at El Caney had had a severe task in taking that position. In spite of orders to withdraw, he pressed on and reached his goal. At the end of the day San Juan and El Caney were both held by the American soldiers. Trained regular troops had again demonstrated their ability to go forward in spite of superhuman difficulties and sometimes superannuated leadership. The casualties for the day amounted to 593 of whom 94 had been killed.

For the next few days the time was spent in straightening out the lines before Santiago proper and in trying to adjust the difficulty of taking care of the sick and wounded.

Though every possible precaution had been taken to guard against the fevers of the rainy season, in this time when the men were abnormally fatigued, unacclimated and ignorant of the danger from mosquitoes, officers and soldiers in large percentage were prostrate with dengue, malarial and yellow fever and with dysentery. Due to the nation's previous lassitude during peace, there were no replacements at hand. Those who might come would be unready. Shafter was fearful that he would lose his only efficient troops right here when he was so close to his final objective. Surgeons, ambulances and medical supplies of all sorts were wanting, and the casualties from disease were beyond reason. This frightful condition calls to mind the splendid reduction of the Medical Department by the bright men of a previous Congress in the seventies. It is a fortunate thing that the Santiago forces were poorer in quality than our troops. For later, great boatloads of our stricken soldiers had to be transported to Montauk Point, Long Island. So just as the army was about to obtain its objective it dwindled to a fraction of its former self with no reënforcements in sight.

While the lines were being intrenched for investment of
July 3 1898 Santiago, Sampson destroyed the Spanish fleet which had tried
to make its escape. This victory saved the troops from a
perilous position and put the Spaniard on the defensive. Although
July 3 1898 some 5,000 Spanish reënforcements had been allowed to
slip through into Santiago by the Cubans, the enemy's added strength was not vital now. Our troops occupied their time in lengthening the entrenchments about the city. Although 4 field batteries and some field mortars were our only artillery, the lines were extended for the effective troops until they practically encircled Santiago.

During this time negotiations for a surrender were opened
July 8 1898 by Shafter. Toral, the Spanish commander, made an offer of
capitulation of the city with the reservation that his troops be allowed unmolested and without arms to go to Holguin. Although this audacious overture was acceptable to Shafter, it was not tolerated at Washington. Shafter then felt himself forced to try to take the city. Accordingly he warned the Spanish
July 10 1898 authorities that he would open fire the next day. The bombardment
was begun according to his threat, and lasted two days while being supported by our fleet. The loss of life was naturally small, but the destruction to buildings large.

During the latter part of this fire display, General Miles arrived from Washington. He brought with him the Sixth Massachusetts and part of the Sixth Illinois under command of Brigadier General Henry. During the preceding two days the First Illinois, the First District of Columbia and the Eighth Ohio Infantry, with 6 batteries of artillery under command of Brigadier General Randolph, had been landed. *July 11 1898*

Negotiations now took a more definite turn. Several conferences between the commanders ensued, but the Spaniards were sparring for time in order to get as good terms as possible. Finally it was settled that the surrender was to be unconditional and that the Spanish troops were to be conveyed at the expense of the United States back to Spain. The capitulation was then signed by all parties. *July 15 1898*

Thus ended the main action in the war with Spain. It was well it turned out so, for doubtless we should have lost 5,000 troops in taking the barricaded and barbed-wired city.

The formal surrender, when the United States troops marched in and hoisted the American flag, took place two days later. *July 17 1898*

The Santiago campaign was the most primitive in character. The science the army had taken so much pains to learn might, under such condition, be thought to be wasted. But since teamwork, discipline, decision and control are stressed particularly in theoretical tactics, maybe the work had not been in vain.

It remains now to follow two campaigns occurring simultaneously in a large island in the Pacific and a small one in the Atlantic.

While the battles of San Juan and El Caney were in progress in the Western Hemisphere, Anderson, it will be remembered, had landed at Cavite in the Eastern. The troops under him could do little more than to reconnoiter and prepare a new camp—Camp Dewey—for Greene's brigade which was expected to arrive. When Brigadier General Greene made his appearance, he had with him a battalion each of the Eighteenth and Twenty-third Infantry, the First Colorado, the First Nebraska and the Tenth Pennsylvania Infantry, and 2 batteries of Utah Volunteer Artillery—about 3,586 men all *July 1 1898* *July 17 1898* told. General Greene then placed his troops in Camp Dewey *July 25 1898* and General Anderson remained at Cavite. Major General Merritt, the commander, next arrived with his staff. Later *July 30 1898* Brigadier General MacArthur brought his brigade, consisting of the Thirteenth Minnesota, the First North Dakota, the First Idaho, the First Wyoming and 1 battalion each of the Eighteenth and Twenty-third Infantry. The Astor Battery, a gift of John Jacob Astor, completed MacArthur's force, making a total for his brigade of 4,847. General Merritt now had nearly 11,000 men, with the prospect of nearly 5,000 more, who were on their way.

July 25 1898 The very day General Merritt arrived in Manila Bay, General Miles with the Sixth Massachusetts, the Sixth Illinois Infantry, 275 recruits and 2 batteries each of the Third, Fourth and Fifth Artillery, arrived at Guanica on the southern coast of Porto Rico. He had left Cuba as promptly as he could. One by one the little towns and garrisons of the province of Santiago had surrendered when approached by army officers bearing the news of the fall of the city. General Miles then saw that there was nothing to interfere with his expedition to Porto Rico. Taking with him only this small force that had not been touched by disease, he sailed away, leaving eastern Cuba in possession of the ailing Shafter and his stricken troops. Arriving at Guanica, Miles took the town with no resistance. *July 26 1898* Next day General Garretson moved on Yauco four miles toward San Juan (de Porto Rico) with 6 companies of the Sixth Massachusetts and 1 of the Sixth Illinois. When near the hacienda, Santa Desidera, the fire of a small Spanish force spread confusion to 3 of the Massachusetts companies, who, however, were soon rallied, and pressed forward, causing the *July 27 1898* Spaniards to retreat and leave the road open to Ponce. At that seacoast town the next day Major General Ernst arrived with the Second and Third Wisconsin and Sixteenth Pennsylvania Infantry. The garrison at Ponce at once fled, leaving these *July 28 1898* troops a free landing, which they made the next day. Miles now knowing that he had a firm foothold on the south of the island, waited for the troops which he knew to be on the way. *July 31 1898* In three days, Brigadier General Schwan arrived from Tampa with the Eleventh and Nineteenth Infantry, 1 troop of the Second Cavalry and 2 batteries of the Seventh Artillery. Major General Brooke and Brigadier General Hains brought from Newport News the Third Illinois, the Fourth Ohio, the Fourth Pennsylvania, 1 company of the Eighth Infantry, 1 troop of the Sixth Cavalry, the Philadelphia City Troop, 2 troops of New York cavalry and Rodney's battalion of artillery. General Miles' plan was simple and well executed. Four columns were to march by different routes covering the entire island and to converge on San Juan, where the fleet was. When that stronghold would be taken the whole country would be in the hands of the United States. As he had saved the army from annihilation by frustrating the politicians' proposed attack on Havana instead of Santiago, so now he went into the back door of Porto Rico, while the front door was heavily guarded.

The columns must be taken up separately in order to understand what happened. General Schwan had the extreme western end of the island to cover with a small force of regulars (1,447 men), of the Eleventh Infantry, 1 troop of the Fifth Cavalry, 1 battery of Gatling guns, and 2 batteries of the Seventh Artillery. At Hormigueros he came upon over a thousand of the enemy posted on strong heights. *Aug. 10 1898* Schwan's troops had to deploy in the fields, break through sugar cane and wire fences and pass over creeks under fire. As they came steadily on and approached the hills, the garrison fled. Next day he entered *Aug. 11 1898* Mayaguez, a city of 22,000, with loss of 1 man killed and 6 wounded. Drenching rain and the fatigue of his men prevented pursuit of the enemy. The next day 6 companies of *Aug. 12 1898* infantry, a platoon of cavalry and 2 guns pushed along with great difficulty into the mountains. Schwan followed with the remainder of his cavalry and directed his other forces to come after him as soon as possible. Toward Las Marias some 2,000 Spaniards had collected. The American regulars, though outnumbered, went forward as fast as they could to attack the Spaniards on the crest of a high ridge. After Schwan's men had poured in a heavy fire the Spaniards retreated, leaving a highly disorganized rear guard in their wake. Most of this latter force was captured, as was the Spaniard's commander, Colonel Soto. Schwan was about to complete his victory and attack Lares, when word reached him that the peace protocol between Spain and the United States had been signed. This news ended the fighting for him.

Aug. 8 1898 The next column toward the east was Henry's. After he left Ponce, the going in the rough, hilly country was slow. He had only oxcarts to haul his supplies. Aside from a battalion of the Nineteenth Infantry and a troop of the Second Cavalry, his command consisted of raw, unseasoned regiments of volunteers. The discipline of the Massachusetts regiment on the march and in camp had been bad in the vicinity of Ponce, and in the subsequent advance. Their actions before Yauco had been what you would expect of raw troops under political guidance. After several of the officers resigned on the threat of being placed before a board of inquiry, things in the regiment went better. But there was a great deal of straggling on the *Aug. 8 1898* march. Only nine miles were covered the first day, and the troops did not all reach Adjuntas (12 miles north of Ponce) *Aug. 10 1898* until two days later. When the news of the protocol came, Henry was at Utuado with his regulars and 2 battalions of his Massachusetts regiment, preparing to advance upon Arecibo.

General Wilson's third column, farther to the east, consisted of Ernst's brigade of the Sixteenth Pennsylvania, the Second and Third Wisconsin and 2 regular batteries of artillery. They had just exchanged at Ponce their black-powder rifles for new Krags with which they were unfamiliar. They first marched east in order to take the central road direct to San Juan. General Wilson's service of information was so good that he knew that a strong force of Spaniards were preparing to meet him at Aibonita. On the way to that town a strong outpost of Spaniards was discovered at Coamo. The Pennsylvania regi- *Aug. 9 1898* ment after bivouacking in the hills all night, marched twelve miles over a difficult passage through the mountains and outflanked the Spaniards, who fled to Aibonita, leaving their dead commander. The Pennsylvanians marched into Coamo with 201 prisoners. Pushing on, General Wilson sent his troop of New York Cavalry ahead, which established an outpost five miles in advance, where they came under the fire of the Spanish *Aug. 10, 11 1898* batteries. For two days General Wilson reconnoitered the strong Aibonita position and brought up the remainder of his forces. He decided on another flanking movement. Sending

General Ernst over a mountain trail to the left, he hoped to *Aug. 13 1898* take the place from the rear. In the meantime he had engaged the Spaniard's attention by the use of his battery. The black powder of the artillery brought only a hot fire from the Spaniards, so that the battery had to be withdrawn. It lost in killed 1 officer, 1 man, and in wounded 6 men. General Wilson then, understanding that at any minute he might be ordered to suspend hostilities, delayed Ernst's flanking movement and called upon the Spaniards to surrender. It was not long after *Aug. 13 1898* he received the refusal of the Spaniards that orders came from General Miles to suspend hostilities.

General Brooke's column on the extreme east had been delayed by the poor facilities for debarking his supplies at Arroyo. Two of his transports had run aground. Finally the *Aug. 5 1898* infantry was ready to move. General Hains, with the Fourth Ohio and Third Illinois, brushed aside small detachments and took possession of Guayama. There was some minor fighting by reconnoitering parties beyond that town, but Brooke had now to wait until his cavalry and artillery could come ashore. After several days, he issued orders for an attack in front and *Aug. 12 1898* flank by his entire force. He was about to take the enemy by surprise when the news of the protocol reached him. *Aug. 13 1898*

Thus the island of Porto Rico was in the clutch of the four fingers of General Miles' expedition when the cessation of hostilities came.

It is necessary to look into another hemisphere to see what the United States troops are doing there. Merritt was anxious to end the struggle at Manila by an immediate attack on that city. General Greene very tactfully arranged with Aguinaldo, leader of the insurgent forces, who was our virtual ally but seemed to be inimical to the United States, to clear the Calle Real, so that the American troops would have an open way for the *July 29 1898* attack on the Spanish trenches. The American lines were then stretched out and intrenched within striking distance of Malate. *July 31 1898* Just before midnight the Spaniards, attracted by the extensive dispositions, opened a very hot fire upon the Tenth Pennsylvania and the 4 guns of the Utah Artillery. A company of the Third Artillery and the California Infantry were hurried through a terrific tropical storm to reënforce the line. Although 10 men were killed and 43 wounded, the action was indecisive. Then Greene for many days extended his entrenchments to secure his right flank. The line was constructed with great hardship, because the men could not expose themselves without drawing the fire of the enemy. They had to lie down during incessant rains, shelter being impossible. Constant effort had to be spent in keeping the loose soil from slipping. Shoes were so uncomfortable that many men went barefoot, especially when the trenches were filled by as much as two feet of water. Few men could receive khaki before they left the United States, so that they sweltered in old blue woolen shirts and trousers. Nightly firing by the enemy with both small arms and artillery did not add to the rest of the men. As most of the rank and file were under fire for the first time, it was almost impossible, in the darkness and wet, to enforce fire discipline and control with so many green troops. In four nights 150,000 rounds of ammunition were uselessly expended.

Although General Merritt was anxious to bring this waiting period to a conclusion, the navy felt it was not prepared to deliver a heavy supporting fire. Meanwhile, negotiations were in progress between General Merritt and the Spanish officials. When surrender was demanded, the latter declined, but there was a tacit understanding that when the attack did occur, the Spaniards would make only a show of force, in order to save their honor.

Aug. 13 1898

The bombardment, begun by the navy, was followed by the army's artillery. For three quarters of an hour the shells flew while the Spaniards remained silent. When the magazine in the San Antonio fort exploded, General Greene sent the Colorado regiment forward. Then a few shots came from the enemy's lines. But our troops crossed the stream and entered the battered fortress unimpeded. After General MacArthur had fired his artillery at Blockhouse Fourteen, a squad of the Twenty-third Infantry scouted forward only to find the enemy's trenches empty. The forts, lines and blockhouses were then occupied by the entire force. Pushing forward into the streets of the suburbs, soldiers of the Minnesota regiment encountered unexpected resistance from a blockhouse there, where they were driven back in some disorder. MacArthur then brought up reënforcements, who had to march over a single road and through rice paddies and thick timber. Only a small proportion of his men could be put on the firing line. After a time the fire from the blockhouse diminished and the place was abandoned. The way to Paco and Manila was now open to MacArthur's men. Greene's brigade, less impeded than MacArthur's, made its way through Malate and Ermita with a few exchanges of shots. The whole force now moved on, and in the early afternoon found itself before the inner walled city where a white flag was flying. Generous terms were given the Spaniards, who were allowed to go home with all the honors of war; and Manila flew the American flag. The Americans had lost 20 killed and 105 wounded.

While peace negotiations were on foot, the regular forces were in a state of perplexity as to the future. The nation had now three islands on its hands, whether or not it wanted them. The only institution to which it could turn for control, police and civilization of the new soil, was the army. Any number of homeless refugees, insurrectos and untamed barbarians had to be brought into a setting of law and order. After victory, the usual clean-up would have to be made by the permanent troops.

The volunteers had a different outlook. Feeling that the war was now over they naturally clamored to be out of the service. Although a peace treaty had not yet been signed and their contracts with the government were not terminated, such *Aug. 18 1898* political pressure was brought to bear that 100,000 of them were ordered to be discharged. In Porto Rico and Cuba, the regulars were left high and dry with a big, distasteful work of reconstruction on their hands. In Manila, where the volunteers were greatly in preponderance, they could not be well let go while Aguinaldo was setting up an independent government. *Oct. 1898* Some 40,000 insurrectos were hovering around Manila. Congress was doing nothing to replace the volunteers who were going out.

Besides, the regular regiments were far below strength, because they had been unable to obtain their full quotas throughout the war. An average of 556 enlisted men per regiment in the regular forces fought at San Juan. Sickness had reduced some of these units later to as low as 300 men, whereas the authorized number amounted to 1,272. A paltry army was shrunken to a skeleton, in the face of conditions which required 100,000 trained men for the police and careful administration of these great islands, in great part sadly demoralized under Spanish rule.

Disease, too, was lessening the effectiveness of all the American forces. Though the volunteers were in a worse plight than the regulars, both had suffered extremely. The federal troops had been forced hurriedly into climatic conditions, with which no one was familiar. Although the regular officers took the greatest precautions, such new maladies as yellow and dengue fever were a puzzle to them at a time when the scientific knowledge of the deadly doses in mosquito bites were unknown. Most of the casualties among the regular troops were thus unpreventable at that period. On the other hand, although the volunteers lost 289 killed or mortally wounded in the war, they lost 3,848 from disease. And this figure is mostly made up of deaths occurring in the United States, where sickness could have been prevented by discipline and training. At the outset of the war, General Miles desired the volunteers to be placed in small camps in their own states where they could be instructed in their duties and responsibilities, given practice with proper arms and ammunition, have the advantage of learning tactics through tactical exercises, be efficient in guard duty, and acquire the thousand and one habits that are so vital to the life of a soldier and the success of an army. The General felt that, while the soldier was absorbing with little danger that discipline which is so essential to the safety of others, the larger camps could be the more carefully selected, especially for hygienic reasons. Then the smaller units could be formed into larger ones with some assurance of order, discipline and sanitation. But his advice was not to be taken. The answer was that there were not enough trained officers in the country to carry on such a program and the regulars could not be spared from the front. So the volunteers were hustled off without knowing the strenuous duty of a soldier to himself or his fellows. One war correspondent stated that "it always took one regular to offset the volunteer's mistakes, to help him cook his rations and to teach him to shelter

April 26 1898

himself and to keep himself clean." With poor equipment he was huddled in camps of meager facilities and extent. Camp Thomas had a capacity of 20,000 troops, yet 76,742 were sent there. Camp Alger was worse. Men died from typhoid fever by flies and like them. The War Commission stated:

"Large bodies of men who are not soldiers, under officers who have had little or no military training, cannot be brought together and held for many weeks in camp and remain healthy. If the water supply is not abundant or is not good; if the thoroughly well-established rules of sanitation are not observed; if the discipline of the camp puts little restriction on drunkenness and immorality; if the soldier does not know how to live and his officers do not watch him and teach him; if his food is poorly cared for and badly cooked, and he is permitted to eat and drink anything and everything he can find, sickness will certainly prevail. If, as at Camp Thomas, a regiment can go for ten days without digging sinks; if the sinks dug are not used or they quickly overflow and pollute the ground; if practically no protection is afforded against the liquor sellers and prostitutes of neighboring places; if commands are crowded together and tents seldom struck, or even never during the occupation of the camp; if no one is called to account for repeated violation of sanitary orders, it cannot be but that typhoid fever once introduced will spread, rapidly, widely.

"How much may be accomplished by intelligent and watchful supervision on the part of surgeons and regimental officers and the observance of the well-established rules of camp sanitation is shown by the record of the Eighth Massachusetts Volunteer Infantry at Camp Thomas. This regiment was for many weeks very healthy, while much sickness was occurring in regiments nearby, though the conditions of camp site, of water, and of drill were practically the same. . . .

"In conclusion it may be said that it is impossible to bring together a regiment of 1,300 men whose lives and habits have all been different and place them in camp, subject them to its discipline, diet and duties, without much complaint. They must become acclimated and accustomed to camp life before sickness can be prevented; and until the individual soldier appreciates the necessity of complying fully with the regulations and confines himself to the regular food—and this the soldier never does until experience teaches him the necessity—he will drink polluted water, eat noxious food that disturbs his digestive organs, and will not take care of himself, and no discipline or watching will prevent it. The imprudent acts of the soldiers are the first and greatest cause of sickness in camps."

The soldier must be disciplined, it is true, but the physician must be specially trained also. Camp hygiene is a distinct branch of the medical profession. One cannot expect an eye, ear, nose and throat specialist to understand camp sanitation thoroughly. Such work is the special province of the medical corps. Many good volunteer doctors from the home towns made a fizzle of sanitation at Alger and Thomas, simply because they had not been trained in that line. Others who knew what to do, were not backed up by the newly made line officers. At the beginning of the war the medical corps of the army, like the quartermaster corps, had a size proportional to the army total of 25,000 men. Yet this body had to take care of 223,235 volunteers at a moment's notice. Death and confusion logically resulted.

As the war with Spain was reaching its close, an even greater and longer conflict was coming to an end. The last of the Indian uprisings was taking place. It seems that the Pillager Chippewas near Leech Lake, Minnesota, felt themselves unjustly dealt with, when some of their number were arrested.
Sept. 30 1898 A detachment of 20 men of the Third Infantry was despatched from Fort Snelling to the scene of discontent, at the request of the Secretary of the Interior. Lieutenant Humphreys, commanding these few men, found the Indians to be so numerous and hostile, that he asked for reënforcements. Captain Wilkinson moved out shortly afterward with 80 men of the Third Infantry. At Sugar Point two Indians were arrested on the way, and, although the warriors' attitude was threatening, there
Oct. 5 1898 was no violence. Then an unfortunate accident occurred. A soldier inadvertently discharged his rifle. In a moment this latter detachment was fired upon from the underbrush. The troops could but defend themselves as well as possible. For

two days they held out, at the end of which time they had beaten back the Chippewas. Captain Wilkinson and 6 men had been killed and 14 wounded, including some civil officers. After this affair, an additional force of 5 officers and 206 men from the Third Infantry arrived at the Leech Lake Agency. The Fourteenth Minnesota was also stationed along the Great Northern Railway. Soon afterward the Indians, for whom warrants had been issued, were taken peaceably and order was restored in this tribe. *Oct. 20, 21 1898*

Thus ended the Indian wars. One newspaper man has estimated that it cost the government in these struggles over $1,000 for every redman who lived within our border. That is a tremendous figure. But it is safe to say that, with a small fraction of the total sum, a decent-sized army could have been trained and equipped in the beginning; the Indians could have been awed and controlled with little bloodshed by such a force; and two years of such treatment would have advanced railroads and commerce by a quarter of a century. Such an able management would also have prevented in large measure the unnecessary deaths that continuously blot over half of the history of our country.

Analogous to the dribbling loss that took place on the plains is the conduct of the war with Spain. To be sure, there was little that Congress could do after hostilities had overtaken us. Nothing could make up for our neglect in the previous thirty years. But when it rejected the Hull Bill, which called for a reorganization similar to the one before the World War, it threw its weight positively on the side of politics to the exclusion of efficiency and the saving of life and treasure.

Notwithstanding the great drawbacks of legislative deficiency, the trained forces, principally the regular army, showed that they could loyally and quickly go forward in carrying out their missions. The schooling and practice they had evolved from the pittance accorded by legislation proved to be invaluable. The scientific knowledge the regular had obtained had been gleaned by his own efforts and in spite of exterior hindrances. Although, such labor could not bring into the officer's pockets an extra dollar or promote him to a higher grade, he forged ahead with only his interest in his profession to stir him onward. The product of such unalloyed zeal told at San Juan and El Caney, the vital actions of the war. In addition to the fine character of the regular army, it must be remembered that regular officers to the number of 387 led volunteer units. It is acknowledged that the enemy was not as aggressive as might ordinarily have been expected. But the trained troops that beat their way over hot trails and through the jungle showered with a hail of Mauser bullets could not know that the Spaniard would retreat. At any rate, the battles were a great test of zeal and efficiency.

Dec. 10 1898

When the treaty of peace was signed, in the making of which General Merritt played a large part in Paris, the war had lasted exactly 109 days. Even so, we had paid a price far in excess of necessity—and would have paid more, had it not been for the exertions of the regular in the dark days when he began his own renaissance.

THE ARMY'S RENAISSANCE

SECOND PHASE

(1899–1916)

IT is a fashion for the beginning of a renaissance to slip into history unnoticed. The second phase is filled with reactions that stand out more boldly. So it was not until after the Spanish-American War that the people found out that a highly efficient set of trained men had overcome hideous obstacles and had been the mainspring of success. The groups of onward-looking officers, in the eighties and nineties, who tugged and strained at the thongs of neglect and provincialism, with which circumstances had bound as high-minded a body of men as ever existed, were to witness soon some of the fruits of their sincere efforts.

Before the augmented army now lay a problem of a very delicate, trying and constructive nature, that of skillfully administering Porto Rico, Cuba, Hawaii, Guam and the Philippines. *1899* From Porto Rico the troops had been sent home. Hawaii was too new an acquisition to be dealt with, except politically. Guam was insignificant relatively. Accordingly, military attention had to fasten itself for the present on Cuba and the Philippines.

In Santiago, Cuba, then one of the filthiest cities on the Western Hemisphere, Colonel Leonard Wood had to deal with a situation that would have taxed the capacity of any administration. Refugees and half-starving natives who knew nothing of hygienic conditions and who spoke a Latin language had to be fed and controlled. They had to be taught by rigid discipline and rigorous measures that they could not pollute their premises. The city was divided into 5 sections, each under a medical inspector. Aiding these supervisors were subinspectors, also medical men, who specifically looked after the sewers, streets, houses, dispensaries and street cleaners. In the early stages of this renovation some 500 cubic yards of refuse were burned daily. Within a month the death rate dropped from an average of 70 to 20 a day. Only by imposing military discipline could Colonel Wood have effected his colossal task.

The situation in the Philippines was of a different character. Because the President had enunciated a policy of "benevolent assimilation" in order to pull the peace treaty through the Senate, General Otis in command at Manila was compelled to issue an order to the Filipinos which implied very mild dealings. In a few days, the mistake of such a policy was evident. The half-civilized natives, as they invariably act under such treatment, ascribed our overtures to cowardice and weakness. Their previous hostile attitude emphasized itself at once by defiance, accumulation of arms and open attack.

Jan. 4 1899

The army in the Philippines consisted of 20,870 men, 5,372 of whom were regulars. All of the volunteers and 1,650 of the regulars were entitled to their discharge. The volunteers were especially uneasy because similar organizations in the Western Hemisphere had been discharged. The ratification of the treaty of peace (April 11, 1899) was shortly to take place. Had these volunteers elected to go home they would have left General Otis with less than 4,000 men to operate in an unknown country infested with several hundred thousand native warriors. To the great credit of these volunteers they chose to remain and serve their country beyond the time required. This is the first case on record in the United States where volunteers acted so unanimously and patriotically. Even with this increment, there was left, after eliminating those who were acting as provost guard and civil administrators, only about 12,000 effective troops in the Philippines. Before this tremendous task of colonization by so few men, Congress still sat supinely awaiting developments.

Feb. 4 1899

But the development came inevitably in the shape of an attack on Manila by some 40,000 Tagalogs about 8:30 p.m. one evening. For three days the insurgents kept up a continuous fire, being very aggressive in the night time. But the Americans, though outnumbered, were able to throw back these

Feb. 4, 5, 6 1899

assaults after much hard fighting. The United States troops lost some 250, whereas the insurgents lost about 3,000, in addition to the prisoners and 2 Krupp guns taken.

It took this outbreak to convince Congress that something must be done to provide some sort of competent force to pacify these islands. That body therefore passed an act "for increasing the efficiency" of the army of the United States. It was provided that the regular army consist of 3 major generals, 6 brigadier generals, 10 regiments of cavalry, 7 of artillery, 25 of infantry and the staff departments. Second lieutenants were to be examined as to their proficiency before being taken into the service and all grades above were to be filled by seniority, except of course those of general officers. The Military Academy was enlarged by giving to each congressional district, each territory and the District of Columbia the appointment of a cadet. Twenty were allowed to be appointed by the President at large. The President was authorized to keep the strength of the regular army at a maximum of 65,000. Retired officers were allowed to be placed on active duty other than in command of troops. Cooks were to have the same pay and allowance as sergeants of infantry. In addition to the regular force thus outlined, the President was authorized to raise 35,000 volunteers and to organize them into 27 regiments of infantry, at the war strength of the regular army, and 2 regiments of cavalry. Each regiment was allowed 1 surgeon with the rank of major and 2 assistant surgeons with rank of captain and first lieutenant respectively. The discouraging part of this whole law was that the force so created was but temporary. Except the regular army as it existed after the war with Spain, all were to be discharged not later than July 1, 1901. The main good feature was that volunteer officers, instead of being appointed by the states were to have federal commissions from the President. The regular officers on duty with the volunteers, except the staff, were to be continued. Some minor features, such as enlisted men being allowed to make allotments of their pay for the support of their families and relatives, were good things. But in the main the law was a makeshift, as we shall see.

March 2 1899

March 2 1899

The character of the volunteers obtained under this act has never been surpassed in our service. The field officers of the regiments were selected from experienced officers in the regular army, and the company officers were taken principally from those who had served creditably in state organizations during the war with Spain. As a result, no less than 1,524 officers and 33,050 enlisted men were on their way to the Philippines six months after the law was signed by the President.

Feb 1899 For the troops then around Manila, the new climate under the equatorial sun was immensely trying. The rainy season just closing was giving place to an intense heat which prostrated many of the men. In many places the terrain was so dense and the advance so difficult that it took the most determined grit to go ahead.

Feb. 10 1899 General MacArthur followed up the attack upon Manila with a sharp engagement which ended in the occupation of Caloocan, adjacent to the city. With the small force at General Otis' disposal this work was all that could be done. The purpose was to extend the lines and assure confidence in the city itself. Any wider operations were out of the question. There were hardly troops sufficient to garrison the towns taken, to occupy the country and protect the lines of communications. The army was now purely on the defensive, because it did not have enough troops to act otherwise.

Feb. 11 1899 *Feb. 26 1899* *March 10 1899* *March 17 1899* However, the Island of Panay was occupied by General Miller and a battalion of the Twenty-third Infantry went into Cebu. General Smith seized the island of Negros and the city of Bacalod. Then General Wheaton captured Pasig and occupied Taguig.

At the latter place a counterattack upon Wheaton's forces embarrassed his troops for the moment, but finally he succeeded in driving the insurgents fifteen miles down the lake. Thus Wheaton was able to separate the Filipino forces of the north and south. General MacArthur then began an advance upon Malolos, the insurgent capital, which contained many stores for the insurrectos. Here the fighting was quite heavy, but *March 31 1899* MacArthur was finally enabled to occupy the place and accomplish his mission.

General Otis was now in a position, because of the beginning of the dry season and the reënforcements of regulars, who had come in since March 10th, to carry on his operations in larger measure. It must be remembered that during this time the only additional forces available were the regulars throughout the United States and other island possessions. In other words, the home country, as usual, had to be stripped of its land defense in order to cover a relatively small territory in the Pacific. However, Lawton with a force of 1,409 troops crossed Laguna de Bay and captured Santa Cruz. The advance by General MacArthur was at a standstill especially beyond Malolos, because the insurgents now threatened his flanks and communications and there were not enough troops to guard a further extension. However, that doughty general as soon as possible resumed his advance, crossed the Angat River while 4,000 Filipinos were in his front, captured Calumpit and occupied San Fernando. In the meantime, General Lawton, with some 4,000 men, moved out through Norzagaray, Baliuag and San Miguel for the purpose of taking San Isidro, a very important insurgent stronghold. He captured the city, but was too late to take Aguinaldo, who had escaped north with his cabinet. By the combined operations of MacArthur and Lawton, in spite of the lack of reasonable forces, these men succeeded in gaining all the territory to the north of Manila.

April 10 1899

April 24 1899

May 5 1899

April 22 1899

May 17 1899

Heat and amoebic dysentery had wrought such fearful havoc with General MacArthur's troops under the strain of continuous marching and fighting that his force was a matter of great concern to him. He reported that 4 of his regiments had an enlisted strength of 3,701 men altogether. Of those, 1,003 were sick and wounded so that he had an effective force of but 2,698 men, of whom, after all the details were made for special duty, 2,307 could be used on the firing line. Many of the latter were so weak that they could scarcely march five miles. Subtractions, too, had to be made from the troops around Manila. The Spaniards having withdrawn from the Mindanao and the Sulu Archipelago, it was necessary to send a force to occupy that part of the island group.

The situation was very critical for these few troops alone in the Far East. Washington was wiring to send the volunteer regiments home immediately. Although General Otis persuaded them to remain, by the end of May they had become very restless and desired to depart. The other troops were in large measure sick and the time it would take to police this land looked long. So weak were our forces that they could attempt to hold only the principal city of Cebu. In the meantime the natives in other parts were permitted to drift, grow in strength and pursue the destructiveness of insurrectos. Since the only government that had existed had been sent away, there was no law and order in most of the islands.

However, the Twenty-third Infantry proceeded to Cebu and General Smith with 2 battalions of the First California Regiment went to Bacolod on the island of Negros. Seven hundred *May 19 1899* and fifty-five officers and men of the Twenty-third Infantry occupied Jolo. In the vicinity of Manila General Lawton was able to concentrate about 4,000 troops under Wheaton and Ovenshine in order to disperse the enemy on his flanks. He *June 10 1899* attacked the Philippine entrenchments at Zapote River. In spite of stubborn resistance he carried these lines. He then re- *June 15 1899* ceived the surrender of Imus, of which place he took possession.

June 16 1899 The insurgents in the meantime attacked General MacArthur at San Fernando where they were repulsed, Generals Funston *July 1 1899* and Hale figuring prominently in driving them back. A similar attack was made later with the same results. The insurgents now having divided their forces and having retreated to Dasmarinas and Malabon, General Wheaton pursued one of *July 26 1899* the columns and routed it. Then General Hale captured Colomba on the southeastern part of Laguna de Bay.

The terrible consequences of piecemeal legislation now began to manifest themselves. General Otis had to stop his operations in order to reorganize his forces. In the meantime the insurgents were adding to their numbers, and organizing their resources and strength for one of the most deadly guerrilla warfares in the nation's annals. Of the regulars, 60 per cent of the enlisted men in the artillery and infantry regiments were being discharged. By the end of July, 8,000 volunteers had sailed for the United States. Of 32,200 men in Luzon and the Visayas, only 20,000 were present for duty. Minor actions continued through this distressing dearth, notwithstanding the fact that there had been a rainfall of forty-six inches in a single *Aug. 31 1899* month and many severe typhoons. In the meantime the new organizations, filled with recruits, were beginning to arrive.

By the end of the summer the troops fit for duty outside of the city of Manila numbered about 13,500; 5,000 of these were required to hold the lines of communication. This decrepit and unstable condition of the army can be charged up to the months of blank legislation after the war with Spain. During that time, the forces in the Philippines had to march and fight against odds which increased their casualties beyond national necessity. We hear in the commercial world those apt phrases of "spending money in order to make it" and often about the "early bird." But when it came to war we somehow reasoned differently. We seemed to have the tiny shopkeeper's idea of that sort of business. By that view we lost billions, and incidentally strewed over the fields our dead brothers, husbands, sons and fathers prodigally.

Since the first fight of this year 19 officers and 342 enlisted *Feb. 1899* men had been killed or mortally wounded: besides, 87 officers and 1,325 men had been wounded. The losses, therefore, for these few months' fighting totaled 107 officers and 1,667 enlisted men, or more than had been lost in the entire war with Spain. Few people realize under what handicaps the army was placed in these far-away islands of the orient, while a prosperous people in the home country were immersed in ethics, politics and business.

In Cavite and Morong, strong forces of insurrectos had attacked the Americans at various times and had been driven back. But in the plain of central Luzon, Aguinaldo still had his headquarters and had set up a dictatorship for his people. He was occupying Tarlac as his capital where he and his cabinet resided.

Generals MacArthur and Wheeler, as the dry season was *Sept. 28 1899* again approaching, went forward and took Porac. Several weeks later three separate columns started out to make a vital stroke against Aguinaldo's territory. General Lawton with the *Oct. 12 1899* principal force of 3,500 men, began the movement by proceeding to Arayat, where he drove the insurgents away. Later he *Oct. 18 19, 1899* occupied Cabiao and San Isidro. Before long he had in his *By Nov. 1 1899* hands other towns such as Cabanatuan, Aliaga, and Talavera. Young's cavalry having swept the flank west of the line of advance, Lawton's column then pushed on toward the north as far

Nov. 13 1899 as San Nicolas, which it occupied. Turning west it took Asingan and Rosales. The results of this movement brought about the establishment of a chain of outposts along the edges of the plain of central Luzon. The force also coupled up with General Wheaton, who had gone by water from Manila and had driven 1,200 insurgents out of the entrenchments at San Jacinto with *Nov. 5 1899* great loss. In the meantime General MacArthur, who had started out from Angeles, had advanced up the line of the railway and had captured Magalan, Bamban, Capas, and Concepcion. He then attacked and took Tarlac, Aguinaldo's *Nov. 12 1899* capital, but he was just too late to capture the insurgent leader, who had fled with his forces. He then had to content himself *Nov. 17 1899* with the occupation of Gerona and Panique. Reaching *Nov. 20 1899* Dagupan, he coupled up with Wheaton, who had arrived there the day before.

The outline of these actions stated in such brevity gives no indication of what these troops overcame and suffered. Were we to look back upon the tortures of the troops in the Everglades of Florida, the Apache country of Arizona and Scott's column in southern Mexico and were we to combine all those hardships, we might have a picture of the intrepid work of these men. General MacArthur says in his report:

> "The division camped in extended order, occupied towns in extended order, lived, marched, fought, and slept in extended order, with a view to sudden attack or defense at any time during the day or night. That is to say, the entire command has in effect, aside from the period of actual marching and fighting, been on outpost duty, without reserve, respite or relief, for nearly ninety days. . . . The sun, field rations, physical exertion, and the abnormal excitement arising from almost constant exposure to fire action, have operated to bring about a general enervation from which the men do not seem to readily recover."

The year of 1899, however, should not be closed without a word for the work of General Young, who with a small force of 80 troopers of the Third Cavalry and some Macabebe scouts, hotly pursued Aguinaldo in the hope of capturing him. With *Nov. 20 1899* only this small force he occupied San Fernando de Union after a short fight and then reached Namacpacan. He then received *Nov. 23 1899* reënforcements and proceeded to scour the northern provinces. Going along the coast, he released American and Spanish prisoners at various places and sent Major March eastward in pursuit of the insurgent leader. At Tila Pass, high up in the mountains, March encountered Aguinaldo's rear guard under General Pilar. He attacked the Filipinos, captured Del Pilar and killed 51 others, his own loss being only 2 killed and 9 wounded. In the meantime General Young took the enemy's trench in the Tangandan mountains. But Aguinaldo eluded his pursuers in fleeting and slippery fashion. However, the insurgents by the actions of this year could set up no claim to a government in so much as the President of their Congress had been captured, their capitals had been taken and Aguinaldo had been driven into hiding.

Meanwhile, General Schwan, with 1,744 troops and 63 scouts, went out against the insurgents who were attacking our *Oct. 7 1899* lines of communication in the south. Beyond Perez Dasmarinas he killed 100 of them and destroyed their organization. Then General Lawton was brought from the north for a similar southern expedition. He started for San Mateo and Montalban with 2 battalions of infantry, 9 troops of cavalry and 2 guns. *Dec. 18 1899* His progress was impeded by the heavy rains which caused the Mariquina to rise as only tropical rivers can do. It was while superintending the crossing at San Mateo that he himself was killed.

While some of the troops fell back with his body, Colonel Lockett drove the enemy into the mountains. But after he had drawn off, the insurgents again became aggressive and came back as far as San Mateo. The insurrecto general, Santa Ana, then attacked the American garrison at Subig. The offensive was repulsed and a second advance by Lockett with some 2,500 troops caused a defeat at Montalban. Lockett routed the enemy, *Dec. 29 1899* killed at least 80 and captured 24 together with much war material. His only loss was 1 drowned and 7 wounded.

Thus terminated the destructive year 1899 in the Philippines. The force now consisted all told, counting the sick, of 51,167 officers and men. Altogether 509 soldiers had been killed, 2,223 had been wounded and about 1,000 had died of disease. This enumeration includes the death of 1 general officer.

Though the Indian wars had ceased, another desperate conflict had taken their place. The regulars and volunteers in insufficient numbers and only half armed with Krags had to beat down in torrid weather another sort of barbarian. The days of Arizona repeated themselves under an equatorial sun. But the multitudes of Filipinos were even more perfidious and more prone to conduct small actions than the redmen. The trials of these unacclimated soldiers expressed themselves in dysentery, cholera, sleeplessness and wounds. Although the blue uniform was so stifling that it was slowly giving way to khaki, for days the soldier was wet, hungry and worn out by the endless vigil he had constantly to keep. Probably in the Philippine War more than in any other in our history did the military man shorten his life, if he survived at all.

Jan. 4 1900

Since it would take a volume to describe in detail these actions, the general operations can only be sketched. General Bates, succeeding General Lawton in command of the First Division of the Eighth Corps, set out to overcome the depredations of guerrilla warfare into which the Filipino troubles had settled. His force was better off than before. Since October, 1899, there had been received in the islands from the United States 25 fresh regiments. Wheaton delivered a series of attacks near Bacoor and Schwan moved along Laguna de Bay; and onward for 600 miles. These 2 columns had many small actions in which intrenched positions and garrisoned towns were captured. The insurgent forces were either annihilated or dispersed, so that they never again raised their hands in this part of the country.

Feb. 8 1900

Jan. 18 1900

Jan. 23 1900

Meanwhile the Forty-third and Forty-seventh Volunteer Infantry and a battery of the Third Artillery under General Kobbé were sent to the islands of Samar, Leyte and Catanduanes. This officer overcame a decided resistance at Legaspi and captured the Chinese leader, Paua.

Generals Bates and Bell with about 2,300 men, having sailed from Manila, occupied the provinces of North and South Camarines and western Albay. General Bell was then appointed military governor of these districts and General Kobbé of Mindanao and the Jolo Archipelago. In General Bell's Department the insurgents who had been driven away from the north had taken refuge. His force defeated the insurrectos in a hot fight near the mouth of Bicol River, dispersing the Filipinos and capturing many supplies.

April 4 1900

Another expedition of the Fortieth Volunteer Infantry, under General Bates, went to establish garrisons in Mindanao. Owing to General Bates' promptness and to the appearance of the gunboats, there was little resistance met at Surigao. The insurrecto chief, Garcia, surrendered with such cannon as he possessed. But a week later the insurgents returned from their mountain fastnesses and made a night attack on the American troops. There was much hand-to-hand fighting in the mix-up, but after a time the Filipinos were driven off, leaving 2 Americans killed and 11 wounded.

March 20 1900

March 27 1900

One of the most daring expeditions was that conducted by Major March and Colonel Hare, who left Candon and Bangued in order to scour the northern province. March missed Aguinaldo by a close margin at Sagad, while Hare surprised and killed the chieftain Tinis near Malibcong.

May 10, 16 1900

May 19 1900

General Arthur MacArthur succeeded General Otis in command of the Philippine troops and as governor-general. Under him were General Bates in Southern Luzon, General Hughes in the Visayas and General Kobbé in Mindanao and Jolo. His total forces numbered 63,284.

May 15 1900

June 30 1900

Congress, in the meantime, had done nothing for the creation of a permanent force large enough to police and hold our island possessions and to be a safeguard at home. A procrastinating enactment continued in effect until June 30, 1901 the existing force of mixed regular and volunteers. Another caused the army to establish a military post at Des Moines, Iowa, and to proceed with the armament of our fortifications. Congress then revived the office of lieutenant general for the senior major general commanding the army. Two provisions which showed the belief in the school advancement of the army were the appropriation for a modern military hospital at the School at Leavenworth and the authorization for the establishment of an Army War College at Washington. The last law stated that the object of such a college was "the direction and coördination of

Feb. 24 1900

April 4 1900

May 25 1900

June 6 1900

May 26 1900

the instruction in the various service schools." Thus was allowed a master school for all branches of the service and for higher work in military strategy and information. The college was established and improved in the next two years.

The war in the Philippines by the middle of the year had settled into guerrilla warfare and brigandage of the most subtle type. The inhabitants secreted their arms in their houses, in the jungle or buried them in the ground. They would give their word that they were friends and break faith. Giving the impression that they were going about the ordinary pursuits of a peaceful life, they would lead the soldiery to believe that they were loyal. But when an opportunity offered to attack a convoy or small parties on the march, they would suddenly rise, attack with vigor and quickly melt into the population, acting thereafter as if they had always been "amigos." Under such conditions, there could be no large actions, but the creese, bolo and spear, together with rifles, played havoc with lonely sentinels and small bands of Americans. In spite of such occurrences the army built over 400 posts in the Islands and many miles of road.

June 16 1900 While this difficult task was before the soldier in trying to civilize the Filipino with a Krag, trouble in the Far East brought a part of the forces into China. General Chaffee was to command the expedition which, in conjunction with the allied troops of the European powers, was to make the foreigners safe against the "Boxers." In Manila, General MacArthur received *July 6 1900* orders to dispatch a regiment to the scene of difficulty. The Ninth Infantry under Colonel Liscum, though delayed by a typhoon, acted with such promptness that it landed at Taku, China, nineteen days after it received its first instructions. The speed that this regiment showed is again an illustration of the celerity that is habitual with trained and ready leaders and troops. The province to which they were going made it impossible to receive supplies often, after they had landed. Since the small transport service for the Philippines could not be interrupted, and the port of Taku was closed in the winter season, it was necessary that the Ninth take with it all the rations, clothing and ammunition it might require for several months. Notwithstanding such handicap, this regiment found

itself in China in record time. Five days later 2 battalions of *July 13*
the regiment arrived at Tientsin, about forty miles inland from *1900*
Taku. With the British, French and Japanese this part of the
Ninth helped in the attack of that strong, walled city. Having
to go forward under very little cover, the Americans suffered
extremely. For fifteen hours they were in the front line, exposed
to a vicious fire. When the city was finally captured, 18
had been killed and 22 wounded. This total includes Colonel
Liscum himself, who was among the dead.

A couple of weeks later the Fourteenth Infantry arrived, *July 26, 29*
and finally General Chaffee. Shortly, thereafter, the movement *1900*
against Peking, about seventy miles away, was begun. The *Aug. 4*
American column, all told, consisted of the Ninth and Fourteenth *1900*
Infantry, 2 troops of the Sixth Cavalry and 1 battery of the
Fifth Artillery. In the early part of the march, the Chinese *Aug. 5*
held up the progress along the Pei-Ho River. The Allies *1900*
attacking on front and flank carried the position and took Pei- *Aug. 6*
Ts'ang. The next day the column had a severe four-hour engagement *1900*
at Yang Ts'un. Although the allies were successful,
the Americans lost 7 killed and 65 wounded. After these actions
the troops were granted a day of rest, so worn were they by the
continuous fighting and intense heat. When the march was resumed,
minor skirmishes took place all along the way until *Aug. 13*
within about twelve miles of Peking. At that point, it was decided *1900*
among the various commanders that the day would be
spent in reconnaissance, but the Russians becoming ambitious
(although they had been slow on the march) attacked the Tung
Pien gate of the outer city. Although they forced an
entrance, they were thrown into confusion after they were once
inside. The other allies coming to their aid the next day, were
able to blow up the gate by evening. When General Chaffee *Aug. 14*
found the Fourteenth Infantry and the American guns there, *1900*
he was able to effect an entrance and then to sweep the Tartar
wall clear of the Chinese, so that the march to the British
Compound could be resumed. South of the gate 2 companies of
the Fourteenth had already scaled the walls, and placed the first
flag of any foreign nation there. They then drove the Chinese
southward to the Sha Huo gate. The relief of the legations
could now be effected. The American forces had lost 177 officers

and men in the entire campaign. General Chaffee describes the conditions he found as follows:

> "Upon entering the legations the appearance of the people and their surroundings, buildings, walls, streets, alleys, entrances, etc., showed every evidence of a confining siege. Barricades were built everywhere and of every sort of material, native brick being largely used for their construction, topped with sand-bags made from every conceivable sort of cloth, from sheets and pillowcases to dress materials and brocaded curtains. Many of the legations were in ruins, and the English, Russian, and American, though standing and occupied, were filled with bullet holes from small arms, and often having larger apertures made by shell.
>
> "The children presented a pitiable sight, white and wan for lack of proper food, but the adults, as a rule, seemed cheerful and little worse for their trying experience, except from anxiety and constant care. They were living on short rations, a portion of which consisted of a very small piece of horse or mule meat daily. The Christian Chinese were being fed upon whatever could be secured, and were often reduced to killing dogs for meat.
>
> "All the surroundings indicated that the people had been closely besieged, confined to a small area without any comforts, no conveniences and barely existing from day to day in hope of succor."

Aug. 15
1900

When the Chinese opened fire from the Imperial City, Genereal Chaffee replied with four guns from the Ch'i Hua gate of the Tartar Wall. Two of the outer gates of the Forbidden City were blown over by Riley's artillery, but Riley himself was killed. A vigorous pursuit drove the Chinese from the four gates in succession, but any further offensive was blocked by a decision on the part of the Allied Council that they would not enter the Imperial City. Upon the urgent request of the various ministers, the decision next day was reversed. General Chaffee then reoccupied the line he had gained the day before. But it was not until some days later the Allied troops entered the royal enclosure.

While this trouncing of the Boxer was going along, some *Aug. 28 29, 1900* 12,000 troops had been sent from America to reënforce the troops around Peking. They consisted of 7 regiments of infantry, 3 of cavalry and 2 of artillery. They had reached Nagasaki, Japan, where, because of the culmination of events just described, they were diverted to Manila to join the troops *Oct. 3 1900* there. General Chaffee then began the withdrawal of the American troops from China to Manila, except 1 regiment of infantry, 1 squadron of cavalry, and 1 light battery as a guard for the American Legation.

Late in the year General MacArthur, the Governor General *1900* of the Philippines, saw the profitlessness of treating the captured insurgents with consideration. They always responded with cruelty and treachery. Leniency seemed merely to cause more blood to be spilled. It had heretofore been the custom to disarm the captives and liberate them. These semicivilized natives, attributing such actions to fear, responded by further and greater depredations. General MacArthur, therefore, is- *Dec. 20 1900* sued a proclamation, which he had distributed everywhere in the islands. It stipulated that

> "whenever action is necessary, the more drastic the application the better, provided only that unnecessary hardships and personal indignities shall not be imposed upon persons arrested and that the laws of war are not violated in any respect touching the treatment of prisoners."

Such a major operation on the insurrecto cut deep and saved the lives of many an American and native, although it did not please some American ethicists 6,000 miles away. From then on, all prisoners were to be held in custody and all who surrendered themselves were to be disarmed and released. In one month some 50 prominent Filipinos, insurgent officers, *Jan. 1901* agents, sympathizers and agitators were deported to the Island of Guam, with a consequent partial calm to the Philippines.

It was not until it was plain to every one that troubles abroad, even outside our possessions, were still persisting and that the time for the volunteers to be mustered out of the service was fast approaching, that Congress shouldered the

Feb. 2
1901

detestable burden of revamping our common defense. It passed a law which caused the army to consist of 30 regiments of infantry, 15 regiments of cavalry[1] and 1 corps of artillery with the appropriate staff corps. The total strength was to be a maximum of 100,619 officers and men. The ranking general in command of the army was to be a lieutenant general. Of this hundred thousand, 12,000 were to be natives of Porto Rico and the Philippines who were not to serve outside those islands, and who were to have regular officers as their majors and captains. This move was the origin of the Philippine scouts and the Porto Rican regiment. In the artillery corps the strength of the units was fixed, but in the infantry it varied for a company from 65 to 146, and in the cavalry from 100 to 164 as the President might prescribe. Each regiment was to consist of 3 battalions of 4 companies each, an organization General Upton had twenty years previously shown to be sound. The general officers were to consist of 1 lieutenant general, 6 major generals and 15 brigadier generals. The most signal change was in the artillery corps: its various dissimilar units were to be combined under the control of a single "Chief," the ranking officer of the corps. Between the coast and the light artillery he could make such transfers as necessity demanded. The system of detail between the staff and line, another of Upton's recommendations, caused officers in the staff departments to have experience with troops and a consequent understanding of the needs of the fighting branches. An officer was to be on duty with the staff no longer than four years, when he had to be assigned again to troops. Not less than 20 per cent of the vacancies among officers made by the increase were to be filled before July first, and the same amount each succeeding year until the total would be attained. Men not over forty were eligible for the new appointments in the grades of first and second lieutenants only, providing they could pass the examinations before the examining boards. Enlisted men were eligible for second lieutenancies, if they had served one year and could pass the tests. The President was directed not only to maintain the army at its maximum strength until Congress should vote otherwise, but he was to be allowed to exceed the maximum allotted, when the army was recruiting men for service in the island possessions. Such a move allowed for casualties and discharges during the long journey. Two brigadier generals of volunteers were to be appointed in the regular army and retired as a reward for their services in the war with Spain, and 1 brigadier general from the retired list of the army, who had distinguished himself in command of a separate army, was to be appointed a major general retired. Looking to more extended training as a result of the awakening in the army, appropriation was made for four permanent camps of instruction for the regular army and National Guard. Retired officers could be detailed on duty with schools so as to be instructors in drill and tactics.

---

[1] This was the real beginning of the 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th and 30th Infantry and the 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th Cavalry regiments—mostly organized in 1902.

This legislation, though a step forward, came so late as to be embarrassing to General MacArthur. The new force could not be organized and transported in time to relieve the volunteers who were to go out in a few months. At the beginning of the year he had had about 70,000 troops. During the six months afterward he had to send home some 30,000. By the end of the year he had only some 43,000 left him. He warned the War Department that after May 1 it would be safe to send away the volunteers, only if replaced by regulars. But there were no regulars to be had. On account of the great delay in legislation the Adjutant General was so distracted over the possible undoing of all the previous work in the Pacific that he had to ask Colonel Leonard Wood in Havana if the Tenth Infantry could not be spared from the small force there. The United States proper did not have a regular infantry regiment within its borders. *Dec. 1 1901* *Jan. 29 1901*

Twenty-five regiments of United States Volunteers, trained and veteran troops, had to be mustered out according to the new law. They were all sprinkled well over the Philippine Islands. Their officers with detachments of these troops were governors of provinces, towns and districts, giving all sorts of civil and military administration in order to hold the great native population in check. Were they to be taken away, much of the country would be without restraint or the appearance of force which awed the insurrecto into respect and peace. Misery and bloodshed would have followed.

The army was fortunate, however, in the turn of events at this critical time when the regulars would otherwise have been left high and dry. The crafty chieftain, Aguinaldo, had so screened himself with mystery as to his whereabouts, that a very few of his own troops knew exactly the location of his headquarters. But by this time, through MacArthur's policies, it was beginning to sink into the insurrecto mind that to turn "Americanista" was the better part of valor. Two of Aguinaldo's messengers, bearing important dispatches in cipher, gave themselves up as friends of the United States at General Funston's headquarters. After a sleepless night during which the messages were being decoded, a very desperate plan formed itself in Funston's mind. Believing the words of these former insurrectos with reference to the position of Aguinaldo's hiding place, he conceived the idea of taking certain friendly Macabebe scouts, who spoke well the language of the district in which Aguinaldo was supposed to be, of dressing them up as insurrectos and of having them pose as a successful war party that had taken American prisoners. He and 4 other officers were to be the disarmed captives. After gaining General MacArthur's permission and holding the most minute rehearsals with 84 Macabebes, he and his party went aboard a naval vessel and were landed at night on the east coast of Luzon. It was one of those bold masquerades where any little slip in the play acting by any one of the number meant annihilation to the party. For one hundred and ten miles, through the thickest of trails, with next to no food, at times miraculously escaping discovery, they finally came to their goal, Palanan, and found Aguinaldo there. A rush by the Macabebes and the insurrecto leader and two of his cabinet were pinioned. The whole party with the prisoners were then brought back by a naval vessel to Manila.

March 14 1901

March 23 1901

July 4 1901

This occurrence was the start of the collapse of the Filipino resistance. Aguinaldo called on his countrymen to desist. Other insurgent leaders were taken prisoners and the insurrection was officially at an end, though many a soldier was killed thereafter. However, the army had made the Islands so safe by its courageous feats, in spite of disease and treachery, that it was now possible to install a civil governor of the Philippines—William H. Taft. General MacArthur, who was called *July 4 1901* back to the states, was succeeded by General Chaffee as military governor. The army through this year had brought its total of posts built and stations located up to 502. The Secretary of War said:

> "I cannot speak too highly of the work of the army in the Philippines. The officers and men have been equal to the best requirements, not only of military service, but of civil administration with which they were charged in all its details from the date of our occupancy in August, 1898."

Insurrection, however, continued in scattered places, especially in the provinces of Batangas and Samar. The troops under General Bell and General Frederick D. Grant, after many arduous pursuits, were able to take the two ringleaders, *April 16, 27 1902* Malvar and Lukban. But the main part of the activities was over, with a total loss to the army of 330 officers and 6,746 enlisted men killed, dead or wounded. President Roosevelt was at any rate enabled to announce the end of the insurrection *July 4 1902* and to grant complete "pardon and amnesty" to the natives. The office of military governor was abolished with the thanks of the President. However, the Mohammedan Moros were still untamed in Sulu. Expeditions against them, notably those of Colonel Frank Baldwin and Captain John J. Pershing, were temporarily successful.

In Cuba, the forces under Brigadier General Leonard Wood were withdrawn from the island after as great reconstruction *May 20 1902* work as had been known in history. Since Cuba had been granted autonomy and had elected a President, Vice-President, *Feb. 24 1902* Senate and House of Representatives, the army's work was over. But it had given the people a splendid example of how to live in peace and health. While General Wood was using his military forces to establish order, sanitation and discipline and to supply the starving Cubans, Major W. C. Gorgas, of the Medical Department, was conducting a ruthless war on yellow fever, which for two hundred years had been the curse of the West Indies. Even in our own country it is estimated there had been at least 500,000 cases of that disease in a century (1793–1900). Major Gorgas, with the backing of General Wood, had the cases at once reported, the suspect isolated and the habitation of the sick man thoroughly fumigated. A war of extermination was waged on the mosquito. Buildings and houses were screened and the natives taught personal hygiene. Such men as Major C. L. Furbush did their work with such despatch and consideration that Havana has since given many public expressions of its gratitude.

1902 In the same way the medical corps in the Philippines was confronted with the plague of Asiatic cholera. The devastations of the disease had reached the appalling number of 300,000 deaths. The skillful and determined measures taken by these hygienic experts practically eradicated this dread disease in two years, and soon brought it under control. Recognizing that water and food products are the only carriers of infection, most edibles and water were required to be boiled before eating. Quarantine was established on incoming shipping. The extermination of rats and other vermin was begun, and the Philippines were made livable. It must be remembered that the army was the pioneer in these matters.

Since the war with Spain, all of the regular infantry regiments had been required in the Philippines, with the exception of a few scattered companies. A large proportion of the regular cavalry, artillery and staff troops had been there most of the time.[2] In addition, 25 regiments of the United States Volunteers and 19 organizations of state troops had been necessary to augment the regulars, whose soldiers had seldom been in the United States since the war. To show the magnificent *Feb. 4 1899 to July 4 1902* proportions of the Philippine contest, there had been 2,811 separate actions and battles in a little over three years. In most of these engagements the troops had been ambushed.

Congress, seeing the results of trained and scientifically educated officers, was particularly liberal in its legislation covering army educational interests. It made an appropriation for *June 28 1902* enlarging the buildings at West Point and gave a generous allowance for the continuance of the Army War College, situated at Washington Barracks on the outskirts of the capital. *June 30 1902* Secretary Root realized that the military education of officers was especially important after the effects of the law of 1901. Out of 2,900 officers in the army, 1,818 had been appointed since the beginning of the war with Spain and only 276 of the latter were West Pointers. He realized that some systematic and technical education would have to be imparted to these men, who were possessed of practical experience with troops and in a peculiar type of warfare, but had had little chance to lay for themselves a military foundation. Accordingly, the "garrison school" made its appearance, and special service schools were to follow. Demonstrations and maneuvers were also to give practice to the soldier. This year joint maneuvers were *Sept. 1902* held on the New England coast with regular artillery and militia against battle ships. Although this first trial was not all that could be expected, it was a beginning of those exercises in the field which were to give officers practice similar to that of action; and inculcate in troops the necessary knowledge of their duties and requirements.

---

[2] See Appendix C for organizations taking part in Philippine War.

A new cavalry drill regulation, which is essentially in effect to-day, appeared this year. *1902* The troop was formed in single rank, with divisions for platoons and squads. The tallest men were in the center and shortest on the flanks. The squadron, consisting of 4 troops, was drilled by the major.

After one hundred and eleven years of silence on the point, the Congress considered again the militia. The "Dick Bill" *Jan. 21 1903* made for the first time federal mention of the National Guard, which was the higher distinction among state troops known as "organized militia." All other male citizens between the ages of eighteen and forty-five, were to be known as the Reserve Militia. The "organization, armament and discipline" of the organized militia were in five years to be the same as those features of the regular army. The organized militia was to be paid during its activities and was required to participate in practice marches, or go into a camp of instruction for five consecutive days and to assemble for drill and instruction or target practice at least twenty-four times during any year. The act provided for the detail of regular army officers at camps of instruction or for temporary duty with the militia. One bad feature of the law was that the service was entirely optional and that these able-bodied men were not subject to call. Neither were the governors of states bound to comply with the order of the President, when he requested the service of the National Guard. In fact the troops could disregard the call of the governor with impunity. The same old error was also committed—the militia could not be called out for more than nine months. No specific provisions were made for a volunteer reserve, which had been suggested.

Jan. 30 1903

Feb. 14 1903

March 3 1903

Following an act allowing the higher officers of the Philippine Constabulary to be appointed from the regular army, came the signal legislation which created a general staff, whose main duty should be to prepare plans for national defense and for the mobilization of the forces in war against any nation. It was to consist of 1 chief, 2 general officers, 4 colonels, 6 lieutenant colonels, and 12 majors. Twenty captains were also to be selected from the captains and lieutenants in the army at large and to have the pay of a captain, mounted. The commanding general of the army was to become the chief of staff by virtue of his being the ranking officer in the service. Because the President was commander in chief under the constitution, the duties and title of this new office were more fitting for the work of actual administration. The chief of artillery, by a separate act, was made a brigadier general and was made an additional member of the General Staff.

The corner stone of the War College building was laid in Washington this year, at which exercises Secretary Root paid tribute to General Upton's memory, the man who had foreseen the necessity of such a thing as a general staff and a school of this kind thirty years before. It was this brilliant secretary who also had General Upton's *Military Policy of the United States* brought from its obscurity and published in book form.

April 1903

The Moros in the Philippines still continued to give trouble to the army. Brave to the point of fanaticism and in many ways more cunning than the Indian, they became a continual menace for many years. Conspicuous among these actions was that of Captain John J. Pershing's detachment which destroyed a fort belonging to the Sultan of Baccalod. When, later, this same American force was fired upon by Taraca Moros during an exploring tour of the American troops, several of the Moro forts were stormed and captured. *May 1903*

While these engagements in the Philippines were taking place, better lines were being followed in the War Department. Under the workings of the new general staff and at the suggestion of Secretary Root, a joint Army and Navy Board of 4 officers from each of the services was created for the coördination of plans in case of war. *July 20 1903* General S. M. B. Young became the first chief of staff, who at once relieved the War College of the burden of projects falling to its lot and left it free to follow its immediate duties in reference to school work. *Aug. 15 1903*

Along with better management went efforts at obtaining more skill. The first national rifle contest was held at Sea Girt, New Jersey, in the fall of this year. *Sept. 8, 9 1903* Six prizes were awarded, the first being won by the team from the New York National Guard. The Army Rifle Team was fifth and the Marines sixth.

The American troops in the Philippines had been reduced to such an extent that toward the end of the year they numbered only 843 officers and 14,667 men. *Oct. 15 1903* This diminution left a tremendous task upon their hands. The Secretary of War, Root, was so gratified with their accomplishments that he said of the army:

> "I do not think that any government ever had a body of public servants presenting a better standard of personal character, a higher average of competency, or a more completely controlling sense of public duty. A country is fortunate which has such officers to rely upon in time of need."

Although the Congress did not now raise the personnel, it did do something for material advancement. Realizing that the new island possession ought to have permanent fortifications, after five years of thought on the matter it made substantial appropriation for defense. *April 21 1904* On another line, too, it showed its appreciation of the veteran. *April 23 1904* Those officers below the grade of brigadier general who had been retired on account of wounds of after forty years' service, were to be advanced one grade, provided they had served in the Civil War.

Again the Moros in the Philippines continued to give trouble in Mindanao and Jolo. Datu Ali with some 3,000 followers defied all efforts to catch him for some time, his troops *March–Oct. 1904* committing all sorts of depredations, especially at night. Pursuits by the American troops were almost constant. This old chieftain once agreed to surrender, but soon afterwards broke out in armed resistance, and so terrorized the country that we shall hear of him again.

In the states, combined maneuvers were carried on with enterprise and success. At American Lake, Washington, 1,687 *July 1904* regulars with 2,324 militia from Washington, Oregon and Idaho were placed in the field under command of General *Aug. 1904* Funston; at Atascadero, California, 2,247 regulars with 2,181 *Sept. 1904* National Guard of California were similarly placed under General MacArthur; and at Manassas, Virginia, 5,062 regulars and 21,234 eastern National Guard were under General Corbin. These troops had the actual practice in exercises and joint operations of those numerous details that actually confront troops on the ground. The eastern troops were assembled in Virginia upon the scene of action of the second battle of Bull Run of the Civil War. For two days they worked upon the situations that confronted Lee and Pope in 1862. The result was an exceptional benefit to the troops. It is a pity that such training could not be conducted during the next year, but Congress would not appropriate the funds.

As to materials for war, this year marked the completion of about half of the recommendations of the Endicott Board submitted in 1885. It had been difficult to accomplish this small fraction of the contemplated task because of the shortage of enlisted men. They would not go into the service because of the small pay. Notwithstanding this condition, materials were purchased and many guns emplaced.

1904 It was in this year that the army was territorially divided into five grand divisions under major generals, each division being subdivided into departments under brigadier generals. The office of adjutant general ceased to exist and was replaced by that of a newly created military secretary, who was given the additional labor of the former record and pension office.

Another evidence of the renaissance in the army was the establishment of the Army Staff College at Fort Leavenworth. *June 27 1904* Its object was to instruct especially selected officers in the duties of the General Staff of the army, to improve their qualifications as instructors and to prepare them for duty in the Army War College. In addition to this direct purpose, they were charged with the investigation of such military inventions, discoveries and developments which would affect the various arms of the service. The student personnel was limited at first to from 9 to 15 officers of the artillery and engineers. Later, selection was made from the upper half of the class of the infantry and cavalry schools.

The army during this year dwindled to nearly half its authorized size. At one time it numbered altogether 3,750 *Oct. 15 1904* officers and 56,064 enlisted men. Because the pay was practically the same as it had been at the close of the Civil War, privates could not be had and officers had a hard time to live decently. Neither could the troops improve by practice in military work. Such maneuvers as had taken place in 1902, 1903, 1904, were out of the question, because of the lack of appropriation. Altogether it was a parsimonious time for the service.

But as usual, improvements seemed to go along as far as it could within the army. A very comprehensive set of infantry drill regulations appeared. More reference was made to movements *1904* in battle; the location and position of troops with reference to the ground was more carefully considered; and rapid fire was prescribed at a distance of two hundred yards from the enemy. The range for the rifle was classified as follows:

Up to	300 yards	short range.
	300 to 600	mid-range.
	600 to 1,000	long-range.
	1,000 to 2,000	extreme-range.

The company was divided into 2 platoons. The command "fours right" became "squads right," and the normal attack by battalion was given with great precision. Although it has been found out since that there is nothing more detrimental than a normal formation for attack, these drill regulations showed a decided tendency toward battle movement rather than pure drill. There was provision for instruction on varied ground against an imaginary enemy, when his position and force were merely assumed, against an outlined enemy when his position and force were indicated by only a few men, and against a represented enemy when the actual number of troops played the part of a hostile force.

In addition to other setbacks, shortage manifested itself in the officer personnel of the army. Through the detail of officers to the militia and to the staff, 25 per cent of the line officers and 11 per cent of the staff officers were absent from their posts on other highly necessary service. The Secretary of War felt that there should be a corresponding increase of officers in the various branches in order to fill this gap. President Roosevelt even made this suggestion the subject of a special message to Congress. *Jan. 9 1905* But nothing was done. On the other hand, by the details of officers mentioned above, the regular had so well equipped the National Guard that Secretary Taft was able to report that, with few exceptions, the militia conformed to the organization of the regular army. However, the secretary pointed out that much remained to be accomplished in the line of supply, discipline and training before there would be anything like a high average of efficiency. Both the army and the National Guard had done all it could without the help of Congress.

Although he had failed with the legislators along other lines, President Roosevelt created a board to bring up to date *Jan. 31 1905* the report of the Endicott Board. Headed by the secretary, Mr. Taft, this new commission contained the names of the best technical minds in the army and navy on fortification. These men were to have supervision of matters pertaining to our seacoast protection, to armament in general and to the disposition of torpedoes and mines.

A distinct loss to the service and the country occurred at this time in the death of Colonel Arthur L. Wagner, the fore- *July 17 1905* most American strategist and military writer of his time. As a critical student of military history and tactics and the outstanding pioneer of the renaissance, he had left the impress of his knowledge and personality on the schools at Leavenworth to such a degree that in the high standard of that institution

Arthur Lockwood Wagner

his labors are felt to-day. As soon as he came back from the Spanish-American War, in which he had served both in Cuba and the Philippines, he was made in succession Commandant of the Staff College at Fort Leavenworth, was appointed to the General Staff of the army and was given the directorship of the Army War College. He was chief umpire at the Manassas maneuvers in Virginia and was generally looked to as the final authority on military tactics and strategy. His personality was of such an engaging sort that he could readily place his fine technical and tactical knowledge in the hands of the student. One has said of him that his attitude was as courteous to the lowest ranking second lieutenant as to a general. What the service owes to him can scarcely be estimated. Much of the success of our troops in the World War was due to his incipient efforts in awakening the officer back in the nineties to the realization of the unique and endless study and practice required by his magnificent profession. The untimely tragedy of his death is all the more accentuated by the fact that at the very hour he was dying, his commission as a brigadier general in the regular army was lying on the President's desk for signature.

It is a singular coincidence that one of the effects of the thought induced by Wagner and others showed itself in a little over a month after his death. The Army Signal School was established at Fort Leavenworth for the purpose of preparing officers of that corps for the active duties of that branch of the service. The work was largely laboratory in character and was conducted from a standpoint of experiment and research. It was there that some of the great inventions of Colonel Squier were later perfected, inventions which have been of benefit to the entire electrical world. *Aug. 25 1905*

In the Philippines the depredations of Datu Ali had reached such a point that it was necessary to take drastic measures against all the outlaw bands. Although the utmost effort was made to have him surrender without resort to force, every attempt proved to be fruitless in dealing with this class of frenzied Mohammedans. Finally an expedition of 3 officers and 100 picked men from the Twenty-second Infantry and 1 officer and 10 Filipino Scouts under Captain Frank R. Mc-

Coy went against them. Seventy-seven men of this party, with cooked rations for one day and without baggage and other accouterments, set out from Digos. After many hardships they arrived at the Malalag River where they surprised and killed Datu Ali in his hiding place. The result of this success was the seizure and surrender of the hostile Moros and complete pacification of the Cotabato district. The character of the work performed by these troops was no less creditable and daring than that of Funston in the capture of Aguinaldo.

Oct. 16 1905

Oct. 22 1905

In the Philippines, the army had to be called into activity to quell disorders with which the constabulary and scouts were unable to cope. Notably, Colonel J. W. Duncan took a detachment of the Sixth Infantry against the stronghold of Bud-Dajo. The attack of the place was fraught with some of the most desperate fighting known in the army's many engagements in the islands. It looked for some time as if the place could not be carried. Finally Lieutenant Gordon Johnson, with a few men, made their way over the stockade and thus effected an entrance, so that the troops were able to disperse or kill the band of outlaw Moros.

March 1906

March 5–8 1906

On the west coast of the United States, the San Francisco fire had shocked the country and had spread lawlessness throughout the city. No organized body of men could be found to cope with the situation except the troops of the army. Hospitals and fire departments were buried in flames. So prompt was the action of the military man that in less than three hours after the catastrophe (5:14 to 8 o'clock) General Funston had taken charge of the city, and a heavy force of the Twenty-second Infantry, Sixth Cavalry, a detachment of the artillery corps under Colonel Morris, and 2 companies of the First Battalion of Engineers, occupied the principal streets. Fort Mason and the Presidio army posts afforded succor for thousands of homeless as in previous days on the plains. One report states of the soldiers that:

April 18 1906

"They were confronted by appalling conditions, which increased at an alarming rate, from hour to hour, until they threatened to swamp the puny human energies arrayed against them; courage, persistency and endurance won the day, but not until human nature was nearly exhausted. When Saturday morning came (there was no dawning in those days) it was apparent that the worst was over, as the fires had reached their limits, and all breathed more freely. But a new demand arose, or rather, one already existing had increased until it seemed almost impossible to meet its requirements—it was the question of how to feed and shelter hundreds of thousands of men, women and children whose homes had been destroyed, and occupation gone, many of them having lost all but what they were wearing. How this was done and what other assistance was rendered by the United States Army will be told by the extracts from the newspapers from April 18th to May 6th; and from other sources.

"It is proper here to note the first act by the Army, immediately succeeding the disaster, the promptness of which can not be too highly commended. The Department Commander, General Funston, sent a mounted messenger to Fort Mason and the Presidio, ordering all available forces to report promptly to the mayor to assist the police in guarding public property and preserving good order. To this act may be ascribed the perfect order and public safety at a time when lack of them would have resulted in anarchy and riot.

"Immediately after the earthquake General Henry G. Sharpe, Commissary General, ordered Colonel Davis to ship 400,000 rations from Portland, Oregon, to San Francisco; Major Geary was ordered to ship 300,000 rations from Seattle, Washington, and Captain Simonds was ordered to purchase 200,000 rations at Los Angeles and vicinity. The commissary storehouses at the Presidio, Fort Mason and Fort Miley were thrown open and rations issued to the hungry people. Bread in large quantities was baked and large kettles of coffee were made and distributed to the people. The following morning relief supplies began to pour in from neighboring cities and the Subsistence Department at once began to receive the supplies and arrange them for distribution."

The army was not satisfied with bringing San Francisco through from the first stages of its terrible shock, but performed all manner of services in putting the city on its feet again.

"So much general abuse and misappropriation of supplies existed openly on every hand, while the police force was so entirely inadequate, that the army was asked to assume the duty of distributing the relief stores. The troops had performed almost constant duty for nearly two weeks, and were utterly worn out. General Greely called for more troops, and while the number he called for could not be spared, two additional regiments, one of infantry and one of cavalry, were ordered to San Francisco for duty. Also, there were ordered by the Secretary of War, by telegraph, to report to General Greely for duty in conducting relief work, forty-five specially selected officers of experience and of proved administrative ability, all to proceed to San Francisco and report without delay. The orders were sent out from Washington late on April 30th, and received late that night, or on May 1st and on May 2nd the first arrivals reached San Francisco and reported at Division Headquarters, about sundown.

"Next morning the work of supplying over a quarter of a million people began in earnest. With scanty and broken-down transportation, telephone and telegraph lines down, with an insufficient force of troops to guard all points at which guards were needed the problem seemed staggering; yet it had to be solved, and that quickly."

And the army fully accomplished the work. It fed the starving populace, gave havens of comfort, killed looters, opened stores, supervised hospitals, got the fire under control, and many an officer and soldier did not sleep while the constant need for them existed.

In the West Indies the army was called into play on a very delicate mission. The Cuban government was beset with an insurrection of such alarming proportions that it requested assistance from the United States. At once the President dispatched 5 regiments of infantry, 2 of cavalry and several batteries of artillery. The ease with which they crept into the island and their dispatch of movement grandly attested to the existence of a general staff. After the arrival of so many well disciplined and well trained soldiers, the insurrection cooled and ceased. For over two years thereafter they kept order in Cuba by their very presence, and without resort to arms.

Congress now realizing that it had committed an error in not providing for joint maneuvers in 1905, appropriated $700,000 for the purpose. But the irony of this measure was not wholly realized until later. An inventory showed that there was so much of the army in Cuba, the Philippines, Hawaii, and Alaska that the United States proper had a mere shadow of troops. Since there were too few soldiers for the execution of exercises, there were none that year. *June 12 1906*

Congress also increased and reorganized the ordnance department. That branch was to have 1 chief, with rank of brigadier general, 6 colonels, 9 lieutenant colonels, 19 majors, 25 captains and 25 first lieutenants. The temporary transfer of officers from the line of the army after examination was continued, as was also the advanced grade over the line commission for those temporarily detailed to the department. A powder factory, the first in the history of the army, was also provided for in the shape of Picatinny Arsenal at Dover, New Jersey. The service now could manufacture its own ammunition, and keep it uniform. The law also caused the erection of seacoast batteries on the island of Oahu, Hawaii, and allowed the building improvement at the Military Academy to proceed. *June 25 1906* *June 25 1906*

Echoes from other days faintly sounded in the west. Some 300 Ute Indians broke out from their Uintah reservation across Wyoming. The governor of the state had to call for United States troops, which were immediately furnished. The Utes were intercepted by the soldiers and led back to Fort Meade, South Dakota. It would appear from this episode that the previous statement in this history concerning the close of Indian Wars in 1898 was an error. But the flight of the Utes was more of an economic disturbance than a devastating outbreak, as the outcome clearly shows.

The encampments of this year were fraught with more marching and training in the field than at any previous time. Formal ceremonies were kept to the minimum; and spectacular exhibitions, such as sham battles having no military value, were eliminated; 49,717 troops, regulars and militia in about equal proportions, were assembled in seven camps over the country.

These maneuvers demonstrated the advantage of numbers in such practice. Accordingly, the Secretary of War, realizing that there was no longer necessity for the small posts of Indian times, recommended that the troops be combined into larger units so as to be organized on a tactical basis. Every officer then might gain actual experience in the work of administration, supply and movement incident to war. As it stood, officers had seldom had a chance to command more than a regiment and general officers were in the predicament of being forced to use the pen more than the stirrup. In some cases they were benefiting for the future welfare of the nation as much as engineers in jail. Besides, the Secretary's plan was a money-saving proposition. But politics which wanted the little post as a pie to its locality defeated the idea by ignoring it.

Feb. 1 1906 The report of the Coast Defense Board, or Taft Board, showed a rather depressing state of affairs on our shore line. It found, after its labors, that the coast defense we then had was able only to cause an enemy to land with mobile troops. It could keep off ships but not transports laden with soldiers. In other words, all the United States then possessed was a partial harbor defense. Chesapeake Bay was entirely open. The investigations proved that our lackadaisical legislative attempts in the past had but put us where we started—with a sole dependence upon the mobile army.

Jan. 25 1907 However, a signal and excellent change in the organization of the artillery corps came from Congress the next year. For a long time army officers had tried to show the law makers that field artillery, or artillery with the mobile army, did not bear much more resemblance to coast artillery in organization and duties than did cavalry to infantry. This contention caused the coast and field artillery to be separated into two distinct branches and to be incorporated into the line of the army. The chief of artillery was to become chief of coast artillery after a year. The field artillery was to consist of 6 regiments of 6 batteries each. The coast artillery was to consist of 700 officers and 19,147 men. As a consequence, the increase of officers in that branch was so great that promotion far exceeded that of any other arm for some time. Young lieutenants became captains of artillery, whereas old lieutenants of infantry and cavalry still remained lieutenants.

A little over a month later the office of military secretary, after a short life of two years, was converted back again into that of adjutant general. The office of lieutenant general was abolished. *March 2 1907*

It was at this time that representatives from the army began that great contribution to commerce and progress, the Panama Canal. President Roosevelt realizing that civilians could not finish this gigantic undertaking, turned to the army. As Arthur Bullard says:

> "Mr. Roosevelt, while President, came to the conclusion that the canal could not be built by civilian engineers—men trained in private enterprise. There was no way to make them stick to the job. Successful construction men can always command high salaries. And men like Wallace and Stevens, who are used to being their own masters, find the Government service, with its inevitable red tape, irksome. It is impossible to established a permanent working force if the Boss is likely to throw up the job any minute. Under such circumstances no man feels sure of his position. For the spoils system, so much decried in politics, is the ordinary practice in railroading and construction work. What was needed was not only engineering genius, but executive stability. Mr. Roosevelt appointed a Commission of army officers, men who would stay on the job till they were ordered home."

Accordingly, after Mr. Stevens had resigned Colonel George Goethals, corps of engineers, was appointed Chairman and Chief Engineer of the Panama Canal Commission. At the same time he was made Civil Governor of the Canal Zone. The other members designated were Colonel H. F. Hodges, Lieutenant Colonel D. D. Gaillard, Lieutenant Colonel William L. Sibert, corps of engineers; Civil Engineer H. H. Rousseau, of the navy; Colonel W. C. Gorgas, medical corps; Maurice H. Thatcher and Joseph B. Bishop (secretary). *April 1 1907*

What the project needed was a determined administrator at the head and a staff of assistants who would loyally and punctually carry out their chief's wishes. Colonel Goethals was the soldier who let nothing interfere with his mission—to complete the canal. Colonel Gorgas, hand in hand with him, eliminated the yellow fever so that the dread of that disease did not continue to drive the laborers away. Colonel Goethals helped Gorgas in so doing, and the whole staff worked as a disciplined unit, irrespective of personal opinion. Colonel Goethals watched the calendar and his forces minutely. The loose ends were soon knotted. There was no graft. So much did army standards count, that President Roosevelt soon gave complete control of affairs to Goethals. And in the incredible space of six years, what the world had been trying to do for nearly half a century, was finished.

The army's activities in general at this time were very much scattered.[3] In the Philippines, the Pulojanes in Samar and Leyte were making it hard for the constabulary to control them. General Wood sent some detachments of infantry into the island. In a short time he was able to report the trouble at an end. The Army of Cuban Pacification too, under General Barry, was performing its work quietly. It kept the Cubans in leash without friction. A regiment also in the west

June 24 1907

---

[3] Army Activities

Geographical distribution	Officers	Enlisted men	Total
In the United States	2,625	31,637	34,262
In Alaska	52	970	1,022
In the Philippines	688	12,091	12,779
In Porto Rico	3	6	9
In Cuba	276	4,182	4,458
In Hawaii	12	196	208
Troops *en route* and officers at other foreign stations	94	1,108	1,202
In the Philippine Scouts	116	4,346	4,462
In the Porto Rico Regiment	24	572	596
In the Hospital Corps, excluded by the Act of March 1, 1887 (24 Stat. L., 435), from being counted as part of the enlisted strength of the army	.....	.....	3,400
Making a grand total of	3,890	55,108	62,398

conducted the Ute Indians on their long journey from Fort Meade, South Dakota, to the Cheyenne River Reservation.

But the members of the service were in a serious state of depletion, principally on account of the pay of the soldier. Men who could get from $1.75 to $2.50 a day as common laborers scarcely wished to be on a restraining post at $13 a month. Many a company during this time was reduced to as few as 8 privates. Since the skill required of an enlisted man was now much greater than ever before, the inducement to enter the service was still less attractive.

It was in this year that the War Department could not carry on maneuvers with the National Guard because the army was absent in many islands, in Alaska and at the Jamestown Exposition. However, some joint army and militia coast defense exercises took place along the Atlantic coast.

For the officers of the army the commander in chief raised the standards of physical fitness. Field officers, those officers of an age tending to corpulency, had to undergo test rides and other exercises in order to determine whether they could stand the strain of battle. This requirement caused a general movement within the service toward having all officers gain physical stamina far above that of the average civilian. Requirements for daily exercise and medical examinations were to keep the personnel active.

Congress opened the next year with the passage of an act to put the medical corps on a firmer basis and to increase its personnel. *April 23 1908* The corps was to consist of a medical corps proper, a reserve corps, a hospital corps, a nurse corps and dental surgeons. The medical corps proper was to consist of 1 surgeon-general with rank of brigadier general, 14 colonels, 24 lieutenant colonels, 105 majors and 300 captains and first lieutenants. All officers in the corps were to have mounted pay. Young graduates of medical schools throughout the country could be appointed as first lieutenants of the reserve corps and were liable to service at the call of the President.

One of the greatest pieces of legislation for some years from the standpoint of morale and justice was the readjustment of *May 11 1908* pay both for officers and enlisted men. The new schedule, although not tending toward indulgence or extravagance, gave a living salary to the officer and a means of obtaining the proper quality and quantity of enlisted men.[4]

May 27 1908

A third law put the Porto Rico Provisional Regiment on a basis more nearly resembling the regular army. The name was changed to the "Porto Rico Regiment of Infantry of the United States Army." Its enlisted personnel was accepted for three years and its junior officers were given a status more nearly that of the regular army. In the same law, besides the allotment of $300,000 for the construction of gun and mortar batteries for our coast defenses, the sections took up seriously the improvement of the militia provisions. All able-bodied citizens between eighteen and forty-five were theoretically liable for service in the militia but there was no penalty in time of peace for disobedience to the terms of the act. The supply and organization was to be looked after on a more businesslike basis. The standard of the regular army was to be had within two years. The law

---

[4]

Lieutenant general	$11,000
Major general	8,000
Brigadier general	6,000
Colonel	4,000
Lieutenant colonel	3,500
Major	3,000
Captain	2,400
First lieutenant	2,000
Second lieutenant	1,700

RANK AND ARM OF SERVICE—BATTERY, TROOP, COMPANY	*First enlistment*
Sergeant, first class—signal corps	$45
First sergeant—artillery, cavalry, infantry, engineers	
Sergeant—engineers, ordnance, signal corps	36
Quartermaster sergeant—engineers	
Cook—artillery, cavalry, infantry, engineers, signal corps	30
Sergeant—artillery, cavalry, infantry	
Quartermaster sergeant—artillery, cavalry, infantry	
Stable sergeant—field artillery	
Horseshoer—cavalry, field artillery	
Corporal—engineers, ordnance, signal corps	24
Mechanic—coast artillery	
Chief mechanic—field artillery	
Corporal—artillery, cavalry, infantry	21
Artificier—infantry	
Mechanic—field artillery	
Farrier, saddler, wagoner—cavalry	
Private, first class—engineers, ordnance, signal corps	18
Trumpeter—cavalry	15
Musician—artillery, infantry, engineers	
Private—artillery, cavalry, infantry, signal corps	
Private, second class—engineers, ordnance	

read well, in that it appeared to cause the militia to serve wherever and whenever the President wished. But the governors could decline to send out a single man or to furnish the proper type of officers, whenever those executives so decided.

1908

Throughout the army there was particular zeal shown in the improvement of its parts, in many ways. The pay bill had increased the number of soldiers. There were now commands large enough to allow the officer and soldier practice in the field. Minor difficulties in the Philippines were suppressed and the Army of Cuban Pacification was quietly delivering peace. Eight camps of instruction and eleven artillery districts held joint exercises with the militia to the number of 75,000 men. This year also marked the complete issue of the new United States magazine rifle, "model 1906," which for accuracy, speed and power far surpassed the Krag. The ammunition, the magazine and bolt action combined to secure greater ease and speed in reloading. The effect of the establishment of the Picatinny Arsenal was apparent; that plant was turning out about 500 pounds of uniform smokeless powder a day.

1908

It was this year that the Wright brothers made successful flights with a biplane. Several army officers helped in these progressive tests. One, indeed, lost his life so doing. Yet the War Department was prevented from purchasing a single plane because of the absence of funds allowed by Congress. Although this was a new invention, whose efficiency had not been fully shown, it was too bad that this apathy displayed itself just nine years before we tackled the World War. Similarly there were absent, searchlights, submarine mines and power plants for the coast defense.

June 13
1908

In the summer the "Division of Militia Affairs" was created as a part of the general staff. All the militia records were taken from the adjutant general's office and placed in the office of the new bureau, which was to have the superintendence of the organized and unorganized militia during peace so as to coördinate the efforts of the National Guard with the work of the regular army. Thus the state troops could be given more recognition.

May 14 1908 The tests for physical fitness were put in force throughout the service with vigor. All field officers of the mobile army were to demonstrate to a medical officer that they could ride thirty miles a day for three consecutive days. For these older officers this distance had to be covered in periods of six hours for the first two days and in seven and a half hours for the other. Field officers of the coast artillery had to walk fifty miles in three days and in a total of twenty hours, the march on any day to be in consecutive hours. When any of these officers could not make the test, they were to be retired either for length of service or by a retiring board. All the junior officers below field grade were to have a physical examination each year.

1909 The activities of the army during the next year were wide and varied. In the Philippines the Moros, giving trouble to the civil authorities, had to be suppressed in many minor actions by the regulars. The Army of Cuban Pacification was *Jan.–April 1909* brought home, it having completed its usefulness without resort to force. Many defects were brought to light by the army in joint maneuvers with the National Guard of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey and the District of Columbia. Means of supply and mobilization were particularly lacking, principally because the appropriations for vehicles had been inadequate.

March 3 1909 Congress passed a law which appointed a court of inquiry into the case of 3 companies of the Twenty-fifth Infantry. It seems that on one night three years before (August 13–14, 1906), certain colored soldiers of this regiment took their rifles from barracks and "shot up" the town of Brownsville, Texas, where the Twenty-fifth was then stationed. Investigation could not ascertain the culprits. Accordingly President Roosevelt summarily dismissed the 3 companies without honor. It subsequently developed that great provocation had been given these men by the Mexican element of Brownsville especially, and that there were many good old soldiers, not implicated in the riot, who had lost the value of all their service. Accordingly Congress at this time made provision for complete investigation of each case so as to return the innocent men to the colors and to give them back their lost time. Many were reinstated under this provision.

Effort within the army was made to have a modern type of equipment for infantry. A study by a board of 6 officers was begun at Rock Island Arsenal. The accouterments of the armies of the world were investigated. From the work of this board there was later evolved the modern infantry pack. *April 28 1909*

There was yet much to be desired if the efficiency of the service were to count in time of war. Secretary Dickinson, having investigated conditions from records and interviews, showed how nearly 40 per cent of the officers of the army were on detached duty, away from troop training. Such work as duty with National Guard, at schools, and at the Military Academy, left too much to be done by those who remained. He pointed out a need for more officers. He showed that there ought to be an appropriation of at least a half million for aeroplanes. He showed how West Point could not fill the vacancies and that the economy of turning out more cadets with about the same overhead at that plant was apparent. His remarks on the organized militia show what the service was trying to do, but that it could not make a truly efficient showing without Congressional help:

> "Much remains to be done in the way of instruction. While the Constitution provides that discipline shall be the same as that of the Regular Army, it reserves to the States the authority of training the militia. It thus appears that while the War Department can fix standards it has no authority to take direct charge of the training and cause the organized militia thereby to attain such standards. The War Department may provide ways for training, make suggestions as to methods, and fix the standards that must be attained, but it cannot directly conduct the training. . . . As to the mobile state forces, it is specially desired to have them conform to the course at the Army School of the Line at Fort Leavenworth, Kans."

The efforts of the army tended toward practical as well as theoretical education. Field batteries of the Wisconsin, Minnesota, Michigan, Iowa, and Indiana National Guard participated in a school of instruction with a battalion of regular field artillery at Sparta, Wisconsin. Field schools for the instruction of medical officers were held at Sparta, Antietam and the San Francisco Presidio. One hundred and thirty-eight companies of militia coast artillery had been organized this year. In rifle practice 43 militia teams attended the national match at Camp Perry, Ohio. Seventy-eight civilian rifle clubs and 44 schoolboy rifle clubs had been built up.

But when it comes to real discipline and training, such exercises are but rudimentary. Something had to be done by Congress or our whole military organization would be useless in time of war. Secretary Dickinson showed, for instance, that the field artillery with its 48 batteries was far below proportion even for the small army we had. He showed that the posts of the army should be so arranged as to operate tactically instead of administratively and so as to coöperate with the National Guard. He pointed out that the small post was but an accidental result of Indian troubles, that it prevented training and should be abolished. He showed how much more money it took to run these many little plants than a comparatively few large ones. He conclusively proved that under his recommendations there would be vastly more economy, rapidity of mobilization and training of the militia. This logical suggestion was right on the line upon which the general staff had been working, and upon which Secretary Taft had expressed himself several years before. But Congress took no action on this matter.

April 12 1910 It did realize, however, the need of more graduates of the Military Academy and the economy of increase. Accordingly, it passed a law which allowed the Corps of Cadets to be increased by one-fourth its existing size. The enlargement was made by allowing to the Congressman an appointment every three years, instead of every four. This change did not affect the four-year course.

Aug. Sept. 1910 The activities of the army this year were various. A large proportion of regular troops was used in fighting the great forest fires in Montana, Idaho, Washington and Oregon. The soldiers performed excellent service, as would any well-disciplined body of men. But after all, this was scarcely the appropriate work for troops who needed technical and tactical practice. As well use engineers to dig ditches. By the withdrawal of so much of the army for this labor the plans for a camp of instruction for both regulars and National Guard at American Lake had to be relinquished. Either there was no other disciplined body of men for the job or the emergency was so great that the army was the only dependable resort. At any rate, the emergency could scarcely exist for two months, to the exclusion of more important activities.

During the summer, military tournaments of no tactical value were held at seven cities scattered over the United States. Competitions in drill, wall scaling, packing and bridge building caused certain troops to gain skill in elementary exercises, but the character of these events was more spectacular and athletic than fundamental.

The General Staff, meanwhile, had worked out a plan for combining the regulars and National Guard into 3 divisions composing a field army. Of course there was no money to try and test out this paper machine. But the scheme was meticulously drawn up and nicely tabulated. At least the army had marked everything out to the limit of its powers.

Other things had been suggested by the General Staff. In consonance with them, Secretary Dickinson showed Congress that there should be an elimination of inefficient and unprogressive officers, that there should be more officers, that we needed aircraft, guns and ammunition and, above all, that there should be a comprehensive law for the methodical mobilization of a volunteer army in time of war. He showed how no use had been made of the discharged soldier, who had had three years' good schooling and was qualified to enter a reserve army, and that there existed only 1 regular officer or soldier for every 10,000 inhabitants. He brought to light the fact that there was little reserve ammunition. The chief of staff, too, explained that at the current rate of appropriation, it would take fifty years to get an adequate reserve supply of field artillery material.

The Secretary summed up the whole matter when he said:

"In order to avoid the waste inseparable from going to war without full preparation, we must be ready with a complete system for passing from a peace to a war establishment. We should undertake without further delay the problem of simplifying and perfecting the administration and organization of the army to the end that the new army of regulars, organized militia, and volunteers may pass automatically from a peace to a war basis. We have vast military resources, and if we but organize them in time of peace it will not only have a tendency to prevent war, but should war come it will enable the nation to conduct its campaigns with a greater regard for economy and efficiency than has been hitherto possible. It is futile to attempt to place the military establishment of the country upon a proper basis, having due regard for economy and efficiency, by the passage of detached legislation."

Feb 27 1911

In the face of these sentiments, Congress voiced another "detached" law. It increased the corps of engineers by 5 colonels, 6 lieutenant colonels, 19 majors, 17 captains and 13 first lieutenants. The enlargement was to take place by lineal promotion and by the addition of second lieutenants in five annual increments. When the West Point quota of graduates was exhausted the remaining vacancies were to be filled by civilians who could pass a thorough examination.

March 1 1911

In these times of prosperity, the army, in general, was looked upon with disfavor. So common had it become for a certain class of our population to discriminate against soldiers, that Congress had to pass a law in order to give them the ordinary rights of citizens. Signs had been posted outside of places of amusement "No soldiers admitted." Insults and abuses had been heaped upon the man in uniform in various ways. It came to such a pass, that our lawmakers thought it wise to allow a fine of $500 to be imposed on any proprietor, manager or employee of a public place who caused such class distinction.

March 3 1911

Congress by this time saw the need of detailing officers to act as instructors of the National Guard. It accordingly passed a law which permitted the President to detach an officer for that purpose in the proportion of one for each regiment or separate battalion of infantry, and an equivalent number for other branches. Such detail was to create a vacancy for promotion and allow corresponding appointments of second lieutenants.

At the same time, the injustice done to officers by regimental promotion before October 1, 1890, was overcome. Those who had suffered by stagnation in a particular regiment and had thus been topped by men of shorter length of service were to be advanced to the grade they would have attained, had promotion been always lineal in the particular branch of the service. The ones who had been fortunately favored by regimental promotions were not to be affected. *March 3 1911*

By these acts Congress had added 12 engineer officers, 60 dental surgeons and some 200 line officers to meet the demands of detached service. Although the vacancies were to be filled in annual increments, West Point was still unable to fill the quota of second lieutenants. Consequently many officers were taken in from civil life, after rigid examination.

Similar care was taken with the recruitment of enlisted men, 72 per cent of the applicants being rejected.

In the Philippines the Moros in the Sarangani peninsula of Mindanao became so lawless that an expedition under Major Heiberg commanding some Philippine Scouts was sent against them. After arduous labor by his and other columns, peace was restored. At the same time detachments of the Regulars had their hands full in preserving order in the Lake Lanao district, Mindanao. *1911*

One of the biggest demonstrations of the inefficacy of our efficient regular army was the attempt to assemble in Texas a division and some regiments of coast artillery. The border along the Rio Grande was again so filled with unrest that it was felt necessary to make a show of strength in Texas. Already 2 troops of cavalry had been dispatched to help the civil authorities preserve the neutrality. But affairs became so threatening that a larger force was necessary. Accordingly, orders were issued for the concentration of a "maneuver division" at San Antonio. It was to be composed of 3 brigades of infantry, 1 brigade of field artillery and 1 independent cavalry brigade, with the necessary auxiliary troops, all under the command of Major General William H. Carter.[5] At the same time *March 6 1911*

---

[5] Author of many technical works especially a standard textbook on "Hippology."

36 companies of coast artillery, equally divided into 3 regiments, were ordered to Galveston under Brigadier General Albert L. Mills. The officers of the staff and the troops were assembled from everywhere and had never had a chance to work together before. The division was never up to full strength during its entire stay and it was several months before the railroads could get the last regiments to their destination. General Wood, Chief of Staff, said of the division's work:

> "The mobilization has emphasized the fact that our regiments in peace should be kept at greater strength, and it has also brought out very forcibly the necessity for a reserve with which to bring the regiments from their peace strength to full war strength. The experience in the mobilization in Texas has also emphasized the necessity for accumulating a sufficient quality of reserve supplies and the establishment of proper depots; in short, the necessity for proper military organization and preparedness for war."

The concentration took practically all of the various units of the United States Army within the continental limits and put them in a position to patrol the border from the mouth of the Rio Grande to San Diego, California. The maneuvers afforded the regulars an excellent object lesson of the workings of a regular division, something never demonstrated before in our history. It gave great practice to the staff and line in understanding our deficiencies with regard to supply and movement. Above all, it proved what the army had long known, that our land forces were deprived of making a showing against a stout enemy.

Although the elements of movement and strength were denied the service, the fruition of the renaissance was still manifesting itself. *June 3 1911* A School of Fire for Field Artillery was established at Fort Sill, Oklahoma. Its purpose was to give a thorough, practical and theoretical course of instruction in the principles and methods of field-artillery target practice. The service was doing the best it could to gain experience in military technic. But a school of this kind at that time looked pathetic and grotesque when it is realized that there was not enough field-artillery ammunition in the United States to last through a normal modern battle.

In other fields the army was also pushing ahead. The *1911* "Taylor system" of scientific management was put into effect at Watertown Arsenal. The bureaus and branches of the War Department were united with a resulting economy in overhead. Foreign service regiments were recruited up to full war strength before sending them abroad so as to save the expense of transporting separate recruits and to have a maximum number of soldiers in our possessions. Mounted troops were stationed where climate favored year-round training. A new *Infantry Drill Regulations* gave a more important place to combat than ever before prescribed in such a work. The mechanism of drill was subordinated to tactical principles which were laid down concretely, but with sufficient latitude for application.

It was this year more than any other that marked the decided change between the old army and the new. The forward- *1911* looking spirit had saturated the big percentage of the service. The officer became a practical progressive in his profession, or he was cast aside. Bad habits and laxity were treated with such harshness that the army was signally purged of the laggards. As for efficiency, it began to take on a business aspect. The soldier became primarily a worker. He was not limited to an eight-hour day. He had not only to keep fit but also to demonstrate his capacity for leadership and the proper execution of his tasks. In effect, a great milestone of the renaissance had been set up on the way toward larger fruition.

Actions were still going on in the Philippines, as is illustrated by the fact that the Moro outlaws were yet on the warpath. Captain E. G. Peyton with 2 troops of cavalry and 2 companies of Philippine scouts rounded up the worst of these outlaws in the island of Jolo and succeeded in reducing them. Twenty Moros were killed and 2 Americans wounded, 1 officer and 1 enlisted man. *Jan. 14 1912*

So recurrent were the depredations of the Moros that a word might be here said about the peculiar nature of the activities of the soldier in grappling with these determined people.[6] In the first place, the Moro was a Mohammedan. The Moro chief, or Datu, sometimes Maharajali Saakat, made his own laws for his particular gratification. Agriculture and trade were thus discouraged because the Datu took away the produce at his own pleasure. The main ambition of the Moro was, therefore, to get a rifle, which he could hide and keep. With every weapon he could purchase another wife or raise himself in rank and power. This power was mostly abused and a menace to our standards of civilization. Sleeping soldiers would be stabbed in the dead of night and their rifles seized. When Captain (now General) Pershing was Governor of the Moro province, he came to the conclusion that the key to progress for the Moro was to deprive him of his firearms. Accordingly, all that could be called in were taken and paid for. But Moro agitators harangued the people, contending that the Americans were taxing them, denying them slaves, limiting them to one wife and charging them for the privilege of being married. Open resistance by hundreds of Moros followed. They took refuge in the Bud Dajo crater in defiance of the orders of the governor. It would have been but a day's operation to have potted them where they were, but Captain Pershing understood that many ignorant and misguided men were among the contenders. It was then that Major Peyton, Philippine scouts, was ordered to conquer this band, but spare their lives if possible. He surrounded the pit and prepared to starve out the Moros. Double sentinel posts, one soldier with a rifle and another with a shotgun, were placed about the camp. These men did not sleep because they knew death in the shape of a creeping Moro would await them if they winked. Barbed wire besides was strung up near the main body. Sallies by the Moros night after night kept the soldiers engaged, when these half-civilized natives tried to cut their way out. Crazed or running Juaramentado, in religious frenzy, a single Moro with creese or bolo would charge a whole battalion of troops. Finally, all the Moros in the crater decided to come in, except 47, who disappeared in the jungle. But these latter ones were similarly forced to surrender later.

---

[6] These facts were obtained, at the solicitation of the author, from an eyewitness.

Jan. 1912 During the next year, a renegade Moro by the name of Dowd collected a band of outlaws in a very inaccessible place.

Major Peyton, with 5 companies of scouts, 1 company of infantry and 2 troops of cavalry, went against them. Dowd had committed all sorts of crimes, so that after being induced to come to a conference and having been told that nothing would be done to him if he surrendered, except to put him before a court, he departed with a defiant refusal. It was then that Major Peyton did a very unique thing. Finding the ordinary trails to Dowd's position well covered with fire, he resolved to cut new trails. The continual chopping in unseen places warned the Moros that the troops were coming on, but they could not see their targets and they did seem to be able to change their plan. A severe action followed, when most of the Moros were either killed or captured. Dowd escaped but was later killed in an effort to capture him.

Although all of the arms of the Moros were not yet taken, the troops for political reasons were withdrawn.[7] It was reported that quiet reigned. It did, with much robbery, murder, arson and peonage. When later, new troops, unacquainted with Moro customs, attempted to round up the increased number of recreant Mohammedans, their losses were unnecessary in many cases. One company, having to learn afresh the dangers that attended work with these savages, camped on the edge of a large lake where the surf was rolling high. In the night the noise of the waters kept the sentries from hearing sounds of lurking Moros. As a consequence, several stole into camp, cut off the captain's head and severely wounded a lieutenant.[8]

1912 In the early part of the year the Maneuver Division and the First Separate Brigade were disbanded. But the border raids still continued. In fact, the withdrawal of the troops caused more depredations and seemed to be an open invitation to Orozco's rebel forces. The Ninth Cavalry was sent to Douglas, Arizona, and the Thirteenth to El Paso, Texas. These regiments were particularly successful in suppressing the attempt made in Texas by General Reyes to instigate an insurrection against Madero.

This command also enforced the embargo on arms and ammunition for the Mexicans. It patrolled so carefully that it prevented raids on American ranches in Texas and Arizona. Before the end of the year there had to be upon the Mexican border 6 regiments of cavalry, 1½ regiments of infantry, 1 battalion of field artillery, 2 companies of coast artillery and 1 company of the signal corps: a total of 6,754 officers and men. During the summer 67,280 men of the organized militia participated with the regular troops in five joint maneuvers. The tactical work developed in these was very superior to anything in the past.

---

[7] The Presidential elections were in sight.

[8] For number and designation of regular troops in Philippines from 1899–1912, see Appendix E.

It was at this time that the floods along the Ohio and the Mississippi produced such tremendous trouble and loss that it was necessary to call out officers and troops of the regular service to alleviate the suffering. So quietly, methodically and efficiently did the supply and the care of the refugees take place that there was little notice of the actions of the army by the public.

March, Apr 1912

The mobile army in the United States was at this time scattered in some 49 posts throughout 24 different states. The average strength per garrison was less than 700 men. Effort was made by the General Staff to form these troops into a tactical organization of 3 infantry divisions composed of 2 or 3 brigades, with the proper attached troops. Of course this organization could be made only on paper as long as Congress persisted in scattering the army so widely and withholding from it the vital training necessary for large bodies of troops. A scheme of complete organization worked out by the War College Division of the General Staff tried to rectify the utter absence of technical and tactical organization throughout the country. A sound and definite policy was formulated. It estimated that at the outbreak of war with a first class power the United States should be capable of assembling at once an effective force of 460,000 mobile troops and 43,000 coast artillery. It gave this strength as a minimum for the first line necessary. In addition it conservatively felt that plans should be made to raise 300,000 men. But these projects could not be carried out without legislative help.

July 1912

Aug. 24 1912

It was during this year that a very drastic "Manchu Law" was passed by Congress. It provided that officers who had not served two years of the previous six with a troop, battery or company should immediately be returned to troops and serve there the required time. Only certain officers of the Judge-Advocate-General's Department, the Ordnance Department and those on duty in the Panama Canal Zone were exempted. The law was sweeping in its effect and caused temporary demoralization in the service schools and some staff departments. However, the idea was sound in that it showed a desire to have an officer familiar with his duties of command as well as those of staff work.

At the same time, the quartermaster, subsistence and pay departments were combined and called a quartermaster corps under a chief with the rank of major general. Such consolidation made for better efficiency and economy. The control of these correlated branches now came under one man so that waste of material and motion could later be avoided.

It is interesting to note that there was a fair attempt this year to notice the air work of the army. An appropriation of $100,000 for the purchase, maintenance, operation and repair of airships and other aërial machines did not go very far, but it showed a tendency to note the existence of this new branch of the military service, however slightly.

One very important part of this law was the attempt by Congress to create a reserve for the regular army. When a man enlisted, he was to serve three years with the colors and four years with the reserves. The law as it stood was a good idea, but there was no provision in it for the payment of soldiers while in the reserve, except in case of war. Also, a man understanding the type of service upon which he was to enter hesitated about signing up for so long a time as seven years. In other words, certain compromises in the measure resulted in defeating its purpose. As a concrete example of what actually happened, the Secretary of War after two years was able to report that there existed the magnificent reserve in the United States of sixteen men.

A board of general officers presided over by Secretary Stimson met in Washington for the purpose of organizing as perfectly as possible the land forces of the United States for war, so that when an emergency came there would not be any great amount of turmoil or needless expense in passing from one stage to the other. Of course what the board could do was limited in view of the absence of legislation. However, the mobile army within the United States was given a tactical organization into divisions and brigades for the purpose of administering all military matters territorially. For this purpose, peace distribution was reorganized into six geographical departments: Eastern, Central, Western, Southern, Philippine and Hawaiian.

Feb. 6 1913

The Mexican frontier continued to be patrolled by 6,700 soldiers who tried to cover a territory of 1,600 miles in extent, from the Gulf of Mexico to thirty miles west of Nogales, Arizona. Huerta having succeeded Madero was opposed by Carranza, Villa and Zepata. Much firing took place on the territory adjacent to the boundary line, which was coveted by all the Mexican parties. Many refugees and wounded Mexicans came over the border. Often shots flew northward across the Rio Grande. A slight mistake on the part of the troops and international relations would have become very complicated. At length, the trouble became so acute that orders were issued for the concentration at Texas City and Galveston of the Second Division under Major General Wm. H. Carter. The 11,450 men making up these organizations were transported with great dispatch in comparison to the speed of the maneuver division of 1911. In a little over a week after the first orders were issued, all the troops had reached their destinations.

Feb. 21–24 1913

At war strength this division should have been 22,565. As it was, had the division been involved in hostilities, it would have been necessary to recruit it by 50 per cent in the face of the enemy, with the consequent disaster that has similarly overtaken such unreadiness in the past. Of the force assembled in Texas, the British and German military attachés stated that they had never seen a finer body of troops collected, nor had they seen better discipline, less intoxication or such perfect sanitary arrangements in camps. Although the country was drained of its trained forces, those who were ready were in perfect condition.

March 1913

In the valleys of the Ohio and the Mississippi, floods of a graver nature than the year before rendered many people homeless and caused much suffering. The army was again called upon to handle the situation. With energy, skill and dispatch supplies were distributed, refugees taken care of and the interruptions to business curtailed. In a similar way troops took care of the devastated regions of Omaha, Nebraska and Lower Peachtree, Alabama. Later the soldiers efficiently fought forest fires in California and in the Adirondacks.

A camp of instruction for regular cavalry was held at Winchester, Virginia. The Tenth, Eleventh and 2 squadrons of the Fifteenth Cavalry participated. Similarly camps of instruction for field artillery were held at Tobyhanna, Pennsylvania, Fort Riley, Kansas, and Fort Sill, Oklahoma. It was in this year that the army began really to spread its education to civilians other than the National Guard. Undergraduate students of seventeen years of age or over, who were physically qualified and recommended, were given the opportunity of taking a practical course of instruction. Two such camps were held at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, and at the Presidio of Monterey, California, during six weeks of the summer. The object was to give training in maneuvers, tactics, care of troops, camp sanitation and rifle practice. The paramount idea was that of bringing to young men something which would render them more capable in sudden emergencies and make them, incidentally, more valuable citizens. There being no appropriation to cover all expenses, the students had to pay for their transportation as well as for their subsistence and clothing. Even with this voluntary drawback, at Gettysburg 159 young men from 63 universities and colleges, and at Monterey 85 from 27 educational institutions, received the course.

July, Sept. 1913

July 18 to Sept. 30 1913

Another evidence of the renaissance was the establishment of the School of Musketry at Fort Sill, Oklahoma. Its purpose was especially that of giving instruction in small-arms firing. The founding of this school was the small beginning of the great Infantry School now at Fort Benning, Georgia, with its elaborate curriculum. Courses were given to both officers and enlisted men of the regular army and National Guard. Along this same line an aviation school at Augusta, Georgia, was transferred to Texas City, in order to participate in the operations of the Second Division. Although 15 aeroplanes consti-

June 9 1913

tuted the entire equipment of the army aviation corps, two nonstop flights of 240 miles were made and sketches drawn by the reconnoitering officer. Of course we had no dirigible balloons of any sort.

Feb. 25 1914

March 19 1914

The appearance of new *Tables of Organization and Field Service Regulations* disclosed a tendency toward a more modern use of troops in the field. Improvements in administration and supply had been culled from the best of foreign methods. Officers and men were given more independence in the execution of their tasks. The idea of simply looking in the book to see what one had to do, was overcome by an emphasis upon principle rather than precept.

March 1 1914

The troops in the Moro country of the Philippines were again on the move. Some trouble was experienced in getting the Moros to subside, after being some time without restraint. An action at Bud Tandu was decisive.

April 25 1914

At last legislation conscientiously tried to put the volunteers on a sound basis for any emergency. The land forces of the United States were to consist of the "regular army, the organized land militia while in the service of the United States and such volunteer forces as Congress may authorize." The term of enlistment for volunteers was to be the same as that for regulars. No officer above the grade of colonel was to be appointed in the volunteers. The President could appoint regular officers to volunteer commissions in the proportion of 4 to each regiment of cavalry, field artillery or infantry, or to 12 companies of coast artillery; and not more than 1 to each volunteer battalion of engineers, signal corps or field artillery. The regular commissions were not to be vacated by the appointment of regulars to higher grades in the volunteers. By the removal of the regular officers for such purpose, temporary vacancies and promotion were created in the regular service. When war was imminent or upon us, all organizations of the land forces were to be recruited and maintained at their maximum strength. The measure showed the first inclination of Congress in our history to foresee the necessity for having an established status for the volunteer before the emergency occurred.

April 27 1914

Another act appropriated $250,000 for airships and other aërial craft. It also authorized the Secretary of War to purchase a tract of land either near Tullahoma, Tennessee, or at Anniston, Alabama, for the purpose of establishing a permanent maneuver camp for the troops of the United States army and the National Guard.

July 18 1914 The organization of aviation units was for the first time seriously given attention in legislation. An aviation section of the signal corps, to operate and supervise military aircraft, was to be composed of not more than 60 officers and 260 enlisted men. Officers were to be detailed to this work for four years and were to be classified either as junior military aviators or military aviators. The junior aviators were to have the rank, pay and allowances of a grade above that which they held in the line, provided they did not hold rank above that of first lieutenant. Only 15 military aviators were allowed. They were to have the rank, pay and allowance of a junior military aviator and also to receive an increase of 75 per cent of their pay. Both types of aviators could be given this higher rate of pay only when they were making regular and frequent flights. The hazard of the position of aviator was recognized when Congress allotted to the widow of an officer or enlisted man, killed as a result of an aviation accident, one year's full pay.

The task of patrolling the Mexican border, a duty most arduous and thankless, was performed by 250 officers and 8,260 enlisted men assigned from the Southern and Western Departments. Due to an unpleasantness which had arisen when Admiral Mayo was insulted by the Huerta Government at Vera Cruz it was thought necessary to bring the army into play in Mexico itself. Brigadier General Funston was ordered to go to Vera Cruz. He at once set out by way of Galveston with *April 23 1914* 4 regiments of infantry of the Fifth Brigade, Company E of the Second Battalion of Engineers and a field hospital. He *April 24 1914* was followed later by the Fourth Field Artillery from Texas City. General Funston reached Vera Cruz promptly and disembarked his troops. *April 28 1914* A little later he took command of the city. Under him were 225 officers, 3,832 enlisted men of the *April 30 1914* regular army and 113 officers and 3,333 men of the marines. He extended his line so as to include El Tejar, which controlled the water supply of the city.

Due to the change of government in Mexico there was little action that could be taken. However, the conduct and work of the troops were excellent in this trying situation. Officers and men had to deal very tactfully with the natives because they could neither go into Mexico nor go away from it. General Funston's predicament was all the more pitiable when it is considered that had he received an order to journey in the path that Winfield Scott had followed nearly seventy years before, he would have found that he could not budge. He had almost no transportation and a reduced peace strength which lowered his numbers to a pitiable figure. The Mexicans, too, were strong and armed with modern weapons. Thus a great nation of over 100,000,000 people for the third time in three years presented a spectacle to the world of being unable to assemble in their troubles even the semblance of a powerful force.

July 6 to Aug. 7 1914

June 26 to July 1 1914

So successful had been the encampments, especially with the students, in the previous summer that effort was made to have two sets of two each this year. As a consequence 348 students were sent to Burlington, Vermont; 120 to Asheville, North Carolina; 114 to Ludington, Michigan; and 85 to Monterey, California.

All through this year labor disturbances, especially in the coal regions, demanded the dispatch of regular troops to quell the disorder. Colorado, Montana and Arkansas were all visited by the Federal forces with the usual lulling effect. Such police work deprived the regular army of giving the instruction necessary in joint encampments with the National Guard. The consequence was that during this year there was almost a dearth of such field work. Even the camps for medical officers and schools of instruction for field artillery had to be canceled, with the exception of a field artillery encampment at Tobyhanna, Pennsylvania.

March 3 1915

The legislation for the army during the second year of the World War was quite scattered. Several million dollars were spent on the armament of the Panama Canal. The enormous allotment of $15,000 for the purpose of having officers sent abroad to observe and study the war in Europe, did not show an excessive interest in the illuminating situation of a new type of warfare overseas. On this account officers of the highest merit could not be sent to the scene of the World War in order to learn the endless details of that mechanism which would have been so invaluable to us later. At this late date, Congress began to look at aviation a trifle more earnestly. Its extreme *March 4 1915* activity manifested itself in the appointment of 3 army officers who were to report on the "advisability of the acquisition by the government of land for an aviation school and training ground." The Porto Rico regiment of infantry was incorporated into the regular army, its officers being sprinkled about on the list with regular officers according to length of service. Modern discipline throughout the penitentiaries of the service had been put in vogue with success. Congress, therefore, changed the name of the military prisons at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, to that of the United States Disciplinary Barracks. The thanks of Congress were extended to the members of the Isthmian Canal Commission. Colonel Goethals was raised to the grade of major general as was also Brigadier General William C. Gorgas. Colonel Hodges and Lieutenant Colonel Sibert were made brigadier generals of the line. A survey of the legislation effected this year, although no part of it was bad in itself, gives the impression of futility. The country was looking upon the World War in Europe as a spectator. That the mightiest conflict in history had embroiled half the civilized world caused little suspicion that somehow the fray might strike us, or a belief that we might be free from it with a little more intelligent strength.

Mr. Gardiner, Representative from Massachusetts, had offered excellent bills for appropriations for the aviation corps, for the making of a sufficient quantity of small-arms ammunition and for the production of field artillery material and ammunition. Although every one of these measures was decidedly necessary, even were we not going to be thrown into the World War two years later, the Congress overwhelmingly rejected them.

The state of the army at this time was deplorable in size and excellent in quality. It is sufficient to say that all the foot-loose mobile units we had within the borders of the United States consisted of 1 regiment and 1 squadron of cavalry and *April 30 1915*

1 regiment of field artillery.[9] There was not a single regiment of infantry in its quarters or permanent station. In other words, the army was doing war duty, especially on the Mexican border, with only the mounted force above shown free for emergency. Besides, 27 companies of coast artillery would soon have to be sent away in order to garrison forts in the Philippines, Hawaii and the Canal Zone. This is all the more striking when it is known that the army consisted at this time of 31 regiments of infantry, 15 regiments of cavalry, 6 regiments of field artillery, 170 companies of coast artillery, 8 companies of signal corps, 3 battalions and a detachment of engineers, 7 field hospitals, 8 ambulance companies, 1 evacuation hospital and the Philippine scouts.

Mr. Garrison, one of the ablest Secretaries of War this country has ever seen, and one who as much as any martyr sacrificed his personal interests for a principle, showed that, when the proper deductions of the naturally stationary troops were made, there remained but 24,602 men of the mobile forces in the entire regular army. This was a smaller actual strength than at any time since 1861, except in April, 1865, when we had so many trained veteran volunteers still in the service. Equal to the shortage in troops was that of the officers. Over 28 per cent of them were absent from their commands for the valid reasons of detached service and casualties. Only 200 line officers had been added to the service, when many times that number were needed. All manner of materials for war were absent. The United States had only 21 aëroplanes and no dirigibles, whereas France had 500 aeroplanes and 11 dirigibles and Great Britain 250 aeroplanes and 8 dirigibles at this time. The United States possessed all told not 700 3-inch field pieces, whereas France had 4,800 even prior to the beginning of the war in Europe. In the entire country, the ammunition for field artillery totaled only 5,800 rounds, or about all that would suffice for a two days' battle: as for rifle ammunition, there was enough on hand for only four days' fighting.

---

[9] Four troops of cavalry at Fort Sheridan, Ill.; 4 troops and 1 signal company at Fort Leavenworth; 2 troops at Fort Robinson, Nebraska; 1 regiment of field artillery at Fort Sill, Oklahoma; 4 troops of cavalry at Fort Meade, South Dakota; and 2 troops at Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming.

The organized militia of the entire United States amounted to only 127,410 men, including coast artillery and staff. Nothing of real value had been done to establish a "second line" on a firm basis, although efforts of the general staff had been incessant in its endeavor to gain a tactical organization of the combined regular army and militia. Outside of 1 New York and 1 Pennsylvania division, other National Guard units were woefully deficient in personnel, matériel and training.

The year ended with the carrying out of a very happy idea by General Wood, then in command of the Department of the East. He established a military instruction camp for business and professional men which was held at Plattsburg, New York. *Aug. 10–Sept. 6 1915* The way in which the attendants set aside their personal business and whole-heartedly entered into the spirit of rigorous discipline cannot be too highly complimented. The conduct and training of that month was something that was of the utmost value later in our participation in the war. Although the size of the assemblage made it only a drop in the bucket, it was the start of the training camp, which was to be a great factor later.

The affairs in Mexico, marked by the killing of defenseless Americans, grew to be of such grievous nature that the country clamored for retribution. For months the matter became more serious. Finally Pancho Villa with about 1,500 bandits rode *March 9 1916* across the border and attacked the defenseless town of Columbus, New Mexico. He looted the place with the usual brutality to women and children, killing 11 civilians, 9 soldiers, wounding many others and burning a number of buildings. Having cut the telegraph wires, he embarrassed the Thirteenth Cavalry in its communication with the town. Nevertheless, some 250 of the Tthirteenth pursued the raiders, killing 40 of them and wounding many more. The regiment's loss was 1 killed.

It was found immediately necessary to send a force into Mexico, since the Carranza government had shown itself incapable of protecting Americans and American soil.

Brigadier General John J. Pershing was appointed to

March 15 1916 command a punitive expedition for the purpose of rounding up Villa.[10] With great dispatch he began his crossing of the border from Columbus, having under him the Sixth and Sixteenth Infantry, the Eleventh and Thirteenth Cavalry, 1 battery of the Sixth Artillery, the First Aero Squadron, and some engineer, signal, ambulance and hospital troops. At the same time Colonel George A. Dodd with the Seventh and Tenth Cavalry and 1 battery of the Sixth Artillery crossed the border further west. The march south was exceedingly difficult both because Carranza refused the use of the railroads to the troops and because the villages, in most cases, could not be used. The available motor truck and pack train supply was far from adequate, almost disgraceful. As the troops proceeded farther and farther from their base, their hardships increased.

The expedition, too, had orders from Washington which embarrassed it. It was to proceed against Villa without occupying towns and without coming into conflict with Carranza forces. It was a difficult proposition thus to march in the waste places and to keep out of the way of the Mexicans who were actively hostile to the Americans.

April 1 1916 Pershing had to be reënforced by more troops later. For instance, parts of the Twentieth and Twenty-fourth Infantry started from Columbus. Meanwhile some other regular regiments of the country were concentrated along the border, and an extra motor truck train was purchased.

March 28 1916 The American troops reached a point two hundred miles south of the border in spite of these handicaps. Colonel Dodd *March 29 1916* with about 400 men of his cavalry regiment surprised and attacked about 500 bandits under Villa at Guerrero. He scattered the force after a sharp fight and captured 2 machine guns and a large number of horses, saddles and arms. The Villa forces lost at least 30 killed, whereas the Americans had 4 men wounded, not seriously. This battle was the only one of the war which was directly concerned with Villa. The others were the results of the hostile attitude of the Carranza troops in apparent opposition to the first understanding between the two governments.

---

[10] For complete statistics on this expedition see Appendix F.

April 2 1916

General Pershing's headquarters were transferred to Namiquipa, about two hundred and twenty-five miles south of Columbus. Supplies were more and more difficult to get, but field bakeries and rolling kitchens began to count in relieving the hunger of the troops.

April 1 1916

April 7 1916

April 10 1916

Minor actions, on account of the opposition by Carranza, took place at several Mexican towns. Colonel Brown, with 271 officers and men of the Tenth Cavalry, met Villistas at Agua Caliente. Captain Kendrick similarly with 96 officers and men of the Seventh Cavalry had a brush with some Villistas at Agua Zarca. Major Howze with 264 officers and men of the Eleventh Cavalry had a larger engagement at La Joya. All these actions were successful in driving back the enemy.

April 12 1916

In scouting ahead of the column, Major Frank Tompkins with 2 troops of the Thirteenth Cavalry came to the town of Parral. General Lozano of the Carranzistas accompanied Major Tompkins to his camp, but the Americans were followed by a jeering mob of Mexicans who threw stones at them and fired in their direction. Major Tompkins took up a defensive position north of the railroad, and in superhuman self-control refrained, under the orders of his government, to bring on a fight with the Carranzistas. However, he was finally flanked out by a superior force of Mexican troops, who did not seem to be controlled by their general. About 300 of them pursued the small force of American cavalry which had to withdraw under instructions that exasperated these brave but obedient men. The scattering losses in this defensive retreat had been about 40 Mexicans against 2 American soldiers killed and 6 wounded. It was not until fifteen miles of withdrawal had taken place that the pursuing Mexicans ceased their fire. There the 2 troops were reënforced by 1 squadron of the Tenth Cavalry and 4 machine guns.

April 18 1916

This incident caused the general knowledge of what the army was aware of long since, that the whole Mexican nation was actively hostile to our troops. General Pershing was reënforced by 2,300 troops, including the Seventeenth Infantry, the Fifth Cavalry and 1 battalion of the Fourth Field Artillery.

Small engagements scattered themselves about during the

April 20 1916 remainder of the month. Colonel Brown with 45 men of the Seventh Cavalry drove back a small force of Villistas at Verde *April 22 1916* River. Colonel Dodd with 154 men of the Seventh Cavalry had a very successful battle with an equal number of Villistas at Tomachie.

A conference between the representatives of the two nations, Obregon and Trevino for Mexico and Generals Scott and Fun- *Early May 1916* ston for the United States, was held at El Paso, Texas. While the deliberations, which seemed to reach a deadlock, were in prog- *May 5 1916* ress, a raid was made by a party of Villa bandits, numbering about 50, on Glenn Springs, Texas. Nine men of the Fourteenth Cavalry, who were on picket duty there, were surrounded. Taking refuge in an adobe hut, they fought with great valor. But when the Mexicans set the roof afire, they had to flee: 3 were killed, 2 wounded and 2 badly burned. The Villistas also killed *May 5 1916* a boy in the village. Major Langhorne pursued the bandits, capturing 14 prisoners.

At Ojos Azules in Mexico, Major Howze with a squadron of the Eleventh Cavalry routed with great success a force of the Villistas. These events caused the President to see that negotiations were futile, and that more strength would have to be *May 9 1916* applied to the wily work of the Carranzistas. Accordingly, he ordered the last of the regular mobile troops, who happened at that moment to be in the United States, to the border—the Third, Fourteenth, Twenty-first and Thirtieth Infantry, the Fifth Field Artillery and practically all of the remaining coast artillery. With the country so drained, he caused the governors of Arizona, New Mexico and Texas to send their National Guard to report to the regular army whose officers would federalize the militia organizations.

May 1916 Minor actions continued through the month with Carranzistas in Mexico, the feeling growing more intense. Small de- *May 14, 25 1916* tachments of the Sixth and Seventeenth Infantry, respectively, had sharp engagements at San Miguel de Rubio and Alamillo Cañon.

June 3 1916 It was while all this was happening that Congress, having a concrete example of the meagerness of our forces, passed a National Defense or Reorganization Act, which was one of the greatest advances over all previous military legislation. The regular army was to consist of 65 regiments of infantry, 25 of cavalry and 21 of field artillery, an equivalent of 93 companies of coast artillery, 8 aero squadrons, 7 regiments of engineers, and the corresponding staff corps. This organization gave the country a peace force of 175,000 men as fighting units. The army of the United States was to include the regular army, the volunteer army, the officers' reserve corps, the enlisted reserve corps and the National Guard (while in the service of the United States). The mobile troops of the regular army were to be organized into divisions and brigades on a tactical basis. Four major-generals and 19 brigadiers were added to the line. The General Staff was to consist of the chief of staff, 2 general officers of the line, 10 colonels, 10 lieutenant colonels, 15 majors and 17 captains, to be detailed for four years at a time. The cavalry and infantry regiments had added to them a supply company, a headquarters company and a machine-gun company. A division had 3 brigades of 3 regiments each. The increase was to take place in five equal and annual installments. Promotion was equalized to a certain extent between branches by the addition of a small number of colonels to the infantry and cavalry. An officers' reserve corps was provided for by giving commissions to civilians proven to be qualified by examination. An enlisted reserve corps was to be built up by soldiers furloughed to the reserve, the enlistment for the regular soldier being three years with the colors and four years with the reserve. Men with character "excellent" could be transferred to the reserve after one year. Vocational training of the soldier was provided for, and federalizing about 425,000 National Guard could be had under the law. The medical corps was to consist of medical corps proper, medical reserve corps, dental corps, veterinary corps and nurse corps. A special provision authorized the Secretary of War to maintain training camps which gave opportunity for much more unified handling of state troops. The President, when authorized by Congress to use the land forces, could draft the National Guard and the National Guard Reserve into the service of the United States. The Corps of Cadets by a previous act had been increased to a maximum of 1,334 cadets, by giving each Congressman two appointments. *May 4 1916*

Altogether legislation allowed the army a maximum war strength of 287,846 men.[11]

June 5
1916

The training camp at Plattsburg was opened for business men in spite of the fact that there was scarcely any army in the country.

---

[11] OLD LAW

Organizations	Officers	Enlisted men	
		Min.	Max.
31 regiments infantry	1,531	25,035	56,315
15 regiments cavalry	750	12,240	18,540
6 regiments field artillery	246	5,010	7,116
3 batallions engineers	57	1,234	2,002
Coast artillery corps (170 companies)	701	......	19,321
Total combatants	3,285	62,840	103,294
Signal corps	106	1,472	1,472
Medical department	504	4,012	4,012
Quartermaster corps	187	6,403	6,403
Other troops and staff departments	765	1,472	1,472
Philippine scouts	182	5,733	12,000
Total	5,029	81,932	128,653

NEW LAW

Organizations	Officers	Enlisted men	
		Min.	Max.
65 regiments infantry	3,314	85,865	126,230
25 regiments cavalry	1,300	24,350	36,250
21 regiments field artillery	876	17,752	26,361
7 regiments engineers	231	4,697	7,077
2 battalions mounted engineers	32	458	692
Band engineers	......	......	30
Coast artillery corps (263 companies)	1,201	......	30,009
Total combatants	6,954	163,161	226,649
Signal corps	275	3,387	4,338
Medical department	1,750 to 2,365	10,500	14,100
Quartermaster corps	369	6.403	6,403
Other troops and staff departments	1,797	19,154	24,356
Philippine scouts	182	5,733	12,000
Total	11,327 to 11,942	208,338	287,846

On the Mexican border the number of American troops had materially increased, although the above law which could not be put in force for many months did not swell the total. The President had to resort to calling out more National Guard from the majority of the states in the Union. With great difficulty they were transported to camps along the border and in the United States, until by the end of the year some 75,000 were stretched along the Rio Grande. *June 18 1916*

In the meantime some 100 Mexicans attacked the Fourteenth Infantry camp at Laredo and killed 4 soldiers, and the next day a detachment of the Twenty-sixth Infantry was fired on at West Brownsville. *June 15 1916*

Within Mexico it was felt by General Pershing that a great force of Carranzistas were collecting at Laguna de Bay with malicious intent. Under Captains Charles D. Boyd and Lewis S. Morey 2 troops of the Tenth Cavalry were sent to scout toward the Mexicans and find out their strength. Having arrived within two miles of Carrizal, the troops halted and requested to pass through the town. The request was denied, but a conference between commanders took place outside the town. While this council was in progress a large force (about 400) of Mexican troops circled the camp, placing at advantageous points machine guns. When the Mexican commanders suddenly withdrew, the Carranza troops opened fire. The little force of 90 cavalrymen were in a distressing predicament, but gallantly formed and attacked. Captain Boyd and Lieutenant Adair were killed, besides 38 others killed or wounded. Captain Morey was severely wounded. The Americans finally made their way back in various ways except 24 who were captured. The Mexicans lost 40 killed and 39 wounded including General Gomez. *June 20 1916*

This marked the end of actual hostilities of a grave nature. The large force collected on the border alarmed Carranza to such a degree that he tamed his defiant attitude. Had such numbers been capable of action in the first place, doubtless the casualties of this expedition would have been foregone. A joint commission then tried to settle the difficulties, so that the troops were held in Mexico and in the United States, on both sides of the Rio Grande and in a very delicate and difficult situation.

Jan. 1917

They could move neither backward nor forward. Finally they were begun to be withdrawn because of a diplomatic protocol between the nations. Villa was still uncaptured.

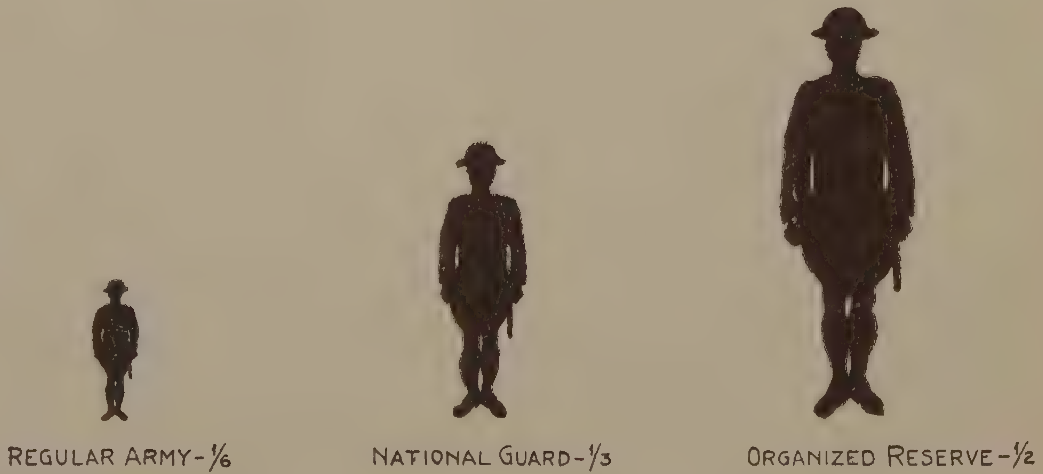
General Pershing's task through this whole campaign was, to speak mildly, awkward. He had to advance with little transportation through the most trying part of a tensely hostile country. He was allowed to attack one party but not the other, while both were equally antagonistic. He was in the position of the man who had to walk into a hungry leopard's cage with orders to beat Mr. Leopard, but under no conditions resist Mrs. Leopard with her cubs. With such a mission, who could have done better?

The experiences of the army in this phase between the war with Spain and the World War had been cosmopolitan and diverse. It was all in the work of the year for an officer to be student, instructor, leader, governor, judge, jury, councilor, fighter, constructor, almsgiver, executive and peacemaker. It was in the work of the day for both officer and enlisted man to crawl through tormenting jungles or press forward over parching trails while deadly pestilence or Mauser bullet doggedly pursued. It has been impossible to record the many annihilations of whole companies and detachments as they were ambushed on the march as late as 1905. But more disheartening than any physical discomfort, disease or wounds, which the American soldier bears with fortitude and sportsmanship, was the criticism of his own people back home. After he had gone forward with only the good of his nation in his mind, it hurt him keenly to find the press construing his sincere struggles and daring achievements as acts of cruelty or selfishness.

Through all this gruelling can be traced the soldier's stubborn desire for the improvement of the service. His ambition and pride must psychologically point that way. He enters his profession without hope of wealth or gain, much as does the clergyman. He feels that he is about to engage in a noble undertaking, whose discipline is the very essence of high-mindedness. He finds himself cut off from private business enterprises both by regulations and his movements hither and yon. He does not change his job. He cannot be promoted a single grade through his own efforts, unless it be in that far-away time when he becomes a colonel. The outlet then for his energies is to be known to his superiors and inferiors as an efficient officer. When he finds, after study and practice, deficiencies that rob the army of its best results, he strives to have them remedied. When he sees lives and money expended uselessly by his nation, he is obsessed with the desire to prevent another such disaster. It is his invariable rule when confronted with any task, to think first of his duty to his nation. His superiors often change, but his employer—his country—always stays. There are no strings, no side issues. His duty runs straight between his master and himself. He feels his patriotism too deeply even to discuss the matter. He may not wave a flag, but he can grit his teeth.

ARMY OF THE UNITED STATES.

(Act of June 4, 1920.)



IT IS WORTHY OF NOTE THAT *FIVE-SIXTHS* OF THE ARMY OF THE UNITED STATES IS COMPOSED OF CITIZEN SOLDIERS.

EPILOGUE

(1917—1923)

WHEN little Samuel without his linen ephod stood up in the cold night to inform the Lord that His small servant was listening, he was in much the same predicament as the American army in the face of a summoning nation upon our entrance into the great war. Slight, inexperienced, unprovided, and unsettled, the frail military child of a commercial people was up and doing in its triple task of organizer, instructor, and fighter.

How it came to be in this restless state of adolescence after two years and eight months of illuminating struggle abroad, is worth a moment's rehearsal. A campaign of our own, which had been fruitless in gain, had been most productive in experience. Some of the things we as a nation had failed to extract from the lessons in Europe, we learned directly by pecking at the northern edges of Mexico. Long before the fight at Carrizal, it was patent to every officer that there was a lack of cohesion of the parts of our machine. Large bodies of troops were slow and awkward in assembling, state troops through no fault of their own were variously and imperfectly trained, and our whole service of supply was antiquated and inadequate. There was for the mass of the people a complete demonstration of that which the military authorities had long known—our inability to cope with concentration over wide areas.

The result was that one year and ten months after Austria declared war on Serbia, there came the first legislation to reconstruct our military establishment. The law, before referred to as the National Defense Act, allowed the regular army to be approximately doubled in five annual increments, and the strength of the National Guard throughout the entire country to be fixed at a little over 300,000. Thus there was to be provided a force of about 600,000 regulars and militia, which was not to come to its full strength until July 1, 1920. In the meantime the state troops were to undergo more rigorous training, and the regulars were to add to themselves a tenth of their original strength each midyear.

In such an enlargement as this where one part had to grow by putting on layers, and another by changing its tissue, it was natural that the undisturbed element should become the chief means in the spread of knowledge and discipline. It was also logical that the officers of the National Guard, with the interruptions of civil pursuits and the varied instruction received in Maine and Texas, could hardly be expected to fill the office of instructor. Those men who had given their lives entirely to military service were the rational selections for this vital part to be played. It was, then, to the regular army alone that the country could turn in an emergency for its military teachers.

April 6 1917

Accordingly, the blow that fell upon the nation when war came upon us caught its training force recovering from an unsettled condition due to the addition of its first fraction of increase. The old regular regiments had skeletonized the new ones, leaving their own units depleted and the fresh ones unstable. The enlarged general staff was adjusting itself to its added duties. Officers transferred from one arm of the service to another were familiarizing themselves with a different specialty. And in all this displacement it was discovered that the newly made units of both line and staff corps could not be recruited to full strength under the voluntary enlistment.

Our incompleteness, however, was not the only hampering influence in our path. The kinds of experiences our army had passed through were in themselves but negative approaches to the great province to be encompassed. Nearly all exercise and experiment in our previous military work had consisted of the "bushwhacking" and small unit type. Even the practice on a greater scale, which was largely theoretical, had dealt with open-warfare exercises of extensive movement. This generation in its active engagements in Cuba, the Philippines, and Mexico, had in no way encountered anything, either in size or character, like the procedure of the western front in Europe.

There had come into the field an inscrutable something, like the charger of Richard Coeur de Lion, which was to dominate the whole tournament. There had to be quick transition to whisk back suddenly to the bastion fortress of medievalism—to crouch before the besieged château enlarged to a five-hundred-mile circumference; and to pull from their moldy hiding places the hand grenade, *chevaux-de-frise,* and trench weapons. The artillery too had come into a wholly new ratio and relation with the infantry; it had to spring to twenty times its strength and to learn novel uses of the large rifles, howitzers and mortars for this great, creeping siege. Thousands of tons of big guns of new caliber, design, and carriage, had to be made and understood. This European war of position had through almost three years of development built up new tactical methods of bulky proportions. All this change looked as though it were going to take from under the feet of our military youthfulness much of its ordinary support. There had to be comprehended, on the one hand, all these thousand devices and, on the other, a new style of movement and management of troops. In the meantime our military understanding of this new problem had been made inert or theoretical on this side of the Atlantic.

In this tremulous state where both organization and training were uncertain and undeveloped, the general staff of our army was to be the fairy prince of our preparation. It was to produce quickly a sizable and competent army. Jack's beanstalk had to climb into a country of the giants overnight. But the military hierarchy in Washington backed by the War College, which had not been sleeping during, and before, the war in Europe, was ready with projects to meet the sudden demands. It suggested and gave impetus to the emergency war bill, the main provisions of which were: to raise the regular army immediately to its full total, as authorized for July 1, 1920, by the act of the year before; to federalize over 400,000 of the militia; and to create at least one force of 500,000 under a draft system. The whole army when completed was to contain a minimum of one million men.

Throughout the biblical forty days and forty nights, the heads of the War Department waited for our lawmakers to come to a decision. It was a tense period for those acquainted with the truth of Forrest's maxim that military success lies in "getting there fustest with the mostest men." The heads of the army were not content with straining at the legal leash. They projected plans which presupposed the legislation completed and daringly went so far as to inaugurate the expenditure of funds not yet authorized. When the President signed the bill known as the Selective Draft Act, orders were waiting to be shot out of Washington with the quick explosions of a Lewis gun. Even before his action the training camps, under extensive and novel regulations, had been set on foot. The various branches and depots of the service had begun to expand. The voluntary recruiting of the regular forces had been vigorously urged by every inducement. Sites for trench training and extended target practice had been examined. Concentration camps for the draft were well under way. And in the midst of all this incipiency, advance troops were leaving for France, and the gigantic program was affecting every department of the government.

May 18 1917

The infinity of detail with which the military authorities were confronted can only be sketched. One small staff corps, for example, had to have the additions of gas and flame, mining, water supply, general construction, engineer supply, surveying and printing, road, forestry, quarry, light railway, and standard-gauge railway services. Other corps were but similar embryos. The infantry itself, the backbone of an army, had to have its pivotal unit—the company—completely revolutionized. It had to progress at once from 150 to 250 men, from 3 to 6 officers, and from simple riflemen to grenadiers, bombers, rifle genadiers, automatic riflemen, and ordinary riflemen. The change in the smaller units affected also the large ones; battalions, regiments, brigades, divisions, and armies had to be reconstituted.[1]

---

[1] The war strength of the respective units of the new army was as follows:

Organizations	Enlisted men	Officers
Company	250	6
Battalion	1,026	27
Regiment	3,755	100
Brigade	8,210	225
Division	27,152	975

Even the supply corps felt the expansion keenly. Forty thousand motor trucks were to be purchased with all possible speed. Thousands of such lesser articles as signal flags, wire cutters, and telephones, the same number of larger ones such as field pieces and aëroplanes; and hundreds of thousands of uniforms and shoes had to be turned out immediately. These supplies were necessary not so much for the front as for training in our own country. As one cannot learn to swim by peering into the water, neither can one fly aircraft or shoot a 3-inch rifle by gazing at a drawing. The rifle had to be aimed and the airship piloted by novices who were in turn to be teachers of others. Everything at once seemed to be imminently requisite. Wherever the heads of the War Department looked, whether towards the demand for men or material, necessities turned, like Alnaschar's castles, into vast and hazy proportions.

With this sudden swelling of quantity went inexperience in handling large numbers. Our entire military service lacked practice in magnitudes. To represent a division on a map by pins, and to have it crawl along between parallel black marks by pricking new holes, were the greatest adventures most of our general officers had been allowed to have in maneuvering large forces. What new worlds the military heads of bureaus, corps, and departments, had to enter hurriedly can be illustrated simply. Under the organization at the beginning of the war a brigade contained 172 commissioned officers; but a division of 3 brigades did not consist of three times that number—516, as one would naturally suppose, but of 909. The difference—393 officers—was the quota for the auxiliary or accessory troops. So for each higher unit, the corps, and then the army, the ratio of incidentals progressed geometrically. In fact, since a modern corps or army had never been assembled as such in the United States, it was highly speculative as to what adjuncts were really needed. And when it is remembered, too, that the smallest unit, the company, the fabric upon which the whole product hung, was to be enlarged and reorganized, it can be imagined how the dull mist of endless details grew thick over the heads of those at the helm. Concrete plans, carefully projected by consideration and computation and applied to actual cases, had to be laid.

The chaos into which the general staff was thrown would have bewildered men with less training and loyalty. It neither balked at responsibility nor shifted the burden. It could have pointed out that we were in this hectic condition because the recommendations of such men as Mr. Taft, Mr. Dickinson, Mr. Gardiner, and Mr. Garrison went unheeded in the past decade. It would have been an easy matter to say to the people: "All this is your fault because you called us jingoists four years ago when we cried, 'Prepare!' It is exactly what happens when a nation begins learning war after declaring it. We're all in a pretty fix. We will do our best, but you can't blame us if we're slow." Not at all—not a whimper! Face to face with an incredible labor the general staff enthusiastically tried to pierce the universe of growing detail.

The nicety of its judgment, which made for so much speed and efficiency later, can be accounted for by long training and discipline. When the soldier in his professional problems finds his estimate of a situation to be crumbling in the press of many details, he is taught to hark back to the phrase, "What is my mission?" By long practice he centers his attention on the one thing which he has been ordered to accomplish. After having reviewed his main purpose, he carefully chooses from among all surrounding circumstances that which tends *most* towards the execution of what he has been told to do. He divests himself of all lesser items and cuts straight through to the end in view. To attempt everything, he knows, would be to lose all. On the astuteness of his judgment depend largely his efficiency and skill. Naturally, then, the general staff did not wait for the smoke to clear, but rather penetrated the blackness to find the determining issues at stake.

It came forth triumphantly with two proposals to which it rigidly clung. One was some form of draft, and the other, the training camps for officers. In these two provisions it spied daylight for the nation.

The draft was the first thing to be insisted upon, because it was the key to a more far-reaching problem later. The immediate proposition, as the general staff conceived it, was to gain some amount of certainty as to the immense army to be prepared. They had to have this assurance to work on. At every opportunity they put in their plea unanimously for a champion against Germany who would be on the spot when ordered—a force which could be quickly controlled. Besides, they estimated that the only way to make our aid to our Allies count, would be to have speed in training large numbers. What would be the good of a mass of recruits if there were inefficient or insufficient officers to train them? By far the more important of the two proposals, then, was the move to choose and partially train leaders in the Reserve Officers' Training Camps. The draft was regarded rather as a crucial point to be settled on the way to the undiscovered country where officers were to be raised in three months from untilled soil.

Our greatest improvement over England's haphazard arrangements was the enactment of compulsory and universal service. That we would profit from mistakes of previous bloody wars by attending to Washington's warnings and Upton's examples, and stamp out the fallacy of voluntary service that had wrecked efficiency in our previous wars, had been a hope too sanguine for military experts to entertain. And it was a feat of economic athletics over which the United States should justly feel proud. It is not an easy thing for a nation while fighting for the very essence of democracy to wrap itself about with a garment of autocracy. No greater compliment can be paid to the intelligence of our mixed population than that it was able to perceive the nice distinction between the harsh means and the noble end. It is possibly the first case on record in our true history where we have signally advanced in military policy.

May 18 1917

So, one month and a half after war was declared Congress produced the best piece of legislation it had made for any conflict. It provided in a few short pages all the specifications necessary for the entire war. There was no piecemeal characteristic about this law. Every organization in the regular army was immediately to be brought to full war strength, by gaining at once the increase previously required to be dragged out over five years. It also authorized the drafting into the military service of any number of National Guard reserves. This force was to be organized under proper officers at once. An additional force of 500,000 enlisted men was to be raised and drafted.

The President was authorized to increase or decrease the size of the units of the regular army to suit the conditions to be met in Europe. All officers above the grade of colonel were to be appointed by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate. Machine-gun units were to be created. This force of 1,000,000 men in round numbers could be called out, organized and trained as soon as the President saw fit. He was further authorized to raise and maintain by voluntary enlistment not to exceed 4 infantry divisions. The enlisted men for the regular army, if possible, were to be gained by recruiting those who volunteered or by resorting to the selective draft. All other forces were to be raised and maintained by the selective draft exclusively. The whole contingent was to be placed uniformly under the regulations governing the regular army. The President was authorized to raise and maintain in addition any special and technical troops he might deem necessary. It was particularly provided that no bounty should be paid to any one as an inducement to enlist in the regular service. No person was allowed to furnish a substitute. All male persons between the ages of twenty-one and thirty, except those who were especially exempted by the law, were subject to registration and draft. The President was authorized to create all agencies of the national and state governments in order to carry out the draft. All officers and enlisted men of the forces raised were to be upon the same footing in regard to pay and allowances as in the regular army. All enlisted men of the army of the United *June 1 1917* States, meaning all the forces obtained under this law, were to have their pay raised.[2]

The President was also authorized to make regulations concerning the prohibition of alcoholic liquors in or near military camps. He was also virtually required to prevent the setting up of houses of ill fame or brothels, within such distances as he might see fit, of any camp, station, fort, post, cantonment, training or mobilization place.

---

[2] "All enlisted men of the army of the United States in active service whose base pay does not exceed $21 per month shall receive an increase of $15 per month; those whose base pay is $24, an increase of $12 per month; those whose base pay is $30, $36, or $40, an increase of $8 per month; and those whose base pay is $45 or more, an increase of $6 per month: PROVIDED, That the increases of pay herein authorized shall not enter into the computation of the continuous-service pay."

In this war, Congress forged bravely to the front. By a single piece of legislation that did not need to be enlarged or modified, it gave the struggle a sound and methodical impulse. To be sure, it had a highly educated general staff ready to give it potent advice and a ready program—a body of men well versed in sound policy and in the proper management of war. But the great matter was that it heeded the experts, and never hedged on a uniform standard. Once it became very difficult to veto volunteering and at other times very embarrassing to quiet the impetuosity of the untrained. Yet our legislative bodies during the World War clung without favor to a rigid clear-cut line that marked success in the end.

Our expansion could now be counted upon. Our officers who would otherwise have had to organize voluntary forces entailing uncertainties and endless fluctuations, or would have had to help rake the country for sparse recruits, could be spared for training purposes. The War Department could turn over to trustworthy citizens the business of registering and obtaining the necessary number of enlistments. It was free to give its immediate attention to the matter of the training of the trainers. Of course, if it could not have been certain of a fixed number of recruits present for duty on a specified date, the number of officers necessary to train them would have been indeterminable. But since that matter had been settled by the draft, the greatest energy and care could be poured into the channel of the immediate mission—the Reserve Officers' Training Camps.

Three days before the President signed the bill, making the Selective Draft Act a law, 40,000 civilian candidates appeared in sixteen large cantonments throughout the country—willing and green. At each camp there reported a group of 2,500. To receive them were from 10 to 12 regular officers, scattered barracks, a few partially constructed shacks, and the open air. The scarcity of instructors can be accounted for by the fact that the regular army was attempting to have its more experienced officers take charge of its doubled personnel. In the average case, an instructor fell heir to 150 candidates who had to be immediately clothed, fed, and equipped. His sensations were much like those of the setting leghorn hen which found itself unexpectedly and responsibly in the presence of a whole crate of *May 15 1917* eggs. There were no lieutenants or noncommissioned officers in most cases to aid him, so that he was forced into picking up at random any candidates or reserve officers of previous military experience he could find. In many places, for lack of railroad facilities, the food was insufficient; and the clothing oftentimes consisted of any cotton khaki the quartermaster department could collect.

The order and provision that could have existed, had our preparation been more leisurely and timely, had to be foregone. Again the general staff said to itself, "What is the thing to be insisted upon at any cost?" and the answer it found explains why many of the discomforts had to be endured: "Enough instruction to make the selection of officer material secure and effective." It was certain that 20,000 officers should at once be chosen in order to give any chance of success to the training of the drafted hosts. On this fulcrum swayed back and forth all the hope of our enterprise in Europe. Anything that stood in the way of the great object was to be bowled over summarily, no matter what individual hardship might arise.

Personality for leadership and a commensurate intelligence were the two qualities to be sought in the candidate. Either without the other would be valueless. Through the dingy clothing, misleading exteriors, and various grades of familiarity with military customs, the instructor was to ferret out these elusive elements of qualification. And he must happen upon this essence of leadership during countless drills and lectures. At wedged intervals he had to mark every indication and phase of change in the actions of his men which bore on the qualifications cited, and had to endeavor to know them at odd moments when they least suspected his criticism. It was a keen competition in which both nerve and mind were tried by extreme physical and moral measures.

In the application of this experimental course of training and study, instructor and candidate were left few idle moments. The day began at 5:30 a.m. and ended at 10:00 p.m.; and the interim was filled copiously. Some men complained that it was difficult to find time for a bath, and others swore that their greatest luxury was to go to bed at night. The continuousness and novelty of the work, especially at first, put many in a whirl of bewilderment from which they did not recover. The instructor himself was in a vast turmoil of giving and receiving. To him was entrusted the rapid motion of the schedule and the thoroughness of the impartation of knowledge. He became, during the lulls in lectures and explanations, an information bureau for his ravenous-minded company. And all the while he was conscious that his real duty was that of learning intimately and personally in ninety days the qualifications of 150 individuals. As a consequence, a contest sprang up between instructor and candidate over the possession of two opposite kinds of information, one very human, and the other highly technical. A glance at the mixed manhood that made up these camps will reveal the difficulties into which the success of this odd undertaking was plunged. A bank president took his place in the ranks beside a callow college graduate; an established lawyer alternated in the use of the same pick with a grocery clerk; the son of a Fifth Avenue home slept side by side with the burgess of Podunkville. One day during an extended order drill when candidate Abraham E——stein was acting company commander and Patrick O'——ll was platoon leader, the instructor had difficulty in getting the various commanders to use the proper signals. Finally in exasperation he went up to O'——ll and berated him soundly. On leaving, he overheard O'——ll mumble to the platoon guide, exclaiming disgustedly, "Oh Hell, what chance has an Irishman in arm-signal communication with a Jew!"

Nevertheless, the spirit of the camps was marvelous. There existed little sniveling and much American grit. Once when an instructor had called into the office a man of about forty to tell him that his chances for a commission were next to nothing, the fellow bit his lips a minute, set his jaw to keep back the tears, and finally observed in a subdued voice, "Well, I'm sorry —I guess what you say—is true. But—Captain—there's no reason, is there—why I can't enlist as a private?" Patriotism like that was cropping out when it was least expected, leading one to believe that through the American manhood ran a deep and irresistible current of self-denial and sacrifice.

What would the result of all this problem be? Would this impossible task for the instructor and the incomprehensible régime for the candidate produce anything worthy of the name when the camp was over? So the War Department and training camp officers queried and tried to meet the complications of each arising difficulty. For not only was it necessary to pick the raw material but also to sort it into piles for the different branches of the service. From each R. O. T. C. company were to come the officers of a regiment from major down, provisional second lieutenants for the regular army, additional reserve lieutenants, second lieutenants of the quartermaster corps, machine-gun specialists, aviation candidates, ordnance lieutenants, and those recommended for a second camp. Would this rush of training and selection be worth anything to the government after all?

The answer was largely to be found in the surpising results at the finish of the camp. In the first place those who had fallen by the wayside in the race attested voluntarily in the great majority of cases to the fairness of their elimination. They were certain that the best men had been retained. And the men themselves who were successful, as soon as they had been informed of the certainty of their commissions, became different personalities. The breaking of the tension of competition was the lessening of so many shackles about their natural dispositions. The staleness and effort accompanying this agonizing test had often made them creatures other than their former selves. When, therefore, assurance became doubly sure, they were quickened like so many Galateas into unexpected life. But the great result, which seemed to point directly to success, was the universal feeling among them that they knew nothing—that they were yet ignorant of the great essentials in leading men into battle. This condition was bound to exist when it is considered that regular officers who have spent their lives in the study and practice of their profession have a sense of deficiency at the end. "Show me," declared the preacher, "the man who knows he's a sinner and I will show you a conversion." The very fact that these men, in the flushed pride of becoming officers, should realize that they were in the primer class in the great school of arms, gave to those who had been watching over them in trepidation a justified sense of security.

Three other sets of training camps followed, which profited in large measure from the drawbacks of the first. Lines of qualification were drawn more tightly and many of the administrative details were improved.

For the immediate enforcement of the draft law, particularly, Major General E. H. Crowder was appointed provost marshal general. A registration day was at once fixed and some 4,000 registration boards over the country with a personnel of registrars and assistants to the number of 125,000 were appointed and organized. Registration day saw the enrollment of 10,000,000 names. *June 5 1917*

The manner of calling out these men was the next problem. A great lottery was established in Washington which fixed the order of call for the whole. When this feature had been determined the boards were required to call in the names according to the lists and have the recruits examined physically in order to complete the first national quota of 687,000 men. In a very few months, the selective service system was ready to deliver to the national cantonments 180,000 men. In less than three months the nation had accepted and vigorously executed without any serious friction that miraculous thing — a compulsory service law. *July 20 1917* *Sept. 1 1917*

To accommodate the organization of divisions for overseas, camps had to be built at once to accommodate 41,000 men. The difficulties presented to the army in construction work were formidable. The enlargement that fell to the lot of the quartermaster corps alone was colossal. The country had no rendezvous, such as well-prepared France had before the war, because of the denial of such a thing in the previous decade. The field of battle was beyond the seas. There was an insufficiency of training schools and almost a total lack of artillery and aëroplanes. The Government had to adopt the French auto gun, machine gun, 37-millimeter gun, the rifle grenade (V. B.), the 240-millimeter trench mortar and the Stokes mortar, which were mostly supplied from abroad. The sum total of the officers when the war was declared was 9,570. It was necessary to train between 30,000 and 40,000 more in successive series of training camps. Since nearly all of the regular officers had been deprived of experience and of observation of the World War, the main instruction they could give the candidate was found in pre-wartime regulations. The best that could be done was to instill in young officers the elements of discipline and loyalty. It was impossible to teach in these short months, under such conditions, young men from all walks of life any really technical knowledge. There were officers commissioned in the artillery who had never fired a gun, in the ordnance who had never seen an arsenal and in the infantry who had never been in command of men anywhere. This condition was the fault of no single person but rather the mass of the country during the preceding five years.

Much has had to be said on the previous pages of this history concerning what Congress has or has not done at various times. If those facts have amounted to criticism of that body they are not to be so construed. Our nation has a representative form of government in which the legislator becomes actually the echo of his constituents. If he normally does not act in that manner, he is renouncing that part of the public who elected him to be their spokesman and the spirit of democracy which should guide his actions. He votes for or against certain bills from his knowledge of the feelings of the majority in his district or state. It would be manifestly unjust, therefore, to rail at Congress for its seeming omissions. If the public wanted anything intensely enough, the lawmaker would have to vote for it. If legislative derelictions have been committed, each one of us as citizens of the republic is to blame, unless we have used our powers legitimately to the contrary.

Scarcely had the Selective Draft Act become a law, when General Pershing in command of the American Expeditionary Forces sailed with 53 officers and 146 enlisted men from the United States. The next contingent to arrive in France was the division under Major General Sibert consisting of the Sixteenth, Eighteenth, Twenty-sixth and Twenty-eighth Infantry, together with the Fifth Marines. Most of these units had but a month before been guarding the Mexican border. They were practically all the trained regulars in the country that could be put at war strength and sent abroad. It was not until much later that other divisions began to arrive.

Latter part of May, 1917

June 26 1917

Sept. 1917

Jan. 1 1918

At the beginning of the next year 1,325,000 men had been enrolled. Forty-two divisions had just been organized, 8 of which were regulars, 17 National Guard and 17 national army.

Out of these only 6 had been landed in France. Besides, only 4 on French soil were fighting divisions which had completed their training abroad. They were the First and Second Divisions of regulars and the Twenty-sixth and Forty-second Divisions of National Guard. Since these units had exhausted the first quota of men called to the colors, General Crowder had to proceed along further lines of draft and recruitment. He forthwith set to work to draft the remainder of the Class 1 men, while the War Department was setting in motion plans for other training camps.

Throughout the war, the transportation of troops was an intricate problem with little tonnage on hand and with a sea infested with submarines. Both the general staff and the ports of embarkation were taxed to the extreme. It was not until the *1918* middle of the summer of our second year, that facilities could get into full swing toward bearing troops across the Atlantic. Yet with all the handicaps, 130,000 went in May and 150,000 in July, besides those already carried overseas.

This history cannot record the progress of the war as it has done with previous conflicts of our nation. What went on in France can only be sketched in a few words. The various engagements on the front are at this time too fresh and vital to be set down critically, thoroughly or dispassionately. It will be many years before we will know the real truth and the unvarnished details of that part of the struggle which affected us. The writer has seen in many unpublished documents and heard in private conversations with officers of all grades and classes testimony that reveals much information which cannot now be told. Historical accuracy and completeness will doubtless come when we can all get a better perspective.

Suffice it to say that there should be the highest praise for the great mass of officers and soldiers engaged in this war, especially for those placed in responsible positions. It is the first war in our history where the President retained from first to last a single commander in the field. All agree that the accomplishments of General Pershing are properly lauded in foreign and domestic accounts. If, as has been said, he did no greater thing than to prevent the infiltration of our units into those of our Allies, by his tact and determination, he would deserve all that the public has accorded him. But he did more—he developed a driving engine that spelled forward movement against the German. It must be remembered that there had to be established in France schools and training centers of comparatively long duration before the troops were allowed to go into the front lines. All this preparatory work went hand in hand with the conduct of active operations, forming a doubly intricate task for the headquarters of the American Expeditionary Forces.

The management and efficiency of our military service in the World War were so far ahead of anything of the kind we had ever accomplished, that our progress should indeed be an uplift to every citizen. The Selective Draft pursued the even tenor of its way against all precedent and theory. A single supreme leader in France was left unimpeded to develop a unified army. Training, in as much quantity as time would permit, was given to officer and soldier before he went into the fight. The army was accorded throughout a uniform standard of dress, pay, equipment and organization. The entire resources and spirit of the country backed the forces with a will. Against obstacles that seemed insurmountable, troops were taken to France in a minimum of time. At the close of the war almost 2,000,000 men had been transported overseas.

On the other hand, when a nation begins the real business of preparing for war after it has declared it, much waste and loss must result. Faults arising from the consequent haste are attributable to no single individual. In retrospect, the war held much that should shame us now. The training of officers and soldiers had to be scant in a number of instances. Future histories of this conflict will reveal that the inexperience and lack of knowledge incident to haste produced in themselves undue loss. Soldiers had to be placed on the line when many of them had not had time to know the use of the weapons they were handling. Further, the assignment of officers and men to the multifarious duties of a modern army could not be made with sufficient appropriateness in the time allotted. Laundrymen in the ordnance department, engineers in the quartermaster corps, mechanics in the infantry, electricians in the provost marshal general's department and lawyers in the signal corps felt themselves to be square pegs in round holes. Promotion, too, had to be haphazard when there could exist no agencies for the proper classification of officers and men. There were no chiefs of branches nor coördinating offices that could thoroughly check up recommendations, because such an elaborate system had to give place in the rush to more important considerations. To the degree that a nation is late in its discipline and training, to that extent must the sufferings of the individual be increased. So must the country's extravagances. Having thrust aside sufficient aëroplane manufacture and manipulation before the war, Congress hurriedly voted the sum of $44,250,000 at the outbreak of American hostilities. At that time we had altogether 55 serviceable aëroplanes, of which 51 were obsolete and 4 others nearly so. A joint army and navy board then made a program for obtaining 19,775 planes, at which Congress, believing money to be the panacea for all ills, voted $640,000,000. Time was required in selecting models and in having the machines built. In the spring of the next year it was announced that we were short of aircraft. Where had the money gone? An investigation was ordered, which came to nothing after 17,000 pages of testimony had been taken down. As a matter of fact the planes, irrespective of business methods, could not be had in so short a time. One year after the declaration of war, we had in our service abroad only 1 pursuit and 2 observation squadrons of French planes, flown by American pilots who had served in the French army before we came into the conflict. America with its own craft could not before the armistice have had in the air superiority over the enemy. The story of those vital guns, the 3-inch field pieces, is about the same in character as that of the aëroplanes. We could not get them in time, and therefore, were put to the humiliating necessity of making inroads on the French supply of 75-millimeter weapons. Vast sums appropriated for materials had to be spent when values had risen to many times the height they had stood before 1917 and when it was impossible to get delivery of the quantity to be purchased. As a result, a large proportion of the money voted was turned aside later into post-bellum activities. In the meantime General Pershing lacked many weapons and machines for effective fighting. Although the quartermaster department exe-

May 12, June 15 1917

July 1917

1918

April 1918

cuted a prodigious task in constructing great cantonments over the country in the few months allotted it, the buildings and surroundings were not all that could have been expected of them, had our contractors and builders had opportunity for such work a year before the war. Cold and dampness were felt most keenly. Clothing, too, as was the case with weapons and machines, could not be had in sufficient quantities. But in addition to all these drawbacks of hurry, a greater fact now stands out in bold relief. It took us over a year after we had entered the war to get into any real offensive against the enemy. *May 1918* And then, General Pershing could muster on the Western Front only 6 completely trained divisions in contrast to the 160 that our allies had placed there. During the first year of our participation in the World War, we could bear no physical aid in the fighting. Even considering the difficulties of transportation overseas, it is conceded that we could have been a great factor in stemming the German tide sooner and could have saved thousands of lives and dollars lost during our delay for training purposes, had we as a nation been imbued with discipline and knowledge in the beginning. To cap all, the selective draft revealed that almost half of the young manhood of our country was either defective or unfit for fighting.[3] Had a large percentage of our youth had the opportunity for the development best accorded in military camps, and had such exercises been carried on even for limited periods before the war no one can doubt that this appalling figure would have been materially reduced. And in the meantime, the boy would have become more commercially efficient and a more self-reliant citizen.

When the armistice came, naturally there was a great desire, on the part of those who wished to get back to their suffering pursuits in business life, to be home again. They knew that the profiteer had been growing fat in the United States while they had been growing lean in France or in camps. Boats plied to *1919* New York as full as their capacities would permit. Demobilization camps grew great and small. Thousands of men every day were discharged and sent to their homes, although some had to be retained in helping to free the large percentage. The main labor of this complex and trying task fell upon the regular army.

---

[3] Out of 2,750,000 young men examined 46.8 per cent could not pass the physical test for front-line soldiers.

That organization was in a low state of morale. Over half of its members, who had hoped to get across the seas during the war, had necessarily been held in this country for training and administrative purposes. Many, who had been in France, had had no chance to go to the front. And all those who stepped off the boat on American soil found themselves deprived of their war rank, while many in the United States still held an advanced grade. There were cases where seniors of long service found themselves serving under juniors of comparatively short service. While those who were in for the war wanted to get out, those who were in for life were disappointed, embarrassed or apprehensive.

Yet as a whole both classes pitched in with a will to bring these transitory conditions into a state of equilibrium. As vigorously as they went into the war, so vigorously they came out of it. A man might grumble but he did not shirk. In an incredibly short time every single emergency officer or soldier found himself back at home. Only the regular army and what temporary parts had to be retained abroad remained.

The problems which confronted the chief of staff, General March, in this country, the tremendous executive labor and the burdens of demobilization which fell upon him are sometimes overlooked. The war, of course, in its character, as compared with previous wars, was unique. The immense size of modern armies entails more complicated systems of supply and broader bases of industrial support at home. A war of position demands great outlay of ammunition and elaborate engineering. The advance in invention had caused complicated weapons to spring up, whose use was little known at the beginning and whose attributes had to be learned by a multitude of new officers without any familiarity with that sort of thing before 1917.

After the General Staff had put on a working basis a very unprecedented military strength, not only in this country but abroad, the armistice at once reversed the situation and made it necessary to begin to demobilize as rapidly as facilities and expediency permitted. After nineteen months of concentration of all national activities to one end, that of the production, upbuilding and maintenance of an effective war machine, it was necessary not only to tear down the structure in Siberia and France, but to see that the consequent efflux did not interrupt activities in the United States. The welfare of the army and the country demanded that definite provision should be made for the wise distribution of men returned to civilian life. Economic and industrial conditions were absolutely dependent on the manner in which over 2,000,000 soldiers were thrown back into employment or unemployment. Congestion of idle ex-soldiers in large cities had to be prevented. Positions had to be assured for discharged men. The disposal of surplus stocks of supply and material had to be judiciously watched.

In spite of the very delicate problems surrounding the discharge of these men, the Chief of Staff in this country had, *Jan. 4 1919* within two months after the armistice, demobilized 732,766 men. In a period of three months and four days afterward, he had methodically discharged 1,246,374 from the service—over twice as many as had been returned home during the same period after the Civil War. Not quite six months after the armistice nearly 2,000,000 men had been mustered out with little or no disturbance to business. The strength of the Army of the United States[4] on the day of the armistice totaled 3,670,888 officers and men. By the middle of the next year *June 28 1919* 2,723,515 officers and men had been returned to civil life. The gigantic labor involved in this massive undertaking required a discernment and management that can scarcely be estimated. For this work, General March displayed a mightier business machine than has ever before turned out a product in this country.

While all this was going on, it was seen that, were the forces disbanded without the keenest provision, not only would the people suffer but the regular army would be left with very few men. In fact the training of the country would, as after the Revolution and other wars, be thrown into the discard. The cause of this unusual condition was found in the detail of so many officers and men from the regular service to divisions and other units that were eligible for demobilization. Such a scheme had been found necessary in order to infiltrate an experienced personnel into those units which had had comparatively little training. Therefore the army had to transfer and recruit a large number of officers and men while it was demobilizing the emergency forces.

---

[4] Nov. 5, 1918, the national army, National Guard and regular army were known under the single name of the Army of the United States.

1920 By the middle of the next year it was found that for those remaining in the service the pay was quite inadequate, due to the war prices of ordinary commodities in this country, which had risen to many times their previous standards. Accordingly, a bill was passed increasing the enlisted pay in general 20 per cent. *May 18 1920* Colonels and lieutenant colonels were to receive $600 a year extra pay, majors $840, captains $720, first lieutenants $600 and second lieutenants $420. The measure stated that the relief was but temporary and that the pay would further be adjusted when living conditions had become more normal.

By this time, it was seen that for a modern war the army must be reorganized on a new basis. New weapons, new branches, new methods had entered the field to stay. It was consequently decided to give the army a more modern standard.

June 4 1920 Accordingly there was enacted a National Defense Act which was the most comprehensive and suitable legislation ever made for the military service of the United States. The Army of the United States was to consist of the Regular Army, the National Guard when called into the service, the Officers Reserve Corps and the Enlisted Reserve Corps. The combatant arms of the regular army were designated as Infantry, Cavalry, Field Artillery, Coast Artillery Corps, the Air Service, the Corps of Engineers and the Signal Corps. The noncombatant arms were the General Staff Corps, the Adjutant Generals Department, Inspector Generals Department, Judge Advocate-Generals Department, Quartermaster Corps, Finance Department, Medical Department, Ordnance Department, Chemical Warfare Service, Officers of the Bureau of Insular Affairs, chaplains, cadets and professors of the Military Academy, Indian scouts, and detached and unassigned enlisted men. Except in time of war the total regular forces were not to exceed 280,000 officers and men. They were to be organized into divisions and such other units as were necessary for the immediate mobilization for national defense. To this end brigades, divisions and army corps were authorized. For training and tactical control the country and its possessions were divided into corps areas with a major general in charge of each. The National Guard organizations within each area were to be a part of that district and were to be given consideration in continuing their traditions and in developing their morale. The officers of the combatant arms of the regular army were to number 16,635 [5] all told. The enlisted man's pay was placed on a more logical basis.[6]

The strength of the arms of the service was made more elastic. The President could increase, by transfer of officers and enlisted men, any branch by 15 per cent of its strength. All departments and branches were to have chiefs with the rank of major general, except the chemical-warfare service which had a brigadier general and the chaplains who had a colonel. To fill the vacancies of this increase the new officers were to come from those who had served between April 6, 1917, and the passage of the act. One of the greatest pieces of advancement of the new act was the "single list." Officers were arranged for promotion entirely according to length of commissioned service and were to be advanced in grade eventually on the basis of that arrangement. By such means the disparity of promotions between the different arms of the service, which was due entirely to legislative increase of a particular branch, was eliminated. To keep the standard of the officer personnel up to a high grade, the elimination of unfit men was inaugurated. A board of officers was to place each year the entire officer personnel of the service in two classes, "A" and "B." If an officer was found to be in class "B," he was a subject for elimination. All evidence in his case was to be passed upon before a court of inquiry. If he was then found to be a proper subject for elimination, he was discharged outright, provided his low classification was a result of his own misconduct. If otherwise, he was to receive retired pay at the rate of 2½ per cent a year for each year of commissioned service, unless he had served less than ten years, in which case he was discharged with one year's pay. An applicant for the rank and file could enlist for one or three years as he chose. Reserve officers could be commissioned by the President for a term of five years. However, if during those years an emergency arose, it was understood that they were to remain until six months after its termination. The President could establish reserve officers training corps in educational institutions in unlimited number. However, an institution undertaking to maintain such a corps was to have a regular officer detailed as a professor of military science and tactics. The school was to carry at least a two years' elective or compulsory military course, which should be a requisite with other studies for a student's graduation. The senior graduates of these reserve officers training corps at colleges were to be eligible for a reserve officer's commission provided that they passed through the training camps afterward and accomplished such other work as the Secretary of War prescribed. Summer training camps were also provided for in unlimited quantity. For them the Secretary of War was to prescribe courses of about six weeks' duration. The National Guard officers could not be commissioned for federal use unless they had passed through the latter camps or had certain specific military experience and training.

---

[5] These consisted of 21 major generals, 46 brigadier generals, 599 colonels, 674 lieutenant colonels, 2,245 majors, 4,490 captains, 4,266 first lieutenants and 2,294 second lieutenants.

[6] The enlisted men were to be placed in seven grades with pay ranging from $74 for the first grade down to $30 for the seventh. They would receive 10 per cent increase for each five years of service until 40 per cent was reached. Those of the sixth and seventh grades in addition could be rated as specialists in six different classes. Their additional pay for the first class was $25, and for the sixth $3.

This legislation was by all odds the greatest provision for prolonging peace and the efficient control of war ever enacted by the Congress. It took into account lessons of the recent struggle and suited itself to the genius of our people. The regular during the conflict had learned much from the civilian and the civilian had in turn gained something substantial from the soldier. Although there had here and there been petty misunderstandings, due mostly to the conditions of our necessary hurry, never before were National Guard, Reserves and Regulars in such a healthy state of reciprocation and unity. The Army of the United States was now by this act to congeal all these elements into a coöperative whole. Other influences helped to make this union possible. The American Legion contained all these heretofore separate classes and bound them together for broad patriotic usefulness. The professional soldier was no more isolated. He affiliated himself with civic clubs and tried as never before to fit himself into the life of the community. The law emphasized citizenship, and brought the National Guardsman, the Reservist, the college graduate and student into a camp of instruction under the guidance of regular officers and soldiers, newly indoctrinated with modern pedagogy, taught in service schools. The idea that a soldier was not a citizen or a citizen could not become an efficient soldier completely died out with the birth of this legislation. Better citizenship was to be gained by the professional soldier when he became more active in civilian problems and by the civilian when he grew to be a more scientific and disciplined soldier. Each regular had a proportion of five comrades in civil life, for whose progress in military work he was responsible. While the professional soldier was giving of his spare time in order to acquaint himself with economic needs, the man engaged in commercial pursuits was sacrificing his private interests in order to be a staunch public benefactor. Each had a duty of grand unselfishness. Such a motive was bound to do away with provincial narrowness.

The army now prepared to carry out the provisions of this act. The General Staff put forward immediate efforts to recruit the army to its full peace strength and to give to the civilians who desired it supplies and details of officers toward the execution of the various activities of training outlined. The next year was intensively occupied in an attempt to keep alive the lessons of the war so as not to have the training value of our experiences lost to the country. At many colleges were established reserve officers training corps courses. With the National Guard were placed selected officers who could be of particular service. Summer camps were undertaken on a scale which would give to boys and men the greatest amount of discipline and technical advantage for the least money. It was uphill work for the reason that enthusiasm for military work after the armistice was changed into inertia and dislike, in a large number of cases. The great incentive was gone. But many high-minded men and boys responded.

The army, finding that some of its fellow citizens were not prone to come to it, went to the people. It endeavored more than ever in its history to understand the problems of the country and to fit training values for war into their proper sphere. Throughout this year the army was taken up with reorganization, elimination of the unfit, acquiring the best officers it could get from the emergency personnel and in trying to impart an understanding of the changed military technic that had sprung up during war. *1921*

Within the regular army many things had to be adjusted. New services, such as air, chemical warfare and tank, had to be placed on a firm basis. Other arms had to be revolutionized. New weapons had to be more thoroughly understood and properly assigned. The new army had to be welded into a unit which would not only take care of the United States proper and our island possessions but be a source of inspiration and knowledge in the home country.

The service was never before confronted with so vast an amount of knowledge to acquire and transmit. The 3 general service and 31 special service schools[7] throughout the army had either been reconstructed or built afresh since the war. The officer had before him years of work as a student and months and years of duty as an instructor, while he sandwiched in the training of troops of the Army of the United States. His was an all day's labor with the burning of the candle at night. For eight months he pursued learning at schools and for the other four learning pursued him at the training camps, so that in many cases he was deprived of rest or vacation. No one can visit an army post in this day and age and say that either officer or soldier is idle.

An illustration of the endless acquisition of fact, principles and experience forced now upon the military man is revealed by the change that has come over a single arm of the service since the World War. Before that time the infantry had always been recognized as the mainstay of any army. The rifleman with both feet on the ground has ever been the final necessity for victory. By magnitude and quality he was the chief element of military strength. Without losing any of these elements he suddenly in the recent conflict grew out of all resemblance to his former self. Pandora's box had been opened. Hand grenades, rifle grenades, machine guns, automatic rifles, mortars and 1-pounders summoned the foot soldier with many mysterious voices. The infantry had become also a technical arm of the service. The machine gun of itself had grown as intricate in its use and workings as the 3-inch field piece. Although the infantryman was saddled with no less responsibility for a successful issue of the fight than before, he was forced besides to an intimate understanding of his weapons and their use before he could conscientiously accept his position as a leader, and apply tactics in a new way.

---

[7] For complete list of schools, see Appendix H.

In a similar way, all other branches of the service were affected.

By the middle of the next year it was found necessary to establish the army on a modern pay basis. The living conditions in most of the cantonments were rude, to say the least. It was very difficult to keep up a high state of morale, when every phase of life indicated penury. Congress found that the least it could do was to give officers and men a living wage, since the previous temporary relief would soon expire. It therefore

June 10 1922

enacted a pay bill which gave in effect more pay to the upper grades and proportionally reduced that of the lower grades for both officers and enlisted men. The five-year fogy gave place to a more uniform increase for length of service, with little regard to rank. For officers, remuneration was composed of the base pay, the allowance for dependent relatives, the ration allowance and the rental allowances. In this way salaries more nearly conformed to the needs of the individual. In the enlisted pay there were no allowances, but the monthly wage for the upper grade was increased. Finding that sometimes hardships would be worked on the junior officers by having them receive less than they would have had fourteen years before, a saving clause was put in this enactment which stated that no officer then in the service would receive less than under the 1908 schedule. Altogether the act gave the officer a chance to meet ordinary expenses, which was all he could ask.

The outlook for the soldier was now hopeful. He had plenty of constructive work before him and was a member of a well-constituted army. He could press forward in saving the nation from future woes, and, above all, help in making it stalwart enough to ward off wars. He could carry out Washington's great advice: "To be prepared for war is one of the most effectual means of preserving peace." He could follow the example of the French Republic, which, because it was nearly as well prepared as Germany, was able to stop the invasion of the Hun.

But in the midst of all his efforts toward this end, there fell a sudden blight upon the furtherance of this practical and beneficial undertaking. The Congress, without hindrance by the mass of the people, suddenly, after decided objection by the Secretary of War and the Chief of Staff, reduced the army to 175,000 officers and men, for a population of over 120,000,000 persons. Over 600 line officers had to be cast out of the service and the enlisted force reduced by over 100,000. The medical, dental and veterinary officers had a similar proportion ejected. All promotions were to be stopped until January first, 1923. Altogether over 1,000 officers were to be eliminated before that time. Those discharged were to be given one years' pay, if they had less than ten years' service. If less than twenty years' service they were to be accorded an annuity at the rate of 2½ per cent a year for each year of commissioned service. If more than twenty years' service, the rate was 3 per cent. In addition to the ejections, about 800 officers had to be demoted and recommissioned in their next lower grade. This legislation proved to be such a sweeping retrogression and so fraught with danger to the country that Congress later in the year made changes in the act. It gave back 50 colonels, 150 majors and 300 captains and limited the decrease of lieutenants to 500. However, it provided that after January first, 1923, there should be no more than 12,000 officers on the promotion list.

June 30 1922

The General Staff now had to undo much of the work it accomplished in 1921. After having carefully and energetically built up the service by a judicious selection of officers and a campaign of recruitment, it was compelled to oust many of the very men it had brought into the regular army. In addition to the waste motion in overhead of building a structure in one year and of tearing it down in the next, the War Department could not carry out so well the broad and beneficial program outlined by the National Defense Act of 1920. Training camps had either to be curtailed or the remaining officers had to carry a load far too heavy for them, if efficient work was to be done.

It was not the measure itself that made so much for demoralization, as the meaning behind it. The soldier felt after the World War that the country had intelligently responded to the lessons of our history. He felt that the individual citizen was imbued with the idea of preventive medicine. He knew that in the one hundred and forty-eight years of our life, the country had been engaged in 110 conflicts and about 8,600 battles, with a consequent casualty list, totaling approximately 1,280,000 men. He realized that at least half of this loss could have been prevented had we always been stalwart. But, now by this reaction, did it mean that we were again going to bury knowledge, discipline and training? Were we going to lapse into the old lackadaisical ways of former peace times? Was the country going to repeat the neglectful decadence that had followed all our previous wars? In this day of enlightenment, was our flag still to wave on a weak pole?

Though the soldier is apprehensive, he is still striving to carry technical and tactical knowledge to the comrade at home, *1923* who is also seeking unselfishly to invigorate his country. He is more earnestly trying to carry out the program of self-reliant citizenship. He wants national strength—canny, national strength. If there could be national strength without a single regular enlisted man, he desires it on that basis. If there could be national strength without a single regular officer, he wants it so. If there could be national strength without a regular army, he would be happy at the achievement. He wants national strength above any personal whim or selfish desire.

This, being a history, may not argue: it only records. But the facts recited from 1775 to 1923 seem to clarify at least one point. When we were strong, disciplined, trained and well-organized, we gained a quick peace. When we were not so constituted, we lost lives and money fruitlessly. It was not war of itself that brought so much horror to our people, as did our comfortable sleep in the intervals of quiet.

APPENDIX A

CONTAINING NAMES OF INCUMBENTS OF ALL PRINCIPAL OFFICES IN THE ARMY SINCE ITS CREATION

COMMANDERS IN CHIEF OF THE ARMY SINCE THE BEGINNING

NAMES	TERM OF OFFICE	
	From	To
Washington, George	June 17, 1775	Dec. 23, 1783
Washington, George	April 30, 1789	March 4, 1797
Adams, John	March 4, 1797	March 4, 1801
Jefferson, Thomas	March 4, 1801	March 4, 1809
Madison, James	March 4, 1809	March 4, 1817
Monroe, James	March 4, 1817	March 4, 1825
Adams, John Quincy	March 4, 1825	March 4, 1829
Jackson, Andrew	March 4, 1829	March 4, 1837
Van Buren, Martin	March 4, 1837	March 4, 1841
Harrison, William Henry	March 4, 1841	April 4, 1841
Tyler, John	April 6, 1841	March 4, 1845
Polk, James Knox	March 4, 1845	March 4, 1849
Taylor, Zachary	March 4, 1849	July 9, 1850
Fillmore, Millard	July 9, 1850	March 4, 1853
Pierce, Franklin	March 4, 1853	March 4, 1857
Buchanan, James	March 4, 1857	March 4, 1861
Lincoln, Abraham	March 4, 1861	April 15, 1865
Johnson, Andrew	April 15 ,1865	March 4, 1869
Grant, Ulysses Simpson	March 4, 1869	March 4, 1877
Hayes, Rutherford Birchard	March 4, 1877	March 4, 1881
Garfield, James Abram	March 4, 1881	Sept. 19, 1881
Arthur, Chester Allan	Sept. 20, 1881	March 4, 1885
Cleveland, Grover	March 4, 1885	March 4, 1889
Harrison, Benjamin	March 4, 1889	March 4, 1893
Cleveland, Grover	March 4, 1893	March 4, 1897
McKinley, William	March 4, 1897	Sept. 14, 1901
Roosevelt, Theodore	Sept. 14, 1901	March 4, 1909
Taft, William	March 4, 1909	March 4, 1913
Wilson, Woodrow	March 4, 1913	March 4, 1921
Harding, Warren G.	March 4, 1921	Aug. 2, 1923
Coolidge, Calvin	Aug. 3, 1923	

Secretaries of War Since the Beginning

Names	Term of Office	
	From	To
Knox, Henry	Sept. 12, 1789	Dec. 31, 1794
Pickering, Timothy	Jan. 2, 1795	Dec. 10, 1795
McHenry, James	Jan. 27, 1796	May 13, 1800
Dexter, Samuel	May 13, 1800	Jan. 31, 1801
Dearborn, Henry	March 5, 1801	March 7, 1809
Eustis, William	March 7, 1809	Jan. 13, 1813
Armstrong, John	Jan. 13, 1813	Sept. 27, 1814
Monroe, James	Sept. 27, 1814	March 2, 1815
Crawford, William Harris	Aug. 1, 1815	Oct. 22, 1816
Calhoun, John Caldwell	Oct. 8, 1817	March 7, 1825
Barbour, James	March 7, 1825	May 23, 1828
Porter, Peter Buel	May 26, 1828	March 9, 1829
Eaton, John Henry	March 9, 1829	June 18, 1831
Cass, Lewis	Aug. 1, 1831	Oct. 5, 1836
Poinsett, Joel Roberts	March 7, 1837	March 5, 1841
Bell, John	March 5, 1841	Sept. 13, 1841
Spencer, John Canfield	Oct. 12, 1841	March 3, 1843
Porter, James Madison	March 8, 1843	Jan. 30, 1844
Wilkins, William	Feb. 15, 1844	March 4, 1845
Marcy, William Learned	March 6, 1845	March 4, 1849
Crawford, George Washington	March 8, 1849	July 23, 1850
Conrad, Charles Magill	Aug. 15, 1850	March 7, 1853
Davis, Jefferson	March 7, 1853	March 6, 1857
Floyd, John Buchanan	March 6, 1857	Dec. 29, 1860
Holt, Joseph	Jan. 18, 1861	March 5, 1861
Cameron, Simon	March 5, 1861	Jan. 14, 1862
Stanton, Edwin McMasters	Jan. 15, 1862	May 28, 1869
Schofield, John McAllister	May 28, 1868	March 11, 1869
Rawlins, John Aaron	March 11, 1869	Sept. 6, 1869
Belknap, William Worth	Oct. 25, 1869	March 2, 1876
Taft, Alphonso	March 8, 1876	May 22, 1876
Cameron, James Donald	May 22, 1876	March 3, 1877
McCrary, George Washington	March 12, 1877	Dec. 10, 1879
Ramsey, Alexander	Dec. 10, 1879	March 5, 1881
Lincoln, Robert Todd	March 5, 1881	March 5, 1885
Endicott, William Crowninshield	March 5, 1885	March 5, 1889
Proctor, Redfield	March 5, 1889	Nov. 5, 1891
Elkins, Stephen Benton	Dec. 17, 1891	March 5, 1893
Lamont, Daniel Scott	March 5, 1893	March 5, 1897
Alger, Russell Alexander	March 5, 1897	Aug. 1, 1899
Root, Elihu	Aug. 1, 1899	Jan. 31, 1904
Taft, William H	Feb. 1, 1904	June 30, 1908
Wright, Luke E	July 1, 1908	March 11, 1909
Dickinson, Jacob M	March 12, 1909	May 21, 1911
Stimson, Henry L	May 22, 1911	March 4, 1913
Garrison, Lindley M	March 5, 1913	Feb. 10, 1916
Scott, Hugh L., Secy. of War (*ad interim*)	Feb. 11, 1916	March 8, 1916
Baker, Newton D	March 9, 1916	March 4, 1921
Weeks, John W	March 5, 1921	

GENERALS IN CHIEF OF THE ARMY SINCE 1775

NAMES	TERM OF OFFICE	
	From	To
Washington, George, Gen.	June 17, 1775	Dec. 23, 1783
Knox, Henry, Maj. Gen.	Dec. 23, 1783	June 20, 1784
Doughty, John, Capt. (Art.)	June 20, 1784	Aug. 12, 1784
Harmar, Josiah, Lieut. Col. (Inf.)	Aug. 12, 1784	March 4, 1791
St. Clair, Arthur, Maj. Gen.	March 4, 1791	March 5, 1792
Wayne, Anthony, Maj. Gen.	April 13, 1792	Dec. 15, 1796
Wilkinson, James, Brig. Gen.	Dec. 15, 1796	July 13, 1798
Washington, George, Lieut. Gen.	July 13, 1798	Dec. 14, 1799
Hamilton, Alexander, Maj. Gen.	Dec. 14, 1799	June 15, 1800
Wilkinson, Jasper, Brig. Gen.	June 15, 1800	Jan. 27, 1812
Dearborn, Henry, Maj. Gen.	Jan. 27, 1812	June 15, 1815
Brown, Jacob, Maj. Gen.	June 15, 1815	Feb. 24, 1828
Macomb, Alexander, Maj. Gen.	May 29, 1828	June 25, 1841
Scott, Winfield, Maj. Gen.	July 5, 1841	Nov. 1, 1861
McClellan, G. B., Maj. Gen.	Nov. 1, 1861	March 11, 1862
Halleck, H. W., Maj. Gen.	July 23, 1862	March 9, 1864
Grant, U. S., Gen.	March 9, 1864	March 4, 1869
Sherman, W. T., Gen.	March 8, 1869	Nov. 1, 1883
Sheridan, P. H., Gen.	Nov. 1, 1883	Aug. 5, 1888
Schofield, J. McA., Lieut. Gen.	Aug. 14, 1888	Sept. 29, 1895
Miles, N. A., Lieut. Gen.	Oct. 5, 1895	Aug. 8, 1903

CHIEFS OF STAFF SINCE GENERAL NELSON A. MILES, WHO WAS THE LAST GENERAL IN CHIEF OF THE ARMY

NAMES	TERM OF OFFICE	
	From	To
Young, Samuel B. M., Lieut. Gen.	Aug. 15, 1903	Jan. 8, 1904
Chaffee, Adna R., Lieut. Gen.	Jan. 9, 1904	Jan. 14, 1906
Bates, John C., Maj. Gen.	Jan. 15, 1906	April 13, 1906
Bell, J. Franklin, Maj. Gen.	April 14, 1906	April 21, 1910
Wood, Leonard, Maj. Gen.	April 22, 1910	April 20, 1914
Wotherspoon, William W., Maj. Gen.	April 21, 1914	Nov. 15, 1914
Scott, Hugh L., Maj. Gen.	Nov. 16, 1914	Sept. 21, 1917
Bliss, Tasker H., Maj. Gen., Gen.	Sept. 22, 1917	May 18, 1918
March, Peyton C., Maj. Gen., Gen.	May 19, 1918	June 30, 1921
Pershing, John J., Gen.	July 1, 1921	

QUARTERMASTER GENERALS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
14 Aug., 1775	7 Nov., 1777	Maj. Gen. Thos. Mifflin..........	Qm. General
2 March, 1778	30 Sept., 1780	Maj. Gen. Nathaniel Greene......	"
5 Aug. 1780	25 July 1785	Col. Timothy Pickering...........	"
4 March, 1791	19 April 1792	Samuel Hodgdon................	Quartermaster
19 April 1792	1 May 1796	James O'Hara..................	"
1 June 1796	1 June 1802	John Wilkins..................	Qm. General
3 April, 1812	2 March, 1813	Brig. Gen. Morgan Lewis.........	"
21 March, 1813	5 June 1816	Brig. Gen. Robert Swartwout.....	"
29 April, 1816	14 April, 1818	Col. James Mullany..............	Qm. General., Northern Div.
29 April, 1816	14 April, 1818	Col. George Gibson..............	Qm. General, Southern Div.
8 May, 1818	10 June 1860	Brig. Gen. T. S. Jesup...........	Qm. General
20 June, 1860	22 April, 1861	Brig. Gen. J. E. Johnston.........	"
15 May, 1861	6 Feb., 1882	Brig. Gen. M. C. Meigs..........	"
13 Feb., 1882	23 Feb., 1882	Brig. Gen. D. H. Rucker.........	"
23 Feb., 1882	1 July, 1883	Brig. Gen. Rufus Ingalls.........	"
1 July, 1883	16 June, 1890	Brig. Gen. S. B. Holabird.........	"
26 June, 1890	27 July, 1896	Brig. Gen. R. N. Batchelder......	"
19 Aug., 1896	16 Feb., 1897	Brig. Gen. C. G. Sawtelle.........	"
16 Feb., 1897	3 Feb., 1898	Brig. Gen. G. H. Weeks..........	"
3 Feb., 1898	12 April, 1903	Brig. Gen. M. I. Ludington.......	"
12 April, 1903	1 July, 1907	Brig. Gen. Charles F. Humphrey...	"
1 July, 1907	12 Sept., 1916	Maj. Gen. James B. Aleshire......	"
16 Sept., 1916	21 July, 1918	Maj. Gen. Henry G. Sharpe.......	"
22 July, 1918	27 Aug., 1922	Maj. Gen. Harry L. Rogers.......	"
28 Aug., 1922	....	Maj. Gen. William H. Hart.......	"

The act of March 3, 1799, provided that there shall be a quartermaster general with the rank, etc., of a major general. None was appointed to that grade.

ADJUTANT GENERALS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
17 June, 1775	5 June, 1776	Maj. Gen. Horatio Gates.........	Adjutant General
5 June, 1776	22 Jan., 1777	Col. Jos. Reed....................	"
22 Jan., 1777	20 Feb., 1777	Brig. Gen. Arthur St. Clair........	Acting Adj. Gen.
20 Feb., 1777	19 April, 1777	Brig. Gen. George Weedon........	"
19 April, 1777	18 June, 1777	Col. Morgan Connor..............	Adjutant General
18 June, 1777	5 Jan., 1778	Col. Timothy Pickering...........	"
5 Jan., 1778	1 Jan., 1781	Col. Alexander Scammel..........	"
8 Jan., 1781	3 Nov., 1783	Brig. Gen. Edward Hand.........	"
5 Nov., 1783	28 Oct., 1787	Maj. William North..............	Adj. and Insp.
28 Oct., 1787	7 Nov., 1790	Lieut. Ebenezer Denny, Inf. Reg...	Acting Adjutant
7 Nov., 1790	4 Sept., 1791	Lieut. John Pratt, 1st Inf.........	"
4 Sept., 1791	4 Nov., 1791	Lieut. Col. Winthrop Sargent, Mass. Militia	" "
4 Nov., 1791	10 March, 1792	Lieut. Ebenzeer Denny, 1st Inf....	"
10 March, 1792	23 Feb., 1793	Lieut. Henry DeButts, 4th Inf....	"
23 Feb., 1793	17 July, 1793	Maj. Michael Rudolph, Light Drag.	"
18 July, 1793	13 May, 1794	Capt. Edward Butler, 4th Sublegion	"
13 May, 1794	27 Feb., 1796	Maj. John Mills, 2d Sublegion.....	"
27 Feb., 1796	1 Aug., 1796	Maj. Jonathan Haskell, 4th Sublegion....................	" "
1 Aug., 1796	27 Feb., 1797	Capt. Edward Butler, 4th Sublegion	"
27 Feb., 1797	19 July, 1798	Maj. T. H. Cushing, 1st Inf.......	"
19 July, 1798	15 June, 1800	Brig. Gen. William North.........	Adjutant General
15 June, 1800	2 April, 1807	Lieut. Col. T. H. Cushing, 2d Inf...	Adj. and Insp.
2 April, 1807	28 April, 1812	Maj. A. Y. Nicholl, Artillerists....	"
28 April, 1812	6 July, 1812	Lieut. Col. Alexander Macomb, Engr.........................	Acting Adj. Gen.
6 July, 1812	12 March, 1813	Brig. Gen. T. H. Cushing.........	Adjutant General
12 March, 1813	27 April, 1813	Brig. Gen. Z. M. Pike............	"
19 May, 1814	2 July, 1814	Brig. Gen. W. H. Winder.........	Adjutant and Inspector General
22 Nov., 1814	1 June, 1821	Brig. Gen. Daniel Parker.........	"
13 Aug., 1821	22 March, 1822	Col. James Gadsden..............	Adjutant General

ADJUTANT GENERALS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT—*Continued*

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
8 May, 1822	7 March, 1825	Capt. C. J. Nourse, 2d Art........	Acting Adj. Gen.
7 March, 1825	15 July, 1852	Col. Roger Jones................	Adjutant General
15 July, 1852	7 March, 1861	Col. Samuel Cooper.............	"
7 March, 1861	22 Feb., 1869	Brig. Gen. Lorenzo Thomas.......	"
22 Feb., 1869	15 June, 1880	Brig. Gen. E. D. Townsend.......	"
15 June, 1880	28 May, 1889	Brig. Gen. R. C. Drum...........	"
7 June, 1889	24 June, 1892	Brig. Gen. J. C. Kelton..........	"
5 July, 1892	5 Nov., 1893	Brig. Gen. Robert Williams.......	"
6 Nov., 1893	11 Sept., 1897	Brig. Gen. G. D. Ruggles.........	"
11 Sept., 1897	25 Feb., 1898	Brig. Gen. Samuel Breck..........	"
25 Feb., 1898	14 April, 1906	Maj. Gen. Henry C. Corbin.......	"
23 April, 1904	4 March, 1907	Maj. Gen. Fred C. Ainsworth.....	The Military Sec.
5 March, 1907	16 Feb., 1912	Maj. Gen. Fred C. Ainsworth.....	Adjutant General
17 Feb., 1912	11 June, 1912	Brig. Gen. William P. Hall........	"
5 Aug., 1912	26 Aug., 1914	Brig. Gen. George Andrews.......	"
27 Aug., 1914	26 Aug., 1918	Maj. Gen. Henry P. McCain......	"
1 Sept., 1918	31 Aug., 1922	Maj. Gen. Peter C. Harris........	"
1 Sept., 1922		Maj. Gen. Robert C. Davis.......	"

INSPECTOR GENERALS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
8 July, 1777	11 Oct., 1777	Col. Mottin de la Balme..........	Inspector General of Cavalry
11 Aug., 1777	15 Sept., 1777	Maj. Gen. P. C. J. B. T. du Coudray	Inspector General of Ordnance and Military Stores
13 Dec., 1777	28 April, 1778	Maj. Gen. Thomas Conway.......	Inspector General
5 May, 1778	15 April, 1784	Maj. Gen. F. W. A. Steuben (baron)	"
17 April, 1784	28 Oct., 1787	Maj. William North..............	Inspector
10 March, 1792	23 Feb., 1793	Lieut. Henry DeButts, 4th Inf....	Acting Adjutant and Inspector
23 Feb., 1793	17 July, 1793	Maj. Michael Rudolph, Light Drag.	"
18 July, 1793	13 May, 1794	Capt. Edward Butler, 4th Sublegion	"
13 May, 1794	27 Feb., 1796	Maj. John Mills, 2d Sublegion.....	"
27 Feb., 1796	1 Aug., 1796	Maj. Jonathan Haskell, 4th Sublegion......................	"
1 Aug., 1796	27 Feb., 1797	Capt. Edward Butler, 4th Inf.....	"
27 Feb., 1797	18 July, 1798	Maj. T. H. Cushing, 1st Inf.......	"
18 July, 1798	15 June, 1800	Maj. Gen. Alexander Hamilton....	Inspector General
15 June, 1800	2 April, 1807	Maj. T. H. Cushing, 1st Inf.......	Acting Adjutant Gen. and Insp.
2 April, 1807	28 April, 1812	Maj. A. Y. Nicoll, Artillerists.....	"
6 July, 1812	3 March, 1813	Brig. Gen. Alexander Smyth......	Inspector General
12 March, 1813	27 April, 1813	Brig. Gen. Z. M. Pike...........	"
9 May, 1814	2 July, 1814	Brig. Gen. W. H. Winder.........	Adjutant and Inspector Gen.
22 Nov., 1814	1 June, 1821	Brig. Gen. Daniel Parker.........	"
29 April, 1816	25 June, 1841	Col. J. E. Wool..................	Inspector General
3 May, 1816	30 Sept., 1820	Col. A. P. Hayne.................	"
1 Oct., 1820	13 Aug., 1821	Col. James Gadsden.............	"
10 Nov., 1821	11 Dec., 1825	Col. S. B. Archer................	"
21 Dec., 1825	8 Jan., 1849	Col. George Croghan............	"
25 June, 1841	25 Sept., 1861	Col. Sylvester Churchill..........	"
9 Aug., 1861	2 Jan., 1881	Brig. Gen. R. B. Marcy..........	"
2 Jan., 1881	8 March, 1885	Brig. Gen. D. B. Sacket..........	"
11 March, 1885	20 Sept., 1885	Brig. Gen. N. H. Davis...........	"
20 Sept., 1885	20 Aug., 1888	Brig. Gen. Absalom Baird........	"
20 Aug., 1885	26 Sept., 1889	Brig. Gen. Roger Jones..........	"
30 Jan., 1889	11 April, 1903	Brig. Gen. J. C. Breckinridge.....	"
11 April, 1903	12 April, 1903	Brig. Gen. P. D. Vroom..........	"
12 April, 1903	30 Sept., 1906	Brig. Gen. George H. Burton......	"
1 Oct., 1906	20 Feb., 1917	Brig. Gen. Ernest A. Garlington...	"
21 Feb., 1917	6 Nov., 1921	Maj. Gen. John L. Chamberlain...	"
7 Nov., 1921		Maj. Gen. Eli A. Helmick........	"

Surgeon Generals Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
27 July, 1775	7 Nov., 1775	Benjamin Church	Director General and Chief Physician
14 Sept., 1775	9 Jan., 1777	Samuel Stringer	"
17 Oct., 1775	9 Jan., 1777	John Morgan	"
11 April, 1777	3 Jan., 1781	William Shippen	Director General
6 Feb., 1778	2 July, 1780	William Brown	"
22 May, 1780	3 Nov., 1783	David Oliphant	"
17 Jan., 1781	3 Nov., 1783	John Cochran	"
11 April, 1777	— Aug., 1777	Malachi Treat	Physician General, Northern Dept.
11 April, 1777	9 March, 1778	A. R. Cutter	Physician General, Eastern Dept.
11 April, 1777	1 July, 1777	Walter Jones	Physician General, Middle Dept.
1 July, 1777	30 Jan., 1778	Benjamin Rush	"
11 April, 1777	31 July, 1777	Francis Forgue	Surgeon-General, Northern Dept.
11 April, 1777	6 Oct., 1778	Philip Turner	Surgeon-General, Eastern Dept.
11 April, 1777	1 July, 1777	Benjamin Rush	Surgeon-General, Middle Dept.
13 May, 1777	6 Feb., 1778	William Brown	"
21 Feb., 1778	6 Oct., 1780	Charles McKnight	"
11 April, 1777	1 Jan., 1781	John Bartlett	Physician and Surgeon-general, Northern Dept.
11 April, 1777	6 Oct., 1780	William Burnet	Physician-general, and Surgeon-general, Eastern Dept.
11 April, 1777	6 Oct., 1780	John Cochran	Physician-general, and Surgeon-general, Middle Dept.
6 Oct., 1780	17 Jan., 1781	John Cochran	Chief Physician and Surgeon
3 March, 1781	23 Dec., 1783	James Craik	"
5 March, 1781	3 Nov., 1783	William Burnet	"
15 July, 1776	1 Dec., 1776	William Shippen	Chife Physician of the Flying Camp
15 May, 1781	3 Nov., 1783	Peter Fayssoux	Chief Physician, Southern Dept.
22 March, 1780	— June, 1782	James Brown	"
6 Oct., 1780	3 Nov., 1783	Malachi Treat	Chief Hosp. Physician
6 Oct., 1780	3 Jan., 1782	Charles McKnight	"
6 Oct., 1780	3 Nov., 1783	Thomas Bond	Purveyor
19 July, 1778	3 Nov., 1783	Andrew Craigie	Apothecary
19 July, 1778	15 June, 1800	James Craik	Physician General
11 June, 1813	15 June, 1815	James Tilton	Physician and Surgeon-general
11 June, 1813	1 June, 1821	Francis LeBaron	Apothecary General
18 April, 1818	17 Oct., 1836	Joseph Lowell	Surgeon-general
30 Nov., 1836	15 May, 1861	Col. Thomas Lawson	"
15 May, 1861	14 April, 1862	Col. C. A. Finley	"
25 April, 1862	18 Aug., 1864	Brig. Gen. W. A. Hammond	"
22 Aug., 1864	30 June, 1882	Brig. Gen. J. K. Barnes	"
3 July, 1882	10 Oct., 1883	Brig. Gen. C. H. Crane	"
23 Nov., 1883	6 Aug., 1886	Brig. Gen. Robert Murray	"
18 Nov., 1886	16 Aug., 1890	Brig. Gen. John Moore	"
16 Aug., 1890	4 Dec., 1890	Brig. Gen. J. H. Baxter	"
23 Dec., 1890	29 May, 1893	Brig. Gen. Charles Sutherland	"
30 May, 1893	8 June, 1902	Brig. Gen. G. M. Sternberg	"
8 June, 1902	7 Sept., 1902	Brig. Gen. W. H. Forwood	"
7 Sept., 1902	14 Jan., 1909	Brig. Gen. Robert M. O'Reilly	"
14 Jan., 1909	27 Dec., 1913	Brig. Gen. George H. Torney	"
16 Jan., 1914	3 Oct., 1918	Maj. Gen. William C. Gorgas	"
4 Oct., 1918		Maj. Gen. Merritte W. Ireland	"

JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERALS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
29 July, 1775	9 April, 1798	Lieut. Col. William Tudor........	Judge-Advocate
10 April, 1777	3 June, 1782	Lieut. Col. John Lawrence........	"
9 July, 1782	18 Sept., 1782	Lieut. Col. James Innis...........	"
2 Oct., 1782	3 Nov., 1783	First Lieut. Thomas Edwards, 9th Mass. Inf......................	"
16 July, 1794	13 July, 1796	First Lieut. Campbell Smith, 4th Sublegion....................	"
2 June, 1797	1 June, 1802	Capt. Campbell Smith, 4th Inf....	"
26 Sept., 1812	16 Dec., 1814	Thomas Gales...................	"
18 March, 1813	15 June, 1815	E. A. Bancker...................	"
7 May, 1813	15 June, 1815	J. S. Wills......................	"
19 July, 1813	14 April, 1818	J. T. Dent......................	"
5 Oct., 1813	15 June, 1815	Stephen Lush, Jr................	"
9 July, 1814	15 June, 1815	R. H. Winder...................	"
6 Aug., 1814	9 May, 1816	Henry Wheaton.................	"
16 Sept., 1814	15 June, 1815	L. M. Parker...................	"
19 Dec., 1814	15 June, 1815	Samuel Wilcocks................	"
29 April, 1816	14 April, 1818	W. O. Winston..................	"
29 April, 1816	14 April, 1818	Thomas Hanson.................	"
3 May, 1816	23 July, 1818	R. H. Winder...................	"
9 July, 1816	1 June, 1821	S. A. Storrow..................	"
9 July, 1816	15 Jan., 1817	J. L. Leib......................	"
10 Sept., 1818	1 June, 1821	S. D. Hays......................	"
2 March, 1849	4 Sept., 1862	Bvt. Maj. J. E. Lee..............	"
3 Sept., 1862	1 Dec., 1875	Brig. Gen. Joseph Holt...........	Judge-Advo.-Gen.
1 Dec., 1875	22 Jan., 1881	Brig. Gen. W. McK. Dunn........	"
18 Feb., 1881	22 Dec., 1894	Brig. Gen. D. G. Swaim..........	"
3 Jan., 1895	21 May, 1901	Brig. Gen. G. N. Lieber..........	"
21 May, 1901	22 May, 1901	Brig. Gen. T. F. Barr............	"
22 May, 1901	24 May, 1901	Brig. Gen. J. W. Clous...........	"
24 May, 1901	14 Feb., 1911	Brig. Gen. George B. Davis.......	"
15 Feb., 1911	14 Feb., 1923	Maj. Gen. Enoch H. Crowder.....	"
15 Feb., 1923		Maj. Gen. Walter A. Bethel.......	"

CHIEFS OF ENGINEERS SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
17 June, 1775	5 Aug., 1776	Col. Richard Gridley.............	Chief Engineer
5 Aug., 1776	1 Nov., 1776	Col. Rufus Putnam..............	"
22 July, 1777	10 Oct., 1783	Maj. Gen. L. L. Duportail........	"
26 Feb., 1795	7 May, 1798	Lieut. Col. Stephen Rochefontaine.	Commandant Corps of Artillerists and Engineers
7 May, 1798	1 April, 1802	Lieut. Col. Henry Burbeck........	"
3 July, 1802	20 June, 1803	Lieut. Col. Jonathan Williams.....	Chief Engineer
19 April, 1805	31 July, 1812	Col. Jonathan Williams...........	"
31 July, 1812	12 Nov., 1818	Col. J. G. Swift..................	"
12 Nov., 1818	1 June, 1821	Col. W. K. Armistead............	"
1 June, 1821	24 May, 1828	Col. Alexander Macomb..........	"
24 May, 1828	6 Dec., 1838	Col. Charles Gratiot.............	"
7 Dec., 1838	3 March, 1863	Col. J. G. Totten................	"
3 March, 1863	22 April, 1864	Brig. Gen. J. G. Totten..........	"
22 April, 1864	8 Aug., 1866	Brig. Gen. Richard Delafield......	"
8 Aug., 1866	30 June, 1879	Brig. Gen. A. A. Humphreys......	"
30 June, 1879	6 March, 1884	Brig. Gen. H. G. Wright..........	"
6 March, 1884	27 Aug., 1886	Brig. Gen. John Newton..........	"
11 Oct., 1886	30 June, 1888	Brig. Gen. J. C. Duane...........	"
6 July, 1888	10 May, 1895	Brig. Gen. T. L. Casey...........	"
10 May, 1895	1 Feb., 1897	Brig. Gen. W. P. Craighill........	"
1 Feb., 1897	30 April, 1901	Brig. Gen. J. M. Wilson..........	"
30 April, 1901	2 May, 1901	Brig. Gen. H. M. Robert.........	"
2 May, 1901	3 May, 1901	Brig. Gen. J. W. Barlow..........	"
3 May, 1901	22 Jan., 1904	Brig. Gen. Geo. L. Gillespie.......	"
23 Jan., 1904	25 May, 1908	Brig. Gen. Alexander Mackenzie...	"
2 July, 1908	11 June, 1910	Brig. Gen. William L. Marshall....	"
12 June, 1910	11 Aug., 1913	Brig. Gen. William H. Bixby......	"
12 Aug., 1913	11 Oct., 1913	Brig. Gen. William T. Rossell.....	"
12 Oct., 1913	6 March, 1916	Brig. Gen. Dan C. Kingman......	"
7 March, 1916	31 Oct., 1919	Maj. Gen. William M. Black......	"
9 Jan., 1920		Maj. Gen. Lansing H. Beach......	"

Chiefs of Ordnance Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
17 Aug., 1775	1 Dec., 1775	Ezekiel Cheever	Commissary of Artillery Stores
16 July, 1776	1 Dec., 1776	Col. Benjamin Flower	Commissary of Artillery Stores for Flying Camp
18 Jan., 1777	30 April, 1778	Maj. Samuel French	Commissary of Artillery Stores
1 Feb., 1777		Maj. George Peale	"
1 Feb., 1777		Maj. Jonathan Gostelow	"
5 Feb., 1777		Maj. Joseph Watkins	"
8 March, 1777	30 Aug., 1780	Maj. Charles Lukens	"
17 Sept., 1782	3 Nov., 1783	Maj. Richard Frothingham	"
11 Aug., 1777	15 Sept., 1777	Maj. Gen. P. C. J. B. T. du Coudray	Inspector General of Ordnance and Military Fortifications
16 July, 1776	28 April, 1781	Col. Benjamin Flower	Commissary General of Military Stores
12 July, 1781	20 June, 1784	Col. Samuel Hodgdon	"
2 July, 1812	8 Feb., 1815	Col. Decius Wadsworth	Commissary General of Ordnance
8 Feb., 1815	1 June, 1821	Col. Decius Wadsworth	Chief of Ordnance
30 May, 1832	25 March, 1848	Col. George Bomford	"
25 March, 1848	10 July, 1851	Col. George Talcott	"
10 July, 1851	23 April, 1861	Col. H. K. Craig	"
23 April, 1861	15 Sept., 1863	Brig. Gen. J. W. Ripley	"
15 Sept., 1863	12 Sept., 1864	Brig. Gen. G. D. Ramsay	"
12 Sept., 1864	20 May, 1874	Brig. Gen. A. B. Dyer	"
23 June, 1874	22 Jan., 1891	Brig. Gen. S. V. Benét	"
23 Jan., 1891	29 March, 1899	Brig. Gen. D. W. Flagler	"
5 April, 1899	22 Nov., 1901	Brig. Gen. A. R. Buffington	"
22 Nov., 1901	15 July, 1918	Maj. Gen. William Crozier	"
16 July, 1918		Maj. Gen. Clarence C. Williams	"

Chief Signal Officers Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
27 June, 1860	3 March, 1863	Maj. A. J. Myer	Signal Officer
3 March, 1863	21 July, 1864	Col. A. J. Myer	Chief Signal Officer
3 Dec., 1864	28 July, 1866	Col. Benj. F. Fisher	"
28 July, 1866	24 Aug., 1880	Brig. Gen. A. J. Myer	"
15 Dec., 1880	16 Jan., 1887	Brig. Gen. W. B. Hazen	"
3 March, 1887	9 Feb., 1906	Brig. Gen. A. W. Greely	"
10 Feb., 1906	13 Feb., 1913	Brig. Gen. James Allen	"
14 Feb., 1913	13 Feb., 1917	Brig. Gen. George P. Scriven	"
6 Oct., 1917		Maj. Gen. George O. Squier	"

Chiefs of Artillery Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
27 Feb., 1903	22 Jan., 1904	Brig. Gen. Wallace F. Randolph	Chief of Artillery
22 Jan., 1904	19 June, 1905	Brig. Gen. John P. Story	"
20 June, 1905	30 Sept., 1906	Brig. Gen. Samuel M. Mills	"
1 Oct., 1906	30 June, 1908	Brig. Gen. Arthur Murray	"

Chiefs of Coast Artillery Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
1 July, 1908	14 March, 1911	Brig. Gen. Arthur Murray........	Chief of Coast Artillery
15 March, 1911	23 May, 1918	Maj. Gen. Erasmus M. Weaver....	"
24 May, 1918		Maj. Gen. Frank W. Coe.........	"

Chief of Field Artillery Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
1 July, 1920		Maj. Gen. William J. Snow.......	Chief of Field Artillery

Chief of Cavalry Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
1 July, 1920		Maj. Gen. Willard A. Holbrook....	Chief of Cavalry

Chief of Infantry Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
1 July, 1920		Maj. Gen. Charles S. Farnsworth..	Chief of Infantry

Chiefs of Air Service Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Title of office
1 July, 1920	4 Oct., 1921	Maj. Gen. Charles T. Menoher....	Chief of Air Service
5 Oct., 1921		Maj. Gen. Mason M. Patrick.....	"

Chief of Tank Corps Since First Incumbent

From	To	Rank and name	Remarks
20 Dec., 1917		Brig. Gen. Samuel D. Rockenbach.	Now a colonel of infantry. Tank corps is now attached to the infantry.

SUPERINTENDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES MILITARY ACADEMY SINCE FIRST INCUMBENT

No.	Name	Army rank when appointed	Term of Service		Remarks
			From	To	
1	Williams, Jonathan	Major, Corps of Engineers	April 15, 1802	[1] June 20, 1803	Resigned
2	Williams, Jonathan	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	[1] April 19, 1805	July 31, 1812	Resigned
3	Swift, Joseph G	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	July 31, 1812	March 24, 1814	Relieved
4	Partridge, Alden	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Jan. 3, 1815	July 28, 1817	Relieved
5	Thayer, Sylvanus	Captain, Corps of Engineers	July 28, 1817	July 1, 1833	Relieved
6	DeRussy, René E	Major, Corps of Engineers	July 1, 1833	Sept. 1, 1838	Relieved
7	Delafield, Richard	Major, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 1, 1838	Aug. 15, 1845	Relieved
8	Brewerton, Henry	Captain, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 15, 1845	Sept. 1, 1852	Relieved
9	Lee, Robert E	Captain, Corps of Enginers	Sept. 1, 1852	March 31, 1855	Relieved
10	Barnard, John G	Captain, Corps of Engineers	March 31, 1855	Sept. 8, 1856	Relieved
11	Delafield, Richard	Major, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 8, 1856	[2] Jan. 23, 1861	Relieved
12	Beauregard, Peter G. T	Captain, Corps of Engineers	[2] Jan. 23, 1861	Jan. 28, 1861	Relieved
13	Delafield, Richard	Major, Corps of Engineers	Jan. 28, 1861	March 1, 1861	Relieved
14	Bowman, Alexander H	Major, Corps of Engineers	March 1, 1861	July 8, 1864	Relieved
15	Tower, Zealous B	Major, Corps of Engineers	July 8, 1864	Sept. 8, 1864	Relieved
16	Cullum, George W	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Sept. 8, 1864	Aug. 28, 1866	Relieved
17	Pitcher, Thomas G	Colonel, 44th Infantry	Aug. 28, 1866	Sept. 1, 1871	Relieved
18	Ruger, Thomas H	Colonel, 18th Infantry	Sept. 1, 1871	Sept. 1, 1876	Relieved
19	Schofield, John M	Major General, U. S. Army	Sept. 1, 1876	Jan. 21, 1881	Relieved
20	Howard, Oliver O	Brigadier General, U. S. Army	Jan. 21, 1881	Sept. 1, 1882	Relieved
21	Merritt, Wesley	Colonel, 5th Cavalry	Sept. 1, 1882	July 1, 1887	Relieved
22	Parke, John G	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 28, 1887	June 24, 1889	Relieved
23	Wilson, John M	Lieut. Colonel, Corps of Engineers	Aug. 26, 1889	March 31, 1893	Relieved
24	Ernst, Oswald H	Major, Corps of Engineers	March 31, 1893	Aug. 21, 1898	Relieved
25	Mills, Albert L	1st Lieutenant, 1st Cavalry	Aug. 22, 1898	Aug. 31, 1906	Relieved
26	Scott, Hugh L	Major, 14th Cavalry	Aug. 31, 1906	Aug. 31, 1910	Relieved
27	Barry, Thomas H	Major General, U. S. Army	Aug. 31, 1910	Aug. 31, 1912	Relieved
28	Townsley, Clarence P	Colonel, Coast Artillery Corps	Aug. 31, 1912	June 30, 1916	Relieved
29	Biddle, John	Colonel, Corps of Engineers	July 1, 1916	May 31, 1917	Relieved
30	Tillman, Samuel E	Colonel, U. S. Army	June 13, 1917	June 11, 1919	Relieved
31	MacArthur, Douglas	Brigadier General, U. S. Army	June 12, 1919	June 30, 1922	Relieved
32	Sladen, Fred W	Brigadier General, U. S. Army	July 1, 1922		

NOTE.—The selection of the Superintendents of the Military Academy was confined to the Corps of Engineers from the establishment of the Institution, March 16, 1802, till the passage of the law of July 13, 1866, which opened it to the entire Army. By the Act of June 12, 1858, the local rank of Colonel was conferred upon the Superintendent.

[1] Major Williams resigned June 20, 1803, on a point of command, and pending its settlement until April 19, 1805, when he again returned to service as Chief Engineer, no permanent Superintendent of the Military Academy was appointed, the command devolving upon the senior officer of the Corps of Engineers present for duty.

[2] Bvt. Major P. G. T. Beauregard, Corps of Engineers, by order of John B. Floyd, Secretary of War, relieved Colonel Delafield, Jan. 23, 1861, from the superintendency of the Military Academy, but was himself displaced five days later, Jan. 28, 1861, by direction of the succeeding Secretary of War, Joseph Holt, the command again devolving upon Colonel Delafield.

APPENDIX B

SHOWING TREMENDOUS NUMBER AND DISTRIBUTION OF LABOR STRIKES WHICH THE ARMY WAS CALLED UPON TO PUT DOWN BETWEEN 1886 AND 1895

Alabama

1894—July 19. Adger. Miners' strike. Company G, 2nd Infantry; about 40 men.

California

1893—Sept. 1. Redlands. Anti-Chinese troubles. Companies C, E, and G, 9th Infantry, 140 men; held in armories two days.

1894—Railroad strike and riots.

July 4. Sacramento. 1st, 3rd, and 8th Regiments Infantry; 4 companies, 2nd Infantry; 2 companies, 6th Infantry; 1 sec. of Light Battery A, Light Battery B, and 2nd Brigade Signal Corps; about 1,450 men; withdrawn from July 23 to 30.

July 4. Oakland. 2nd Regiment Artillery, 6 companies 5th Infantry, 3 companies Naval Battalion, 1 company 2nd Infantry, 1st Troop Cavalry; about 900 men; withdrawn from July 18 to Aug. 8.

July 4. Chico. 4 companies 8th Infantry and 1 company 2nd Infantry, about 250 men; one day.

July 4. San Jose. 2 companies, 5th Infantry; 1 company, Naval Battalion, about 150 men; withdrawn July 16.

July 12. Sumner. 3 companies, 6th Infantry, about 150 men; withdrawn July 25 to 30.

July 16. Dunsmuir. 2 companies, 6th Infantry, and 2 companies, 2nd Infantry; withdrawn Aug. 2 to Aug. 7; about 225 men.

July 17. Porta Costa. 1 company, 2nd Infantry, and 1 company, 5th Infantry; about 100 men; withdrawn July 19 to 27.

July 18. Truckee. 2 companies, 1st Infantry, and 2 companies, 2nd Infantry; about 200 men; withdrawn July 25 to Aug. 7.

July 19. Alameda. 1 company, 5th Infantry, about 50 men; withdrawn July 22.

July 22. Woodland. 1 company, 2nd Infantry, about 50 men; withdrawn July 25.

July 23. Red Bluff. 1 company, 8th Infantry, about 50 men; withdrawn July 29.

Connecticut

1891—June 15. Bridgeport. Threatened riot. 2 companies (B and E, 4th Infantry), and Gatling gun. 130 men, held in readiness for two days.

ILLINOIS

1894—May 25. La Salle. Coal miners' strike and riot. 6 companies, 3rd Infantry; 307 men, gradually withdrawn from May 29 to 31.

May 25. Centralia. Coal miners' strike and riot. 4 companies, 4th Infantry; 202 men; withdrawn May 28.

May 26. Pana. Coal miners' strike and riot. 4 companies, 5th Infantry; 192 men; withdrawn May 28.

May 27. Minonk. Coal miners' strike and riot. 3 companies, 5th Infantry; 126 men; withdrawn May 29.

June 5. Carterville. Coal miners' strike and riot. 3 companies, 4th Infantry; 160 men; withdrawn June 7.

June 7. Peoria. Coal miners' strike and riot. 1 company, 5th Infantry; 51 men; withdrawn June 12.

June 8. Edinburg. Coal miners' strike and riot. 1 company, 5th Infantry; 42 men; withdrawn June 9.

June 9. Pana. Coal miners' strike. 1st Infantry; 683 men; withdrawn June 12.

June 7. Pekin. Coal miners' strike and riot. 3 companies; one from each of 3rd, 5th, and 6th Regiments; 156 men; withdrawn June 13.

June 18. Mt. Olive. Coal miners' strike and riot. 7th Infantry; 371 men; withdrawn June 20.

July 2. Decatur. Railroad strike and riot. 4 companies, 5th Infantry, and Troop B; 265 men; withdrawn from July 3 to 13.

July 2. Danville. Railroad strike and riot. 5 companies, 5th Infantry, detail from Battery A, and Troop B; 210 men; withdrawn from July 5 to 16.

July 3. Mounds. Railroad strike and riot. 6 companies, 4th Infantry; 336 men; withdrawn from July 6 to 19.

July 5. Springfield. Railroad strike and riot. 3 companies, 5th Infantry and detachment of 1st Infantry; 217 men; withdrawn July 9.

July 6. Chicago. Railroad strike and riot. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 6th, and 7th Infantry, portions of 4th and 5th Infantry, Batteries A and D, Troops A and B, 1st Battalion of Naval Militia, in all 4,243 men; gradually withdrawn from July 18 to August 7. In addition to this force there were on duty about 2,500 regular troops, 4,000 regular and special police, with deputy marshals and deputy sheriffs to make a total of about 14,000 men.

July 7. Spring Valley. Riot. 2 companies, 6th Infantry; 128 men; on duty until July 16.

IOWA

1886—March 9. Des Moines. To prevent lynching. Company A, 3rd Infantry; 32 men; On duty at jail two nights.
1888—Shenandoah. To capture a murderer. Company E, 3rd Infantry; about 40 men; on duty a few hours.
1893—Dec. 21. Oskaloosa. To capture a gang of tramps. Company F, 3rd Infantry; 40 men (estimated); on duty a few hours.
1894—April 13. Council Bluffs. Industrial Army Companies B, C, G, K, L, and M, 3rd Infantry; 187 men; on duty six days. These same companies with the addition of Company E, 35 men, were afterward held in their armories three days and Companies H and L, 4th Infantry, 98 men, were held in readiness five days.
May 30. Evans. Coal miners' strike. Companies A and H, 3rd Infantry; 85 men; on duty six days.
May 30. Muchakinock. Coal miners' strike. Companies G and K, Infantry; 80 men; on duty seven days.
June 6. Evans. Coal miners' strike. Company F, 3rd Infantry; 35 men; on duty two days.
July 4. Sioux City. Railroad strike. Companies A, C, D, F, G, H, I, L, and M, 4th Infantry and Company K, 1st Infantry, with Gatling gun; 436 men; on duty six days.
1895—March 15. Algona. Incendiary fires. Company F, 4th Infantry; about 40 men; on duty one night.
April 11. Cincinnati. Miners' strike. One companv; 40 men.

KENTUCKY

(*No accurate records in Adjutant General's office*)

1886—March. Pulaski County. War on convict miners. 50 men (estimated).
1887—August. Morehead. To guard court. 75 men, 1st Infantry
Pineville. To prevent lawlessness. 50 men; 1st Infantry.
1888—Dec. 25. Hazard. To prevent lawlessness. 50 men (estimated).
1889—September. Harlan County. To prevent lawlessness. 50 men (estimated).
1890—March. Louisville. To protect property and preserve order after cyclone. 200 men (estimated). 1st Infantry.
April 16. Black Mountain. To prevent lawlessness. 100 men (estimated).
August. Hazard. To guard court house. 50 men (estimated).

MAINE

1894—Jan. 25. Bath. Fire. Companies C and D, 2nd Infantry; 68 men; five days.
May 9. Norway. Fire. Company D, 1st Infantry; 51 men; one day.

PENNSYLVANIA

1889—June 4. Johnstown. Flood. 14th Infantry, 489 men; on duty until June 29.

CLASSIFICATION OF CASES, BY STATES AND YEARS

State	1886	1887	1888	1889	1890	1891	1892	1893	1894	1895	Totals
Alabama.		1	6	4		4		2	8		25
Arizona.											0
Arkansas.									1	1	2
California.								1	11		12
Colorado.		1				2		2	3		8
Connecticut.				1		1					2
Delaware.											0
Dist. of Columbia.											0
Florida.		1	1	1	2	1	2	2	3		13
Georgia.				2	1		1	1	3	1	9
Idaho.						1	1				2
Illinois.	3	1		2				2	16		24
Indiana.	1							1	2		4
Iowa.	1		1					1	5	2	10
Kansas.	1		2	1			1	2		1	8
Kentucky.	1	2	1	1	3		1			2	11
Louisiana.		1		1			1			1	4
Maine.									2		2
Maryland.		1			1				1		3
Massachusetts. . .		2		2	1			1	1		7
Michigan.				1					2	2	5
Minnesota.				4		1	1		2		8
Mississippi.				2				1			3
Missouri.	1		1						1		3
Montana.									2		2
Nebraska.						2	1		2		5

CLASSIFICATION OF CASES, BY STATES AND YEARS—*Continued*

State	1886	1887	1888	1889	1890	1891	1892	1893	1894	1895	Totals
Nevada.........											0
New Hampshire..											0
New Jersey......		1				1					2
New Mexico.....									1		1
New York.......			3		2		4	1	1	1	12
North Carolina...		2		1		3	1	1	4	3	15
North Dakota....					1			3			4
Ohio...........	1	3					1	2	13	1	21
Oklahoma.......									1		1
Oregon..........						1					1
Pennsylvania....				1	1	1	2		1		6
Rhode Island....											0
South Carolina...				1	2	1	1	1	1	1	8
South Dakota....											0
Tennessee.......				1	1	3	1	1		1	8
Texas...........	2	2	2	6	1	2			1		16
Utah............									2		2
Vermont........											0
Virginia.........	1	3	3	2	7	6	3	2	6	4	37
Washington......	1			3		1			1	1	7
West Virginia....									7	1	8
Wisconsin.......	1			1	1		1	1	1		6
Wyoming........										1	1
Totals......	14	21	20	38	24	31	23	28	105	24	328

APPENDIX C

SHOWING LARGE NUMBER OF TROOPS ENGAGED IN PHILIPPINE HOSTILITIES BETWEEN FEBRUARY 4, 1899 AND JULY 4, 1902

Regulars

Eng., A, B, C, D, E, F, G, and H.
1st Cav., Hq., A, B, C, D, I, K, L, and M.
3rd Cav. Reg.
4th Cav. Reg.
5th Cav., Hq., A, B, C, D, I, K, L, and M.
6th Cav. Reg.
9th Cav. Reg.
10th Cav., E, F, G, and H.
11th Cav. Reg.
15th Cav. Reg.
1st, 8th, 10th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, and 25th btrys. of Field Art.
Astor Btry.
25th, 27th, 29th, 30th, 31st, 32nd, 33rd, 36th, 60th, 61st, 62nd, 63rd, 64th, 65th, 68th, 69th, 70th, and 71st cos. Coast Art. and Hq. 6th Artillery.
1st Inf. Reg.
2nd Inf. Reg.
3rd Inf. Reg.
4th Inf. Reg.
5th Inf. Reg.
6th Inf. Reg.
7th Inf., C, D, H, and M.
8th Inf., Hq., E, F, G, H, I, K, L and M.
9th Inf. Reg.
10th Inf. Reg.
11th Inf. Reg.
12th Inf. Reg.
13th Inf. Reg.
14th Inf. Reg.
15th Inf. Reg.
16th Inf. Reg.
17th Inf. Reg.
18th Inf. Reg.
19th Inf. Reg.
20th Inf. Reg.

Volunteers

1st Calif. Inf., A and D Calif. Art.
1st Colo. Inf.
1st Idaho Inf.
51st Iowa Inf.
20th Kan. Inf.
13th Minn. Inf.
1st Mont. Inf.
1st Nebr. Inf.
1st Troop Nev. Cav.
1st N. Dak. Inf.
2nd Ore. Inf.
10th Penn. Inf.
1st S. Dak. Inf.
1st Tenn. Inf. and B Utah Art.
1st Wash. Inf.
1st Wyo. Inf.
Wyo. Battery.
11th U. S. Vol. Cav.
26th U. S. Vol. Inf.
27th U. S. Vol. Inf.
28th U. S. Vol. Inf.
29th U. S. Vol. Inf.
30th U. S. Vol. Inf.
31st U. S. Vol. Inf.
32nd U. S. Vol. Inf.
33rd U. S. Vol. Inf.
34th U. S. Vol. Inf.
35th U. S. Vol. Inf.
36th U. S. Vol. Inf.
37th U. S. Vol. Inf.
38th U. S. Vol. Inf.
39th U. S. Vol. Inf.
40th U. S. Vol. Inf.
41st U. S. Vol. Inf.
42nd U. S. Vol. Inf.
43rd U. S. Vol. Inf.
44th U. S. Vol. Inf.
45th U. S. Vol. Inf.
46th U. S. Vol. Inf.
47th U. S. Vol. Inf.
48th U. S. Vol. Inf

Regulars

21st Inf. Reg.
22nd Inf. Reg.
23rd Inf Reg.
24th Inf., Hq., A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, and M.
25th Inf. Reg.
26th Inf. Reg.
27th Inf. Reg.
28th Inf. Reg.
29th Inf. Reg.
30th Inf. Reg.
Also detachments signal corps, ord. dept., and hosp. corps.

Volunteers

49th U. S. Vol. Inf.

APPENDIX D

SHOWING PAY SCALE IN 1867

Grade	Pay proper per month of thirty days	Total pay and emoluments per month of thirty days	Total yearly pay	No. of horses* allowed
General (Grant)	$400.00	$1,246.00	$15,078.00	$50
Lieutenant General (Sherman)	270.00	1,116.00	13,518.00	50
Major General	220.00	481.00	5,800.50	5
Brigadier General	124.00	326.50	3,940.50	4
Adjutant General, Quartermaster General, Paymaster General, Commissary General of Subsistence, Surgeon-General, Judge-Advocate General, Chief of Engineers and Chief of Ordnance (Brigadier General) each	124.00	326.50	3,940.50	4
Chief Signal Officer, Inspector General, and Superintendent of Military Academy (Colonels of Cavalry), each	110.00	227.00	2,736.00	2
CAVALRY				
Colonel	110.00	227.00	2,736.00	2
Lieutenant Colonel	95.00	203.00	2,446.50	2
Major	80.00	179.00	2,157.00	2
Regimental Adjutant, Commissary and Quartermaster (extra Lieutenants), each	63.33	130.83⅓	1,577.50	2
Captain	70.00	137.50	1,657.50	2
First Lieutenant, Second and Brevet Second Lieutenants, each	53.33	120.83⅓	1,457 .50	2
Senior Veterinary Surgeon	100.00	100.00	1,200.00	
Hospital Steward	....	33.00	396.00	
Sergeant Major	....	26.00	312.00	
First Sergeant	....	24.00	288.00	
Trumpeter (Chief)	....	23.00	276.00	
Quartermaster, Commissary and Saddler Sergeants—each	....	22.00	264.00	
Sergeant and Company Quartermaster Sergeant—each	....	20 00	240.00	
Corporal	....	18.00	216.00	
Farrier and Blacksmith, Saddler and Wagoner—each	....	18.00	216.00	
Private and Trumpeter—each	....	16.00	192.00	
ARTILLERY (Heavy) AND INFANTRY				
Colonel	95.00	212.00	2,556.00	2
Lieutenant Colonel	80.00	188.00	2,266.50	2
Major	70.00	169.00	2,037.00	2
Regimental Adjutant, Quartermaster and Commissary (extra Lieutenants)—each, in addition to pay as Lieutenants	10.00	10.00	......	2
Captain	60.00	127.50	1,537.50	
First Lieutenant	50.00	117.50	1,417.50	
Second and Brevet Lieutenants—each	45.00	112.50	1,357.50	
Sergeant Major	....	26.00	312.00	

Grade	Pay proper per month of thirty days	Total pay and emoluments per month of thirty days	Total yearly pay	No. of horses* allowed
CAVALRY—*Continued*				
Hospital Steward	....	$35.00	$396.00	
Quartermaster and Commissary Sergeants and Principal Musicians—each	....	22.00	264.00	
First Sergeant	....	24.00	288.00	
Company Quartermaster Sergeant and Sergeants—each	....	20.00	240.00	
Corporal, Artificer and Wagoner—each	....	18.00	216.00	
Private and Musician—each	....	16.00	192.00	
Regimental and Post Chaplains	100.00	118.00	1,419.00	2
Hospital Steward, 1st Class	....	33.00	396.00	
Hospital Steward, 2nd Class	....	25.00	300.00	
Hospital Steward, 3rd Class	....	23.00	276.00	
Ordnance Sergeants of Posts (of N. C. Staff unattached to regiments)	....	25.00	300.00	
Superintendent of National Cemetery (Ordnance Sergeant)	....	25.00	300.00	
Leader of Band	....	75.00	900.00	
Musicians of First Class (¼ of 24)	....	34.00	408.00	
Musicians of Second Class (¼ of 24)	....	20.00	240.00	
Musicians of Third Class (½ of 24)	....	17.00	204.00	
Hospital Matron	....	10.00	120.00	

* The monthly commutation allowed the General and Lieutenant General is given in place of the number of horses.

APPENDIX E

SHOWING ORGANIZATIONS OF REGULAR ARMY NECESSARILY USED IN PHILIPPINES FROM 1899 TO 1912

From the annual reports of the major general commanding the army; of the lieutenant general commanding the army; of the division and department commanders the following list of units serving in the Philippines between 1899 and 1912 has been compiled (Regular troops only).

Inf. Regs.	Cav. Regs.	F. A. Regs.	F. A. Batrys.	Sig. Corps Co.	Engineer Co.	C. A. C. Co.
1	1	1	1		A	31
2	2	2	2		B	32
3	3	3			C	33
4	4	4	4		D	35
5	5	5	5	E	E	36
6	6	6		F	F	42
7	7			G	G	50
8	8		8	H	H	51
9	9		9	I	I	9 (Band) 54
10	10				K	55
11	11			L	L	11 57
12	12		12		M	60
13	13		13			13 61
14	14		14			62
15	15		15			64

Inf. Regs.	Cav. Regs.	F. A. Regs.	F. A. Batrys.	Sig. Corps Co.	Engineer Co.	C. A. C. Co.	
16							65
17			17				68
18			18			18	70
19							71
20							86
21							90
22							95
23			23			23	138
24			24				146
25			25			25	
26			26				
27			27			27	
28			28				
29						29	
30						30	

APPENDIX F

STATISTICS OF THE PUNITIVE EXPEDITION UNDER BRIGADIER GENERAL JOHN J. PERSHING, 1916

"Headquarters Punitive Expedition, U. S. Army,
Columbus, N. M., March 14, 1916

General Orders
No. 1

1. The forces of this command are organized into a provisional division to be called 'Punitive Expedition, U. S. Army.'

2. The following staff is announced:

Chief of Staff...........Lt. Col. DeR. C. Cabell, 10th Cav.
Asst. to Chief of S......Capt. Wilson B. Burtt, 20th Inf.
Adjutant...............Maj. John L. Hines, Adj. Gen. Dept.
Intelligence Officer......Maj. James A Ryan, 13th Cav.
Inspector..............Col. Lucien G. Berry, 4th F. A.
Judge-Advocate.........Capt. Allen J. Greer, 16th Inf.
Quartermaster..........Maj. John F. Madden, Qr. Mr. Corps
Surgeon................Maj. Jere B. Clayton, Medical Corps
Engineer Officer........Maj. Lytle Brown, Corps of Engrs.
Signal Officer...........Capt. Hanson B. Black, Sig. Corps
Commander of the Base..Maj. Wm. R. Sample, 20th Inf.
Aides..................1st Lt. James L. Collins, 11th Cav.
2nd Lt. Martin C. Shallenberger, 16th Inf.

3. The Provisional Division will consist of:

(*a*) First Provisional Cavalry Brigade, Col. James Lockett, Commanding.

Troops
11th Cavalry 13th Cavalry
Battery C, 6th F. A. (attached)

(*b*) Second Cavalry Brigade, Col. Geo. A. Dodd, Commanding.

Troops
7th Cavalry 10th Cavalry
Battery B, 6th F. A. (attached)

(*c*) First Provisional Infantry Brigade, Col. John H. Beacom, Commanding.

Troops
6th Infantry 16th Infantry
Cos. E and H, 2nd Bn. of Engrs. (attached)

(*d*) Ambulance Co. No. 7. Field Hospital No. 7

(*e*) Signal Corps Detachments, First Aero Squadron
Detachment Sig. Corps

(*f*) Wagon Companies, Numbers 1 and 2......"

Without going into details of the movements of the various detachments of the command that had been steadily advancing southward it will be sufficient to show the organizations and their approximate stations as follows:

STATIONS AND TROOPS ON LINE OF COMMUNICATIONS, MARCH 29, 1916

Organizations	Commanding officer	Locations	Remarks
Division Headquarters		Dublan	Gen. Pershing at Namiquipa
Hqrs. 1st Prov. Cav. Brig.	Col. Lockett	Dublan	
Detachments:			
1st Sq. 13th Cav.	Maj. Lindsley	San Jose de Babicora [1]	
2 Tps. 13th Cav.	Maj. Tompkins	Namiquipa	
1st Prov. Sq. 11th Cav.	Maj. Howze	Namiquipa	
Hqrs. 2nd Prov. Cav. Brig.	Col. Dodd	Guerrero [1]	
Detachments:			
7th Cav.	Col. Erwin	Guerrero	
Troop A, 7th Cav.	Capt. Nissen	Portrillo Pass [1]	
Troop D, 7th Cav.	Capt. Boice	Santa Aña	
2nd Sq., 10th Cav.	Col. Brown	Quemada [1]	
1st Sq., 10th Cav.	Maj. Evans	Rubio [1]	
2 Troops, 10th Cav.	Maj. Tompkins	Namiquipa	
Hqrs. 2nd Prov. Inf. Brig.	Col. Beacom	Dublan	
Detachments:			
Co. C, 16th Inf. with Wagon Cos. Nos. 1 and 2	Capt. Ball	En route Dublan	
Co. M, 16th Inf.	Capt. Creary	Corralitas	
Det. Cos. 16th Inf.	Maj. Moore	Colomia Juarez [1]	
Co. B, 16th Inf.	Capt. Smith	Boca Grande	
3rd Bn., 6th Inf.	Capt. Shaffer	El Valle	Less 2 companies
Co. D and one-half M. G. Co., 6th Inf.	Capt. Johnson	Galeana	
1 Co. and one-half M. G. Co., 6th Inf.	Lt. Monroe	Cruces	
2 Cos., 6th Inf.	Capt. Roach	Chocolate Pass	
Co. G, Engineers	Lt. Fox	Boca Grande	
Co. H, Engineers	Capt. Garvis	Namiquipa	
Co. E, Engineers	Capt. Grant	Ascension	
Pack Train 1st Bn., 4th F. A.		San Jose de Babicora [1]	With Major Lindsley
1st Bn., 4th F. A.	Capt. Merrill	Dublan	
Ambulance Co. No. 7	Capt. Jones	Dublan	
Field Hospital No. 7	Maj. Clayton	Dublan	
Signal Corps:	Capt. Black		
Hqrs. 1st Aero Squad.	Capt. Foulois	Dublan	
Det. 1st Aero Squad.		El Valle	
Hqrs. Sig. Det.	Capt. Black	All stations	
Wagon wireless sets		Dublan and Namiquipa	

[1] Not on line of communications.

STATIONS AND TROOPS ON LINE OF COMMUNICATIONS, MARCH 29, 1916—*Continued*

Organizations	Commanding officer	Locations	Remarks
Wagon Co. No. 3	Capt. Bryson	Dublan	
Pack Train No. 10		Dublan	
Pack Trains Nos. 2 and 7		Namiquipa [1]	
Pack Train No. 11		Quemada [1]	
Hqrs. 1st and 3rd Sqds., 5th Cav.	Col. Wilder	Gibsons Ranch	
Hqrs. and 5 Cos. 24th Inf.	Col. Penrose	Dublan and way stations	
3 Cos. 24th Inf.	Capt. Gilmore	Columbus	
1st Bn., 20th Inf.	Maj. Sample	Columbus	
2nd Sq., 5th Cav.	Maj. Fleming	Columbus	

STATIONS OF TROOPS, PUNITIVE EXPEDITION, JUNE 30, 1916

Organizations	Commanding officer	Location	Remarks
Headquarters Pun. Exped.	Pershing	Dublan	
Hqrs. 1st Prov. Cav. Brig.	Wilder	El Valle	
5th Cav. (less Tr. F)	Wilder	El Valle	Casuals at Dublan.
Tr. F, 5th Cav.	Ely		On duty line of communications
11th Cav.	Lockett	Dublan	
13th Cav. (less Tr. I)	Slocum	Angostura [1]	
Tr. I, 13th Cav.			Not with Exped.
Hqrs. 2nd Prov. Cav. Brig.	Dodd	El Valle	
7th Cav.	Erwin	Dublan	
10th Cav. (less 3rd Sq.)	Evans	Dublan	
Troops I, K, M	Luhn	Ojo Federico	
Troop L	Hazzard	Vado de Fusiles	
Hqrs. 8th Inf. Brig.	Beacom	El Valle	
6th Inf.	Smith	El Valle	
16th Inf.	Allaire	El Valle	
24th Inf.	Ballou	Dublan	
Line of Commun. Troops			
17th Inf. (less 1st and 2nd Bn.)	Alexander	San Joaquin	
1st Bn. (less Co. A)	Saffarran	Ojo Federico	
Co. A	Wagner	Vado de Fusiles	
2nd Bn.	Hardaway	Columbus	
Hqrs. Div. Artly. Troops	Berry	Dublan	
1st Bn., 4th F. A., less Btrys. A and C	McMaster	El Valle	
Btrys. A and C	Apple	Dublan	
Btrys. B and C, 6th F. A.	Pulis	El Valle	

---

[1] Not on line of communications.

STATIONS OF TROOPS, PUNITIVE EXPEDITION, JUNE 30, 1916—*Continued*

Organizations	Commanding officer	Location	Remarks
Hqrs. 2nd B. Engrs.	Brown	Dublan	
Co. E	Sherman	Vado de Fusiles	
Co. G	Finch	Ojo Federico	
Co. H	Graves	El Valle	
Hqrs. Sig. Corps Troops	Chandler	Columbus	
1st Aero Squad.	Foulois	Columbus	
1st Aero Squad. Detach.		Dublan	
Wireless sets		Columbus	
Wireless sets		Dublan	
Wireless sets		El Valle	
Detach. Sig. Corps		All stations	
Hqrs. Sanitary Troops	Bratton	Dublan	
Amb. Co. 3	Coffin	Columbus	
Amb. Co. 7 (less Mtr. ambulance)	Bastion	El Valle	
Motor Amb. Co. 7	Jones		En route El Valle to Columbus
Field Hosp. 3	Baker	Dublan	
Field Hosp. 7	Hart	El Valle	
Corps Civilian Guides and Scouts	Schallenberger	Dublan	
Apache Scouts	Shannon	El Valle	
Wagon Companies			
Nos. 1 and 2	Bryson	Dublan	
Nos. 3 and 4	Logan	El Valle	
Auto Transportation			
Truck Train No. 1	Taylor	Galeana	
Truck Train No. 2	Bailey	Ojo Federico	
Truck Train No. 3	Cavanaugh		On road work
Truck Train No. 4	Pope	Dublan	
Truck Train No. 5	Hilgrade		On road work
Truck Train No. 6	Furlough		On road work
Truck Train No. 7	Jones	Columbus	
Truck Train No. 8	Harper	Dublan	
Truck Train No. 9	Lister	Columbus	
Truck Train No. 10	Holliday	Dublan	
Truck Train No. 13	Tobin	Columbus	
Truck Train No. 14	Game	Columbus	
Truck Train No. 2, Special	Whitside	Columbus	
Pack Trains:			
Nos. 2 and 11			With 7th Cav.
No. 3			" 5th Cav.
No. 6			" 11th "
No. 7			" 10th "
No. 10			" 13th "

ENGAGEMENTS OF TROOPS OF PUNITIVE EXPEDITION UP TO JUNE 30, 1916

Date	Place	U. S. Troops	Character of enemy	Number U. S. troops		Number of enemy[a]		Losses U. S. troops		Losses of enemy	
				Of.	E. M.	Of.	E. M.	K.	W.	K.	W.
March 29	Guerrero	7th Cavalry, Dodd and Erwin	Villistas	25	345		380[b]		5	56	35
April 1	Agua Caliente	10th Cavalry, Brown	Villistas	14	258		170			3	[c]
April 7	Agua Zarca	7th Cavalry, Kendrick	Villistas	2	95		30			3	2
April 10	La Joya	11th Cavalry, Howze	Villistas	10	255		40	1	3	7	[c]
April 12	Parral	13th Cavalry, Tompkins	Carranzistas	8	120		200	2	6	40	[c]
April 20	Green Road, Verde River	7th Cavalry, Brown	Villistas	1	45		10				3
April 22	Tomochic	7th Cavalry, Dodd	Villistas	10	145		140	2	3	32	25
May 5	Ojos Azules	11th Cavalry, Howze	Villistas	14	319		160			61	50
May 14	San Miguel de Rubio	6th Infantry, Patton	Villistas	1	14		7			3	
May 25	Alamillo Canyon	17th Infantry, Cpl. Marksbury	Villistas		11		20	1	2	2	[c]
June 9	Santa Clara Canyon	13th Cavalry, Rethorst	Villistas	1	20		25			2	[c]
June 21	Carrizal	10th Cavalry, Boyd	Carranzistas	3	87		400	9	12[d]	42	51

[a] The strength of enemy and casualties obtained from official reports or from officers who participated.

[b] The Villistas stationed at San Ysidro are included.

[c] Number unknown.

[d] Three missing.

The command remained at the above-mentioned stations until the withdrawal of the Expedition, excepting that, on September 1, 1916, the 13th Cavalry, then at Angostura, and the Apache Indian Scouts at El Valle, were moved to Colonia Dublan for station.

APPENDIX G

TREMENDOUS DISTRIBUTION OF UNITS OF THE ARMY, SEPTEMBER, 1872

Eng. Bat.: Hq., Co. A, B, C, D, at Willett's Pt., N. Y. H.; Co. E at West Point, N. Y.

1st Cav.: Hq. Benicia Bks., Cal.; Co. A, Ft. Whipple, A. T.; Co. B. at Ft. Klamath, Ore.; Co. C at Camp McDermit, Nev.; Co. D in the field near Tucson, A. T.; Co. E, Ft. Lapwai, I. T.; F at Camp Warner, Ore.; Gat Camp Bidwell, Cal.; H at Camp Harney, Ore.; I at Camp Verde, A. T.; K at Camp Halleck, Nev.; L and M at Camp Apache, A. T.

2nd Cav.: Hq. Omaha, Neb.; Co. A at Fort Frd. Steele, W. T.; B at Stambaugh, W. T.; C at Red Willow C'k, Neb.; D at Camp Douglas, U. T.; E at Ft. Laramie, W. T.; F, G, H at Ft. Ellis, M. T.; I, Ft. Sanders, W. T.; K at Ft. Laramie, W. T.; L at Ft. Ellis, M. T.; and M at Omaha, Neb.

3rd Cav.: Hq. Ft. McPherson, Neb.; Co. A, Sidney Bks., Neb.; Co. B, F, I, K, M, Ft. McPherson, Neb.; Co. C, D, G, H, L, Ft. D. A. Russell, W. T.; Ft. Sanders, W. T.

4th Cav.: Hq. A, B, C, E, L, Ft. Richardson, Tex.; D, G, I, K, Ft. Concho, Tex.; F, H, at Ft. Griffin, Tex.; M, Ft. Brown, Tex.

5th Cav.: Hq. B, C, Camp McDowell, A. T.; A, Camp Verde, A. T.; D, Camp Bowie, A. T.; E, Cp. Date Ck., A. T.; F, Camp Crittenden, A. T.; G, H, Camp McDowell, A. T.; I, L, M, Camp Grant, A. T.; K, Camp Hualpai, A. T.

6th Cav.: Hq. A, B, C, E, F, H, L, Ft. Hays, Kan.; D, Ft. Wallace, Kan.; G, Ft. Dodge, Kan.; I, Oxford, Miss.; K, Meridian, Miss.; M, Ft. Lyons, C. T.

7th Cav.: Hq. F, Louisville, Ky.; A, Elizabethton, Ky.; B, Spartansburg, S. C.; C, Lincolnville, N. C.; D, Opelika, Ala.; E, M, Unionville, S. C.; G, Laurensville, S. C.; H, Nashville, Tenn.; I, Shelbyville, Ky.; K, Yorkville, S. C.

8th Cav.: Hq. B, C, L, M, Ft. Union, N. M.; A, I, Ft. Bayard, N. M.; D, Ft. Stanton, N. M.; E, K, Ft. Wingate, N. M.; F, Ft. Garland, C. T.; G, Ft. Selden, N. M.; H, Ft. Tulerosa, N. M.

9th Cav.: Hq. A, D, E, G, Ft. Clark, Tex.; B, Ringgold Bks., Tex.; C, Ft. Duncan, Tex.; F, M, Ft. McKavett, Tex.; H, Ft. Stockton, N. M.; I, Ft. Davis, Tex.; K, Ft. Bliss, Tex.; L, Ft. McIntosh, Tex.

10th Cav.: Hq. B, Ft. Gibson, I. T.; A, E, G, H, I, K, L, M, Ft. Sill, I. T.; C, D, F, Camp Supply, I. T.

1st Art.: Hq. C, D, H, K, Ft. Hamilton, N. Y. H.; A, Ft. Ontario, N. Y.; B, Ft. Wadsworth, N. Y. H.; E, I, Ft. Wood, N. Y. H.; F, Madison Bks., N. Y.; G, Ft. Monroe, Va.; L, Ft. Niagara, N. Y.; M, Plattsburg Bks., N. Y.

2nd Art.: Hq. A, F, G, I, Presidio, San Fr., Cal.; B, L, Alcatraz Isl., Cal.; C, H, Sitka, Alaska; D, Point San Jose; E, Ft. Cape Disap'tm't; K, Ft. Monroe, Va.; M, Ft. Stevens, Ore.

3rd Art.: Hq. C, I, Charleston, S. C.; A, Ft. Monroe, Va.; B, D, Key West, Fla.; E, H, Ft. Pulaski, Ga.; F, Ft. Jefferson, Fla.; G, L, M, Ft. Barrancas, Fla.; K, Savannah, Ga.

4th Art.: Hq. B, E, F, Ft. McHenry, Md.; A, Charlotte, N. C.; C, Rutherfordt'n, N. C.; D, H, Raleigh, N. C.; G, Ft. Johnston, N. C.; I, Ft. Monroe, Va.; K, L, Ft. Macon, N. C.; M, Ft. Foote, Md.

5th Art.: Hq. A B, F, L, Ft. Adams, R. I.; C, Ft. Monroe, Va.; D, Ft. Warren, Mass.; E, Ft. Independence, Mass.; G, Plattsburg Bks., N. Y.; H, I, Ft. Trumbull, Conn.; K, Ft. Sullivan, Me.; M, Ft. Preble, Me.

1st Inf.: Hq. D, E, I, Ft. Wayne, Mich.; A, K, Ft. Brady, Mich.; B, Madison Bks., N. Y.; C, G, Ft. Porter, N. Y.; F, Ft. Mackinac, Mich.; H, Ft. Gratiot, Mich.

2nd Inf.: Hq. G, K, Mobile, Ala.; A, B, Atlanta, Ga.; C, Huntsville, Ala.; D, Spartanburg, S. C.; E, I, Chattanooga, Tenn.; F, H, St. Augustine, Fla.

3rd Inf.: Hq. C, E, Ft. Hays, Kan.; A, Ft. Dodge, Kan.; B, D, I, Ft. Supply, I. T.; F, G, Ft. Lyon, C. T.; H, Ft. Wallace, Kan.; K, Ft. Leavenworth, Kan.

4th Inf.: Hq. D, K, Frankfort, Ky.; A, Lexington, Ky.; B, Crab Orchard, Ky.; C, Lancaster, Ky.; E, Mt. Sterling, Ky.; F, Elizabethtown, Ky.; G, Paducah, Ky.; H, Louisville, Ky.; I, Lebanon, Ky.

5th Inf.: Hq. A, G, H, I, K, Ft. Leavenworth, Kan.; B, C, Ft. Scott, Kan.; D, F, Ft. Larned, Kan.; E, Ft. Hays, Kan.

6th Inf.: Hq. A, D, E, F, G, I, Ft. Buford, D. T.; B, C, Ft. McKeen, D. T.; H, K, Ft. Stevenson, D. T.

7th Inf.: Hq. C, D, E, F, G, I, K, Ft. Shaw, M. T.; A, Ft. Ellis, M. T.; B, Ft. Benton, M. T.; H, Camp Baker, M. T.

8th Inf.: Hq. Omaha, Neb.; A, B, C, F, H, K, Ft. Rice, D. T.; D, E, G, I, Beaver City, D. T.

9th Inf.: Hq. D, F, I, Ft. D. A. Russell, W. T.; A, C, E, Omaha, Neb.; B, Red Willow Creek, Neb.; G, Sidney Bks., Neb.; H, Ft. Sanders, W. T.; K, Ft. Steele, W. T.

10th Inf.: Hq. Ft. McKavett, Tex.; A, E, G, H, K, Ft. Brown, Tex.; B, F, I, Ringgold Bks., Tex.; C, San Antonio, Tex.; D, Austin, Tex.

11th Inf.: Hq. A, F, G, Ft. Griffin, Tex.; B, E, H, Ft. Concho, Tex.; C, D, I, K, Ft. Richardson, Tex.

12th Inf.: Hq. Camp Lowell, A. T.; A, Camp Wright, Cal.; B, Camp Independence, Cal.; C, Ft. Hall, I. T.; D, Ft. Yuma, Cal.; E, K, Camp Gaston, Cal.; F, Beale's Spgs., A. T.; G, I, Camp Mojave, A. T.; H, Camp McDermit, Nev.

13th Inf.: Hq. Ft. Frd. Steele, W. T.; A, Camp Brown, W. T.; B, C, D, E, F, Camp Douglas, U. T.; G, Ft. Bridger, W. T.; H, Camp Douglass, W. T.; I, Cp. Douglass, A. T.; K, Cp. Stambaugh, W. T.

14th Inf.: Hq. A, B, H, I, K, Ft. Laramie, W. T.; C, Ft. D. A. Russell, W. T.; D, E, F, G, Ft. Fetterman, W. T.

15th Inf.: Hq. Santa Fe, N. M.; A, Ft. Wingate, N. M.; B, I, Ft. Stanton, N. M.; C, Ft. Union, N. M.; D, Ft. Garland, C. T.; E, F, Ft. Bayard, N. M.; G, Ft. Cummings, N. M.; H, Ft. Craig, N. M.; K, Ft. Tulerosa, N. M.

16th Inf.: Hq. F, G, Nashville, Tenn.; A, E, Louisville, Ky.; B, H, I, Jackson, Miss.; C, Aberdeen, Miss.; D, Humboldt, Tenn.; K, St. Augustine, Fla.

17th Inf.: Hq. A, B, C, D, F, H, Ft. Rice, D. T.; E, G, Grand River Agency, D. T.; I, K, Cheyenne Agency, D. T.

18th Inf.: Hq. B, D, G, Columbia, S. C.; A, E, Atlanta, Ga.; C, Yorkville, S. C.; F, Sumter, S. C.; H, Chester, S. C.; I, Laurensville, S. C.; K, Newberry, N. C.

19th Inf.: Hq. A, B, F, G, I, Baton Rouge, La.; C, D, H, part of E, Pascougola, Miss.; part of E, Holley Spgs., Miss.; K, Little Rock, Ark.

20th Inf.: Hq. E, Ft. Snelling, Minn.; A, H, Ft. Totten, D. T.; B, Ft. Cross, D. T.; C, D, Camp Sykes, A. T.; F, Ft. Wadsworth, D. T.; G, Ft. Ripley, Minn.; I, K, Ft. Penbina, D. T.

21st Inf.: Hq. Ft. Vancouver, W. T.; A, Harney, Ore.; B, Camp Apache, A. T.; C, Ft. Whipple, A. T.; D, Camp Bidwell, Cal.; E, Ft. Colville, W. T.; F, Ft. Klamath, Cal.; G, Ft. Lapwai, I. T.; H, Camp Date Creek, A. T.; I, Camp Hualpai, A. T.; K, Ft. Boise, I. T.

22nd Inf.: Hq. A, E, F, I, Ft. Sully, D. T.; B, Lo'r Brule Agency, D. T.; C, D, G, H, K, Ft. Randall, D. T.

23rd Inf.: Hq. K, Ft. Whipple, A. T.; A, Camp Verde, A. T.; B, Camp Date Creek, A. T.; C, Camp McDowell, A. T.; D, E, Camp Lowell, A. T.; F, Ft. Bowie, A. T.; G, Camp Hualpi, A. T.; H, Camp Grant, W. T.; I, Camp Apache, A. T.

24th Inf.: Hq. C, E, H, I, Ft. McKavett, Tex.; A, G, Ft. Brown, Tex.; B, Ft. Clark, Tex.; D, Ft. McIntosh, Tex.; F, K, Ft. Duncan, Tex.

25th Inf.: Hq. E, G, Ft. Davis, Tex.; A, San Antonio, Tex.; B, H, Ft. Bliss, Tex.; C, I, Ft. Gibson, Tex.; D, Ft. Quitman, Tex.; F, K, Ft. Stockton, Tex.

APPENDIX H

SCHOOLS IN THE ARMY IN 1920

General Service Schools

Designation	*Location*
The School of the Line	Fort Leavenworth, Kan.
The General Staff School	Fort Leavenworth, Kan.
The Army War College	Washington Bks., D. C.

Special Service Schools

Designation	Location	Troops exempted from control of department and corps area commanders
The Infantry School	Ft. Benning, Ga.	All troops on duty at that station
The Infantry Tank School	Camp Meade, Md.	Hq. 1st Tank Group; 16th, 17th, 18th Tank Bns.; 21st, 22nd (inactive) Maintenance Cos. Ord. Depot, 30th Ord. Main. Co.; Tank School Med. Det.
The Cavalry School	Ft. Riley, Kan.	All troops on duty at that station except aviation troops
The Field Artillery Basic School	Camp Knox, Ky.	3rd F. A. (less 2nd Bn.)
The Field Artillery Technical School	Ft. Sill, Okla.	All troops on duty at that station
The Field Artillery Field Officers School	Camp Bragg, N. C.	All troops on duty at that station
The Coast Artillery School	Ft. Monroe, Va.	All troops on duty with the school
The Air Service Primary Flying School	Carlstrom Field, Fla.	All troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Observation School	Post Field, Ft. Sill, Okla.	All air service troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Communications School	Post Field, Ft. Sill, Okla.	All air service troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Field Officers School	Langley Field, Hampton, Va.	All troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Photography School	Langley Field, Hampton, Va.	All troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Airship School	Langley Field, Hampton, Va.	All troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Mechanics' School	Chanuke Field, Rantoul, Ill.	All troops on duty at that station
The Air Service Balloon Observers' School	Ross Field, Cal.	All troops on duty at that station
The Engineer School	Camp Humphreys, Va.	All troops on duty at that station
The Signal School	Camp Alfred Vail, N. J.	All troops on duty at that station
The Army Music School	Washington Barracks, D. C.	All troops on duty with the school
The Quartermaster Corps School	Philadelphia, Pa.	All troops on duty with the school
The Quartermaster Corps Subsistence School	Chicago, Ill.	All troops on duty with the school
The Quartermaster Corps Animal Transport School	Jeffersonville, Ind.	All troops on duty with the school
The Quartermaster Corps Motor Transport School	Camp Holabird, Md.	All troops on duty with the school
The Finance School	Fort Hunt, Va.	All troops on duty with the school
The Army Medical School	Washington, D. C.	All troops on duty with the school, including the laboratory for manufacture of biologics
The Army Dental School	Washington, D. C.	All troops on duty with the school
The Army Veterinary School	Chicago, Ill.	All troops on duty with the school
The Medical Field Service School	Carlisle Barracks, Pa.	All troops on duty at that station
The Ordnance School	Watertown Arsenal, Mass.	All troops on duty with the school
The Ordnance Specialist's School	Raritan Arsenal, N. J.	All troops on duty with the school
The Chemical Warfare School	Edgewood Arsenal, Md.	All troops on duty at that station
The Chaplains' School	Camp Knox, Ky.	All troops on duty with the school

This enumeration does not include the United States Military Academy at West Point, nor the schools for bakers and cooks, which exist in every camp except Fort Riley, Kan.

APPENDIX I

GENERAL ORGANIZATION OF THE ARMY, 1879

Military Division of the Missouri

Lieut. Gen. P. H. Sheridan, Headquarters, Chicago, Ill.
Col. Richard C. Drum, A.A.G.

Department of Dakota

Brig. Gen. Alfred H. Terry, Headquarters Ft. Snelling, Minn.
Major George D. Ruggles, A.A.G.

Middle District

Col. S. B. Sturgis, 7th Cav., Headquarters Ft. A. Lincoln.
1st Lieut. E. A. Garlington, 7th Cav., Regimental and Personnel Adjutant.

Southern District

Col. W. H. Wood, 11th Inf., Headquarters Cheyenne Agency, D. T.
1st Lieut. G. G. Lott, 11th Inf., A.A.A.G

District of Montana

Col. John Gibbon, 7th Inf., Headquarters Ft. Shaw, M. T.
1st Lieut. Levi F. Burnett, 7th Inf., A.A.A.G.

District of the Yellowstone

Col. N. A. Miles, 5th Inf., Headquarters Ft. Keogh, M. T.
1st Lieut. G. W. Baird, A.A.A.G.

Department of the Missouri

Brig. Gen. John Pope, Headquarters Ft. Leavenworth, Kan.
Maj. E. R. Platt, A.A.G.

District of New Mexico

Col. Edward Hatch, 9th Inf., Headquarters Santa Fe, N. M.
1st Lieut. John S. Loud, 9th Cav., A.A.A.G.

Department of the Platte

Brig. Gen. George Crooke, Headquarters Omaha Bks., Neb.
Lieut. Col. Robert Williams, A.A.G.

Department of Texas

Brig. Gen. E. O. C. Ord, Headquarters San Antonio, Tex.
Maj. T. M. Vincent, A.A.G.

District of the Rio Grande

Col. G. Sykes, 20th Inf., Headquarters Ft. Brown, Tex.
1st Lieut. J. B. Rodman, 20th Inf., A.A.A.G.

District of the Nueces

Col. R. S. MacKenzie, 4th Cav., Headquarters Ft. Clark, Tex.
2nd Lieut. J. H. Dorst, 4th Cav., A.A.A.G.

District of the Pecos

Col. B. H. Grierson, 10th Cav., Headquarters Ft. Concho, Tex.
1st Lieut. Robert G. Smither, A.A.A.G.

District of North Texas

Col. B. H. Clitz, 10th Inf., Commanding, Headquarters Ft. McKavett.

MILITARY DIVISION OF THE ATLANTIC

Maj. Gen. W. S. Hancock, Headquarters Governors Island, N. Y. H.
Col. James B. Fry, A.A.G.

Department of the South

Brig. Gen. C. C. Augur, Headquarters Newport Bks., Ky.
Maj. Oliver D. Greene, A.A.G.

Department of the East

Maj. Gen. W. S. Hancock, Headquarters Governors Island, N. Y. H.
Col. J. H. Fry, A.A.G.

MILITARY DIVISION OF THE PACIFIC

Department of California

Maj. Gen. I. McDowell, Headquarters Presidio, Cal.
Lieut. Col. John C. Kelton, A.A.G.

Department of the Columbia

Brevet Maj. Gen. O. O. Howard, Headquarters Ft. Vancouver, Wyo.
Maj. A. Clay Wood, A.A.G.

District of the Clearwater

Col. Frank Wheaton, 2nd Inf., Headquarters Lewiston, I. T.

Department of Arizona

Brevet Maj. Gen. O. B. Willcox, Headquarters Prescott, Bks.
Maj. J. P. Martin, A.A.G.

MILITARY DEPARTMENT OF WEST POINT

Maj. Gen. John M. Schofield, Headquarters West Point, N. Y.
Capt. Wm. N. Wherry, A.D.C. Act. A.A.G.
Maj. Gen. J. M. Schofield, Superintendent, U.S.M.A.
Capt. Robert H. Hall, Adjutant, U.S.M.A.

APPENDIX K

ACTUAL DISPERSION OF ARMY, FALL OF 1865

1. The Department of the East, Major General **Joseph Hooker** to command; to embrace the New England States, New York and New Jersey. Headquarters at New York City.

2. The Middle Department, Major General W. S. **Hancock** to command; to embrace the states of West Virginia, Maryland (excepting the counties of Montgomery, that part of Anne Arundel lying south of the Annapolis and Elk Ridge Railway, and excluding the city of Annapolis, Prince Georges, Calvert, Charles and St. Mary's), the county of Loudoun and the Shenandoah Valley as far south and including Rockingham County, in Virginia, the states of Delaware and Pennsylvania. Headquarters at Baltimore.

3. The Department of Washington, Major General C. C. **Augur** to command; to embrace the District of Columbia, the counties of Montgomery, that part of Anne Arundel lying south of the Annapolis and Elk Ridge Railroad, and including the city of Annapolis, Prince Georges, Calvert, Charles and St. Mary's, in Maryland and Alexandria and Fairfax Counties, in Virginia. Headquarters at Washington.

4. The Department of the Ohio, Major General E. O. C. **Ord** to command; to embrace the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin and Michigan. Headquarters at Detroit.

5. The Department of the Tennessee, Major General **George Stoneman** to command; to embrace the state of Tennessee. Headquarters at Knoxville.

6. The Department of Kentucky, Major General **John M. Palmer** to command; to embrace the state of Kentucky, and Jeffersonville and New Albany, in Indiana. Headquarters at Louisville.

7. The Department of the Missouri, Major General **John Pope** to command; to embrace the states of Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri and Kansas and the territories of Colorado, Utah, Nebraska, Dakota, New Mexico and Montana. Headquarters at St. Louis.

8. The Department of Virginia, Major General **Alfred H. Terry** to command; to embrace the state of Virginia, excepting Alexandria, Fairfax and Loudoun counties, and the Shenandoah Valley as far south and including Rockingham County. Headquarters at Richmond.

9. The Department of North Carolina, Major General J. M. **Schofield** to command; to embrace the state of North Carolina. Headquarters at Raleigh.

10. The Department of South Carolina, Major General **Daniel Sickles** to command; to embrace the state of South Carolina. Headquarters at Charleston.

11. The Department of Georgia, Major General **James B. Steedman** to command; to embrace the state of Georgia. Headquarters at Augusta.

12. The Department of Florida, Major General **John G. Foster** to command; to embrace the state of Florida. Headquarters at Tallahassee.

13. The Department of Mississippi, Major General THOMAS J. WOOD to command; to embrace the state of Mississippi. Headquarters at Vicksburg.

14. The Department of Alabama, Major-General C. R. WOOD to command; to embrace the state of Alabama. Headquarters at Mobile.

15. The Department of Louisiana, Major General E. R. S. CANBY to command; to embrace the state of Louisiana. Headquarters at New Orleans.

16. The Department of Texas, Major General H. G. WRIGHT to command; to embrace the state of Texas. Headquarters at Galveston.

17. The Department of Arkansas, Major General J. J. REYNOLDS to command; to embrace the state of Arkansas and the Indian Territory. Headquarters at Little Rock.

18. The Department of the Columbia, Brigadier General F. STEELE to command; to embrace the state of Oregon and territories of Washington and Idaho. Headquarters at Fort Vancouver.

19. The Department of California, Major General IRVIN MCDOWELL to command; to embrace the states of California and Nevada and territories of New Mexico and Arizona. Headquarters at San Francisco.

1. The Military Division of the Atlantic, Major General GEORGE G. MEADE to command; to embrace the Department of the East, Middle Department, Department of Virginia, Department of North Carolina and the Department of South Carolina. Headquarters at Philadelphia.

2. The Military Division of the Mississippi, Major General W. T. SHERMAN to command; to embrace the Department of the Ohio, Department of the Missouri and Department of Arkansas. Headquarters at St. Louis.

3. The Military Division of the Gulf, Major General P. H. SHERIDAN to command; to embrace the Department of Louisiana, Department of Texas, and Department of Florida. Headquarters at New Orleans.

4. The Military Division of the Tennessee, Major General G. H. THOMAS to command; to embrace the Department of Tennessee, Department of Kentucky, Department of Georgia, Department of Mississippi and Department of Alabama. Headquarters at Nashville.

5. The Military Division of the Pacific, Major General HALLECK to command; to embrace the Department of the Columbia and Department of California. Headquarters at San Francisco.

APPENDIX L

GREAT DISPERSION, IN FALL OF 1866

CAVALRY

First Regiment: March 31—Companies B, F, H, I and M, Presidio, San Francisco, Calif.; L, Camp Union, Calif.; G and K, *en route* to Ariz.; A, C, D, and E, Camp near Drum Barracks, Calif.

Second Regiment: February 28—Headquarters, Fort Riley, Kan.

Third Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 12 companies, Camp near Fort Smith, Ark.; under orders to N. M.

Fourth Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 12 companies, San Antonio, Tex.

Fifth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and companies G, K, and C, Washington, D. C.; F, New Market, W. Va.; A and I, Raleigh, N. C.; L and H, Columbia, S. C.; B, D, E and M, Memphis, Tenn.

Sixth Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 6 companies, Austin, Tex.; 1 company at Wetherford, Tex.; 1 company at Waco, Tex.; 2 companies at Sherman, Tex.; 1 company at Halletsville, Tex.; 1 company at Jacksboro, Tex.

ARTILLERY

First Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and companies D and M, Fort Hamilton, New York Harbor; C, Fort Lafayette, New York Harbor; B and E, Fort Wadsworth, New York Harbor; H and G, Fort Schuyler, New York Harbor; L, Fort Porter, Buffalo; A and F, Fort Trumbull, Conn.; K and I, light batteries, Brownsville, Tex. Company K is now the Department of Louisiana.

Second Regiment: March 31—Headquarters and Companies F and H, Fort Point, Calif.; light batteries A and M, Presidio, San Francisco, Calif.; Company D, Angel Island, Calif.; B, E, and G, Alcatraz Island, Calif.; K, San Diego, Calif.; I, San Juan Island, Wash. Terr., February 28; L, Cape Disappointment, Wash. Terr.; C, Fort Stephens, Ore.

Third Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and Companies G and K, Fort Warren, Boston Harbor; A and F, Fort Independence, Boston Harbor; M and I, Fort Preble, Me.; L, Fort Sullivan, Me.; B, D and H, Fort Adams, R. I.; Light battery E, Raleigh, N. C.; C Department of Missouri, no station given.

Fourth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and Company I, Fort McHenry, Md.; K and L, Fort Delaware, Del.; M, Erie, Pa.; A, Fort Washington, Md.; E, Fort Foot, Md.; C, Fort Whipple, Va.; 3 companies at Washington, D. C.; G, Fort Wayne, Mich.; 1 company Department of Missouri, no station given.

Fifth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and companies A, B, C, and H, Fort Monroe, Va.; F, Light Battery, Richmond, Va.; G, Light Battery, Little Rock, Ark.; D, E, I, K, L, and M, Department of Florida, no station given.

INFANTRY

First Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 10 companies, New Orleans, La.

Second Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 8 companies, Louisville, Ky.; B, Jeffersonville, Ind.; D, Camp Nelson, Ky.

Third Regiment: February 28—Headquarters and 10 companies, Department of Missouri, no stations given.

Fourth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and companies D, H, and K, Fort Wayne, Mich.; A, Fort Porter, Buffalo; F, Fort Niagara, N. Y.; C and I, Plattsburg, N. Y.; G, Madison Barracks, N. Y.; E, Fort Ontario, N. Y.

Fifth Regiment: February 28—Headquarters and 7 companies in N. M. No station given; F, in Ariz., Fort Whipple, March 31.

Sixth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and companies C, D, and F, Charleston, S. C.; E, Hilton Hedge, S. C.; G, Darlington, S. C.; H and K, Columbia, S. C.; A, Georgetown S. C.; B, Aiken, S. C.; I, Lawtonville, S. C.

Seventh Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and 8 companies, Department of Florida.

Eighth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters and Company C, Winchester, Va.; G, Unionville, S. C.; E, Chester, S. C.; I, Anderson, S. C.; A, B, D, F, H and K, Salisbury, N. C.

Ninth Regiment: March 31—Headquarters and Company B, San Jose Point, Calif.; A and C, Presidio, San Francisco, Calif.; D, Drum Barracks, Calif.; E, Fort Humboldt, Calif.; K, Camp Iagua, Calif.; G, Camp Lincoln, Calif.; F, Fort Churchill, Calif.; I, Fort Ruby, Nev.; H, Fort McGarry, Nev.

Tenth Regiment: February 28—Headquarters and 10 companies, Department of Mobile.

Eleventh Regiment: April 30—Headquarters and First and Second Battalions, Richmond, Va.; Co. H, Third Battalion, Richmond, Va.; E and G, Third Battalion, Fredericksburg, Va.; A and F, Third Battalion, Lynchburg, Va.; C, Third Battalion, Danville, Va.; B, Third Battalion, Charlottesville, Va.; D, Third Battalion, Bristol, Va.

Twelfth Regiment: April 30—Headquarters, First Battalion Companies A, B, C, D, and G, Fort Monroe, Va.; First Battalion, E, F, and H, Norfolk, Va.; Second Battalion, C and G, Richmond, Va.; Second Battalion A, B, E and H, Petersburg, Va.; Second Battalion D and F, City Point; Third Battalion, 8 companies, Washington, D. C., June 3.

Thirteenth Regiment: February 28—Headquarters and 23 companies, Department of Mobile, no stations given.

Fourteenth Regiment: March 31—Headquarters, Fort Vancouver, Wash. Terr.; First Battalion, Company A, Fort Yuma, Calif.; D, Fort Mojav, Ariz. Terr.; C and G, Fort Whipple, Ariz. Terr.; B, D, and F, Fort McDowell, Ariz. Terr.; H, Fort Date Creek, Ariz. Terr.; Second Battalion E, Fort Vancouver, Wash. Terr.; A, Fort Dalles, Ore.; G, Fort Steilacoom, Wash. Terr.; B, Cape Disappointment, Wash. Terr.; H, Camp Curry, Ore.; Third Batallion C, Fort Mason, Ariz.; B and F, Fort Grant, Ariz.; A, D, E, and H, *en route* to Ariz.; G, not organized.

Fifteenth Regiment: May 31—Headquarters, Mobile, Ala.; First Battalion, 7 companies, Mobile, Ala.; D, Montgomery, Ala.; Second Battalion, 8 companies, Vicksburg, Miss.; Third Battalion, 5 companies, Mobile, Ala.; B, Huntsville, Ala.; E, Selma, Ala.; G, Bridgeport, Ala.

Sixteenth Regiment: June 30—Headquarters, Nashville, Tenn.; First Battalion, Department of Georgia, Atlanta, February 28; Second and Third Battalions, Department of Tennessee, no station of companies given.

Seventeenth Regiment: June 10—Headquarters, San Antonio, Tex.; First, Second and Third Battalions; no station of companies given.

Eighteenth Regiment: February 28—Headquarters and 22 companies; Department of Missouri, no stations of companies given.

Nineteenth Regiment: May 31—Headquarters and 1 company, Little Rock, Ark.; First Battalion, 7 companies, Fort Gibson, N. C.; Second Battalion, 6 companies, Camden, Ark.; Third Battalion, 5 companies, Little Rock, Ark.; B, Pine Bluff, Ark.; E, Jacksonport, Ark.; F, Fort Smith, Ark.; 3 unassigned companies, Newport Barracks, Ky.

APPENDIX M

ORGANIZATION OF ARMY, 1867

The Department of the East, Major General GEORGE G. MEADE to command; to embrace the New England States, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Fort Delaware. Headquarters at Philadelphia.

The Department of the Lakes, Brigadier and Brevet Major General JOSEPH HOOKER to command; to embrace the states of Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin. Headquarters at Detroit.

The Department of Washington, Brigadier and Brevet Major General E. R. S. CANBY to command; to embrace the District of Columbia, Alexandria and Fairfax Counties, Virginia, and the states of Maryland and Delaware, except Fort Delaware. Headquarters at Washington.

The Department of the Potomac, Brigadier and Brevet Major General JOHN M. SCHOFIELD to command; to embrace the states of Virginia, except Alexandria and Fairfax Counties, and West Virginia. Headquarters at Richmond.

The Department of the South, Major General DANIEL E. SICKLES to command; to embrace the states of North and South Carolina. Headquarters at Charleston.

The Department of Tennessee, Major General GEORGE H. THOMAS to command; to embrace the states of Kentucky, Tennessee, Georgia, Alabama and Mississippi. Headquarters at Louisville.

The Department of the Gulf, Major General PHILIP H. SHERIDAN to command; to embrace the states of Florida, Louisiana and Texas. Headquarters at New Orleans.

The Department of Arkansas, Brigadier and Brevet Major General E. O. C. ORD to command; to embrace the state of Arkansas and Indian Territory west. Headquarters at Little Rock.

The Department of the Missouri, Major General WINFIELD S. HANCOCK to command; to embrace the states of Missouri and Kansas and the territories of Colorado and New Mexico. Headquarters at Fort Leavenworth.

The Department of the Platte, Brigadier and Brevet Major General PHILIP ST. GEORGE COOKE to command; to embrace the state of Iowa, the Territories of Nebraska and Utah, so much of Dakota as lies west of the 104th meridian, and so much of Montana as lies contiguous to the new road from Fort Laramie to Virginia City, Montana. Headquarters at Omaha.

The Department of Dakota, Brigadier and Brevet Major General A. H. TERRY to command; to embrace the state of Minnesota and all the Territories of Dakota and Montana not embraced in the Department of the Platte. Headquarters at Fort Snelling.

The Department of California, Brigadier and Brevet Major General IRVIN MCDOWELL to command; to embrace the states of California and Nevada, and the Territory of Arizona. Headquarters at San Francisco.

The Department of the Columbia, Major General FREDERICK STEELE to command; to embrace the state of Oregon and the Territories of Washington and Idaho. Headquarters at Portland.

APPENDIX N

ORGANIZATIONS AND COMMANDERS OF CUBAN EXPEDITION, 1898

First Division (Brigadier General Kent)

First Brigade (Brigadier General Hawkins): Sixth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Egbert), Sixteenth Infantry (Colonel Theaker), and Seventy-first New York Volunteers (Colonel Downs).

Second Brigade (Colonel Pearson): Second Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Wherry), Tenth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Kellogg), and Twenty-first Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel McKibbin).

Third Brigade (Colonel Wikoff): Ninth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Ewers), Thirteenth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Worth), and Twenty-fourth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Liscum).

Second Division (Brigadier General Lawton)

First Brigade (Colonel Van Horn): Eighth Infantry (Major Conrad), Twenty-second Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Patterson), and Second Massachusetts Volunteers (Colonel Clark).

Second Brigade (Colonel Miles): First Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Bisbee), Fourth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Bainbridge), and Twenty-fifth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Daggett).

Third Brigade (Brigadier General Chaffee): Seventh Infantry (Colonel Benham), Twelfth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Comba), and Seventeenth Infantry (Lieutenant Colonel Haskell).

Cavalry Division (Major General Wheeler)

First Brigade (Brigadier General Sumner): Third Cavalry (Major Wessels), Sixth Cavalry (Lieutenant Colonel Carroll), and Ninth Cavalry (Lieutenant Colonel Hamilton).

Second Brigade (Brigadier General Young): First Cavalry (Lieutenant Colonel Viele), Tenth Cavalry (Major Norvell), and First Volunteer Cavalry, popularly designated as the Rough Riders (Colonel Leonard Wood).

The cavalry division sailed without horses, because there was no room for them on the transports, and because it was reported, quite correctly, that mounted troops would be of little use in the rough country around Santiago. The animals were left at Tampa, and only 2 squadrons (about 500 men) of each regiment went to Cuba. Armed with their cavalry carbines, the 3,000 men of the division fought as infantry throughout the campaign.

There were 4 light batteries: Batteries E (Captain Capron) and K (Captain Best) of the First Artillery, and A (Captain Grimes) and F (Captain Parkhurst) of the Second Artillery. Each consisted of 4 3-inch guns, and all were under the command of Major Dillenback, of the Second Artillery. There were also Batteries G (Captain Ennis) and H (Captain

Summins) of the Fourth Artillery, each equipped with 2 5-inch siege rifles and 4 3.6-inch mortars; and 2 machine-gun detachments, one of 4 Gatlings, commanded by Lieutenant Parker, of the Thirteenth Infantry, and one of an equal number of 1-pound Hotchkiss guns, manned by men of the Tenth Cavalry, under Lieutenant Hughes. Besides these, the Rough Riders had 2 rapid-fire Colts, presented by members of the regiment, and a dynamite gun.

An engineer battalion, under Captain Burr, accompanied the expedition, as did also a signal corps and balloon detachment commanded by Major Greene. An entire division of infantry—Brigadier General Snyder's—consisting of volunteer regiments, was left at Tampa for lack of ships to carry it and time to embark it. To make up for this, a detachment was shipped from Mobile, which included the Third Infantry (Colonel Page), the Twentieth Infantry (Major McCaskey), and Major Rafferty's squadron of the Second Cavalry, mounted—the only mounted cavalry in the expedition. It formed an independent brigade, under the command of Brigadier General Bates.

SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

HISTORY

(*General*)

Beginnings of the American People.
CARL LOTUS BECKER.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1915.

From Kingdom to Colony.
MARY DEVEREAUX.
Little, Brown & Co., Boston, 1899.

The History of the Rise, Progress and Establishment of the Independence of the United States of America.
WILLIAM GORDON.
Printed by Hodge, Allen & Campbell, New York, 1789.

Builders of the Nation, Vols. I, II, The Soldier.
GEORGE A. FORSYTH.
Imperial Publishing Co., New York, 1913.

History of the United States and Its People, 7 Vols.
E. M. AVERY.
Burrows Brothers, Cleveland, Ohio, 1909.

History of the United States from the Discovery of the American Continent, 10 Vols.
GEORGE BANCROFT.
Little, Brown & Co., Boston, 1852, 1874.

History of the United States, 1801–1807, 9 Vols.
HENRY ADAMS.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1921.

History of the United States, 1850–1877.
JAMES F. RHODES.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1919.

The Critical Period of American History.
JOHN FISKE.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1898.

History of the American People.
Woodrow Wilson.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1902.

History of the United States.
Edward Channing.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1911.

Our Nation in the Building.
Helen Nicolay.
The Century Co., New York, 1918.

History of the United States from the Compromise of 1850.
James Ford Rhodes.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1919.

A Short History of the United States Navy.
Clark, Stevens, Alden, Krafft.
J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia, New York, 1911.

Accounts of Wars, Campaigns and Battles

The History of the American Revolution, Vols. I, II.
David Ramsey, M.P.
Printed for J. Stockdale, London, 1793.

The American Revolution, Vols. I, II.
John Fiske.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1892.

The Pictorial History of the American Revolution.
Robert Sears.
R. Sears, New York; Redding & Co., Boston, 1847.

The American Revolution, Vols. I, II, III, IV.
Sir George Otto Trevelyan.
Longmans, Green & Co., London, New York, etc., 1921.

The Struggle for American Independence, Vols. I, II.
Sidney George Fisher.
J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia, London, 1908.

The True History of the American Revolution.
Sidney George Fisher.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, London, 1902.

History of the War of Independence of the United States of America, 3 Vols.
Charles Botta.
T. Brainard, New Haven, 1840.

The First American Civil War, 1775–1778, Vols. I, II.
HENRY BELCHER.
The Macmillan Co., Ltd., London, 1911.

Battles of the American Revolution.
H. B. CARRINGTON.
Barnes & Co., New York, Chicago, 1876.

Battles of America, Vols. I, II, III.
ROBERT TOMES.
Virtue & Co., New York, 1861.

Battles of Princeton and Trenton.
W. S. STRYKER.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1898.

History of the American War, 1774–1781, Vols. I, II.
G. STEDMAN.
Printed by author, London, 1794.

France in the American Revolution.
JAMES BREEK PERKINS.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1911.

Revolutionary Fights and Fighters.
CYRUS TOWNSEND BRADY.
McClure, Phillips & Co., New York, 1901.

The Yorktown Campaign, 1781.
H. P. JOHNSTON.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1881.

American Fights and Fighters, 1776–1815.
CYRUS TOWNSEND BRADY.
Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, 1913.

Arnold's Expedition to Quebec.
JOHN CODMAN, 2nd.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1901.

History Regarding Phases of Revolutionary War.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

How Canada was Held for the Empire.
J. HANNAY.
Morang & Co., Toronto, Canada, 1902.

The War with the United States.
WILLIAM WOOD.
Brook & Company, Toronto, Glasgow, 1915.

Campaigns at Washington, 1814–1815.
"By author of *The Subaltern*." (Anonymous.)
London, 1826.

Campaigns and Engineers of the War of 1812.
G. W. Cullum.
James Miller, New York, 1879.

The Battle of New Orleans.
Z. F. Smith.
J. P. Morton, Louisville, Ky., 1904.

History of the Late War, 1812.
H. M. Brackenridge.
J. Kay & Bro., Philadelphia, 1836.

1812: *The War and its Moral*, A Canadian Chronicle.
William F. Coffin.
John Lovell, Montreal, 1864.

History of the Late War, 1812–1815, Vols. I, II, III, IV.
C. J. Ingersoll.
Lea & Blanchard, Philadelphia, 1845.

Military Occurrences of the Late War, 1812, Vols. I, II.
William James.
Printed by author, London, 1818.

History of Invasion and Capture of Washington.
John S. Williams.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1857.

Principal Battles of the Late War, 1812.
Adjutant P. M. Davis.
Reprint by William Abbott, 1917.

The War with the United States.
William Wood.
Brook & Co., Toronto, Glasgow, 1915.

History of the War between the United States and Great Britain, 1812.
Anonymous.
John Low, New York, 1817.

Lossing's Pictorial Field Book of the War of 1812.
Benson L. Lossing.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1869.

"The Truth of the War of 1812 and the Necessity of our Knowing It."
George W. Wingate.
President Public Schools' Athletic League.
North American Review, Vol. 189, June, 1909.

Historical Sketch of the Second War between the United States of America and Great Britain.
C. J. Ingersoll.
Lea & Blanchard, Philadelphia, 1845–1849.

An Impartial and Correct History of the War between the United States of America and Great Britain, comprising particular detail of the Military and Naval Operations.
Thomas O'Connor.
John Low, New York, 1817.

A Compendious Account of the Most Important Battles of the Late War (1812) to which is added curious adventures of Corporal Samuel Stubbs.
Samuel Stubbs.
H. Trumbull, Boston, 1815.

Battle of Bladensburg.
Lt. Colonel R. I. Rees, Infantry.
The Infantry School Press, Fort Benning, Ga., 1921.

The Other Side; or Notes for the History of the War between Mexico and the United States.
Ramon Alcaraz.
Translated from the Spanish by A. C. Ramsey.
J. Wiley, New York, 1850.

The Battle of Buena Vista.
James Henry Carleton.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1848.

Our First War in Mexico.
Farnham Bishop.
Stronger & Townsend, New York, 1853.

Campaign Sketches of the War with Mexico.
William Seaton Henry.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1847.

The Mexican War Diary of George B. McClellan.
George Brinton McClellan.
Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1917.

The Mexican War.
Edward Deering Mansfield.
A. S. Barnes & Co., New York; Derby, Bradley & Co., Cincinnati, 1848.

History of the War between Mexico and the United States.
Brantz Mayer.
Wiley & Putnam, New York, London, 1848.

The War with Mexico, Vols. I, II.
R. S. Ripley.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1849.

The United States and Mexico, 1821–1848.
George Lockhart Rives.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1913.

The War with Mexico, Vols. I, II.
Justin Harvey Smith.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1919.

History of the Mexican War.
Cadmus Marcellus Wilcox.
Church News Publishing Co., Washington, D. C., 1892.

The American Conflict.
Horace Greeley.
O. D. Case & Co., Hartford; C. & C. S. Sherwood, Chicago, 1873.

The Campaign of Chancellorsville, April 27 to May 5, 1863.
James H. Wilson. (A critical review of Mayor John Bigelow's work on same subject.)
Chas. L. Story, Wilmington, Del., 1911.

The War of the Rebellion, Rebellion records covering seventy volumes.
U. S. War Department.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1880–1901.

The Story of the Civil War, Vols. I, II.
John Codman Ropes.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, London, 1913.

From Fort Henry to Corinth.
Manning Ferguson Force.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1881.

The Photographic History of the Civil War, 9 Vols.
Francis Trevelyan Miller, editor.
Review of Reviews Co., New York, 1911.

Battles and Leaders of the Civil War, Vols, I–IV.
Robert Underwood Johnson, editor.
The Century Co., New York, 1884–1887.

History of the Civil War of America, Vols. I–IV.
Comte de Paris.
John C. Winston Co., Philadelphia, 1907.

U. S. History of the Civil War.
Henry E. Davies.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1895.

U. S. History of the Civil War, Vols. I, II, III.
John William Draper.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1867.

U. S. History of the Civil War. Confederate Military History.
Clement Anselon Evans.
Atlanta Confederate Publishing Co., Atlanta, Ga., 1899.

The Peninsula; McClellan's Campaign of 1862.
Alexander S. Webb.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1881.

The Union Indian Brigade in the Civil War.
Wiley Britton.
Franklin Hudson Publishing Co., Kansas City, 1922.

Campaigns of Stuart's Cavalry.
McClellan, Private Print.

The Antietam and Fredericksburg.
Francis Winthrop Palfrey.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1882.

From Manassas to Appomattox.
James Longstreet.
J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia, 1896.

History of the Civil War in America, Vols. I–IV.
Louis Philippe Albert d'Orleans, Paris.
J. H. Coates & Co., Philadelphia, 1875–1888.

History of the Civil War.
James Ford Rhodes.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1917.

Stuart's Cavalry in the Gettysburg Campaign.
John Singleton Mosby.
Moffat, Yard & Co., New York, 1908.

Bibliography of State Participation in the Civil War, 1861–1866.
U. S. War Department.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1913.

Military and Naval History of the Rebellion in the United States.
W. J. Tenney, editor, *American Annual Cyclopaedia.*
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1867.

The War of Secession.
George William Redway.
S. Sonnenschein & Co., London, 1910.

The Army Under Pope.
John Codman Ropes.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1881.

Grant's Campaign in Virginia.
George Henry Vaughn Sawyer.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1908.

The Virginia Campaign of 1864 and 1865.
Andrew Atkinson Humphreys.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1885.

Antietam and the Maryland and Virginia Campaigns of 1862 from the Government Records.
Isaac Winter Heysinger.
The Neale Publishing Co., New York, 1912.

The Mississippi Valley in the Civil War.
John Fiske.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., New York, 1900.

Chancellorsville and Gettysburg.
Abner Doubleday.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1882.

The March to the Sea.
Jacob Dolson Cox.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1885.

The Army of the Cumberland.
Henry Martyn Cist.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York 1882.

The Mississippi.
Francis Vinton Greene.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1882.

American Civil War.
John H. Anderson.
H. Rees, Ltd., London, 1910.

The Secret Service of the Confederate States in Europe.
James Dunwody Bulloch.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1884.

History of the Confederate States Navy from its Organization to the Surrender of its last Vessel.
John Thomas Scharf.
Rogers & Sherwood, New York; A. L. Bancroft & Co., San Francisco, 1887.

Personal Recollections of a Cavalryman with Custer's Michigan Cavalry Brigade in Civil War.
J. H. Kidd.
Sentinel Printing Co., Iona, Mich., 1908.

History of the Corn Exchange Regiment.
Pennsylvania Infantry.
J. L. Smith, Philadelphia, 1888.

The History of the Confederate War, Vols. I, II.
George Cary Eggleston.
Sturgis and Walton Co., New York, 1910.

History of the Army of the Potomac.
J. H. Stine.
J. B. Rodgers Printing Co., Philadelphia, 1892

The American Army in the War of Secession.
De Chanal.
Geo. A. Spooner Publishing Co., Leavenworth, Kansas, 1894.

War of the Rebellion; Official Records of Union and Confederate Armies.
U. S. War Department.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Grant's Campaigns of 1864 and 1865.
Charles Francis Atkinson.
H. Rees, Ltd., London, 1908.

Conduct of War Department in War with Spain, 6 Vols.
Government Printing Office, 1900.

The War with Spain.
Henry Cabot Lodge.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1899.

Child's History of the War with Spain.
Percival G. Melbourne.
F. T. Neely, New York, 1898.

Battles and Capitulation of Santiago de Cuba.
José Muller y Tejerro.
Translated from Spanish.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1898.

A History of the Spanish-American War.
Richard H. Titherington.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1900.

A Short History of the War with Spain.
Marrion Wilcox.
F. A. Stokes Co., New York, 1898.

The Campaign of Santiago de Cuba.
Herbert Howland Sergeant.
A. C. McClung & Co., Chicago, 1907.

Lessons of the War with Spain.
Alfred T. Mahan.
Little, Brown & Co., Boston, 1899.

Cannon and Camera (War with Spain).
W. I. Lincoln Adams.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1898.

Campaigning in Cuba.
George Kennan.
The Century Co., New York, 1899.

The Rough Riders.
Theodore Roosevelt.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1899.

The Cuban and Porto Rican Campaigns.
Richard Harding Davis.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1898.

American Campaigns, Vols. I, II.
Matthew Forney Steele.
B. S. Adams, Washington, 1909.

Biography

The Military Services and Public Life of Major General John Sullivan.
Thomas Coffin.
Wiggin & Lunt, Albany, N. Y.; J. Munsell, Boston, 1868.

The Life of Artemas Ward.
Charles Martyn.
A. Ward, New York, 1921.

The Narrative of Lieutenant General Sir William Howe.
William Howe Howe.
Printed by H. Baldwin, London, 1781.

Washington, the Soldier.
Henry Beebee Carrington.
Lamson, Wolffe & Co., Boston, New York, 1898.

Life of Peter Van Schoak.
Henry Van Schoak.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1842.

The Life of Major General Nathanael Greene.
G. W. Green.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1867.

George Washington.
Washington Irving.
Thomas Crowell Co., New York, 1916.

George Washington.
Woodrow Wilson.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1896.

Artemas Ward, first Commander in Chief of the American Revolution,
Charles Martyn.
A. Ward, New York, 1921.

Abraham Lincoln; A History.
John George Nicolay.
The Century Co., New York, 1890.

Life of Andrew Jackson, Vols. I, II.
John Spencer Bassett.
Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, 1911.

Life of Andrew Jackson.
John S. Jenkins.
Porter & Coates, Philadelphia, 1880.

A Life of Major General George A. Custer.
Frederick Whittaker.
Sheldon & Co., New York, 1876.

Life of Major General William Henry Harrison.
Anonymous.
Grigg & Elliot, and T. K. & P. G. Collins, Philadelphia.

Stonewall Jackson and the American Civil War.
George Francis Robert Henderson.
Longmans, Green & Co., London, New York, 1911.

Life of General Zachary Taylor.
H. Montgomery.
John C. Winston Co., Philadelphia, 1912.

Life of General Zachary Taylor.
Joseph Reese Fry.
Griggs, Elliott & Co., Philadelphia, 1847.

Sam Houston and the War of Independence in Texas.
Alfred M. Williams.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1893.

How George Rogers Clark won the Northwest.
Reuben Gold Thwaites.
A. C. McClung & Co., Chicago, 1903.

The Life of Sam Houston.
C. E. Lester.
Davis, Porter & Coates, Philadelphia, 1866.

Personal Recollections of Distinguished Generals.
William F. G. Shanks.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1866.

The Life of General Scott.
An unsigned excerpt from an old magazine. Bound in pamphlet form.

Life and Public Services of General Andrew Jackson.
J. S. Jenkins.
H. H. Bancroft & Co., San Francisco, 1860.

The Life of Benedict Arnold.
I. Arnold.
Jansen, McClug, Chicago, 1880.

Political and Military Episodes in the Life of Rt. Honorable J. Burgoyne.
E. B. Fonblangue.
The Macmillan Co., London, 1876.

Nathan Hale, 1776.
H. P. Johnston.
Yale University Press, 1914, New Haven.

The Life of John Marshall, Vols. I, II.
Albert J. Beveridge.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1916.

George Washington.
Horace E. Scudder.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1885.

George Washington.
William Roscoe Thayer.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1922.

Canadian Heroes Series. Isaac Brock.
Walter R. Nursey.
William Briggs, Toronto, 1908.

Sages and Heroes of the Revolution.
L. Carroll Hudson.
John Adams Lee Publishing Co., Boston, 1889.

Leading American Soldiers.
R. M. Johnston.
Henry Holt & Co., New York, 1907.

Life and Campaigns of General McClellan.
G. S. Hilliard.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, 1864.

Men who are making America.
B. C. Forbes.
B. C. Forbes Publishing Co., New York, 1917.

Revolutionary Services and Civil Life of General William Hull.
Mrs. Maria (Hull) Campbell.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1848.

Life and Correspondence of Joseph Reed, Vols. I, II.
William Bradford Reed.
Lindsey & Blakiston, Philadelphia, 1847.

Autobiography

Colonel Alexander K. McClure's Recollections of Half a Century.
Alexander Kelly McClure.
The Salem Press, Salem, Mass., 1902.

Autobiography of Lieutenant General Scott.
Sheldon & Co., New York, 1864.

Recollections of General Nelson A. Miles.
Nelson A. Miles.
The Werner Co., New York, Chicago, 1896.

Autobiography of Black Hawk.
Published by J. B. Patterson, Oquawoka, Ill., 1882.

Autobiography of an English Soldier.
George Ballentine.
Stronger & Townsend, New York, 1853.

Diaries

My Diary North and South.
Sir William Howard Russell.
Bradbury & Sons, London, 1863.

A Soldier's Diary.
David Lane.
Jackson (?), Mich., 1905.

The Diary of a Young Officer Serving with the Armies of the United States during the War of the Rebellion.
Josiah Marshall Favill.
R. R. Donnelley & Sons, Chicago, 1909.

Diary of Gideon Welles, Vols. I, II, III, 1861–1869.
Gideon Welles.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1909.

Diary of a Young Army Officer.
F. M. Favill.
R. R. Donnelley & Sons Co., Chicago, 1909.

Sketches of the Revolutionary War.
Old Manuscript of Diaries, etc.

LETTERS

Calendar of the Correspondence of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army.
U. S. Library of Congress.

Letters of Richard Henry Lee, 1779–1794, Vols. I, II.
JAMES CURTIS BALLOGH.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1914.

Army Letters, 1861–1865.
O. W. NORTON.
Privately Printed.
O. L. Deming, Chicago, 1903.

DESCRIPTIVE ACCOUNTS OF PERSONS, PLACES, AND INCIDENTS

Doctor Quintard, Chaplain C. S. A.
CHARLES TODD QUINTARD.
The University Press, Sewanee, Tenn., 1905.

Reminiscences of the Santiago Campaign.
JOHN BIGELOW.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1899.

Defense of General Hull.
Prepared from his manuscripts by his daughter.
Wells & Lilly, Boston, 1814.

History of Philip Kearny.
H. WATTS DE PEYSTER.
Old Print.

Ups and Downs of an Army Officer, 1866–1869, in Second and Tenth Cavalry.
G. A. ARMES.
Washington, D. C., 1900.

Under the Old Flag, Vols. I, II.
JAMES HARRISON WILSON.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, London, 1912.

A French Volunteer in the War of Independence.
ROBERT D. DOUGLAS.
Charles Carrington, Paris, 1898.

Recollections of the Early Days of the National Guard.
By an ex-orderly sergeant.
J. M. Bradstreet & Son, New York, 1868.

Military Miscellanies.
James B. Fry.
Brentano's, New York, 1889.

History of West Point.
Boynton.
Old Print, 1871.

History of the War Department.
L. D. Ingersoll.
Francis B. Mohun, Washington, D. C., 1879.

An Account of the Organization of the Army of the United States.
Fayette Robinson.
E. H. Butler & Co., Philadelphia, 1848.

History of the 20th United States Infantry, 1861–1902.
A. P. Burnham.
Published by Regimental Print.

History of the Army Service Schools, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.
Henry Shindler.
Staff College Press, Fort Leavenworth, Kas., 1908.

Building of the Pacific Railway.
Edwin L. Sabin.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, London, 1919.

The Winning of the West, Vols. I, II, III, IV.
Theodore Roosevelt.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1900.

The Centennial of the U. S. Military Academy, 1802–1902, Vols. I, II.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1902.

The Private Soldier Under Washington.
Charles Knowles Bolton.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1902.

Personal Recollections of the American Revolution.
Mrs. Lydia Minturn Post.
Rudd & Carleton, New York, 1859.

Recollections of a Virginian in the Mexican, Indian, and Civil Wars.
Debney Herndon Maury.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1894.

Military History Society of Massachusetts.
Printed by the Society.
J. R. Osgood & Co., Boston, 1881.

PERSONAL RECORDS AND CORRESPONDENCE

Military Reminiscences of the Civil War.
JACOB DOLSON COX.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1900.

Report of Major Philip Reade, I. G. U. S. V. in re War with Spain.
(Author has only copies known to be extant.)
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1899.

MEMOIRS

Recollections and Private Memoirs of Washington.
G. W. PARKE CUSTIS.
W. H. Moore, Washington, D. C., 1859.

Memoirs of a Volunteer in the War with Mexico.
JOHN R. KENLY.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, 1873.

Personal Memoirs of P. H. Sheridan, Vols. I, II.
Charles L. Webster & Co., New York, 1888.

Memoirs of Robert E. Lee.
ARMISTEAD LINDSAY LONG.
J. M. Stoddart & Co., New York, Philadelphia, 1887.

Military Memoirs of Ulysses S. Grant, Vols. I, II, III.
ADAM BADEAU.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1868–1881.

Military Memoirs of a Confederate.
EDWARD PORTER ALEXANDER.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1907.

Personal Reminiscences of the War of 1861–1865.
WILLIAM HENRY MORGAN.
J. P. Bell Co., Lynchburg, Ga., 1911.

Memoirs of the American Revolution, Vol I.
MOULTRIE.
Publisher unknown.

Memories of Two Wars. Cuban and Philippine Experiences.
Frederick Funston, Brigadier General U. S. Army.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1914.

Memoirs of General W. T. Sherman.
By Himself.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1875.

Reports

American Archives, Fourth and Fifth Series, 9 Vols.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1837.

Report on the Organization and Campaigns of the Army of the Potomac.
George Brinton McClellan.
Sheldon & Co., New York, 1864.

Reports American Historical Association, 1901–1914.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Report of Joint Committee on the Conduct of the War, 38th Congress.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1865.

Report of the Commission appointed by President to investigate conduct of War Department in the War with Spain.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1900.

Adjutant Generals' Reports, 1880–1923.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.,

Reports Secretary of War, 1866–1923.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Reports of Chief of Staff, 1919–1920–1922.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Miscellaneous Reports, 1776–1923.

Special Report of the Secretary of War to the President on Conference on Training for Citizenship and National Defense.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1923.

Report of General J. J. Pershing, Cabled to Secretary of War, Nov. 20, 1918.
War Department, Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., Jan. 16, 1919.

Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies in the War of Rebellion.
U. S. Navy Dept., Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Report of the Engineer and Artillery Operations of the Army of the Potomac.
John Gross Barnard.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1863.

Ordnance Reports, 1812–1922, Many volumes.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Reports:

General Sumner, July 6, 1898.
General Hawkins.
General Shafter.
General Lawton.
General Bates.
General Kent.
Lieutenant J. H. Parker.
Company Commanders, 71st New York.
Sixteenth Infantry.
Sixth Infantry.
On Battle San Juan, Cuba, 1898.

Reports of Explorations in the Territory of Alaska, War Department.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1899.

War Department Reports, Many volumes.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Record of the Organizations Engaged in the Campaign, Siege and Defense of Vicksburg.
U. S. Commission.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1901.

STATISTICAL REPORTS AND RECORDS

Historical Register and Dictionary of the United States Army, Vols. I, II.
Francis B. Heitman.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1903.

Biographical Register of Officers and Graduates of United States Military Academy, at West Point, N. Y., Vols. I, II.
Bvt. Major General Geo. W. Cullum.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1868–1879.

JOURNALS

A French Volunteer of the War of Independence.
DOUGLAS.
Paris, 1898.

Personal Recollections of the Revolution, a Private Journal.
SIDNEY BARCLAY.
Rudd & Racleton, New York, 1849.

Journal of Captain Pauseh, Burgoyne Campaign.
Translated by WILLIAM L. STONE.
Joel Munsell's Sons, Albany, 1886.

Journal of a Private: A Twelve Months Volunteer, 1846–1847.
GEORGE C. BURBER.
J. A. & U. P. James, Cincinnati, 1850.

Journal of William Feltman, 1781–1782.
Old Print.
U. S. M. A. Library, West Point, N. Y.

DOCUMENTS

Wayne's Orderly Book.
Original Manuscript.
Library, U. S. M. A., West Point, N. Y.

Mexican War Documents.
Wendell & Van Benthuysen, Washington, 1848.

Military Laws of the United States, 1776–1863.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

General Orders A.G.O., 1826–1842.
Published by Authority Secretary of War.

Extracts from General Orders, 1820.
Publisher unknown.

Compilation of Official Documents, Organization of the Army of the United States, 1789–1876.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Revolutionary Orders of General Washington.
WHITING.
Old Print.

General Orders of General Washington, 1782–1783.
Old Print.

General Orders, The Volunteer Force.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Army Regulations, 1807.
Printed by Government.

General Washington's Newburgh Orders, 1782.
Old Manuscript.
U. S. M. A. Library, West Point, N. Y.

Washington's Valley Forge Orders, 1778.
Old Manuscript.

The Uniform of the Army of the United States.
Compiled by direction of the Secretary of War, 1774–1889.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

POLITICAL WORKS

Principles and Acts of the Revolution in America.
HEZEKIAH NILES.
A. S. Barnes & Co., New York, Chicago, New Orleans, 1876.

Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government.
JEFFERSON DAVIS.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1881.

The Relations of the United States and Spain.
FRENCH ENSOR CHADWICK.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1911.

Military Unpreparedness of the United States.
FREDERIC LOUIS HINDEKOPER.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1915.

America's Duty as shown by our Military History.
LEONARD WOOD.
Reilly & Lee Co., Chicago, 1921.

The Outbreak of Rebellion.
JOHN GEORGE NICOLAY.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1881.

The End of an Era.
JOHN SERGEANT WISE.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1899.

The Frontier in American History.
FREDERICK JACKSON TURNER.
Henry Holt & Co., New York, 1920.

Panama, the Canal, The Country and the People.
ARTHUR BULLARD.
The Macmillan Co., New York, 1914.

Our Military History. Its Facts and Fallacies.
Major General LEONARD WOOD.
Reilly & Britton Co., Chicago, 1916.

TECHNICAL WORKS

Regulations for the Order and Discipline of the Troops of the United States, Von Steuben's Regulations.
Original Edition.
Published by Act of Congress, Philadelphia, March 29, 1779.

Administration of the American Revolutionary Army.
LOUIS CLINTON HATCH.
Longmans, Green Co., New York, London, 1904.

Elements of Military Art and Science.
HENRY WAGER HALLECK.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, London, 1863.

The Principles of Strategy as Illustrated by the Civil War.
WILLIAM KEITH NAYLOR.
Army Service Schools Press, Fort Leavenworth, Kas., 1917.

Army and Navy of America.
JACOB K. NEFF.
John S. Gable, Philadelphia, 1845.

The Colored Regulars, United States Army.
THEOPHILUS G. STEWARD.
A. M. E. Book Concern, Philadelphia, 1904.

General and Special Orders, U. S. Army, 1817–1923.

The Science of War.
GEORGE FRANCIS ROBERT HENDERSON.
Longmans, Green & Co., London, New York, 1905.

The Principles of Strategy.
John Bigelow.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York; T. Fisher Unwin, London, 1891.

The Gulf and Inland Waters.
Alfred Thayer Mahan.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1898.

Telegraphing in Battle.
John Emmett O'Brien.
The Raeder Press, Scranton, Pa., Wilkes-Barre, Pa., 1910.

Three Rivers, the James, the Potomac and the Hudson.
Joseph Pearson Farley.
The Neale Publishing Co., New York, Washington, 1910.

Other Military Laws in separate Volumes since 1865.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Instructions for Field Artillery, 1861.
Board of Officers.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, 1861.

Infantry Tactics, 1861.
Winfield Scott.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1861.

Infantry Tactics, or Rules for the Exercises and Maneuvers of the United States Infantry, 1861, Vols. I, II, III.
Major General Scott.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1861.

Regulations and Instructions for the Field Service of the United States Cavalry in Time of War, 1861.
George B. McClellan.
J. B. Lippincott & Co., Philadelphia, 1861.

United States Infantry Tactics, 1861.
"Graduate of the United States Military Academy and Retired Officers of the late Mexican War."
J. W. Fortune, New York, 1861.

Hardee's Infantry Tactics, Vols. I, II.
Major W. J. Hardee, 1856.

Manual of Arms for Light Infantry, 1861.
Colonel E. E. Ellsworth.
P. T. Sherlock, 112 Dearborn St., Chicago, 1861.

Evolutions of Field Batteries of Artillery, 1860.
Major Robert Anderson.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1860.

Military Laws and Rules and Regulations for the Armies of the United States, 1813.
Adjutant and Inspector General's Office, Washington, May 1, 1813. Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

Drill Regulations for Light Artillery, 1896.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Cavalry Tactics, 1822.
Pierce Darrow.
Oliver D. Cooke, Hartford, 1822.

Artillery Tactics, 1826.
Original Edition.
Published in Boston.

Treatise on the Military Art, 1798.
E. Hoyt.
Benjamin Smead, Brattleboro, Vt.; Russell & Ripley, Greenfield, Mass., 1798.

The Artillerist, 1821.
Oliver D. Cooke, Hartford, Conn.; 1821.

A System of Exercises and Instruction of Field Artillery for Light or Horse Artillery, 1829.
Department of War, Act of Congress of 2nd of March, 1829.
Hilliard, Gray, Little & Wilkins, Boston.

Instruction for Field Artillery, 1839.
Captain Robert Anderson.
R. P. Desilver, Philadelphia, 1839.

Abridged Tactics, Book for the Militia, 1826.
New York, 1826.

Abstract of a System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery, 1834.
John L. Wilson, Captain U. S. Army.
A. E. Miller, Charleston, S. C.; 1834.

A System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery, 1833.
Department of War.
Hilliard, Gray & Co., Boston, 1833.

Infantry Drill, for the Infantry of the United States, 1829.
F. Lucas, Jr., Baltimore, Md.

Military Tactics, 1838.
General Ransom.
Concord, Mass., 1838.

Cavalry Tactics, 1841.
J. & G. S. Gideon, Printers, Washington, 1841.

Scott's Infantry Tactics, 1861, Vols. I, II.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1861.

A Hand Book for Infantry.
William Duane, 1814.
Printed in Philadelphia.

A Complete Treatise upon Artillery, 1819.
H. Lallemand.
G. S. Van Winkle, New York, 1829.

Instructions to be Observed for the Formations and Movements of the Cavalry.
William Richardson Davis, Esquire.
Abraham Lodge, Halifax, 1799.

The Administration of the American Revolutionary Army.
Louis Clinton Hatch, Ph.D.
Longmans, Green & Co., New York, London & Bombay, 1904.

Instructions for Heavy Artillery.
Board of Officers.
Gideon & Co., Printers, Washington, 1851.

Instructions for Mountain Artillery.
Board of Officers.
Gideon & Co., Printers, Washington, 1851.

Infantry Tactics.
Winfield Scott.
Published in Boston, 1847.

Regulations for the Militia.
Cooper.
Published by Frank Desilver, 1837.

Cavalry Exercise Containing Instructions for the American Cavalry, 1801.
E. A. Jenks.
Printed, Portland, 1801.

Maneuvers of Horse Artillery.
General Kosciusko.
Published by direction of the U. S. Military Philosophical Society, 1808.

Infantry Tactics for the Instruction of the Soldier, a Company Line of Skirmishers, Battalion, Brigade or Corps d'Armées.
Brigadier General Silas Casey, U. S. Army.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1862.

Smith's Artillery, 1812.
Amasa Smith.
Published by Isaiah Thomas, Jr., Boston, 1812.

Cavalry, Light Infantry and Rifle Tactics, 1834.
Published Authority of War Department. Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

Tactics and Regulations for the Militia, 1836. Original Edition.
Publisher Unknown.

The United States Army.
Francis V. Greene.
Scribner's Magazine, Sept., Oct., Nov., 1901.

Rifle and Infantry Tactics, 1863, Vols. I, II.
Lieutenant General W. J. Hardee, C. S. A.
S. H. Goetzel, Mobile, 1863.

A New System of Infantry Tactics, 1869.
Major-General Emory Upton.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1869.

School of the Guides.
Colonel Eugene le Gal.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1862.

Instruction for Heavy Artillery, 1863.
Board of Officers.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1863.

Infantry Tactics, Double and Single Rank, 1875.
Emory Upton.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1874.

Drill Regulations for Field Artillery United States Army, 1915.
War Department, Chief of Staff.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

United States Army Cavalry Tactics, 1880.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1886.

Drill Regulations for Cavalry, United States Army, 1863.
Original Volume.
Publisher unknown.

The Company Drill of Infantry of the Line, 1862.
J. Monroe.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1862.

Cavalry Tactics, 1883.
P. St. George Cooke.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1883.

Infantry Drill Regulations United States Army, 1904.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1904.

Infantry Drill Regulations United States Army, 1891.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1891.

Artillery Drill Regulations United States Army, 1891.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1891.

Instructions in Rifle and Carbine Firing for the United States Army, 1886.
Stanhope E. Blunt.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1886.

Field Artillery Tactics, 1863.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1863.

Field Artillery Tactics, 1864.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1864.

Drill Regulations for Light Artillery, United States Army, 1896.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

The Trooper's Manual, 1862.
J. Lucius Davis.
A. Morris, Richmond, Va., 1862.

Cavalry Drill Regulations, United States Army, 1891.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1891.

Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1911.

The Army of the United States, 1789–1896.
Edited by Brevet Brigadier-General Theo. F. Rodenbough and Major William L. Haskin.
Private Print, 1896.

Drill Regulations for Cavalry, 1902.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Heavy Artillery, 1861.
War Department.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.

Military Laws and Rules and Regulations for the Armies of the United States.
Adjutant and Inspector General's Office, Washington, D. C., May 1, 1813.

Artillery Tactics, 1826.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

Abridged Tactics—School of the Soldier, 1833.
Publisher unknown.

Instruction for Field Artillery, Horse and Foot, 1845.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

Infantry Drill, 1828.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

United States Infantry Drill Regulations, 1829.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

Tactics and Regulations for the Militia, 1836.
Original Edition, Boston, 1836.

Cavalry Tactics, 1841.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown.

System of Infantry Discipline for the United States Army, Plates with Explanation, 1814.
Publisher unknown.

Evolution of Field Batteries of Artillery, 1860.
Major Robert Anderson.
D. Van Nostrand, New York, 1860.

U. S. Infantry Drill Regulations, 1829.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown. Published by authority.

Infantry Drill, 1828.
Original Edition.
Publisher unknown. Published by authority of Secretary of War.

Cooper's-Macomb's Tactics, 1855.
Cooper, Macomb.
Publisher unknown. Published by authority.

Instructions for Heavy Artillery, 1845.
Board of Officers. Old Print.

The Recruit, 1845.
Captain John T. Cairns.
Old Print.

Cavalry Exercises Containing Instructions for the American Cavalry.
Printed for A. E. Jenks. Sold at his bookstore, Portland, 1801.

Instructions for Mountain Artillery.
Board of Officers.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1851.

Armies of To-day.
By various authors.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1893.

The American Military Library or Compendium of Modern Tactics.
William Duane.
Published by the Author, 1809.

The New International Encyclopedia.
Dodd, Mead & Co., New York, 1914–1916.

Sanitation in Panama.
William Crawford Gorgas.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, London, 1918.

Percussion Locks, Bayonets with Clasps; To the Manual of Arms.
Major-General Winfield Scott.
Old Print, 1844.

Government of the Canal Zone.
Major General George W. Goethals.
Princeton University Press, Princeton, N. J., 1915.

The American Rifle.
Townsend Whelen.
The Century Co., New York, 1918.

Our Rifles, Vols. I, II, III.
Charles Winthrop Sawyer.
C. W. Sawyer, Boston, 1910.

A Complete Treatise Upon Artillery.
H. Lallemand.
Translated by De Russy.
C. S. Van Winkle, New York, 1819.

Military Policy of the United States.
Bvt. Major General Emory Upton, U. S. Army.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C, 1903.

State Papers

American State Papers, 1831–1861.
Published by authority of Congress.
Gales & Seaton, Washington.

Statistical Record of the Armies of the U. S.
Frederick Phisterer.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1883.

The New International Year Book, 1916.
Dodd, Mead & Co., New York, 1917.

Narratives

Men and Things I saw in Civil War Days.
James Fowler Rustling.
Eaton & Maine, New York; Curts & Jennings, Cincinnati, 1899.

The Volunteer Soldier of America.
John Alexander Logan.
R. S. Peale & Co., Chicago, New York, 1887.

Narrative of Major-General Wool's Campaign in Mexico.
Francis Baylies.
Little & Co., Albany, 1851.

Spirit of Old West Point, 1858–1862.
Morris Schaff.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., New York, 1907.

West Point.
Robert C. Richardson.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1917.

Army Life on the Pacific.
Lawrence Kip.
Redfield, New York, 1859.

Soldier and Pioneer.
E. L. Anderson.
G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1879.

The Story of a Trooper.
F. Colburn Adams.
Dick & Fitzgerald, New York, 1865.

Thrilling Days of Army Life.
George A. Forsyth.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1900.

Three Months in the Southern States.
Sir A. J. L. Fremantle.
S. H. Goetzel, Mobile, 1864.

From Chattanooga to Petersburg.
William Farrar Smith.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., New York, 1893.

In Cuba with Shafter.
John D. Miley.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1899.

The Romance of Conquest.
William Elliot Griffis.
W. A. Wilde & Co., Boston, Chicago, 1899.

Forty Years in the Army.
W. B. Hazen.

Scenes and Adventures in the Army.
P. St. George Cooke, 1859.

Army Sacrifices.
J. B. Fry, 1879.

From Everglade to Canyon with the Second Dragoons.
T. F. Rodenbough, 1875.

A Narrative of the Campaign in the Valley of the Shenandoah.
Robert Patterson.
J. Campbell, Philadelphia, 1865.

Camp Fires of the Confederacy.
Benjamin La Bree.
Courier-Journal Job Printing Co., Louisville, Ky., 1898.

The Flying Gray-haired Yank.
Michael Egan.
Hubbard Brothers, Philadelphia, 1888.

The Lost Dispatch.
Personal Narratives.
Galesburg Printing & Publishing Co., Galesburg, Ill., 1889.

Reminiscences of the Santiago Campaign.
John Bigelow, Jr.
Harper & Bros., New York, London. 1899.

Bullet and Shell.
George Forrester Williams.
Fords, Howard & Hulbert, New York, 1883.

Reminiscences of a Mosby Guerrilla.
John W. Munson.
Moffat, Yard & Co., New York, 1906.

A Private Chapter of the War.
George W. Bailey.
G. I. Jones & Co., St. Louis, 1880.

Johnny Reb and Billy Yank.
Alexander Hunter.
The Neale Publishing Co., New York, Washington, 1905.

From Chattanooga to Petersburg under Generals Grant and Butler.
William Farrar Smith.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., Boston, New York, 1893.

Reminiscences of a Private.
Frank M. Mixson.
The State Company, Columbia, S. C., 1910.

War Songs and Poems of the Southern Confederacy.
Henry Marvin Wharton.
The John C. Winston Co., Philadelphia, Chicago, 1904.

Recollections of a Private.
Warren Lee Goss.
T. Y. Crowell & Co., New York, 1890.

The Iron Brigade; A Story of the Army of the Potomac.
Charles King.
G. W. Dillingham Co., New York, 1902.

Hood's Texas Brigade.
Joseph Benjamin Polley.
The Neale Publishing Co., New York, Washington, 1910.

From Yorktown to Santiago with the Sixth U. S. Cavalry.
William Harding Carter.
The Friedenwald Co., Baltimore, 1900.

The General's Double.
Charles King.
J. B. Lippincott Co.. Philadelphia, 1898.

The Long Arm of Lee.
Jennings Cropper Wise.
J. P. Bell Co., Lynchburg, Va., 1915.

Pennsylvania at Chickamauga and Chattanooga.
Pennsylvania Commission
W. A. Ray, State Printer, Harrisburg, Pa.

Three Years in the Sixth Corps.
George T. Stevens.
S. R. Gray, Albany, N. Y., 1866.

The Story of a Cannoneer under Stonewall Jackson.
Edward A. Moore.
J. P. Bell Co., Lynchburg, Va., 1910.

Serving the Republic.
Nelson A. Miles.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1911.

Series of Tales and Sketches.
By an American Soldier.
James Munroe & Co., Boston, 1845.

INDIANS AND INDIAN WARS

History of Philip Kearny.
H. Watts de Peyster

Handbook of American Indians North of Mexico, Vols. I, II.
Frederick Webb Hodge.
Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1907.

Memoirs and Travels among the Northern and Southern Indians.
Thomas L. M'Kenney.
Paine & Burgess, New York, 1846.

My Friend the Indian.
James McLaughlin.
Houghton Mifflin & Co., New York, 1910.

Thirty-three Years among Our Wild Indians.
Richard Irving Dodge.
A. D. Worthington, Hartford, Conn., 1885.

The Story of the Indian.
George Bird Grinnell.
D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1923.

Indian Wars of the West.
Timothy Flint.
E. H. Flint, Cincinnati, 1833.

Indian Wars of the United States.
William V. Moore.
Jas. B. Smith & Co., Philadelphia, 1858.

Massacres of the Mountains.
J. P. Dunn.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1886.

On the Border with Crook.
John G. Bourke.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1891.

An Apache Campaign.
John G. Bourke.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1886.

Narratives of Indian Warfare in the West.
Samuel L. Metcalf.
William G. Hunt, Lexington, Ky., 1821.

The Fighting Cheyennes.
George Bird Grinnell.
Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1915.

Indian Bibliography.
Field.

The Plains of the Great West.
R. I. Dodge.

Nez Percé Joseph.
O. O. Howard.
Lothrop, Lee & Shepard Co., Boston, 1881.

The Indian Wars of the United States.
E. S. Ellis.

Absaraka, Land of Massacre.
H. B. Carrington.

Discovery of the Yosemite and the Indian War of 1851.
H. C. Bunnell.
Chicago, Ill., 1880.

My Life on the Plains.
G. A. Custer, 1874.

Campaigns with Crook and Stories of Army Life.
Captain Charles King.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1905.

Thirty Years of Army Life on the Border.
General R. B. Marcy.
Harper & Bros., New York, 1866.

Indian Fights and Fighters, 1876–1900.
Cyrus Townsend Brady, LL.D.
Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, 1916.

The Life of Sitting Bull and the History of the Indian War, 1890–1891.
W. Fletcher Johnson.
Edgewood Publishing Company, Philadelphia, 1891.

Our Wild Indians.
R. I. Dodge.
A. D. Worthington & Co., Hartford, Conn., 1882; A. G. Nettleton, Chicago, 1882.

PERIODICALS

Volumes of the Military Service Institution from 1880–1917.
Published at Governor's Island, New York Harbor.

All Volumes of Army and Navy Journal, 1865–1923.
Published at Park Row, 20 Vesey St., and 354 4th Ave., New York City.

INDEX

Abridged Tactics for Infantry, 166.
Abstract of a System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery, 176.
Academy, Military, 109, 111, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 133, 151, 152, 153, 163, 164, 173, 179, 184, 188, 192, 197, 225, 231, 234, 235, 242, 247, 248, 250, 262, 268, 306, 317, 399, 416, 417, 427, 435, 436, 438, 439, 457, 483, 500.
Accouterments, 7, 25, 56, 87, 98, 100, 117, 150, 168, 175, 205, 233, 264, 267, 268, 319.
Adair, Lieutenant, 459.
Adams, Chas., General, 351.
Adams, Fort, 228, 303.
Adams, John, 2, 28, 53, 85, 94.
Adirondacks, 447.
Adjuntas, Porto Rico, 388.
Adjutant, 33, 104, 117, 121, 146, 181, 200, 259, 260, 307, 308.
Adjutant General, 72, 104, 148, 167, 196, 261, 308, 372, 374, 413, 420, 433, 483. *See* Appendix A, p. 494.
Adjutant General's Dept., 152.
Advance Guards, 84.
A.E.F., 476, 478.
Aeroplanes, 433, 435, 437, 447, 452, 467, 475, 479.
Aero Squadrons, 457.
Agents, Indian, 108, 184, 304, 314, 333, 349, 350, 351, 358, 359, 362, 368.
Agents, Military, 108, 118.
Agua Caliente, Mexico, 455.
Aguadores, Fort, Cuba, 380.
Agua Nueva, 215, 218.
Agua Zarca, Mexico, 455.
Aguinaldo, 389, 391, 401, 403, 404, 405, 407, 414, 424.
Ai, 134.
Aibonita, Porto Rico, 388.
Aide de camp, 52, 54, 67, 137.
Aiguillettes, 180.
Aircraft, 437, 445, 447, 448, 449, 452.
Airplane, 433, 435, 437, 445, 447, 452, 467, 475, 479.
Air Service, 445, 448, 483.
Air Service, Chief of, *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Alabama, 132, 178, 205, 248.
Alabama Claims, 302.
Alamilla Cañon, Mexico, 456.
Alaska, 317, 331, 347, 349, 369, 371, 427, 431.
Alaskan Indians, 347.
Alexandria, Virginia, 268.
Alger, Camp, Virginia, 373, 375, 379, 393, 394.
Aliaga, Philippine Islands, 403.
Allegheny, 65.
Allegheny Arsenal, 190.
Allen, Ethan, 38.
Allen's Revolver, 240.
Alliance, French, 62.
Allies, 469.
Allotments, Pay, 260, 399.
Alnaschar's Castles, 467.
Alterations, uniform, 105.
Ambulance Companies, 452, 454.
Amelia Island, Florida, 162.
American Expeditionary Force, 476, 478.
American Horse, Chief, 341.
American Lake, Washington, 420, 437.
American Legation, 411.
American Legion, 485.
Ames, Oakes, 326.
Ammunition, 6, 8, 9, 19, 23, 33, 81, 98, 125, 130, 144, 149, 153, 154, 163, 176, 203, 208, 213, 234, 236, 265, 266, 267, 271, 304, 319, 322, 337, 338, 339, 343, 350, 375, 376, 390, 392, 427, 433, 437, 441, 451, 452, 453.
Ampudia, General, 202, 213, 217, 218.
Anderson, Fort, 188.
Anderson, Robert, General, 187, 247, 379, 385, 386.
Andre, 72.
Angat River, Philippine Islands, 401.

Angeles, Philippine Islands, 404.
Anglaise River, 101.
Annapolis, Maryland, 76, 89, 159, 162.
Anniston, Alabama, 376, 449.
Annual Register, U.S.M.A., 151.
Anthem, National, 193, 194.
Antietam, 281, 283, 436.
Antimony, 176.
Apache Indians, 230, 234, 236, 239, 240, 245, 246, 248, 301, 304, 328, 329, 330, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363, 404.
Apalachicola, Florida, 190.
Apothecary, 175.
Apothecary Dept., 148.
Apothecary-General, 105, 148.
Apple Creek, 300.
Appomattox Station, Virginia, 296, 306.
Apprentice, 141.
Appropriations, 104, 164, 197, 199, 262, 290, 306, 348, 349, 364, 419, 420, 427, 432, 435, 437, 445, 447, 448, 450, 451, 479.
Aransas Bay, Texas, 199.
Arapaho Indians, 300, 309, 314, 322, 323.
Arayat, Philippine Islands, 403.
Archduke Maxmilian, 298, 299.
Arecibo, Porto Rico, 388.
Arikara Indians, 163.
Arikaree River, 320.
Arista, General, 204, 206, 208.
Arizona, 229, 235, 236, 240, 244, 245, 328, 330, 358, 359, 360, 362, 404, 405, 444, 456.
Arizona, Dept. of, 328, 330, 331.
Arkansas, 147, 218, 229, 231, 450.
Arkansas River, 196, 207, 301, 304.
Arkansas River, Little, 231.
Armistead, General, 188.
Armistice, 213, 214, 215, 223, 480, 482.
Armorers, 10.
Armories, 104, 148, 163, 190, 367.
Arms, Manual of, 55, 144.
Arms, Small, 33, 56, 87, 104, 130, 150, 153, 189, 202, 213, 220, 267, 271, 364, 390, 392, 451.
  arrows, 96, 195, 240.
  bayonet, 7, 9, 30, 37, 68, 70, 98, 101, 119, 137, 153, 199, 236, 266.
  bolos, 408, 442.
  bowie knives, 210.
  Brown Bess, 9.
  carbine, 185, 190, 208, 315, 338.
Arms, creeses, 408, 442.
  cutlass, 7.
  espontoon, 99.
  firelock, 8, 19, 61, 76, 98, 130, 145, 146, 199.
  flintlock, 8, 93, 99, 164, 190, 198, 247, 265.
  fusil, 199.
  musket, 10, 98, 189, 198, 199, 201, 208, 236, 264, 265, 288, 296, 299.
  musketoon, 10.
  pistols, 99, 104, 107, 139, 165, 190, 208, 210, 240, 270, 319.
  rifle, 8, 19, 99, 107, 108, 164, 185, 190, 198, 199, 208, 210, 214, 236, 240, 247, 259, 265, 316, 319, 322, 325, 334, 339, 341, 346, 361, 366, 367, 375, 380, 388, 394, 408, 419, 421, 433.
  sabers, 101, 148, 208, 236, 322.
  shotgun, 442.
  spears, 408.
  sword, 7, 99, 101, 104, 107, 161, 165, 208, 267.
  tomahawk, 7, 65, 94, 96, 195, 300.
Armstrong, Fort, 147, 170.
Armstrong, John, 86, 133.
Army and Navy Board, 419.
Army of Cuban Pacification, 430, 433, 434.
Army of Northern Virginia, 271.
Army of Occupation, 193, 199.
Army of the Center, 122.
Army of the Cumberland, 282, 292.
Army of the Mississippi, 281.
Army of the Potomac, 264, 268, 273, 275, 276, 277, 281, 282, 283, 286, 288, 291, 292,
Army of Virginia, 279.
Army Register, 130, 148, 280.
Army Regulations, 129.
Army Rifle Team, 419.
Army School of the Line, 435.
Army Signal School, 423.
Army Staff College, 421, 423.
Army War College, 407, 417, 418, 419, 421, 423, 465.
Arnold, Benedict, 6, 15, 16, 39, 40, 42, 46, 47, 49, 61, 63, 64, 71, 72, 75, 76.
Arrows, 96, 195, 240.
Arroyo, Porto Rico, 389.
Arsenal, 108, 130, 141, 150, 152, 153, 154, 189, 190, 224, 236, 244, 248, 249, 251, 265, 279, 305, 364, 367, 427, 433, 435, 441.

Articles of War, 31, 129.
Artificer, 73, 104, 155, 307.
Artillerist, The, 161.
Artillerists, 103, 104, 105, 107, 108, 164.
Artillery, 11, 18, 22, 33, 34, 35, 36, 73, 77, 81, 83, 88, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 99, 100, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 112, 117, 121, 128, 130, 131, 132, 136, 137, 139, 140, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 152, 153, 154, 158, 159, 160, 162, 163, 165, 166, 167, 169, 170, 175, 176, 178, 179, 183, 186, 187, 188, 196, 197, 198, 200, 202, 203, 204, 206, 207, 210, 211, 212, 215, 216, 219, 224, 229, 232, 234, 236, 247, 251, 253, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 265, 266, 268, 269, 271, 280, 295, 302, 303, 305, 306, 307, 317, 331, 343, 345, 346, 349, 361, 363, 365, 367, 371, 378, 380, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 399, 402, 410, 411, 412, 416, 417, 421, 424, 426, 428, 436, 439, 452, 464, 479, 483. (*See* numerical designation.)
Artillery, Chief of, 412, 418. (*See* Appendix A, p. 498.)
Artillery, Coast, 113.
Artillery Drill Regulations, 366, 369.
Artillerymen, 12, 18, 81, 88, 104, 149, 155, 156, 168.
Artillery School of Instruction, 164, 166.
Artillery School of Practice, 164, 166, 239.
Artillery Tactics, 128.
Artillery, Treatise on, 154.
Art, Military, Treatise on, 103
Ashe, General, 66.
Asheville, North Carolina, 450.
Ashley, General, 163.
Asiatic Cholera, 171, 230, 234, 406, 416.
Asingan, Philippine Islands, 404.
Assiniboine Indians, 309.
Assistant Secretary of War, 261.
Astor Battery, 386.
Astor, John Jacob, 386.
Astronomer, 185.
Atascadero, California, 420.
Atchison, Topeko and Santa Fé Railroad, 209.
Atkinson, Fort, 147, 159.
Atkinson, General, 171, 172.
Atlanta, Georgia, 293, 294.
Atlantic, Division of the, 331.
Attention, 56, 166, 237.
Augur, General, 331, 350.
Augusta Co., Virginia, 34.
Augusta, Georgia, 66, 152, 190, 447.
Aulic Council, 291.
Austerlitz, 339.
Austria, 463.
Auto-gun, 475.
Automatic Rifle, 466, 475.
Aviation Corps, 448, 451.
Aviation Schools, 447, 451.
Aviation Section, Signal Corps, 449.
Aviators, 449.

Bacolod, Philippine Islands, 400, 402.
Bacolod, Sultan of, 418.
Bache, Alex. D., 179.
Backus, Lieutenant Colonel, 131.
Bacoor, Philippine Islands, 406.
Bad Axe River, 172.
Bad Lands, 365.
Bakeries, field, 455.
Baker, Major, 326, 328.
Bakers, 53, 272.
Balcarras, 47.
Baldwin, Frank, Colonel, 415.
Baldwin, Lieutenant, 335.
Baliuag, Philippine Islands, 401.
Balloons, 268, 448.
Ball's Bluff, 272.
Baltimore Arsenal, 150.
Baltimore, Maryland, 35, 150, 158, 162, 249, 250.
Bamban, Philippine Islands, 404.
Bandits, 214, 227, 367, 456.
Bangued, Philippine Islands, 407.
Banks, General, 276, 278, 279, 280.
Banners, 24.
Bannock Indians, 347, 348, 349, 364, 368, 369.
Barbed-wire, 291, 442.
Barbette, 233, 266.
Bark, Kilby, 235.
Barouche, 257, 258.
Barracks, 109, 159.
Barren Hill, 62.
Barron, George, 109.
Barron, W. A., 109.
Barry, General, 430.
Bascom, Fort, New Mexico, 323.
Base-ring, 129.
Batangas, Philippine Islands, 415.
Bateaux, 125.
Bates, General, 380, 406, 407.

Baton Rouge, Louisiana, 154, 190, 192.
Batteries, 113, 129, 155, 161, 165, 181, 186, 187, 198, 203, 206, 211, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 224, 229, 233, 247, 261, 265, 268, 273, 305, 307, 349, 367, 376, 378, 380, 384, 386, 388, 389, 426, 427, 432, 435, 436.
Battles, 416.
  Bunker Hill, 1, 4, 6, 9, 12.
  Boston Siege, 3.
  Ticonderoga, 15, 18, 45.
  Quebec, 15.
  Crown Point, 18,
  Boston, 22.
  Flatbush, 29.
  Pell's Point, 33.
  White Plains, 33.
  Fort Washington, 33.
  Trenton, 36.
  Princeton, 37.
  Chad's Ford, 42.
  Warwick Tavern, 43.
  Germantown, 44.
  Freeman's Farm, 46.
  Mount Independence, 47.
  Fort Montgomery, 47.
  Saratoga, 47.
  Barren Hill, 62.
  Monmouth, 63.
  Newport, 64.
  Stony Point, 68.
  Paulus Hook, 68.
  Savannah, 68.
  Camden, 70.
  King's Mountain, 72.
  Hannah's Cowpens, 74.
  Guilford C. H., 74.
  Hobkirk's Hill, 75.
  Eutaw Springs, 76.
  New London, 77.
  Fort Recovery, 100.
  Fallen Timber, 101
  Tippecanoe River, 113.
  Detroit, 121.
  Ogdensburg, 122.
  Queenstown, 122.
  La Colle, 124, 136.
  Frenchtown, 127.
  Toronto, 129.
  Fort Meigs, 131.
  Fort George, 131.
  Sackett's Harbor, 131.
  Fort Stephenson, 132.
  Fort Mims, 132.
  Thames River, 132.
  Tallasahatchee, 134.
Battles, Talledega, 134.
  Chrystler's Farm, 134.
  Fort Niagara, 135.
  Black Rock, 135, 136.
  Buffalo, 135, 136.
  Mackinaw, 121, 137.
  Chippewa, 138.
  Lundy's Lane, 138.
  Bladensburg, 139, 140.
  Fort Bowyer, 141.
  Plattsburg, 141.
  New Orleans, 142.
  Bad Axe River, 172.
  Wisconsin River, 172.
  Dade's Massacre, 176.
  Withlacoochee, 176, 178.
  Mocinope, 178.
  Ft. Drane, 178.
  Wahoo Swamp, 178.
  Okeechobee Swamp, 181, 182.
  Miami River, 186.
  Coosalahachee River, 187.
  Palto Alto, 203.
  Resaca de la Palma, 204.
  Monterey, 210, 211, 212, 225.
  Buena Vista, 216, 217, 225.
  Cerro Gordo, 220, 225.
  Vera Cruz, 219.
  Contreras, 222.
  Churubusco, 223.
  Molino del Rey, 223.
  Chapultepec, 224.
  El Brazito, 215, 226.
  Sacramento, 226.
  Paso, 226.
  Santa Cruz, 227.
  Blue Water, 238.
  Cascades, 239.
  Wenache River, 239.
  Big Cypress, Florida, 240.
  Solomon River, 240.
  Spokane, 242.
  Sixteen Mile Pond, 245.
  Fort Defiance, 246.
  Truckee River, 246.
  Big Bethel, 255.
  Boonville, Missouri, 255.
  Carricksford, 256.
  Harper's Ferry, 255.
  Blackburn's Ford, 257.
  Manassas (1st), 258.
  Bull Run (1st), 258, 259, 262, 264, 268, 269.
  Wilson's Creek, 269.
  Lexington, Missouri, 270.
  Cross Lanes, W. Va., 270.
  Gauley Mountain, 270.
  Buffalo Hill, 270.

Battles, Leesburg, 272.
  Drainesville, 273.
  Fort Henry, 274.
  Fort Donelson, 274.
  Yorktown, 277.
  Williamsburg, 277.
  West Point, 277.
  Hanover Courthouse, 277.
  Seven Pines, 277.
  Shiloh, 277.
  McDowell, West Virginia, 278.
  Winchester, 278, 293.
  Cross Keys, 278.
  Port Republic, 278.
  Seven Days' Battles, 279.
  Mechanicsville, 279.
  Gaines Mills, 279.
  Savage Station, 279.
  White Oaks Swamp, 279.
  Malvern Hill, 279.
  Cedar Mountain, 280.
  Bull Run (2nd), 280.
  Manassas (2nd), 280.
  Mumfordsville, 280.
  Richmond, Kentucky, 280.
  Harper's Ferry, 281.
  Antietam, 281.
  Perryville, Kentucky, 282.
  Corinth, 282.
  Vicksburg, 282, 287, 288.
  Culpepper Court House, 282.
  Fredericksburg, 283.
  Murfreesborough, 284.
  Chancellorsville, 287.
  Port Gibson, Mississippi, 287.
  Grand Gulf, Mississippi, 287.
  Raymond, Mississippi, 287.
  Black River Ridge, 287.
  Champion's Hill, 287.
  Gettysburg, 287, 288.
  Chickamauga, 289.
  Lookout Mountain, 290.
  Chattanooga, 290.
  Missionary Ridge, 290.
  Wilderness Tavern, 292.
  Spottsylvania Court House, 292.
  Resaca, Georgia, 292.
  New Hope Church, 292.
  Hanover Court House, 292.
  Kennesaw Mountain, 292.
  Cold Harbor, 292.
  Petersburg, 292.
  Monocacy, 293.
  Atlanta, 293.
  Kernstown, Virginia, 293.
  Fisher's Hill, 293.
  Cedar Creek, Virginia, 293.
  Nashville, Tennessee, 294.
Battles, Fort Stedman, 295.
  Waynesboro, 295.
  Five Forks, 295.
  Richmond, 295.
  Farmville, 295.
  White Stone Hill, 300.
  Powder River, 300.
  Tongue River, 336.
  Clearwater, 345.
  Eagle Creek, 346.
  Clark's Fork, 348.
  Milk River, 350.
  Wounded Knee Creek, 365, 366.
  Las Guasimas, 378, 379.
  El Caney, 379, 380, 383.
  San Juan, Cuba, 379, 380, 383.
  Santiago de Cuba, 384.
  Guanico, Cuba, 386.
  San Juan de Porto Rico, 386.
  Santa Desidera, Porto Rico, 386.
  Hormigueros, Porto Rico, 387.
  Mayaguez, Porto Rico, 387.
  Las Marias, Porto Rico, 387.
  Yauco, Porto Rico, 388.
  Coamo, Porto Rico, 388.
  Aibonita, Porto Rico, 388, 389.
  Guayama, Porto Rico, 389.
  Malate, Philippine Islands, 389.
  Leech Lake, Minnesota, 394.
  Sugar Point, 394.
  Caloocan, Philippine Islands, 400.
  Bacolod, Philippine Islands, 400.
  Pasig, Philippine Islands, 400.
  Taguig, Philippine Islands, 400.
  Malolos, Philippine Islands, 400.
  Santa Cruz, Philippine Islands, 401.
  Calumpit, Philippine Islands, 401.
  San Fernando, Pamp., Philippine Islands, 401, 402.
  San Isidro, Philippine Islands, 401.
  Cebu, Philippine Islands, 402.
  Zapote River, Philippine Islands, 402.
  Imus, Cavite, Philippine Islands, 402.
  Colomba, Philippine Islands, 402.
  Cavite, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Morong, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Porac, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Arayat, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Cabanatuan, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Aliaga, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Talavera, Philippine Islands, 403.
  Asingan, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Rosales, Philippine Islands, 404.

Battles, San Jacinto, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Magalan, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Bamban, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Capas, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Concepcion, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Tarlac, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Gerona, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Panique, Philippine Islands, 404.
  Dagupan, Philippine Islands, 404.
  San Fernando (Union), Philippine Islands, 405.
  Tila Pass, Philippine Islands, 405.
  Perez Dasmarinas, Philippine Islands, 405.
  San Mateo, Philippine Islands, 405.
  Subig, Philippine Islands, 405.
  Montalban, Philippine Islands, 405.
  Bacoor, Philippine Islands, 406.
  Legaspi, Philippine Islands, 406.
  Bicol River, 407.
  Surigao, 407.
  Malibcong, 407.
  Tientsin, China, 409.
  Peking, 409, 410.
  Pei-Ts'ang, 409.
  Yang Ts'un, 409.
  Malalag River, 424.
  Bud-Dajo, Philippine Islands, 424, 442.
  Bud Tandu, Philippine Islands, 448.
  Columbus, New Mexico, 453.
  Guerrero, Mexico, 454.
  Agua Caliente, Mexico, 455.
  Agua Zarca, Mexico, 455.
  La Joya, Mexico, 455.
  Parral, Mexico, 455.
  Verde River, Mexico, 456.
  Tomachie, Mexico, 456.
  Ojos Azules, Mexico, 456.
  San Miguel de Rubio, Mexico, 456.
  Alamillo Cañon, Mexico, 456.
  Laredo, Texas, 459.
  West Brownsville, Texas, 459.
  Carrizal, Mexico, 459.
Bayonet, 7, 9, 30, 37, 68, 70, 98, 101, 119, 137, 153, 199, 212, 222, 236, 266, 361, 367.
Bay St. Louis, Louisiana, 192.
Bear Chief, Chief, 326.
Beard, 110.
Bear Paw Mountains, 346.
Bear-Runs-Over-A-Man, Chief, 304.
Beauregard, General, 197, 222, 224, 257, 258, 271, 277, 313.
Beecher, Captain, 320.
Beecher, Henry Ward, 320.
Belcher, 28.
Belew Gate, 224.
Belgian, 265.
Belknap, Fort, 233.
Belle Fontaine, Missouri, 154.
Bell, General, 406, 415.
Bell, Major, 322.
Bell tent, 233.
Belts, 7, 117, 239.
Bemis Heights, 46.
Bennett, A. S., Captain, 349.
Benning, Fort, Georgia, 447.
Bennington, Vermont, 45.
Benteen, 338.
Benton, General, 221.
Bent's Fort, 207, 209.
Benzine Board, 325.
Berlin, 282.
Bethel, Big, 255.
Bicol River, Philippine Islands, 407.
Biddle, Colonel, 255.
Big Bend of the Marias, 326.
Big Bethel, 255.
Big Cypress Expedition, 190.
Big Cypress, Florida, 240.
Big Foot, Chief, 365.
Big Horn Mountains, 342.
Big Horn River, 315, 336, 337.
Biplane, 433.
Bishop, Joseph B., 429.
Bissell, 218.
Bivouac, 203, 333.
Blackburn's Ford, 257.
Black Creek, 170.
Blackfeet Indians, 300, 326.
Black Hawk, 170, 171, 172, 173.
Black Jim, 333.
Black Kettle, 322, 323.
Blacklegs, 227.
Black River Bridge, 287.
Black Rock, 125, 135, 136.
Blacksmiths, 53, 121, 137.
Black Swamp, 127.
Bladensburg, 139, 140.
Bland, Colonel, 11.
Blank Cartridges, 81.
Blenker's Division, 276.
Bliss, Horace, 179, 200.
Blockhouse Fourteen, 390.
Block-Houses, 93, 119, 206, 232, 380, 383, 390, 391.
Blood Indians.
Blue Ridge, 276, 287.
Blue Water, 238.

Board of Officers, 143, 144, 260, 262, 308, 325, 361, 412, 419.
Board of Treasury, 76.
Board of War, 72.
Board of War and Ordnance, 27.
Boats, 30, 35, 40, 76, 84, 93, 122, 125, 126, 134, 138, 142, 154, 171, 184, 187, 199, 216, 235, 236, 318, 377.
Body Guards, 55.
Boerstler, Colonel, 131.
Bogus Charley, 333.
Bogy, Commissioner, 311.
Boise, Fort, 242.
Bolo, 408, 442.
Bolt, 145.
Bombardiers, 12, 119, 126, 128.
Bombers, 466.
Bombs, 155.
Bonita Cañon, 245.
Bonneville, Captain, 172.
Bonus, 66, 68, 72, 97, 103, 104, 105, 114, 128, 136, 141, 173, 183, 217, 219, 279, 284, 289, 290, 293, 297, 385.
Boonville, Missouri, 255.
Bootleggers, 227.
Boots, 101, 160, 173.
Bordentown, 35.
Border, Mexican, 440, 443, 446, 449, 452, 459, 476.
Boston, 1, 3, 15, 16, 17, 20, 21, 22, 25, 85, 147, 157, 158, 162, 235, 289, 375.
Boston Charlie, 333.
Boston Neck, 1.
Boundaries, 186, 234.
Bounty, 66, 68, 72, 97, 103, 104, 105, 114, 128, 136, 141, 173, 183, 217, 219, 279, 284, 285, 289, 290, 293, 295, 297, 302.
Bounty-jumping, 289.
Bourke, 328, 329.
Bowie Knives, 210.
Bowles, Colonel, 217, 218.
Bowyer, Fort, 141, 162.
Boxers, 408, 411.
Boyd, Chas. D., Captain, 459.
Boyer, 315.
Braddock, General, 2, 137.
Bradley, Colonel, 134.
Brady, Fort, 147, 162, 303.
Bragg, General, 203, 218, 233, 280, 289, 290.
Brandywine, 42, 48.
Bravery, 16, 64, 82, 131, 196, 207, 218, 281.
Brazito, El, 215, 226.
Brazos River, 233.
Brazos Santiago, Texas, 299.
Breast-plate, 117, 193.
Breastworks, 271.
Breckenridge, General, 372.
Breeches, 149.
Brevet rank, 121, 153, 166, 167, 169, 179, 180, 200, 218, 219, 228, 230, 303, 308, 331,
Bribery, 4, 71.
Bricole, 155.
Bridger, Fort, 232, 241.
Brigade, 207, 219, 259, 271, 276, 285, 445, 457.
British, 16, 22, 23, 24, 29, 30, 33, 34, 42, 46, 50, 62, 64, 66, 68, 79, 92, 96, 130, 132, 134, 136, 139, 142, 409.
British Columbia, 242.
British Compound, 409.
British Manual, 11.
Brock, General, 123.
Brodhead, 65.
Bronx, 26, 76.
Brooke, Fort, Florida, 239.
Brooke, General, 365, 372, 387, 389.
Brook, Fort, 176.
Brooklyn Heights, 25, 29.
Brooks, General, 286.
Brown Bess, 9.
Brown, Colonel, 359, 455, 456.
Brown, Fort, Texas, 202, 203, 205.
Brown, Jacob, 122, 131, 137, 138, 148, 167.
Brown, John, 248.
Brownsville, Texas, 202, 242, 299, 367, 434, 459.
Brule Indians, 238, 341.
Brunswick, 37, 40.
Brussells, 141.
Buchanan, President, 245, 248.
Bud-Dajo, Philippine Islands, 424, 442.
Bud Tandu, Philippine Islands, 448.
Buell, General, 273, 275, 277, 279, 280, 282.
Buena Vista, 216, 225.
Buffalo, 315.
Buffalo Hill, 270.
Buffalo, New York, 135, 136, 137, 370.
Buffington sight, 361.
Buford, Fort, Dakota, 357.
Buford, N. B., 179.
Bugle, 213, 322.
Bullard, Arthur, 429.
Bullets, 6, 7, 153, 190, 204, 236, 244, 361, 367, 395.

Bull Run, 258, 259, 263, 264, 268, 269, 280, 282, 420.
Bulls-eye, 169.
Bunker Hill, 1, 4, 6, 9, 12.
Bureau of Insular Affairs, 483.
Burgoyne, 45, 46, 47, 48.
Burlington, Vermont, 450.
Burnside, General, 279, 282, 283, 286, 290.
Butler, General, 210, 215, 228, 255.
Buttons, 106, 117, 130, 164, 172, 180, 233.
Butt's Hill, 64.

Cabal, Conway, 133.
Cabanatuan, Philippine Islands, 403.
Cabiao, Philippine Islands, 403.
Cabinet, 251.
Cache Creek, 234.
Cadence, 104, 144, 237, 285.
Cadet, 105, 106, 108, 109, 112, 116, 117, 118, 119, 149, 151, 160, 163, 164, 180, 192, 225, 239, 250, 262, 268, 278, 399 435, 436, 457, 483.
Cadets, Medical, 262, 278.
Cadwalader, 221.
Cairns, J. T., Captain, 199.
Cairo, Illinois, 274, 289.
Caissons, 154, 166, 208.
Calhoun, Alex., 151, 152, 155, 157.
Caliber, 7, 10, 99, 107, 112, 113, 132, 149, 150, 153, 163, 169, 175, 190, 198, 202, 207, 233, 236, 265, 334, 361, 364, 465.
California, 193, 213, 215, 226, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 245, 332, 379, 389, 402, 420, 440, 447.
California, Gulf of, 232, 245.
Calle Real, 289.
Call, General, 177.
Caloocan, Philippine Islands, 400.
Calumpit, Philippine Islands, 401.
Camargo, 209, 216.
Camarines, Philippine Islands, 406.
Camas Prairie, 346, 348.
Cambridge, 2.
Camden, South Carolina, 70, 72.
Cameron, Secretary of War, 250, 251.
Campaign of Königgrätz, 363
Camp Alger, Virginia, 373, 375, 379, 393, 394.
Campbell, 72.
Camp Dewey, Philippine Islands, 385, 386.
Camp Geo. G. Meade, Pennsylvania, 376.
Camp Geo. Crook, 365.
Camp Geo. H. Thomas, Georgia, 375, 393, 394.
Camp Hamilton, Kentucky, 375.
Camp life, 3, 50, 52, 58.
Camp McKeon, 187.
Camp Miller, 165.
Camp of Instruction, Grand, 186.
Camp Perry, Ohio, 436.
Camp Poland, Tennessee, 375.
Camps, 84, 99, 186, 200, 201, 202, 205, 208, 392, 413, 417, 433, 447, 449.
Camp Salubrity, Louisiana, 193.
Camp Shipp, Alabama, 376.
Camps, Training, 99, 186, 205, 413, 417, 433, 447, 449, 450, 453, 466, 467, 469, 471, 474, 490.
Camp Supply, Oklahoma, 321, 323.
Camp Wheeler, Alabama, 376.
Camp Wikoff, New York, 375.
Camp Wilkins, Louisiana, 193.
Canada, 45, 120, 121, 123, 124, 131, 133, 180, 183, 196, 298, 302, 303, 305, 309, 349, 375.
Canadian River, 321, 323.
Canadians, 42, 46.
Canals, 142, 164.
Canal Zone, 429, 445, 452.
Canby, General, 296, 312, 331, 332, 333, 354, 360.
Candon, Philippine Islands, 407.
Cannon, 11, 22, 24, 33, 34, 36, 62, 93, 104, 112, 113, 121, 125, 129, 132, 142, 150, 153, 154, 163, 175, 189, 202, 207, 212, 220, 224, 265, 267, 305, 316, 364, 399, 407.
Cañon Bonita, 245.
Cañon de los Embudos, 362.
Canteen, 7, 319.
Cantonment, 166, 170.
Capas, Philippine Islands, 404.
Cape Hatteras, 235.
Cape Horn, 229, 235.
Capitol, 253.
Capron's battery, 380.
Caps, 130, 149, 165, 173, 238, 265, 285, 331, 361.
Captain Jack, Chief, 333.
Carbine, 185, 190, 208, 315, 339.
Carleton, Sir Guy, 88.
Carlisle, Barracks, Pennsylvania, 236.
Carolinas, 75, 279.
Carpenters, 53.
Carpetbagger, 301.

Carranza, 446, 453, 454, 455, 456, 459.
Carriages, gun, 175, 233, 234, 266, 465.
Carricksford, 256.
Carrington, Colonel, 309.
Carrizal, Mexico, 459, 463.
Carson, Kit, 213, 300.
Carter, Wm. H., General, 439, 446.
Cartouche box, 7, 43.
Cartridge box or pouch, 7, 22, 76, 93, 98, 145, 201, 286.
Cartridges, 7, 33, 98, 138, 145, 171, 176, 198, 208, 236, 237, 288, 367.
Cartridges, blank, 81.
Casa Mata, 223.
Cascade, Fort, 242.
Cascades (Columbia), 239.
Casemate, 233, 266.
Casement, General, 326.
Casey's Infantry Tactics, 285.
Cashtown, Pennsylvania, 287.
Cass, General, 128, 136.
Casualties, 37, 45, 70, 72, 74, 94, 98, 101, 128, 129, 131, 138, 141, 157, 176, 181, 182, 187, 191, 204, 218, 219, 223, 224, 231, 232, 235, 238, 269, 270, 273, 282, 283, 289, 300, 320, 322, 327, 337, 338, 345, 346, 349, 366, 378, 379, 383, 387, 389, 390, 392, 395, 399, 403, 405, 406, 407, 409, 410, 413, 415, 441, 452, 453, 455, 459.
Catanduanes, Philippine Islands, 406.
Catawba River, 69.
Caution, Command of, 144.
Cavalry, 35, 83, 98, 99, 103, 105, 106, 107, 117, 121, 128, 130, 132, 137, 161, 165, 166, 171, 173, 175, 178, 179, 181, 184, 185, 186, 188, 190, 191, 192, 193, 196, 200, 202, 203, 206, 210, 211, 213, 216, 218, 222, 223, 228, 229, 230, 233, 236, 238, 240, 245, 246, 250, 251, 253, 259, 260, 261, 267, 268, 269, 271, 278, 280, 284, 287, 291, 292, 298, 302, 303, 306, 307, 308, 312, 313, 321, 322, 330, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 343, 344, 345, 346, 351, 360, 361, 362, 363, 366, 368, 378, 381, 383, 387, 399, 404, 405, 411, 412, 416, 417, 421, 426, 428, 439, 441, 443, 444, 447, 448, 451, 452, 454, 457, 483. (*See* numerical designation.)
Cavalry, Chief of. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Cavalry Drill Regulations, 351, 366, 369, 417.
Cavalry School, 363.
Cavalry Tactics, 161, 165, 190.
Cavalry Tactics, Cooke's, 360.
Cavite, Philippine Islands, 374, 379, 385, 386, 403.
Cebu, Philippine Islands, 400, 402.
Cedar Creek, Virginia, 293.
Cedar Mountain, 280.
Center, Army of, 122.
Centerville, 271, 273, 275.
Central Army, 122.
Centre, Lieutenant, 181.
Cerralvo, 210.
Cerro Gordo, 220, 225, 244.
Certificate of Merit, 219.
Cervera, 277.
Chad's Ford, 42.
Chaffee, A. R., General, 335, 369, 380, 408, 409, 410, 411, 415.
Chako, 165.
Chamber, 145, 164, 171, 176.
Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, 293.
Chambers, Colonel, 339, 340.
Champion's Hill, 287.
Champlain Arsenal, 190.
Champlain, Lake, 133, 136.
Chancellorsville, 287.
Chandler, General, 131.
Chapeaux, 130, 149, 160, 165.
Chapel, 84, 86.
Chaplain, 97, 153, 184, 260, 483, 484.
Chapultepec, 224.
Charleston, South Carolina, 66, 69, 70, 72, 79, 159, 162, 171, 190, 192.
Charlestown Neck, 1.
Charlotte, North Carolina, 70, 72.
Chase, Mr., 28.
Chatham, 73.
Chato, Chief, 360.
Chattahoochee River, 292, 293.
Chattanooga, Tennessee, 280, 281, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293.
Cheat Mountains, 255.
Chehalis, Fort, 242.
Chemical Warfare Service, 483, 484.
Cherokee Indians, 184, 195.
Chesapeake, 40, 42, 75, 139, 275, 428.
Chester, 43.
Chester, Captain, 13.

Chevaux-de-frise, 465.
Chevron, 82, 160, 180, 233, 361.
Chew House, 44.
Cheyenne Indians, 240, 300, 311, 319, 322, 323, 336, 342, 343.
Cheyenne River Reservation, 431.
Chicago, Illinois, 195.
Chickamauga, 289, 373.
Chief American Horse, 341.
Chief Bear Chief, 326.
Chief Big Foot, 375.
Chief Black Kettle, 322.
Chief Captain Jack, 333.
Chief Chato, 360.
Chief Chihuahua, 362.
Chief Crazy Horse, 336, 341, 343, 344.
Chief Dull Knife, 342.
Chief Geronimo, 360, 362.
Chief Kamiarkin, 238.
Chief Mountain Chief, 328.
Chief Nachez, 362.
Chief of Air Service. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief of Artillery, 412, 418. *See* Appendix A, p. 498.
Chief of Cavalry, *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief of Coast Artillery, 428. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief of Engineers, 308, 372. *See* Appendix A, p. 497.
Chief of Field Artillery. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief of Infantry. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief of Ordnance, 261, 308, 364, 372, 427. *See* Appendix A, p. 498.
Chief of Staff, 274, 295, 418, 437, 440, 457, 481, 489. *See* Appendix A, p. 493.
Chief of Tank Corps. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Chief Red Horn, 326, 327.
Chief Roman Nose, 319, 320, 322.
Chief Signal Officer, 372. *See* Appendix A, p. 498.
Chiefs, Indian, 238, 304, 319, 320, 322, 326, 328, 333, 336, 341, 342, 344, 345, 346, 347, 349, 350, 357, 358, 360, 362, 365.
Chief Sitting Bull, 336, 341, 349, 350, 357, 365.
Chi Hua gate, 410.
Chihuahua, 226, 227.
Chihuahua, Chief, 362.
Childs, Colonel, 212.
China, 408, 411.
Chinese, 363, 406, 409, 410.
Chippewa Indians, 394, 395.
Chippewa River, 137.
Chiricahua Apaches, 359, 360, 362.
Choctow Indians, 170.
Cholera, Asiatic, 171, 230, 234, 417.
Chrystler's Farm, 134.
Churubusco, 222, 223.
Cincinnati, 97, 100, 228.
City of Mexico, 220, 222, 223, 224, 228.
Civil War, 169, 240, 243, 244, 290, 298, 300, 302, 307, 313, 316, 317, 319, 325, 326, 331, 338, 352, 357, 374, 419, 420, 421.
Clarke, Geo. Rogers, 64, 65, 69, 89.
Clarke, Wm., General, 110, 124, 240, 344.
Clark, Fort, Texas, 351.
Clark, Major, 206.
Clark's Fork, 348.
Class "A" (Officers), 484.
Class "B" (Officers), 484.
Clay, General, 131.
Clay, Henry, 218.
Cleanliness, 58, 60.
Clearwater, 345.
Cleveland, Grover, 368.
Clinch, General, 176, 178, 195.
Clinton, Henry, 69, 70, 73, 76, 77.
Clinton, James, 45, 47, 63, 65, 67.
Cloak, 233.
Clothier-general, 76.
Clothing, 51, 52, 63, 65, 68, 73, 75, 76, 80, 84, 95, 105, 149, 173, 175, 205, 207, 213, 227, 246, 255, 259, 264, 267, 268, 271, 283, 329, 339, 341, 343, 375, 447, 480.
Clothing allowance, 207.
Coahuila, 214.
Coamo, Porto Rico, 388.
Coast Artillery, 113, 428, 434, 436, 439, 440, 444, 448, 452, 453, 456, 457, 483.
Coast Artillery, Chief of, 428. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Coast defense, 112, 148, 361, 370, 419, 422, 427, 428, 433.
Coast Defense Board, 428.
Cobb, General, 296.
Cochrane, General, 286.
Cochran, John, 247.
Cockades, 20, 106, 112, 149.
Cocke, General, 134.
Coehorns, 207, 233.
Coffee, General, 134.

Cold Harbor, 292.
Colleges, 308, 413, 485.
Colle, La, 124, 136.
Colomba, Philippine Islands, 402.
Colorado, 229, 240, 350, 351, 385, 390, 450.
Colorado River, 154, 232, 236, 239.
Colors, 20, 24, 135, 210, 288, 318, 393, 477.
Colt, 210, 240, 319.
Columbiad, 190, 233, 265, 266.
Columbia, Dept. of, 331.
Columbia, District of, 139, 150, 251, 399, 434.
Columbia River, 193, 230, 239.
Columbus Barracks, Ohio, 373.
Columbus, New Mexico, 453, 454, 455.
Columbus, Ohio, 279.
Comanche Indians, 111, 226, 304, 309, 314, 322, 323, 334.
Commandant of Cadets, U.S.M.A., 151, 188, 242.
Commander-in-Chief. *See* Appendix A, p. 491.
Command of Caution, 144.
Command of Execution, 144.
Commands, 11, 144, 145.
Commissary, 52, 53, 54.
Commissary Dept., 196, 256, 371.
Commissary-general, 63, 119, 149, 159, 308, 372, 425.
Commissary-general of Ordnance, 119.
Commissary-general of subsistence, 284.
Commissary of subsistence, 261, 284.
Commissary-sergeant, 259, 307.
Commissioner of Indian Affairs, 311.
Commission, Peace, 320, 332.
Commission, War, 393.
Committee of Safety, 19, 26.
Communications, 212, 218, 221, 224, 293, 400, 403, 405.
Compass, 321.
Compensation, 229, 295, 449.
Concentration Camps, 373, 466.
Concepcion, Philippine Islands, 404.
Conduct, good, 262.
Conductor of Artillery, 153.
Confederate Army, 248, 249, 250, 253, 255, 257, 258, 265, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 277, 279, 282, 284, 286, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 308.
Confederate States, 248, 250, 251, 253, 264, 280, 288, 298, 301.
Congress, 5, 11, 16, 17, 19, 26, 27, 31, 33, 35, 43, 46, 48, 68, 86, 87, 114, 143, 152, 156, 158, 166, 180, 188, 197, 205, 207, 218, 226, 227, 229, 231, 232, 236, 237, 248, 251, 260, 261, 262, 263, 274, 278, 284, 289, 290, 295, 301, 305, 306, 313, 318, 330, 348, 349, 356, 363, 364, 365, 366, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 377, 384, 391, 395, 398, 405, 407, 411, 416, 417, 419, 420, 422, 427, 428, 431, 433, 434, 436, 438, 439, 444, 445, 448, 451, 456, 457, 469, 471, 489.
Congressional Investigations, 162, 180, 434.
Congress of Sovereign States, 248.
Connecticut, 3, 4, 13, 25, 27, 28, 40, 87, 120, 303, 434.
Connor, General, 300.
Conscription, 141, 276, 280, 284, 288, 289, 466.
Constabulary, Philippine, 418, 424.
Constitution, 95, 251, 262, 274, 435.
Contreras, 222.
Conway, 44, 49.
Conway Cabal, 133.
Cooke, P. St. G., General, 213, 215, 238, 312, 331, 360.
Cooking, 3, 52, 54, 200, 207, 392, 455.
Cook Inlet, Alaska, 318.
Cooks, 399.
Cook's Cavalry Tactics, 360.
Cooper, 230, 236, 237.
Coosahatchee, 67, 187, 189.
Coosa River, 133.
Copper, 234.
Copperhead, 289.
Coppinger, General, 369, 372.
Corbin, General, 372, 420.
Corinth, Mississipi, 282.
Cornet, 98, 106, 121, 137.
Cornwallis, 34, 37, 42, 69, 70, 72, 74, 75, 76, 77, 79.
Corps, 275.
Corps of Cadets, 109, 151, 164, 188, 192, 262, 436, 457.
Corps of Engineers. *See* Engineers.
Corpus Christi, Texas, 199, 200, 202.
Cortina Indians, 242.
Cotabato River, Philippine Islands, 424.
Council Bluffs, Mississippi, 159, 162.
Council of War, 77, 125.
Countermarch, 187.

Countersign, 139, 175.
Courts-martial, 16, 42, 45, 49, 84, 103, 169, 173, 174, 377.
Cowardice, 12, 15, 16, 49, 54, 125, 127.
Cow Island, 346.
Cox, Secretary, 324.
Craig, Lieutenant Colonel, 234.
Crawford, Captain, 360, 362.
Crawford, Fort, 147, 168, 188.
Crazy Horse, Chief, 336, 341, 343, 344.
Crazy Woman's Fork, 342.
Creek Indians, 132, 134, 152, 176, 178.
Creese, 408, 442.
Crime, 175, 227, 234.
Criminals, 175, 227, 234.
Crisis, 39.
Crittenden, Senator, 217.
Crook, Camp Geo., 365.
Crook, Fort, 242.
Crook, Geo., General, 293, 326, 328, 329, 330, 331, 336, 337, 340, 341, 342, 350, 351, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363.
Cross, 20.
Cross Belt, 7.
Cross Keys, 278.
Cross Lanes, West Virginia, 270.
Croup, 190.
Crowder, E. H., General, 475, 477.
Crow Indians, 337, 342, 346, 349.
Crown Point, 18.
Cruelty, 174.
Cuba, 374, 375, 377, 378, 379, 386, 391, 397, 415, 423, 426, 427, 464.
Cuban Pacification, 426, 430, 433, 434.
Cubans, 384.
Culpepper Court House, 282.
Cumberland, Army of the, 282, 292.
Cumming, Colonel, 143.
Curriculum, 109, 116, 164, 235, 247, 356, 363.
Custer, General, 299, 321, 322, 336, 337, 338, 339, 342, 354.
Cypress Expedition, Big, 190.

Dade's Massacre, 176, 177, 187.
Dagupan, Philippine Islands, 404.
Daiquiri, Cuba, 377, 378.
Dakota, 340.
Dakota, Department of, 331.
Dallas, Fort, 186.
Dallas, Georgia, 293.
Dalles, Fort, 242.
Dalton, Georgia, 294.
Danbury, Connecticut, 40.
Daring, 64.
Darrow, Pierce, Lieutenant Colonel, 161.
Das Mariñas, Philippine Islands, 402.
Datu, 420, 423, 424, 442.
Datu Ali, 420, 423, 424.
Dauphin, 81.
Davie, General, 128.
Davis, Colonel, 425.
Davis, Jefferson, 152, 179, 197, 200, 212, 218, 247, 251, 264, 271, 275, 276, 283, 318.
Davis, Jefferson C., General, 318, 333.
Dayton, Ohio, 119.
Dead River, 15.
Deadwood City, Dakota, 340.
Deane, Silas, 41.
Dearborn, Fort, 147.
Dearborn, General, 120, 124, 125, 131, 232.
Death penalty, 103, 152, 174.
Declaration of Independence, 27, 28.
Declaration of Peace, 87, 142, 187, 190, 228, 388.
Declaration of War, 120, 203, 205, 372.
Decorations, 23, 74.
Defiance, Fort, 101, 245, 246, 319.
De Grasse, 76, 79.
De Kalb, 70.
Delaware, 27.
Delaware, Fort, 303.
Delaware Indians, 181, 206.
Delaware River, 34, 35, 75.
Del Pilar, M. H., General, 405.
Demobilization, 481, 482.
Democrat, 228.
Demonstration, 55, 56, 119, 417.
Dengue Fever, 384, 392.
Dental Corps, 457.
Dental Surgeons, 431, 439.
Dentists, 431, 439.
Department, Indian, 320.
Department, Interior, 163.
Department, Mountain, 275, 276, 277, 279.
Department of Arizona, 328, 330, 331.
Department of Dakota, 331.
Department of Mississippi, 275, 299.
Department of Texas, 331.
Department of the Columbia, 331.
Department of the East, 331.

Department of the Lakes, 331.
Department of the Missouri, 277, 284, 331.
Department of the Pacific, 240.
Department of the Platte, 331.
Department of the Rappahannock, 277.
Department of the Shenandoah, 276, 277, 279.
Department of the Tennessee, 279, 282.
Department of Washington, 303.
Departments, Military, 192, 196, 240, 301, 303, 312, 318, 331, 445. *See* Appendices K and M.
Department, War, 27, 133, 150, 151, 163, 169, 177, 190, 233, 239, 251, 318, 328, 366, 372, 375, 419, 431, 433, 435, 441, 465, 467, 471, 474, 475, 477, 489.
Deploy step, 143.
Depot, 190.
Deputy Quartermaster, 118.
Deranged officers, 146, 147, 162.
Derby, Geo. H., 232.
Deringer, Dr., 161.
de Russy, M., 154.
Desertion, 5, 13, 15, 23, 30, 32, 34, 45, 48, 53, 68, 70, 97, 122, 123, 173, 175, 202, 214, 218, 227, 230, 234, 262, 283, 294, 295, 297, 305, 349.
Des Moines, Iowa, 407.
Des Moines River, 193.
De Soto, 180.
D'Estaing, 68.
Detached Service, 53, 61, 179, 452.
Detroit, 120, 121, 147, 153, 154, 171, 190, 192.
Devens, 272.
Dewey, Camp, 385, 386.
Dewey, George, Admiral, 374, 379.
Diary, 123.
Dick Bill, 417.
Dickinson, Secretary of War, 435, 436, 437, 468.
Digos, Philippine Islands, 424.
Dirigibles, 452.
Disability, 262, 284.
Disbandment, 90.
Discharge Certificate, 284.
Discharges, 87, 90, 107, 178, 300, 302, 304, 305, 324, 391, 398, 399, 402, 413.
Disciplinary Barracks, U. S., 451.
Discipline, 5, 13, 15, 16, 21, 26, 31, 44, 54, 60, 62, 63, 70, 73, 78, 82, 99, 100, 101, 104, 114, 117, 119, 122, 127, 135, 137, 140, 142, 144, 191, 193, 201, 204, 207, 208, 213, 215, 222, 225, 226, 232, 241, 245, 246, 254, 257, 264, 267, 269, 286, 288, 297, 353, 373, 383, 385, 393, 394, 397, 398, 416, 417, 422, 435, 436, 446, 451, 460, 464.
Discipline, New System of, 128.
Discipline, Norfolk, 11.
Disease, 15, 45, 53, 167, 168, 171, 179, 181, 189, 200, 206, 207, 214, 219, 220, 225, 227, 230, 234, 243, 269, 276, 278, 291, 297, 326, 357, 374, 384, 386, 392, 393, 394, 406, 416, 417, 430.
Disobedience of Orders, 131, 217.
Distribution of troops, 101, 117, 147, 159, 162, 165, 196, 229, 235, 239, 244, 245, 279, 302, 306, 331, 350, 444, 517, 523, 525.
District of Columbia, 139, 150, 251, 385, 399, 434.
Districts, Military, 130, 139, 188.
Division, 190, 207, 218, 220, 259, 271, 301, 420, 437, 439, 444, 445, 453, 457, 470, 476.
Division, Grand, 144, 162, 190, 283, 286, 420.
Division of Military Affairs, 433.
Division of the Atlantic, 331.
Division of the Missouri, 331.
Division of the Pacific, 331.
Division of the South, 151.
Division of the Tennessee, 303.
Dixon's Ferry, 171.
Dobb's Ferry, 76.
Dodd, Geo., A., Colonel, 454, 456.
Dodge, General, 325.
Dog Indians, 322.
Donelson, Fort, 274.
Doniphan, Colonel, 168, 206, 207, 214, 215, 226.
Dorchester Heights, 21.
Double pay, 231.
Douglas, Arizona, 443.
Dover, N. J., 427.
Dowd, 442, 443.
Downe, W. A., Colonel, 381.
Draft law, 276, 280, 284, 288, 289, 290, 466, 467, 475.
Dragoons, 3, 73, 98, 100, 101, 103, 104, 105, 107, 112, 117, 121, 128, 130, 131, 137, 173, 175, 178, 181, 184, 186, 188, 190, 191, 192, 193, 196, 199, 200, 203, 206, 207, 210, 213, 216,

217, 218, 222, 228, 229, 230, 233, 236, 240, 245, 256, 267.
Drainsville, 273.
Drane, Fort, 177, 178, 187.
Drayton, 143.
Drift, 361.
Drill, 10, 11, 26, 54, 55, 56, 57, 61, 81, 82, 83, 93, 100, 101, 103, 107, 112, 128, 129, 143, 144, 161, 164, 168, 186, 190, 192, 196, 208, 215, 218, 221, 227, 230, 264, 266, 268, 285, 317, 374, 437.
Drill Master, 144.
Drill Regulations, 143, 154, 164, 165, 168, 169, 176, 179, 187, 190, 197, 230, 233, 236, 237, 247, 266, 267, 285, 317, 351, 360, 366, 369, 417, 421, 441.
Driver, 126.
Drum, 145.
Drunkenness, 76, 96, 139, 171, 227, 253, 353, 393, 446.
Dry Tortugas, Florida, 303.
Duane, Wm., 28, 143, 144.
Du Cordray, 41.
Duffield, General, 379, 380.
Duke of Wellington, 142.
Dull Knife, Chief, 342.
Duncan, Captain, 204, 211, 228.
Duncan, Fort, 231.
Duncan, J. W., Colonel, 424.
Dunlop, 35.
Dunn, J. P., 310.
Du Pont, Henry, 179.
Du Portail, 42.
Duties, routine, 193, 198, 312, 353.
Dyer, Commissioner, 333.
Dynamite gun, 364.
Dysentery, 189, 269, 384, 406.

Eagan, General, 372.
Eagle, 172, 238.
Eagle Creek, 346.
Early, General, 280, 293, 294, 295.
Earthquake, San Francisco, 425.
East, Department of, 331.
Eastern Department, 177, 275, 331.
Easton, Pennsylvania, 65.
Eastport, Maine, 162, 303.
Easy Plan, Timothy Pickering's, 11.
Eaton, Governor, 117.
Echelons, 165.
Efficiency Reports, 18.
Eighteenth Infantry, 147, 303, 311, 369, 385, 386, 476.
Eighth Cavalry, 366, 369.
Eighth Infantry, 147, 159, 184, 187, 188, 189, 200, 228, 245, 256, 369, 387.
Eighth Maryland, 140.
Eighth Massachusetts, 393.
Eighth Ohio, 385.
Eighth Virginia, 272.
Eighty-eight Battalion Act, 31.
El Brazito, 215, 225.
El Caney, Cuba, 379, 380, 383, 385, 396.
El Dorado, 230.
Election of Officers, 4, 208, 249, 252, 260, 262.
Eleventh Cavalry, 412, 447, 454, 455, 456.
Eleventh Infantry, 138, 147, 222, 228, 286, 287.
Elizabethtown, 65.
Elk, Head of, 76.
Elk Water, 270.
Elliott, Major, 321, 323.
Ellis, Fort, 326.
Ellsworth, Colonel, 267.
Elmira, New York, 65.
El Paso, 215, 227, 229, 230, 443, 456.
El Tejar, Mexico, 449.
Embargo, 443.
Embudos, Cañon de los, 362.
Emory, General, 331.
Endicott Board, 361, 370, 420, 422.
Enfield Rifle, 265.
Engineering, Military, 188.
Engineers, 35, 103, 104, 105, 107, 108, 113, 117, 118, 128, 133, 146, 147, 149, 156, 163, 164, 179, 183, 185, 196, 206, 221, 224, 232, 234, 242, 262, 271, 284, 292, 306, 308, 325, 334, 373, 421, 424, 429, 437, 438, 439, 448, 449, 452, 454, 457, 483.
Engineers, Chief of, 308.
Engineers, Corps of. *See* Engineers.
Engineers, Topographical, 149, 170, 183, 185, 196, 232, 235, 261, 262, 284.
England, 302.
Enlisted Men, 4, 41, 91, 93, 95, 96, 103, 104, 105, 183, 439.
Enlisted Reserve Corps, 457, 483.
Enlistment, 14, 17, 18, 19, 27, 92, 104, 110, 112, 117, 118, 128, 135, 136, 139, 141, 173, 178, 205, 208, 214, 217, 219, 220, 231, 242, 249, 251, 252, 257, 259, 261, 262, 263, 279, 286,

289, 290, 292, 293, 295, 297, 300, 302, 305, 324, 368, 372, 413, 417, 439, 445, 457, 470.
Enlistment blanks, 7.
Enrollment Act, 284, 288, 289, 290, 293.
Ensign, 59, 96, 103, 105, 106, 121, 144.
Entertainment, 81, 84, 94.
Entrenchments, 271, 292, 294, 374, 402, 404.
Epaulets, 83, 88, 105, 160, 172, 179, 233, 239, 265.
Equipment, 7, 25, 56, 58, 87, 98, 100, 117, 150, 168, 175, 205, 233, 264, 267, 268, 319, 373, 393, 435, 448, 466, 467.
Erie, Fort, 138.
Erie, Lake, 132, 191.
Ermita, Philippine Islands, 391.
Ernst, General, 386, 388, 389.
Espontoon, 99.
Eustis, Secretary of War, 197.
Eutaw Indians, 214.
Eutaw Springs, 76.
Evacuation Hospital, 452.
Evans, General, 272.
Evans, Major, 323, 324.
Everglades, 182, 204.
Evolution of Field Batteries of Artillery, 247.
Ewell, General, 278, 292, 295.
Ewers, Lieutenant Colonel, 382.
Ewing, 35, 36.
Examining Board, 308, 412.
Exchange of prisoners, 35, 121.
Execution, Command of, 144.
Expedition, Big Cypress, 190.
Expedition, O'Neill's, 302, 305.
Expeditions, Yellowstone, 347.
Exploration, 110, 111, 154, 164, 185, 193, 232, 234, 235, 239, 240, 334.
Express Rider, 175.
Extended order, 168.

Facings (Drill), 317.
Facings (uniform), 82, 88, 106, 112, 172, 361.
Fairfield, Connecticut, 40.
Fallen Timber, 101.
Falls Church, Virginia, 373.
Falmouth, 283.
Farrier, 121, 137.
Fatigue, 175, 193, 203, 331, 361, 387.
Fayetteville, North Carolina, 295.
Feathers, 83, 88, 130, 160, 238, 265.
Federation Ridge, 211.
Fellows, 31.
Feltman, Lieutenant, 77.
Fenians, 298, 301, 303, 305, 309.
Fencibles, Sea, 130, 137.
Fenwick, Colonel, 143.
Ferguson, 72.
Fernandina, Florida, 373, 375.
Ferrero, General, 286.
Fetterman, Colonel, 310.
Fetterman, Fort, Wyoming, 3, 36, 341, 342.
Fever, 166, 167, 168, 177, 185, 189, 220, 228, 234, 383.
Field Artillery, 169, 175, 187, 188, 197, 198, 200, 222, 266, 303, 428, 436, 437, 439, 440, 441, 444, 447, 448, 450, 451, 452, 457. *See* numerical designations.
Field Artillery, Chief of. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Field Artillery, Instruction for, 197.
Field Artillery, School of Fire, 440.
Field Artillery, School of the Piece, 234.
Field Bakeries, 455.
Field Division, 210, 215.
Field-glasses, 345.
Field Hospitals, 449, 452.
Field piece, 153, 271.
Field Service Regulations, 448.
Fifteenth Cavalry, 412, 447.
Fifteenth Infantry, 147, 222, 228.
Fifth Cavalry, 238, 303, 339, 341, 342, 350, 351, 387, 455.
Fifth Field Artillery, 268, 303, 386, 409, 456.
Fifth Infantry, 116, 147, 170, 187, 188, 200, 203, 229, 230, 233, 234, 241, 245, 341, 343, 346, 350.
Fifth Marines, 476.
File, 145, 169.
Filipinos, 398, 400, 401, 405, 406, 407, 408, 411, 414.
Filipino Scouts, 423.
Finance Department, 483.
Finance, Superintendent of, 76.
Finerty, 339.
Firelock, 8, 19, 61, 76, 98, 130, 145, 146, 199.
Fire, San Francisco, 424.
Firing, 11, 143, 145, 169, 198, 237, 267.
First Aero Squadron, 454.
First Battalion Engineers, 424.
First California, 379, 402.

First Cavalry, 238, 240, 330, 345, 349, 378.
First Colorado, 385.
First District of Columbia, 385.
First Division, 210, 406, 477.
First Dragoons, 175, 188, 206, 222, 229, 233, 245, 256, 267.
First Field Artillery, 137, 159, 167, 177, 184, 200, 228, 229, 230, 233, 235, 239, 245, 247, 303.
First Idaho, 386.
First Illinois, 385.
First Infantry, 116, 138, 147, 168, 172, 181, 188, 190, 197, 220, 221, 229, 231, 245.
First Nebraska, 385.
First North Dakota, 386.
First Ohio, 212.
First Pennsylvania, 217.
First Tennessee, 209.
First Wyoming, 386.
Fisher's Hill, Virginia, 293.
Fish, Hamilton, Sergeant, 379.
Five Forks, 295.
Flagler, General, 372.
Flags, 20, 24, 41, 195, 210, 228, 250, 270, 296, 318, 347, 385, 391, 409, 461, 467.
Flank Guards, 84.
Flatbush, 29.
Flathead Indians, 172, 309.
Fleet, 219, 377, 379, 384, 387.
Flintlock, 8, 93, 99, 164, 190, 198, 236, 247, 265.
Flints, 8, 10, 98, 208, 236.
Flogging, 129, 173, 262.
Florida, 117, 152, 176, 177, 178, 181, 182, 183, 185, 186, 187, 188, 195, 200, 211, 230, 235, 239, 245, 248, 303, 404.
Flour, 51, 127, 209.
Floyd, General, 270.
Floyd, Secretray of War, 245, 248, 265.
Flying Camp, 27.
Food, 13, 15, 51, 62, 65, 69, 75, 80, 84, 122, 127, 133, 191, 207, 209, 213, 215, 241, 269, 271, 283, 320, 339, 340, 343, 375, 377, 394, 410, 416.
Foot, Solomon, 246.
Forage, 95, 105, 106, 108, 112, 207, 241.
Forage cap, 165, 265, 285, 331.
Foreigners, 41, 42, 55, 64, 173.
Foreign Service, 231, 441.
Formations, 56, 143, 145, 161, 246, 285, 317.
Forsyth, Colonel, 319, 320, 365, 366.
Fort, 93, 94, 112, 113, 116, 117, 125, 142, 147, 163, 175, 177, 194, 195, 202, 211, 212, 223, 224, 232, 245, 248, 249, 251, 262, 309, 310, 311, 319, 320, 324, 328, 352, 390, 419.
Fort Adams, 228, 303.
Fort Aguadores, Cuba, 380.
Fort Anderson, 188.
Fort Armstrong, 147, 170.
Fort Atkinson, 147, 159.
Fort Bascom, New Mexico, 323.
Fort Belknap, 233.
Fort Benning, Georgia, 447.
Fort, Bent's, 207, 209.
Fort Boise, 242.
Fort Bowyer, 141, 162.
Fort Brady, 147, 162, 303.
Fort Bridger, 232, 241.
Fort Brook, 176.
Fort Brooke, Florida, 239.
Fort Brown, 202, 203, 205.
Fort Buford, Dakota, 357.
Fort Cascade, 242.
Fort Chehalis, 242.
Fort Clark, Texas, 351.
Fort Crawford, 147, 168, 188.
Fort Crook, 242.
Fort Dallas, 186.
Fort Dalles, 242.
Fort Dearborn, 147.
Fort Defiance, 101, 245, 246, 319.
Fort Delaware, Delaware, 303.
Fort Donelson, 274.
Fort Drane, 177, 178, 187.
Fort Duncan, 231.
Fort Ellis, Montana, 326.
Fort Erie, 138.
Fort Fetterman, Wyoming, 336, 341, 342.
Fort Gadsden, Florida, 162.
Fort Gaston, 242.
Fort George, 131, 135.
Fort Gibson, 147, 229.
Fort Gratiot, 147.
Fort Halleck, Idaho, 300.
Fort Hall, Idaho, 232, 368.
Fort Hamilton, 97, 228, 364.
Fort Harrison, 122, 147.
Fort Henry, 274.
Fort Hoskins, 242.
Fort Howard, 147, 165.
Fort Humboldt, 242.
Fort Independence, Maine, 235.
Fort Jefferson, 97.
Fort Jesup, 193, 196, 199, 200.
Fort Jones, 242.

Fort Kearny, 230, 232, 240, 245, 309, 311, 319.
Fort Keogh, 346.
Fort King, 176, 187.
Fort Klamath, Oregon, 333.
Fort Knox, 147.
Fort Lane, 242.
Fort Laramie, 230, 232, 236.
Fort Larned, Kansas, 314.
Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, 166, 168, 196, 206, 230, 231, 236, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 355, 356, 363, 370, 407, 421, 422, 423, 435, 451, 452.
Fort Lee, New York, 33, 48.
Fort Marcy, 210.
Fort Mason, California, 424, 425.
Fort Massachusetts, New Mexico, 241.
Fort McHenry, 228.
Fort McIntosh, 231.
Fort Meade, South Dakota, 427, 431, 452.
Fort Meigs, 130, 131.
Fort Merrill, 231.
Fort Miley, California, 425.
Fort Mims, 132, 133.
Fort Mohave, 242.
Fortress Monroe, Virginia, 164, 165, 190, 192, 229, 230, 239, 255, 276, 279, 303,
Fort Moultrie, 69.
Fort Necessity, 2.
Fort Niagara, New York, 135, 162, 303.
Fort Ontario, 303.
Fort Orford, 242.
Fort Peck, 350.
Fort Petite Coquille, Louisiana, 163.
Fort Pickens, Florida, 230.
Fort Pitt, 90, 93.
Fort Reading, 242.
Fort Recovery, 100.
Fort Reno, 309, 319.
Fort Riley, Kansas, 239, 245, 364, 370, 447.
Fort Robinson, Nebraska, 365, 452.
Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, 452.
Fort Saint Phillips, Mississippi, 163.
Fort San Antonio, Philippine Islands, 390.
Fort Scott, Florida, 152.
Fort Shaw, 326.
Fort Shelby, Michigan, 163.
Fort Sheridan, Illinois, 452.
Fort Sill, Oklahoma, 440, 447, 452.
Fort Simcoe, 242.
Fort Smith, 192, 229.
Fort C. S. Smith, 315.
Fort Snelling, 168, 188, 196, 394.
Fort Stedman, 295.
Fort Steele, 350.
Fort Steilacoom, 242.
Fort Stephenson, 132.
Fort Strother, 134.
Fort Sullivan, 303.
Fort Sumpter, 248, 249, 250, 275.
Fort Terwaw, 242.
Fort Townsend, 242.
Fort Towson, 229.
Fort Trumbull, 303.
Fort Vancouver, 242.
Fort Wallace, 320.
Fort Walla Walla, 239, 242.
Fort Washington, Maryland, 162.
Fort Washington, New York, 33, 48.
Fort Washita, 229.
Fort Wayne, 147, 303.
Fort Willcox, 360.
Fort Winnebago, 147, 168, 170.
Fort Yamhill, 242.
Fort Yuma, 232, 242, 244.
Fortieth Infantry, 147.
Fortieth Volunteers, 407.
Forty-fifth Infantry, 147.
Forty-first Infantry, 147.
Forty-fourth Infantry, 147.
Forty-niners, 230, 231.
Forty-second Division, 477.
Forty-second Infantry, 147.
Forty-seventh Volunteers, 406.
Forty-third Infantry, 147.
Forty-third Volunteers, 406.
Foster, Lieutenant Colonel, 181.
Fours, 230, 317, 367, 421.
Fourteenth Cavalry, 412.
Fourteenth Infantry, 147, 222, 228, 303, 340, 341, 351, 369, 371, 379, 409, 456, 457.
Fourteenth Minnesota, 395.
Fourth Cavalry, 238, 240, 369, 341, 342, 351, 362.
Fourth Corps, 299.
Fourth Dragoons, 245.
Fourth Field Artillery, 158, 165, 167, 168, 171, 178, 180, 181, 184, 188, 222, 229, 230, 235, 238, 239, 240, 245, 246, 303, 333, 341, 345, 349, 386, 449, 455.
Fourth Infantry, 116, 119, 133, 147, 152, 176, 178, 180, 184, 187, 190, 192, 199, 200, 229, 234, 235, 238, 242, 245, 303, 336, 340, 350, 351, 369.

Fourth Ohio, 387, 389.
Fourth Pennsylvania, 387.
Fox Indians, 170.
France, 104, 107, 466, 475, 476.
Frankfort Arsenal, 150, 190.
Frankfort, Kentucky, 280.
Franklin, Benjamin, 41.
Franklin, Captain, 251.
Franklin, General, 286.
Fraunces' Tavern, 88.
Frederick, Maryland, 280, 287.
Fredericksburg, 244, 283.
Fredericksburg and Richmond R. R., 276.
Frederick the Great, 54.
Freedman's Bureau, 305.
Freeman's Farm, 46.
Free States, 244.
Fremont, John C., 185, 193, 213, 226, 269, 270, 275, 278.
French, 54, 64, 68, 76, 77, 79, 84, 92, 409.
French Alliance, 62.
French and Indian Wars, 1, 6.
French Imperial Guard, 154.
French Regulations, 187.
Frenchtown, 127.
Fries, John, 107.
Funston, Frederick, General, 402, 414, 420, 424, 425, 449, 450, 456.
Furbush, C. L., Major, 416.
Furloughs, 52, 53, 87, 88.
Fuse, 176, 213.
Fusil, 199.

Gadsden, Fort, Florida, 162.
Gaillard, D. D., Colonel, 429.
Gaines, E. P., General, 148, 152, 177, 178, 180, 197, 205, 208.
Gaines Mills, 279.
Gaiters, 88, 93.
Galena, Illinois, 163.
Gallatin Valley, 300.
Galveston, Texas, 299, 440, 446, 449.
Gambling, 227, 353.
Garcia, (Cuban), 374.
Garcia (Filipino), 407.
Gardiner, Representative, 451, 468.
Garland, Colonel, 211, 212.
Garretson, General, 386.
Garrison Artillery, 234.
Garrison School, 417.
Garrison, Secretary of War, 452, 468.
Garza, 367.
Gaston, Fort, 242.
Gates, Horatio, 1, 34, 35, 36, 39, 46, 47, 48, 49, 70.
Gatling Gun, 316, 331, 337, 345, 387.
Gauley Mountain, 270.
Geary, Governor, 238.
General Staff, 103, 107, 149, 153, 357, 418, 419, 421, 423, 426, 433, 436, 437, 444, 457, 465, 468, 477, 481, 483, 486, 489.
Gentry, Colonel, 181.
George, Fort, 131, 135.
George III, 6.
Georgetown, 141.
Georgia, 66, 68, 79, 102, 117, 147, 178, 184, 215, 248, 279.
German, 43, 54, 253, 265.
Germantown, 43, 44, 48.
Germany, 469.
General Service Schools, 355, 363.
Generals-in-chief. *See* Appendix A, p. 493.
General Staff Corps, 483.
Gerona, Philippine Islands, 404.
Geronimo, Chief, 360.
Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, 287, 288, 447.
Gibbon, General, 336, 337, 340, 346.
Gibson, Fort, 147.
Gideon's Band, 133.
Gila Apaches, 239, 240.
Gila River, 229, 232, 234, 240.
Gillam, Captain, 181.
Glendower, 118.
Glenn Springs, Texas, 456.
Glover, General, 33, 68.
Glover's Brigade, 33.
Goethals, Geo., General, 429, 430, 451.
Gold, 184, 230, 369.
Golden spike, 326.
Gomez, General, 459.
Good Hope, 38.
Goose Creek, 337.
Goose Lake, Oregon, 235.
Gordian Knot, 303.
Gordon, J. B., General, 296.
Gorgas, W. C., General, 415, 416, 429, 430, 451.
Governor-general, Philippine Islands, 411, 415.
Governor's Island, New York, 147, 229.
Graham, General, 372.
Graham, Sergeant, 315, 316.
Grand Camp of Instruction, 186.
Grand division, 144, 162, 283, 386, 420.

Grand Encore, Louisiana, 193.
Grand Gulf, Mississippi, 287.
Grand Island, 233.
Grant, Frederick D., General, 415.
Grant, Sergeant, 315, 316.
Grant, U. S., General, 152, 197, 252, 254, 274, 277, 279, 282, 286, 287, 288, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 299, 303, 305, 312, 324, 325.
Grapeshot, 132, 176.
Gratiot, Fort, 147.
Great Divide, 346.
Great Northern Railway, 395.
Greely, General, 372, 426.
Greene, Christopher, 64.
Greene, General, 385, 386, 389, 390, 391.
Greene, Nathanael, 28, 33, 39, 41, 43, 44, 49, 63, 64, 65, 70, 72, 75, 76, 79, 90, 100, 116.
Green (historian), 89.
Green, John, Colonel, 359.
Greenleaf's Point Arsenal, 150.
Greensboro, North Carolina, 74.
Greenville, Ohio, 97, 100.
Grenades, 99, 148, 465, 475, 488.
Grenadier, 99, 148, 466.
Gridley, Richard, Colonel, 12.
Griffin, General, 296.
Groghan, 132.
Grummond, Lieutenant, 310.
Guadalupe, Treaty of, 227.
Guam, 379, 397, 411.
Guanica, Porto Rico, 386.
Guard, 55, 84, 161, 174, 175, 194, 246, 264, 265, 267, 268, 296.
Guardhouse, 93, 174, 232.
Guard mounting, 93, 194.
Guasimas, Las, Cuba, 378.
Guayama, Porto Rico, 389.
Guerrilla, 269, 406, 408.
Guerrero, Mexico, 454.
Guilford Court House, 74.
Gun carriages, 175.
Gun makers, 8.
Gun pointers, 12.
Gymnastics, Military, Manual for, 306.
Gypsum, 234.

Hackensack, 33.
Hains, General, 387, 389.
Hair, 83, 88, 101, 110, 174, 180.
Hale, General, 402.
Halifax, 23.
Halleck, Fort, 300.
Halleck, General, 273, 274, 275, 279, 281, 287, 289.
Hall, Fort, Idaho, 232, 268.
Hall (inventor), 161.
Hamilton, Alexander, 91, 323.
Hamilton, Camp, 375.
Hamilton, Captain, 323.
Hamilton, Fort, 97, 228, 364.
Hammer, Wm., 351.
Hampton, General, 128, 133, 135, 313
Hancock, John, 1, 2, 85.
Hancock, General, 197, 312, 314, 350.
Handbook for Infantry, 143.
Hand Grenades, 465.
Hannah's Cowpens, 74.
Hanover Court House, 277, 292.
Harbors, 104.
Hard-boiled, 353.
Hardee's Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics, 237, 267, 285.
Hardin, Colonel, 98, 218.
Hare, Colonel, 407.
Harlem Heights, 32.
Harmer, General, 92, 95, 96, 97.
Harney, General, 187, 243.
Harney, Lake, 246.
Harper's Ferry, 107, 153, 161, 190, 191, 248, 255, 278, 281, 293.
Harrison, Fort, 122, 147.
Harrison, Wm. Henry, 66, 113, 123, 126, 128, 130, 131, 132, 133, 150, 169.
Hartford, 72.
Hart's Island, 303.
Harvard, 2.
Hatch, Colonel, 351.
Hats, 83, 88, 93, 112, 117, 130, 149, 160, 172, 238, 239, 265, 285, 331, 376.
Hatteras, Cape, 235.
Havana, Cuba, 371, 375, 387, 413, 416.
Haversack, 319.
Haverstraw, 40.
Hawaii, 397, 427, 452.
Headquarters Company, 457.
Health, 15, 19, 45, 60, 133, 167, 168, 171, 177, 179, 185, 189, 200, 201, 206, 207, 209, 214, 219, 220, 225, 230, 234, 256, 269, 278, 297, 392, 393, 416, 417.
Heap-of-Bears, Chief, 304.
Heath, General, 28.
Heavy Artillery, 234, 266, 309, 331, 361.

Heiberg, Major, 439.
Heintzelman, Major, 232.
Helena, Montana, 346.
Helmet, 101, 331.
Hemstead, Colonel, 76.
Henry, Fort, 271.
Henry, Guy V., General, 337, 385, 388.
Henry Repeating Rifle, 316, 334.
Hessians, 35, 36.
Hidalgo, 227.
High Hills, 75.
Hillsboro, 70.
Hippology, Carter's, 439.
Hobby, David, Captain, 18.
Hobkirk's Hill, 75.
Hodges, H. F., General, 429, 451.
Holguin, Cuba, 384.
Holiday, 62, 81.
Hood, General, 293, 294.
Hooker, General, 197, 280, 283, 286, 287, 290, 312.
Hopkins, General, 122.
Hormigueros, Porto Rico, 387.
Horn, Cape, 229, 235.
Horn, powder, 7, 99.
Horn, Van, Colonel, 378.
Horse, light, 35, 99, 105.
Horses, 40, 99, 134, 165, 169, 177, 181, 182, 186, 197, 198, 205, 208, 220, 228, 233, 241, 242, 259, 271, 319, 320, 321, 328, 336, 339, 340, 343, 349, 377.
Hoskins, Fort 242.
Hospital Corps, 431.
Hospitals, 15, 19, 84, 189, 286, 407, 424, 426, 449, 452, 454.
Hospital Steward, 259, 278, 307.
Hotchkiss gun, 346, 365, 378.
Hot shot, 125.
Hound-box, 165.
House of Representatives, 143, 306, 348, 361.
Houston, Texas, 298.
Howard, Fort, 147, 165.
Howard, General, 128.
Howard, O. O., General, 305, 312, 344, 345, 347, 348, 350, 360.
Howe, General, 73, 88.
Howe, Sir Wm., 21, 24, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 40, 42, 44, 48, 63.
Howitzers, 121, 150, 155, 163, 165, 169, 175, 190, 207, 211, 217, 233, 265, 266, 323, 345, 346, 464.
Howze, Major, 455.
Hoyt, 103, 104.
Hudson Bay Co., 242.
Hudson River, 24, 33, 40, 47, 79.
Huerta, 446, 449.
Hughes, General, 407.
Hull Bill, 371, 395.
Hull, Wm., 119, 120, 121, 133.
Humboldt, Fort, 242.
Humorist, 232.
Humphreys, A. A., General, 247, 295.
Humphreys, Lieutenant, 394.
Hunger, 15, 34, 50, 75, 79, 80, 119, 127, 135, 177, 190, 207, 215, 219, 241, 270, 294, 295, 323, 340, 352, 357, 397, 425, 455.
Hunter, 38.
Hunter, General, 258, 275.
Huntsville, 133.
Huntsville, Alabama, 376.
Hutchins, Ames, Captain, 18.

Idaho, 232, 300, 368, 386, 420, 426.
Illinois, 64, 122, 171, 172, 183, 213, 215, 368, 385, 387, 389.
Illiteracy, 5.
Imus, Cavite, Philippine Islands, 402.
Increase in Army, 104, 105, 112, 113, 116, 117, 128, 139, 178, 183, 205, 207, 217, 218, 222, 231, 237, 242, 248, 249, 251, 259, 260, 262, 284, 290, 292, 294, 306, 372, 374, 399, 407, 411, 438, 439, 483, 489.
Independence Hill (Monterey), 211, 212.
Indiana, 64, 117, 213, 217, 218, 435.
Indian Affairs, Commissioner of, 311.
Indian Agent Ring, 358, 359.
Indian Agents, 108, 184, 304, 314, 333, 349, 350, 351, 358, 359, 362, 368.
Indianapolis, Indiana, 279.
Indian Department, 320.
Indians, 46, 64, 65, 92, 94, 96, 97, 98, 100, 101, 110, 113, 117, 122, 130, 132, 170, 172, 176, 181, 189, 190, 191, 224, 232, 238, 239, 242, 245, 246, 298, 299, 300, 302, 304, 305, 307, 309, 310, 311, 314, 315, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 325, 326, 329, 330, 332, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 357, 358, 359, 360, 362, 364, 365, 366, 368,

369, 394, 395, 406, 418 428, 436.
  Alaskan, 347.
  Apache, 230, 234, 236, 239, 240, 245, 246, 248, 301, 304, 328, 329, 330, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363, 404.
  Arapahoes, 300, 309, 314, 322, 323.
  Arikara, 163.
  Assiniboines, 309.
  Bannocks, 347, 348, 349, 364, 368, 369.
  Blackfeet, 300, 326.
  Bloods, 326, 328.
  Brule, 238, 341.
  Cherokee, 184, 195.
  Cheyennes, 240, 300, 309, 311, 319, 322, 323, 336, 342, 343.
  Chiricahua, 359, 360, 362.
  Choctaw, 170.
  Comanche, 111, 226, 304, 309, 314, 322, 323, 335.
  Cortinas, 242.
  Creek, 132, 134, 152, 176, 178.
  Crow, 336, 342, 346, 349.
  Delaware, 181, 206.
  Dogs, 322.
  Eutaws, 214.
  Flathead, 172, 309.
  Kiowa, 304, 314, 322, 323, 335.
  Klamath, 238, 332, 333.
  Mescalores, 301.
  Miamis, 97, 309.
  Miniconjous, 341.
  Modocs, 332, 333.
  Mojave, 232, 234.
  Navajo, 214, 230, 242, 245, 246, 300.
  Nez Percés, 172, 309, 344, 345, 346, 347.
  Osage, 111, 322.
  Pawnees, 309, 342.
  Piegans, 309, 326, 328.
  Pillager Chippewas, 394, 395.
  Pi Utes, 349.
  Pueblo, 210.
  Puget Sound, 238.
  Rogue River, 233, 234, 238, 239.
  Sac and Fox, 170.
  San Arcos, 341.
  Seminole, 152, 176, 187, 188, 195, 211, 230, 239, 240.
  Shawnee, 206.
  Shoshone, 337, 342.
  Sioux, 240, 299, 300, 309, 335, 336, 350, 357, 365.
  Snake, 347.
  Stockbridge, 3.
Indians, Tetons, 111.
  Unkpapas, 341.
  Ute, 300, 334, 347, 350, 351, 427, 431.
  Winnebago, 187, 188.
  Yanctons, 111.
  Yuma, 232.
Indian Scouts, 383.
Indian Territory, 229, 347.
Indian War of 1898, 427.
Infantry, 73, 83, 84, 88, 92, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 112, 117, 128, 130, 137, 141, 143, 146, 147, 158, 160, 167, 168, 179, 183, 184, 188, 196, 215, 216, 217, 221, 224, 236, 238, 251, 253, 259, 260, 266, 267, 268, 269, 271, 302, 306, 307, 317, 321, 324, 326, 330, 345, 361, 380, 381, 387, 389, 399, 402, 405, 406, 411, 412, 416, 421, 426, 428, 430, 439, 441, 443, 444, 448, 449, 452, 457, 464, 466, 483. (*See* numerical designation.)
Infantry, Abridged Tactics for, 166.
Infantry, Chief of, 499.
Infantry Drill Regulations, 143, 168, 366, 421, 441.
Infantry, Handbook for, 143.
Infantry, Light Manual for, 267.
Infantry School, 447.
Infantry School of Tactics, 166.
Infantry Tactics, 164, 169.
Infantry Tactics, Casey's, 285.
Infantry Tactics, Rifle and, 247.
Infantry Tactics, Upton's, 317.
Insignia, 20, 83, 165, 172, 233, 239, 308.
Inspection, 55, 58, 82, 168, 194, 271, 273.
Inspection arms, 168.
Inspector-general, 62, 71, 104, 148, 159, 261, 278, 308, 372, 483.
Inspector-general's Department, 152, 196, 308.
Inspectors, 95, 397.
Inspectors, Medical, 397.
Instruction, Grand Camp of, 186.
Instructions for Field Artillery, Horse and Foot, 197.
Instructors, 55, 109, 119, 144, 151, 164, 188, 308, 356, 413, 438, 464, 471, 472, 473.
Insubordination, 209, 213, 228, 267.
Insular Affairs, Bureau of, 483.
Interior Department, 163, 344, 362.

Interior, Secretary of, 324, 394.
Intrenchments, 271, 292, 294, 374, 402, 404.
Investigation, Congressional, 162, 180, 434.
Iowa, 435.
Ireland, 302.
Irish, 255, 302.
Iron Star, Chief, 344.
Isthmian Canal Commission, 451.
Itch, 152.
Ives, J. C., Lieutenant, 239.
Izard, General, 128.

Jackson, Andrew, 133, 134, 136, 142, 148, 150, 151, 152, 171, 179.
Jackson, Mississippi, 287.
Jackson's Hole, Wyoming, 369.
Jackson, Stonewall, 152, 197, 253, 278, 279, 280, 282, 287.
Jacksonville, Florida, 373, 375.
Jalapa, 220, 226.
Jamaica Road, 29.
James, Captain, 67.
James River, 150, 279, 295.
Jamestown Exposition, 431.
Japan, 411.
Japanese, 409.
Jefferson Barracks, Missouri, 165, 166, 170, 174, 191, 192, 196, 200, 228, 229, 231, 232, 239.
Jefferson, Fort, 97.
Jefferson shoe, 149.
Jefferson, Thomas, 109.
Jenks, E. A., 107.
Jenks Rifle, 185.
Jersey, 38.
Jersey City, 68.
Jesup, Cantonment, 170.
Jesup, Fort, 170, 193, 196, 199, 200.
Jesup, General, 181, 185.
Johnson, Gordon, Colonel, 424.
Johnson, R. M., 225.
Johnston, Albert S., General, 179, 241, 242, 253, 257, 258, 277.
Johnston, Joseph E., General, 179, 197, 253, 257, 258, 287, 291, 292, 293, 295, 296.
Jolo, Philippine Islands, 402, 406, 407, 420, 441.
Jonesboro, Georgia, 293.
Jones, Fort, 242.
Joshua, 134.
Juaramentado, 442.
Judge Advocate, 103, 153, 158, 230.
Judge-advocate-general, 308, 372, 483. *See* Appendix A, p. 497.
Judge-advocate-general's Department, 445.

Kadiak Island, 318.
Kamiarkin, Chief, 238.
Kansas, 166, 196, 238, 239, 300, 319.
Kansas City, 195.
Kansas Pacific R. R., 319.
Kaskaskia, 64.
Kearny, Philip, 168, 197, 206, 207, 209, 210, 213, 214, 215, 226, 229, 309, 311.
Kearny, Fort, 230, 232, 240, 245, 309, 311, 319.
Kendrick, Captain, 455.
Kennebec Arsenal, 190.
Kennesaw Mountain, 292.
Kent, General, 380, 381, 382.
Kentucky, 64, 100, 117, 122, 124, 130, 131, 132, 143, 153, 218, 273, 274, 281, 284.
Keogh, Fort, 346.
Kernstown, Virginia, 293, 294.
Kettle Hill, 383.
Key West, Florida, 375, 377.
Khaki, 390, 406, 472.
Kilby, 235.
Kindness, 59, 60.
King, Fort, 176, 187.
Kingsbridge, 25.
King's Mill, 223.
King's Mountain, 72.
Kingston, 37.
Kiowa Indians, 304, 314, 322, 323, 325.
Kitchens, rolling, 455.
Klamath, Fort, Oregon, 333.
Klamath Indians, 238, 246, 332, 333.
Knapsack, 98, 175, 202, 257.
Knowlton's Rangers, 32.
Knox, Fort, 147.
Knox, Henry, 18, 36, 41, 39, 90, 92, 95, 99.
Knoxville, Tennessee, 290, 294, 375.
Knyphausen, 42, 43, 69, 70.
Kobbé, General, 406, 407.
Königgrätz, Campaign of, 363.
Kosciusko, 42, 46, 72, 112.
Krag-Jorgensen Rifle, 367, 369, 379, 388, 406, 408, 433.
Krupp guns, 399.

Laclede Rangers, 206.
La Colle, 124, 136.
Ladders, scaling, 142, 224.
Lafayette, 42, 54, 62, 64, 75, 79.
Laguna de Bay, Mexico, 459.

Laguna de Bay, Philippine Islands, 401, 402, 406.
Laidley, T. T. S., 350.
La Joya, Mexico, 455.
Lake Champlain, 133, 136.
Lake Erie, 132, 191.
Lake Lanao, Philippine Islands, 439.
Lake Okeechobee, 182.
Lake Ontario, 133, 191.
Lakes, Department of the, 331.
Lallemand, H., 154.
Lame Deer, 344.
Lanao, Philippine Islands, 439.
Lancaster, Pennsylvania, 88.
Land, 114, 128, 141, 159, 183, 217.
Lane, Fort, 242.
Langhorne, Major, 456.
Lapwai Reservation, 344, 347.
Laramie, Fort, 230, 232, 236.
Laredo, Texas, 459.
Lares, Porto Rico, 387.
Larned, Fort, Kansas, 314.
Las Guasimas, Cuba, 378.
Las Marias, Porto Rico, 387.
Las Vegas, 209.
Laurens, John, 67.
Law, Martial, 109.
Law, Military, 129, 356.
Laws. (*See* Congress.)
Lawton, General, 362, 378, 380, 383, 401, 403, 405, 406.
Leavenworth, Colonel, 138, 163, 166, 304.
Leavenworth, Fort, 166, 168, 196, 206, 230, 231, 236, 238, 239, 241, 242, 255, 256, 363, 370, 407, 421, 422, 423, 435, 451, 452.
Leave of absence, 53, 172.
Ledyard, Colonel, 77.
Lee, Charles, 1, 6, 13, 25, 34, 38, 49, 63, 336.
Leech Lake, Minnesota, 394.
Lee, Fort, 33, 48.
Lee, Light Horse Harry, 68, 75, 78, 259.
Lee Magazine Rifle, 361.
Lee, Robert E., General, 152, 197, 220, 222, 224, 228, 234, 253, 270, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 286, 287, 288, 289, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 420.
Leesburg, Virginia, 272.
Legaspi, Philippine Islands, 406.
Legations, 410, 411.
Legion, 99, 100, 103, 105.
Legionary Corps, 73, 93, 99, 103.
Legislation. (*See* Congress.)
Leopard, 460.
Lewis gun, 466.
Lewis, Meriwether, 110, 127, 128, 344.
Lewiston, New York, 122, 135.
Lexington, Kentucky, 375.
Lexington, Massachusetts, 40.
Lexington, Missouri, 270.
Leyte, Philippine Islands, 406, 430.
Lieber, General, 372.
Light Horse, 35, 99, 105.
Light Horse Harry Lee, 68, 75, 78, 259.
Limbers, 112, 129.
Linares, 213.
Lincoln, Abraham, 248, 249, 250, 251, 259, 260, 269, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 279, 281, 286, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294.
Lincoln, General, 39, 47, 66, 68, 69, 79, 94.
Liquor, 19.
Liscum, Colonel, 382, 408, 409.
Litgreaves, Captain, 232, 236.
Little Arkansas River, 231.
Little Horn River, 315.
Little Mountain, 304.
Little Rock, Arkansas, 190.
Liverpool, 235.
Loading, 9, 11, 56, 82, 142, 143, 164, 166, 169, 190, 198, 237, 247, 266, 267, 285, 288, 366.
Lobos Island, 219.
Lockett, Colonel, 405.
Lock step, 143.
Lolo Trail, 245.
Lone Wolf, 304.
Long Barrack, 109.
Long, Captain, 154.
Longevity pay, 236.
Long Island, 25, 29, 30, 32, 33, 42, 48.
Longstreet, General, 152, 197, 253, 280, 282, 288, 290, 313.
Lookout Mountain, 290.
Los Angeles, California, 425.
Lost River, 332.
Louisiana, 110, 143, 147, 154, 196, 205, 217, 244, 248.
Love, 59.
Lower Peachtree, Alabama, 447.
Loyalty, 59.
Lozano, General, 455.
Ludington, General, 372.
Ludington, Michigan, 450.
Lukban, Philippine Islands, 415.
Lundy's Lane, 138.
Luray, 278.

Luzon, Philippine Islands, 402, 403, 404, 407, 414.
Lynching, 289.
Lyon, General, 255, 269.

MacArthur, General, 386, 390, 391, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 407, 408, 411, 413, 414, 415, 420.
M'Arthur, General, 128.
McCall, 273.
McClellan, Geo. B., General, 152, 197, 234, 254, 255, 264, 267, 268, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 281, 282, 283.
McClellan saddle, 267.
McClure, General, 135.
McCoy, Frank R., Colonel, 423.
McCullough, General, 210, 269.
McDowell, 72.
McDowell, General, 197, 251, 254, 256, 257, 258, 276, 277, 280, 312, 331, 350.
McDowell, West Virginia, 278.
McHenry, Fort, 228.
McIntosh, 221.
McIntosh, Fort, 231.
McKee, 218.
McKeon, Camp, 187.
McKinney, 342.
McLean House, 296.
M'Murtry, John, 10.
McNitt, Captain, 131.
Macabebes, 404, 414.
Machete, 378.
Machine Gun Company, 457, 470.
Machine guns, 454, 455, 475, 488.
Macinope, 78.
Mackenzie, Colonel, 342, 343, 351.
Mackinac, 147.
Mackinaw, 121, 127, 163.
Macomb, Alex., General, 141, 148, 186, 187, 195, 237.
Macon, Georgia, 296.
Madero, 443, 446.
Madison Barracks, 303.
Madison, James, 118, 141.
Madison, Mrs., 141.
Mad River, 246.
Magalan, Philippine Islands, 404.
Magazines, 91, 93, 129, 164, 247, 318, 361, 367, 390, 433.
Magruder, 255.
Maharajali Saakat, 442.
Mail, 260, 368.
Maine, 15, 117, 162, 186, 235, 244, 303, 464.
Maine, U.S.S., 371.
Malabon, Philippine Islands, 402.
Malalag River, Philippine Islands, 424.
Malaria, 168, 269, 383.
Malate, Philippine Islands, 389, 391.
Malden, 121, 132.
Malibcong, Philippine Islands, 407.
Malolos, Philippine Islands, 400, 401.
Malvar, 415.
Malvern Hill, 279.
Manassas, Virginia, 257, 274, 275, 280, 420, 423.
Manchester, 135.
Manchu law, 411, 444.
Maneuver, 81, 82, 83, 112, 128, 165, 166, 168, 186, 187, 197, 200, 256, 264, 267, 268, 285, 289, 317, 345, 417, 420, 421, 427, 428, 431, 439, 440, 444, 447, 449.
Maneuver division, 439, 443, 446.
Maneuvers of Horse Artillery, 112.
Manhattan, 25, 30, 33.
Manila, Philippine Islands, 374, 379, 386, 389, 391, 398, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 406, 408, 411, 414.
Mansfield, Jared, 109.
Mansfield, Major, 211, 212.
Manual for Light Infantry, 267.
Manual of Arms, 55, 144, 168, 198.
Manuals, drill, 11, 56, 103, 107, 112, 143, 161, 165, 168, 169, 176, 179, 187, 190, 197, 230, 233, 236, 237, 247, 266, 267, 285, 305, 317, 351, 360, 366, 369, 417, 421, 441.
Manufacturing, 10, 19, 130, 150, 153, 161.
Manzanillo, Cuba, 380.
Mapping, 110, 221, 232, 234, 235.
Marblehead, Massachusetts, 162.
Marches, 24, 34, 40, 42, 62, 64, 65, 75, 110, 119, 126, 133, 135, 151, 154, 168, 170, 171, 187, 188, 201, 205, 207, 208, 209, 210, 212, 216, 220, 222, 225, 227, 229, 230, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 241, 257, 267, 287, 311, 313, 323, 324, 326, 330, 345, 349, 364, 387, 417, 427, 454.
March, Major, 405, 407.
March, P. C., General, 481, 482.
Marcy, Captain, 234, 241, 242.
Marcy, Fort, 210.
Marcy, Secretary of War, 202.
Marias, 326.

Mariel, Cuba, 375.
Marín, 211.
Marines, 139, 141, 232, 256, 419, 449, 476.
Marion, General, 69, 75.
Mariquina River, Philippine Islands, 405.
Market Lake, Idaho, 369.
Marksmanship, 9, 33, 81, 113, 136, 137, 146, 169, 246, 266, 332, 350, 417, 419, 421, 436, 447.
Marshal, Elihu, Lieutenant, 18.
Marshall, 217.
Maryland, 4, 27, 28, 34, 76, 139, 140, 250, 254, 273, 276, 277, 293, 347.
Mason, Fort, California, 424, 425.
Massachusetts, 2, 4, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 24, 25, 27, 28, 45, 85, 94, 120, 249, 380, 385, 386, 388, 393, 434, 451.
Massachusetts, Fort, New Mexico, 241.
Massacres, 65, 132, 152, 176, 177, 187, 195, 234, 238, 299, 301, 310, 321, 338, 351.
Master, 141.
Master, drill, 144.
Master of Sword, 121, 137.
Matamoras, 201, 202, 203, 204, 206, 208, 209, 215.
Matrosses, 12, 126, 128, 155, 176.
Matthews, 49.
Maumee, 96, 97, 100, 101, 126.
Mauser Rifle, 375, 381, 396, 460.
Mawhood, 37.
Maxmilian, 298, 299, 304.
Mayaguez, Porto Rico, 387.
Maynard's primer, 237, 267.
Mayo, Admiral, 449.
Meacham, Cimmissioner, 333.
Meade, Fort, 427, 431, 452.
Meade, General, 152, 179, 197, 209, 288, 289, 291, 292, 305, 312, 331.
Meade, Geo., Camp, Pennsylvania, 376.
Measles, 269.
Meat, 51.
Mechanicsville, 279.
Medal, 23, 74.
Medical Board, 175.
Medical cadets, 262, 278.
Medical Corps, 175, 339, 374, 394, 416, 429, 431, 457.
Medical Department, 15, 19, 45, 105, 148, 168, 175, 183, 262, 278, 371, 384, 415, 483.
Medical Reserve Corps, 457.
Meigs, Fort, 130, 131.
Memphis and Charleston R. R., 279.
Mercenary troops, 14.
Mercer, 37.
Merit, certificate of, 219.
Merriam, General, 372.
Merrill, Fort, 231.
Merritt, General, 299, 339, 351, 372, 386, 389, 390, 396.
Mescalores Indians, 301.
Message to Garcia, 374.
Messiah, Indian, 365.
Messing, 3, 13, 54, 84, 122, 269.
Mexican Border, 440, 443, 446, 449, 452, 459, 476.
Mexican Empire, 299.
Mexicans, 199, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 210, 211, 212, 214, 217, 218, 221, 222, 223, 224, 226, 347, 349, 360, 434, 444, 450, 454, 455, 456, 459.
Mexican War, 187, 193, 205.
Mexico, 298, 299, 303, 304, 309, 312, 359, 360, 375, 404, 449, 450, 453, 456, 459, 463, 464.
Mexico, City of, 220, 222, 223, 224, 228.
Mexico, Gulf of, 446.
Mexico, War with, 205.
Miami, Florida, 375.
Miami Indians, 97, 309.
Miami River, 186.
Michigan, 64, 119, 183, 379, 435.
Michimackinac, 121.
Middlebrook, 65.
Middle Department, 303.
Middle Military Division, 293.
Middle-rank, 143.
Middletown, Connecticut, 161, 164.
Mifflin, General, 25, 30, 51, 63.
Mileage, 207.
Miles, Evans, Captain, 349.
Miles, N. A., General, 341, 342, 343, 344, 346, 347, 350, 360, 362, 366, 372, 374, 375, 376, 385, 386, 387, 389, 392.
Miley, Fort, California, 425.
Military Academy, 109, 111, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 133, 151, 152, 153, 163, 164, 173, 179, 184, 188, 192, 198, 225, 231, 234, 235, 242, 247, 248, 250, 262, 268, 306, 317, 399, 416, 417, 427, 435, 436, 438, 439, 457, 483, 500.
Military Agents, 108, 118.
Military art, 363.

Military Art, Treatise on, 103.
Military Departments, 301, 312, 318. *See* Appendix K.
Military District of the Atlantic, 305.
Military districts, 130, 139, 188, 301, 312.
Military Division of the Mississippi, 289, 291, 303.
Military law, 356.
Military Laws and Rules and Regulations, 129.
Military Policy, 357, 418.
Military Secretary, 420, 429.
Militia, 30, 40, 43, 44, 69, 70, 72, 74, 76, 77, 100, 110, 113, 118, 119, 121, 126, 128, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 139, 142, 150, 153, 161, 164, 165, 179, 205, 230, 238, 247, 248, 252, 257, 261, 264, 266, 288, 292, 313, 347, 368, 370, 371, 417, 418, 420, 422, 427, 432, 433, 435, 436, 438, 444, 448, 452, 464, 465.
  Connecticut, 3, 4, 13, 28, 120.
  Delaware, 27.
  Georgia, 184.
  Kentucky, 122, 124, 143.
  Louisiana, 143.
  Maine, 186, 188.
  Maryland, 4, 27, 34.
  Massachusetts, 2, 4, 12, 13, 14, 25, 27, 28, 45, 120.
  Michigan, 121.
  Mississippi, 132.
  New England, 1, 9, 21, 33, 63.
  New Hampshire, 28.
  New Jersey, 5, 25, 27, 28, 34.
  New York, 27, 33, 122.
  Northwest Territory, 96.
  Pennsylvania, 27, 28, 124.
  Rhode Island, 3, 4.
  South Carolina, 176.
  Tennessee, 124, 152.
  Virginia, 2, 14, 28, 55, 75, 124.
Militia Affairs, Division of, 433.
Militia law, Universal, 98.
Militia, Regulations for, 230.
Militia, Tactics and Regulations for, 179.
Milk River, 250.
Miller, Camp, 165.
Miller, General, 400.
Mills, Albert L., General, 440.
Mills, Anson, Colonel, 337, 340, 367.
Mills, Colonel, 131.
Milroy, 278.
Mims, Fort, 132, 133.
Mindinao, Philippine Islands, 401, 406, 407, 420, 439.
Miners, 83, 104, 119, 126, 206.
Mines, 164, 422, 433.
Miniconjou Indians, 241.
Minie, Captain, 236, 267.
Minnesota, 240, 299, 386, 390, 394, 395, 435.
Minute Men, 18.
Missionary Ridge, 290.
Mississippi, 132, 200, 205, 213, 215, 217, 218, 248, 275.
Mississippi, Army of, 281.
Mississippi, Department of, 275, 299.
Mississippi, Military Division of, 289, 291, 303.
Mississippi River, 110, 142, 156, 168, 170, 172, 185, 196, 245, 287, 296, 299, 309, 325, 334, 444, 446.
Missouri, 181, 192, 205, 206, 209, 231, 255, 269, 273, 274, 300, 309.
Missouri, Department of the, 277, 284, 331.
Missouri River, 110, 156, 159, 185, 193, 196, 236, 300, 346, 350.
Mixcoac, 223.
Mobile, Alabama, 132, 148, 228, 289, 375.
Mobile Bay, Alabama, 162.
Mobilization, 437, 440, 465, 469.
Modoc Indians, 332, 333.
Mogollan, Apaches, 332, 333.
Mohammedan, 415, 423, 442, 443.
Mohave, Fort, 242.
Mohawk Valley, 46, 65.
Mojave Indians, 232, 234.
Molino del Rey, 223.
Monclava, 215.
Monmouth, 63, 65, 336.
Monocacy, 293.
Monroe, Fortress, 164, 165, 190, 192, 229, 230, 239, 255, 276, 277, 279, 303.
Montalban, Philippine Islands, 405.
Montana, 300, 346, 436, 450.
Montauk Point, Long Island, 384.
Monterey, California, 450.
Monterey, Mexico, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 225, 244.
Monterey, Presidio of, 447, 450.
Montezuma, 312.
Montgomery, 16.
Montreal, 121, 124, 133.
Monument, 114.

Morale, 46, 53, 61, 76, 111, 179, 211, 221, 227, 228, 283, 286, 293, 296, 372, 431, 481.
Morey, Lewis S., Captain, 459.
Morgan, 72, 74, 116.
Morgan's spies, 181.
Mormons, 213, 241, 242, 245, 277.
Morong, Philippine Islands, 403.
Moros, 415, 418, 419, 420, 424, 434, 439, 441, 442, 443, 448.
Morris, 256.
Morris, Colonel, 424.
Morris, Robt., 76.
Morristown, 37, 38, 39, 40, 69, 70, 73.
Morse, Samuel, 271.
Mortars, 150, 153, 155, 163, 190, 206, 208, 211, 233, 265, 384, 432, 464, 475, 488.
Motor trucks, 454, 467.
Moultrie, Colonel, 66, 67.
Moultrie, Fort, 69.
Mountain Artillery, 217, 233, 234.
Mountain Chief, 328.
Mountain Department, 275, 276, 277, 279.
Mountain Howitzer, 217.
Mount Independence, 47.
Mount Vernon, 107, 190.
Mules, 216, 220, 234, 241, 271, 315, 319, 321, 336.
Mulligan, Colonel, 269, 270.
Mullinets, 161.
Murfreesborough, 284.
Murray Hill, 32.
Murray House, 32.
Music, 24.
Musicians, 104, 105, 117, 121, 137, 146, 155, 160, 259, 307, 326.
Musket, 10, 55, 98, 127, 135, 148, 153, 189, 198, 199, 201, 208, 236, 255, 264, 265, 288, 296, 299.
Musketeer, 117.
Musketoon, 10.
Musketry, School of, 447.
Mussel Shell River, 346.
Mustaches, 233.
Mustering out, 300, 302, 309.
Mutiny, 5, 72, 73, 85, 88, 135, 177, 254, 300, 303.

Nachez, Chief, 362.
Nagasaki, Japan, 411.
Namacpacan, Philippine Islands, 405.
Namiquipa, Mexico, 455.
Napoleon, 298, 312.
Napoleon gun, 305, 343, 346.
Nashville, Tennessee, 294.
Nassau, 37.
National Anthem, 193, 194.
National Army, 476, 482.
National Defense, 91, 95, 100, 114, 418, 437, 456, 470, 483.
National Defense Act of 1916, 456, 458.
National Defense Act of 1920, 463, 483, 490.
National Guard, 313, 347, 413, 417, 428, 419, 420, 422, 431, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 439, 447, 449, 450, 453, 456, 457, 459, 463, 464, 476, 477, 482, 483, 484.
National Guard Reserve, 457, 469.
National Rifle Matches, 419, 436.
Navajo Indians, 214, 230, 242, 245, 246, 300.
Navy, 141, 226, 348, 375, 378, 390, 417, 419, 422, 429.
Nebraska, 159, 240, 310, 385.
Negroes, 3, 45, 64, 182, 280, 289, 292, 301, 307, 309, 313, 330, 383, 434.
Negros, Philippine Islands, 400, 402.
Nelson, General, 280.
Nevada, 229, 240, 245, 246, 347.
Newark, 34.
Newburgh, 82, 84.
Newburgh Addresses, 86, 133.
Newcastle, 33.
New England, 1, 9, 12, 21, 24, 33, 45, 76, 84, 167.
New Hampshire, 15, 28.
New Hope Church, 292.
New Jersey, 5, 27, 28, 33, 34, 35, 39, 44, 63, 65, 68, 69, 73, 79, 88, 186, 303, 419, 434.
New London, 24, 76, 77, 162, 303.
New Mexico, 213, 245, 246, 300, 301, 319, 323, 328, 351, 456.
New Orleans, 117, 142, 153, 192, 199, 200, 228, 330, 335, 372.
Newport, 64, 153, 162, 303.
Newport Barracks, 228.
Newport News, 387.
Newspapers, 258.
New System of Discipline, 128.
Newton, General, 286.
New York, 27, 28, 33, 65, 122, 141, 147, 154, 217, 222, 267, 381, 387, 388, 419, 434, 453.

New York City, 18, 24, 25, 48, 63, 69, 70, 76, 79, 88, 144, 162, 195, 234, 235, 259, 289.
New York Depot, 190.
Nez Percés Indians, 172, 309, 344, 345, 346, 347.
Niagara, 122, 131, 135.
Niagara, Fort, 135, 162, 303.
Nicholet, 185.
Nineteenth Infantry, 147, 386, 388.
Ninety-six, South Carolina, 75.
Ninth Cavalry, 307, 351, 366, 369, 443.
Ninth Infantry, 138, 147, 222, 228, 238, 239, 245, 336, 340, 341, 351, 382, 408, 409.
Nixon, General, 68.
Noel, Captain, 181.
Nogales, Arizona, 446.
Non-commissioned Officers, 58, 83, 84, 87, 92, 96, 104, 105, 106, 117, 121, 137, 146, 155, 160, 172, 175, 180, 181, 183, 191, 208, 219, 233, 259, 307, 333, 361, 472.
Nook's Hill, 22.
Norfolk Discipline, 11.
Norfolk, Virginia, 162.
North, 248, 250, 252, 254, 256, 259, 261, 264, 268, 273, 276, 288, 289, 291, 296, 301.
North Anna River, 292.
North Carolina, 184, 190, 295.
North Dakota, 386.
Northern Virginia, Army of, 271.
North, Simeon, 164.
Northwest Territory, 96.
Norzagaray, Philippine Islands, 401.
Nullification Proclamation, 171.
Nurse corps, 431, 457.
Nurses, 262, 431, 457.

Oahu, Hawaii, 427.
Oath of Allegiance, 95.
Oblique Step, 57, 143, 164.
Obregon, 456.
O'Brien, Colonel, 218.
Occupation, Army of, 193, 199.
Officers:
  Ability, 156, 164, 199, 208, 225, 249, 268, 315, 431.
  Appointment of, 18, 28, 32, 35, 41, 260, 263, 264, 279, 292, 307, 372, 413, 417, 438, 439, 457, 469.
  Attitude, 55, 199, 305, 423.
  Board of, 143, 144, 260, 262, 284, 308, 309, 329, 361, 412.
  Brevet rank, 121, 152, 166, 167, 169, 179, 180, 200, 218, 219, 228, 230, 303, 305, 308, 331.
  British, 6, 9, 28, 29, 30, 37.
  Canadian, 42.
  Character of, 12, 14, 26, 29, 33, 44, 53, 61, 122, 199, 209, 228, 249, 253, 254, 307.
  Classes "A" and "B," 484.
  Command, 4, 104, 117, 121, 128, 137, 146, 153, 169, 190, 253, 259, 260, 262, 302, 308, 367, 373, 399, 411, 418, 420, 427, 448, 457.
  Conduct, 71, 121, 228.
  Details to National Guard, 438, 464.
  Detail to aviation, 449.
  Discharge of, 73, 85, 90, 103, 146, 147, 162, 209, 250, 303, 324.
  Election of, 4, 208, 249, 252, 260, 263.
  Elimination of, 437, 441, 489.
  Examination of, 308, 309, 357, 399, 412, 427, 438, 438, 457.
  Insignia, 83, 105, 165, 172, 233, 238, 239, 308, 331.
  Instruction of, 58.
  Leadership, 60, 61, 63, 441.
  Non-commissioned. *See* Non-commissioned Officers.
  Pay. *See* Pay.
  Physical tests, 431, 434.
  Promotion, 137, 159, 179, 180, 217, 252, 253, 262, 284, 324, 325, 349, 357, 365, 399, 412, 429, 438, 439, 479, 484.
  Quarters, 94, 159.
  Relative rank, 137.
  Reserve corps, 457, 469, 470, 483, 484.
  Resignation, 179, 250, 262, 288.
  Responsibility, 60.
  Retirement, 73, 197, 262, 280, 366, 399, 413, 419.
  Rosters of, 130, 370.
  Shortage of, 422.
  Titles, 4, 80, 92, 96, 97, 98, 117, 121, 137, 144, 146, 149, 153, 253, 259, 260, 261, 262, 305, 367, 399, 418, 457.
  Training camps, 469, 471, 474.
  Uniform, 20, 41, 52, 88, 101, 105, 110, 117, 130, 149, 160, 165, 172, 179, 233, 238, 239, 305, 331.
Officer's Reserve Corps, 451, 469, 470, 483, 484.

Officer's Training Camps, 467, 471, 474.
Office, War, 129.
Ogden, General, 128.
Ogdensburg, 122.
Ogden, Utah, 326.
Ohio, 64, 101, 117, 119, 121, 212, 213, 277, 385, 387, 389, 444.
Ohio, Army of, 277.
Ohio River, 154, 236, 444, 446.
Ojos Azules, Mexico, 456.
Okeechobee, Lake, 182.
Okeechobee Swamp, 182.
Oklahoma, 170, 321.
Old Northwest, 65.
Old Pedro, 359.
O'Leary, Colonel, 340.
Omaha, Nebraska, 447.
O'Neill, John, 302, 305.
One pounder, 475, 488.
Ontario, Fort, 303.
Ontario, Lake, 133, 191.
Orange Farm, 71.
Ord, General, 273, 296, 312, 331, 350.
Ordnance, 81, 118, 148, 149, 153, 271.
Ordnance, Board of, 27.
Ordnance, Chief of, 261, 308, 364, 372, 427. *See* Appendix A, p. 498.
Ordnance, Commissary-general of, 119.
Ordnance Department, 119, 143, 148, 150, 154, 158, 159, 161, 168, 170, 175, 185, 196, 207, 219, 236, 256, 316, 350, 361, 364, 367, 371, 427, 445, 483.
Ordnance Officer, 153, 156, 158, 163, 189, 191.
Oregon, 193, 206, 229, 231, 234, 235, 238, 239, 245, 332, 349, 379, 420, 436.
Orford, Fort, 242.
Organization and Tactics, 363.
Organization, Military, 4, 54, 56, 73, 83, 92, 95, 99, 103, 104, 107, 112, 113, 116, 118, 120, 121, 128, 130, 136, 137, 143, 144, 146, 247, 149, 153, 165, 173, 183, 190, 207, 229, 238, 259, 261, 271, 307, 350, 357, 363, 367, 399, 412, 417, 445, 456, 457, 463, 464, 466, 521, 528, 529.
Organization, Tables of, 448.
Orozco, 443.
Osage Indians, 111, 322.
Oswego, 46.
Otis, Colonel, 341.
Otis, General, 372, 398, 400, 401, 402, 407.
Ouray, 351.
Outlaws, 349, 367, 423, 424, 441.
Outposts, 267, 356, 404.
Ovenshine, General, 402.
Oxen, 203.

Pacific, 213, 215, 216, 232, 309.
Pacific Division, 232.
Pacific, Division of, 331.
Pack Trains, 454.
Paco, Philippine Islands, 391.
Paine, Thomas, 2, 37.
Pakenham, 142, 143.
Palanan, Philippine Islands, 414.
Palatka Depot, 190.
Palm Beach, Florida, 195.
Palo Alto, 203, 211.
Panama, 234, 239.
Panama Canal, 429, 445, 450.
Panama Canal Commission, 429, 451.
Panay Island, Philippine Islands, 400.
Pando, General, 380.
Panic, 141.
Panique, Philippine Islands, 404.
Pantaloons, 149, 160.
Parades, 81, 93, 117, 125, 175, 193, 194, 227, 245, 246, 254, 268.
Parapet, 108, 142.
Paris, Treaty of, 396.
Parley, 213.
Parral, Mexico, 455.
Parras, 215.
Parries, 161.
Parrott gun, 265.
Parrott, R. R., 179.
Parsons, 31.
Pasig, Philippine Islands, 400.
Paso, 226.
Pass Christian, Louisiana, 147, 229.
Pathfinder, 185.
Patrols, 29, 202, 267, 270.
Patterson, 215, 220, 254, 255, 257, 258.
Paua, 206.
Paulus Hook, 68.
Pawnee Indians, 309, 342.
Pay, 13, 28, 31, 35, 36, 51, 56 (footnote), 66, 68, 69, 72, 73, 76, 80, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 92, 95, 96, 97, 98, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108, 112, 114, 117, 119, 122, 126, 128, 136, 141, 146, 153, 164, 166, 173, 183, 197, 207, 220, 221,

229, 230, 231, 234, 236, 242, 255, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 278, 279, 283, 284, 290, 302, 304, 305, 308, 312, 313, 325, 348, 352, 373, 399, 421, 430, 431, 445, 470, 483, 484, 488, 508.
Pay Department, 148, 196, 219, 445.
Paymaster, 95, 103, 104, 117, 121.
Paymaster General, 103, 149, 159, 308, 372.
Payne, Captain, 351.
Peace Commission, 320, 332.
Peace, Declaration of, 87, 142, 187, 190, 228, 388.
Peacemaker, 183.
Peck, Fort, 350.
Pedregal, 222, 332.
Pedro, Old, 359.
Peedee, 69.
Pegram, John, General, 255.
Pei-Ho River, 409.
Pei-Ts'ang, 409.
Peking, 409, 410, 411.
Pell's Point, 33.
Pemberton, General, 287.
Penitentiaries, 451.
Pennsylvania, 27, 28, 34, 65, 72, 88, 107, 124, 141, 154, 217, 222, 249, 287, 288, 293, 347, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 453.
Pensacola, Florida, 230.
Pensions, 111, 114, 229, 284, 420.
Perch, 165.
Percussion caps, 208, 236, 266, 368.
Percussion locks, 190, 198.
Perez Dasmarinas, Philippine Islands, 405.
Perkiomen, 43.
Perry, Camp, Ohio, 436.
Perry, Captain, 345.
Perryville, Kentucky, 282.
Pershing, John J., General, 415, 418, 442, 453, 454, 455, 459, 460, 475, 477, 479, 480, 512.
Petersburg, Virginia, 292, 295.
Petite Coquille, Fort, Louisiana, 163.
Petition, 85.
Peyton, E. G., Colonel, 441, 442, 443.
Philadelphia, 1, 10, 19, 40, 41, 43, 44, 48, 50, 53, 62, 63, 76, 88, 151, 161, 162, 168, 175, 241, 387.
Philadelphia City Troop, 387.
Philippine Constabulary, 418, 424.
Philippine Islands, 397, 398, 400, 402, 403, 405, 406, 407, 408, 411, 412, 413, 414, 416, 418, 419, 420, 423, 424, 427, 430, 433, 434, 439, 441, 448, 452, 464, 506, 510.
Philippine Scouts, 423, 424, 439, 441, 452.
Phoenixiana, 232.
Phoenix, John, 232.
Physician General, 105.
Picatinny Arsenal, New Jersey, 427, 433.
Pickens, Colonel, 66, 69.
Pickens, Fort, Florida, 230.
Pickering, Timothy, 11, 72, 109.
Pickets, 202, 267, 268.
Pickett, General, 288.
Pickett, Geo. E., Captain, 242, 243.
Pickett's charge, 288.
Piegan Indians, 309, 326, 328.
Pierce, General, 221.
Pikesville Arsenal, 190.
Pike, Zebulon, M., 110, 111, 124, 128, 129.
Pilar, del, M. H., General, 405.
Pile arms, 145, 166.
Pillager Chippewa Indians, 394, 395.
Pillory, 17.
Pillow, General, 208, 220, 221, 222, 224, 225, 228.
Pine Ridge, 365.
Pine tree flag, 20.
Pioneers, 181, 195.
Pioneer's March, The, 24.
Piquet, 67.
Pistols, 99, 104, 107, 139, 165, 190, 208, 210, 240, 271, 323.
Pitt, Fort, 90, 93.
Pittsburgh, 64, 65, 100, 141, 153, 154, 254, 347.
Pittsburg Landing, 277.
Pi Ute Indians, 349.
Pivot, 267.
Plan for Conducting the Rejoicing on Thursday, 81.
Plate, Breast, 117.
Platoon, 56, 117.
Platte, Department of, 331.
Platte River, 193, 232, 301.
Plattsburg, New York, 124, 125, 137, 141, 147, 154, 162, 453, 458.
Plaza, 213, 228.
Plumes, 83, 88, 101, 106, 130, 160, 331.
Pneumatic gun, 364.
Point Isabel, 203, 206, 208, 209, 216.
Poland, Camp, Tennessee, 375.

Politicians, 6, 197, 217, 228, 250, 276, 282, 291, 348, 383, 387.
Polk, Leonidas, 179.
Pomeroy, 28.
Pompons, 130, 160.
Pompton, 73.
Ponce, Porto Rico, 386, 388.
Pontoniers, 181, 206.
Pontooneers, 181, 206.
Pontoons, 282, 283.
Pope, General, 279, 280, 281, 299, 312, 331, 350, 420.
Porac, Philippine Islands, 403.
Port arms, 145, 166.
Porter, General, 280.
Porter, P. B., 125, 169.
Port fire, 176, 198.
Port Gibson, 287.
Portland, Maine, 162, 192.
Portland, Oregon, 425.
Porto Rican Provincial Regiment, 432, 451.
Porto Rico, 386, 387, 389, 391, 397, 412, 432.
Port Republic, 278.
Port Royal Island, 66.
Portsmouth, New Hampshire, 162.
Position of Soldier, 56, 166, 237.
Posts, 101, 103, 196, 227, 231, 244, 253, 408, 415, 436, 444.
Potomac, Army of the, 264, 268, 272, 275, 276, 277, 281, 282, 283, 286, 288, 291, 292.
Potomac River, 256, 271, 272, 273, 275, 278, 280, 281, 287, 289, 293.
Pouch, cartridge, 7, 22, 98.
Pouch, shot, 99.
Powder, 6, 10, 19, 21, 30, 33, 99, 130, 145, 153, 154, 176, 203, 208, 240, 288, 318, 323, 361, 364, 367, 369, 380, 388, 389, 427, 433.
Powder factory, 427.
Powderhorn, 7, 99, 210.
Powder River, 300, 336, 342, 346.
Practice, Target, 81, 146.
Prairie schooner, 230.
Preparedness, 115, 437, 468, 489.
President, 248, 259, 272.
Presidio of Monterey, California, 447, 450.
Presidio of San Francisco, 424, 425.
Presidio, The, 214.
Presque Isle, 101.
Price, Colonel, 227.
Price, Sterling, 269, 270.
Pride, 60.
Priming, 82, 144, 145, 198, 237, 267.
Princeton, 36, 38, 48, 73, 88, 151.
Prisoners, 37, 38, 68, 69, 72, 74, 121, 128, 131, 174, 204, 211, 220, 239, 280, 290, 295, 299, 322, 349, 388, 399, 405, 411, 414, 456.
Prisons, 38, 39, 245, 451.
Proclamation, 50.
Proclamations, 125, 171, 295, 411.
Proctor, General, 132.
Professor, U.S.M.A., 119, 153, 164, 183, 231, 234, 483.
Profiteering, 66, 80, 304.
Prohibition, 171, 172, 470.
Promotion, 137, 159, 179, 180, 217, 284, 323, 349, 365, 399, 412, 429, 438, 439, 479, 484.
Provisions, 13, 15, 51, 62, 69, 135, 203, 209, 300, 340.
Prussianism, 54, 61.
Puebla, 221.
Pueblo Indians, 210.
Puget Sound, 238, 245.
Pulaski, 42.
Pulojanes, 430.
Punishments, 16, 31, 43, 73, 88, 103, 129, 152, 173, 174, 226, 262, 290, 353.
Punitive Expedition, 512.
Punta Rassa, Florida, 189.
Purchasing Department, 148, 196.
Purveyor, 105.
Putnam, Israel, 6, 29, 32.

Quackery, 45
Quaker Road, 37
Quakers, 44
Qualification Cards, 18
Quarantine, 416
Quartermaster, 53, 54, 95, 97 (footnote), 104, 117, 148, 196, 259, 260, 261, 307, 308, 322.
Quartermaster Corps, 394, 445, 483.
Quartermaster, Deputy, 118.
Quartermaster General, 25, 30, 51, 63, 72, 103, 118, 149, 159, 196, 261, 308, 372. *See* Appendix A, p. 494.
Quartermaster's Department, 118, 153, 196, 256, 371, 445.
Quartermaster Sergeant, 105, 117, 121, 137, 146, 160, 259, 307, 308.
Quarters, 3, 50, 52, 65, 79, 84, 93, 125, 126, 135, 140, 159, 193, 200, 232, 245, 269, 273, 290.
Quebec, 15, 16, 64.

Queenstown, 122.
Quick-match, 155, 176.
Quitman, 212, 213, 215, 221, 222, 223, 224.

Railroads, 179, 191, 209, 234, 235, 243, 254, 276, 277, 295, 319, 325, 326, 347, 374, 395, 454, 455, 466, 472.
Raleigh, North Carolina, 296.
Ball, 35, 36.
Rammer, 11, 144, 155, 237.
Rampart, 108, 149.
Ramrod 8, 144, 153, 169, 237, 361.
Randall, Colonel, 359.
Randolph, General, 385.
Range, Rifle, 421.
Rangers, 32, 117, 130, 137, 171, 200, 206, 210, 211.
Rangers, Knowlton's, 32.
Rangers, Laclede, 209.
Rangers, Texas, 200.
Ranks, 143, 190.
Rapidan River, 280, 292.
Rapier, 236.
Rappahannock, Dept. of, 277.
Rappahannock Forge, Virginia, 10.
Rappahannock River, 283, 286, 287.
Rations, 13, 15, 51, 80, 84, 95, 97, 103, 105, 106, 108, 112, 119, 130, 183, 213, 257, 262, 263, 295, 321, 339, 340, 392, 404, 424, 425.
Rawdon, 70, 72, 75.
Raw Hide Blanket, Chief, 304.
Raymond, Mississippi, 287.
Reading, Fort, 242.
Rebellion, Fries, 107.
Rebellion, Shay's, 94.
Reconnaissance, 84, 134, 211, 215, 220, 232, 255, 333.
Reconstruction, 298.
Recovery, Fort, 100.
Recreation, 94.
Recruits, 4, 14, 17, 18, 21, 26, 27, 28, 32, 35, 40, 46, 65, 91, 98, 103, 104, 110, 113, 116, 125, 126, 128, 136, 139, 141, 178, 183, 205, 221, 230, 231, 232, 248, 249, 252, 254, 259, 260, 268, 280, 281, 288, 289, 290, 294, 295, 296, 302, 333, 334, 339, 349, 368, 413, 439, 469.
Recruit, The, 199.
Red Cloud Agency, 342.
Red Fork of Brazos, 233.
Red Horn, Chief, 326, 327.
Redoubt, 142, 202, 212, 224, 323.
Red River, 156, 170, 196, 234, 335.
Reduction of Army, 73, 88, 107, 108, 111, 113, 143, 146, 147, 156, 158, 168, 191, 228, 229, 261, 263, 324, 330, 334.
Register Annual, U. S. M. A., 151.
Register, Army, 130, 148, 280.
Registration (draft), 475.
Regulations, Army, 129.
Regulations, drill, 11, 56, 103, 107, 112, 143, 154, 164, 165, 168, 169, 176, 179, 187, 190, 197, 230, 233, 236, 237, 247, 266, 267, 285, 317, 351, 360, 366, 369, 417, 421, 441.
Regulations, Field Service, 448.
Regulations for the Militia, 230.
Regulations, French, 187.
Remington Rifle, 316, 334.
Reno, 338.
Reno, Fort, 309, 319.
Rensselaer, Van, Stephen, 122.
Reorganization, 73, 147, 159, 239, 286, 324, 456.
Reorganization Act, 456, 458.
Repeating rifles, 164, 247, 310, 316, 319, 334, 339.
Representatives, House of, 143.
Resaca de la Guerrero, 204.
Resaca de la Palma, 204, 211, 381.
Resaca, Georgia, 292, 293.
Reserve Corps, 307, 417, 431, 445, 457.
Reserve Militia, 417.
Reserve Officers Training Camps, 469, 471, 474.
Reserve Officers Training Corps, 485.
Resignations, 179, 250, 262, 288.
Responsibility, 60.
Retirement, 73, 197, 262, 280, 366, 419.
Retiring Board, 262.
Retreat, 5, 8, 194.
Reveille, 58, 193, 202, 311.
Reviews, 80, 82, 201, 268, 298, 366.
Revolution, 183.
Revolvers, 210, 240, 310, 319, 333.
Reyes, General, 443.
Reynolds, J. J., General, 179, 270, 288, 336.
Reynosa, 208.
Rhinebeck, 30.
Rhode Island, 3, 4, 303.
Ribbons, 20.
Richard Coeur de Lion, 465.
Richmond, Kentucky, 280.

Richmond, Virginia, 150, 256, 273, 274, 278, 286, 291, 292, 294, 295, 375.
Rich Mountains, 255.
Riding Master, 121, 137.
Rifle and Infantry Tactics, 247.
Riflemen, 99, 100, 112, 113, 117, 128, 130, 136, 142, 149, 158, 168, 191, 193, 206, 217, 218.
Rifle Range, 421.
Rifles, 8, 19, 99, 107, 108, 128, 130, 137, 147, 153, 159, 160, 161, 164, 172, 184, 185, 190, 198, 208, 210, 214, 229, 230, 236, 240, 247, 259, 261, 265, 266, 267, 316, 322, 323, 325, 334, 339, 341, 346, 361, 366, 367, 375, 380, 388, 394, 408, 419, 421, 433, 442, 447.
Rifle Teams, 419.
Riley, 220, 410.
Riley, Fort, 239, 245, 364, 370, 447.
Rinconada Pass, 213.
Ringgold Barracks, 231.
Ringgold, Captain, 204.
Rio Grande, 199, 201, 202, 203, 205, 214, 229, 235, 245, 298, 299, 309, 312, 367, 439, 440, 446, 459.
Riot, 107, 175, 195, 208, 238, 249, 289, 301, 312, 330, 335, 347, 368, 425, 500.
Ripley, E. W., General, 137, 148, 151.
Roads, 164, 177, 216, 222, 243, 246, 380.
Roberts, General, 134.
Robinson, Fort, Nebraska, 365, 452.
Rochambeau, 79, 84.
Rockets, 208, 217.
Rocking Chair period, 374.
Rock Island Arsenal, 279, 305, 435.
Rock Island, Illinois, 170, 171, 190, 279, 305.
Rocky Mountains, 172, 193.
Rodman Gun, 265, 305.
Rodman Rifle, 316.
Rodney's Artillery, 387.
Rogue River Indians, 233, 234, 238, 239.
Rolling Kitchens, 455.
Rolls, 160.
Roman Nose, Chief, 319, 320, 322.
Rome, New York, 130, 190.
Roosevelt, 64.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 376, 379, 415, 422, 429, 430, 434.
Root, Secretary, 418, 419.
Roper's Rifle, 316.
Rosales, Philippine Islands, 404.
Rosebud River, 336, 337.
Rosecrans, General, 255, 270, 279, 282, 284, 289.
Roslin Castle, 24.
R. O. T. C., 485.
Rough Riders, 376, 378, 383.
Rouses Point, 303.
Rousseau, H. H., 429.
Routine, 193, 194.
Rowan, Lieutenant, 374.
Ruffle, 145.
Ruffner, Lieutenant, 334.
Rules and Regulations for the Field Service and Maneuvers of the French Army, 143.
Rum, 45, 51, 76.
Rush, Dr. Benj., 34.
Russell, Captain, 186.
Russell, D. A., Fort, Wyoming, 452.
Russians, 409, 410.
Russy de, 154.

Sabine River, 188.
Sabre, 101, 148, 208, 236, 322.
Sac Indians, 170.
Sackett's Harbor, 124, 131, 133, 147, 162, 187.
Sacramento, Mexico, 226.
Sacrificios Island, 219.
Saddler, 121, 137.
Saddles, 267, 319, 323.
Sailors, 139, 141, 317.
Saint Andrews, Cross of, 20.
Saint Clair, 39, 45, 49, 79, 96, 97, 98, 100.
Saint George, Cross of, 20.
Saint Joseph's Island, Texas, 199.
Saint Lawrence, 16, 133.
Saint Leger, 46.
Saint Louis, Bay of, 192.
Saint Louis, Missouri, 110, 154, 190, 196, 303, 305.
Saint Paul, Minnesota, 196, 305.
Saint Peters, Mississippi, 163.
Saint Philips, Fort, Mississippi, 163.
Saltillo, 210, 211, 212, 214, 215, 217.
Salt Lake City, 241.
Salubrity, Camp, Louisiana, 193.
Saluda River, 69.
Salutes, 6, 16, 26, 62, 81.
Samar, Philippine Islands, 406, 415, 430.
Sam Browne Belt, 286.
Sampson, Admiral, 384.
Samuel, 463.
San Angelo, Mexico, 223.

San Antonio, Fort, Philippine Islands, 390.
San Antonio, Mexico, 223.
San Antonio, Texas, 213, 226, 299, 303, 439.
San Arco Indians, 341.
San Augustin, Mexico, 223.
Sanborn, General, 304.
San Cosme Gate, 224.
San Diego, California, 440.
Sands, Comfort, 80.
Sandwich, 121, 132.
Sandy Hook, 76, 303.
San Fernando (Pamp.) Philippine Islands, 401, 402.
San Fernando (Union), Philippine Islands, 404.
San Francisco, California, 232, 234, 424, 425, 426.
San Francisco, Presidio of, 424, 425.
San Geronimo, Mexico, 222, 223.
San Isidro, Philippine Islands, 401, 403.
Sanitation, 15, 19, 52, 58, 168, 264, 392, 393, 394, 397, 398, 416, 446, 447.
San Jacinto, Philippine Islands, 404.
San Juan, Cuba, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 385, 396.
San Juan Island, 242, 243.
San Juan, Philippine Islands, 391.
San Juan, Porto Rico, 386, 388.
San Mateo, Philippine Islands, 405.
San Miguel de Rubio, Mexico, 456.
San Miguel, New Mexico, 209.
San Miguel, Philippine Islands, 401.
San Nicolas, Philippine Islands, 440.
Santa Ana, General, 405.
Santa Anna, 215, 218, 223, 224.
Santa Cruz, 227.
Santa Cruz, Philippine Islands, 401.
Santa Desidera, Porto Rico, 386.
Santa Fé, New Mexico, 111, 168, 209, 210, 213, 419, 422, 427, 428, 433.
Santee, 75.
Santiago, Cuba, 377, 378, 380, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 397.
Sappers, 83, 104, 119, 126, 206.
Sapping, 25.
Sarangani, Philippine Islands, 439.
Saratoga, 47, 48, 70, 74.
Sashes, 149, 160, 239.
Satanta, 314.
Sault Sainte Marie, 162.
Savage Station, 279.
Savannah, Georgia, 66, 68, 79, 162, 294, 295.
Sawyer, 153.
Scaling Ladders, 142, 224.
Schenk, 278.
Schofield, General, 294, 301 312, 324, 331, 350.
Schonchin, 333.
School, Garrison, 417.
School of Application for Infantry and Cavalry, 355.
School of Fire for Field Artillery, 440.
School of Instruction, Artillery, 164, 166.
School of Musketry, 447.
School of Practice, Artillery, 164 166, 239.
School of Tactics, Infantry, 166.
School of the Line, 435.
Schools, 109.
Schools, Civilian, 308, 413, 484.
Schuyler, Philip, 6, 15, 39, 45, 46, 49, 180.
Schuylkill, 43, 50, 62.
Schwan, General, 386, 387, 405.
Scorpion, 38.
Scott, Fort, Florida, 152.
Scott, Winfield, 114, 137, 138, 143, 148, 161, 165, 166, 168, 171, 177, 178, 180, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 195, 197, 201, 205, 210, 214, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 226, 227, 228, 243, 244, 245, 266, 267, 272, 285, 404, 450.
Scott, W. S., General, 456.
Scouts, 42, 268, 270, 307, 319, 320, 321, 322, 329, 342, 345, 346, 349, 350, 351, 360, 404, 405, 414, 423, 424, 443, 483.
Screen, Smoke, 203.
Scurvy, 53, 207.
Seacoast, Artillery, 234.
Seacoast Defenses, 112, 148, 361, 370, 419, 422, 427, 428, 433.
Sea Fencibles, 130, 137.
Sea Girt, New Jersey, 419.
Searchlights, 433.
Seattle, Washington, 425,
Secession, 171, 247, 248, 249, 250.
Second Brigade, 210.
Second Cavalry, 239, 303, 326, 336, 337, 339, 341, 346, 350, 386, 387, 388.
Second Division, 210, 446, 447.
Second Dragoons, 181, 184, 188, 191, 193, 197, 199, 200, 210, 213, 222, 229, 240, 241, 245, 256, 267.

Second Field Artillery, 137, 159, 167, 176, 184, 188, 229, 239, 245, 303, 318.
Second Indiana, 217.
Second Infantry, 117, 141, 147, 162, 171, 178, 186, 188, 190, 213, 222, 229, 235, 236, 241, 245, 256, 303, 364, 366, 369.
Second Oregon, 379.
Second Pennsylvania, 217.
Second Wisconsin, 386.
Secretary, Military, 420, 429.
Secretary of Interior, 324, 394.
Secretary of Treasury, 120, 139, 251, 252.
Secretary of War, 92, 119, 133, 136, 139, 140, 143, 150, 151, 152, 155, 169, 170, 197, 202, 214, 215, 234, 235, 242, 247, 248, 250, 251, 260, 273, 275, 276, 279, 285, 287, 324, 357, 381, 415, 418, 419, 422, 426, 428, 435, 436, 437, 445, 449, 452, 457, 485, 489. *See* Appendix A, p. 492.
Section, 55.
Secure Arms, 145.
Security, Service of, 363.
Selective Draft Act, 466, 470, 471, 475, 476, 478.
Seminole Indians, 152, 176, 187, 188, 195, 211, 230, 239, 240.
Senate, 306, 361, 398.
Sentinel, 94, 139, 175, 408, 442.
Sentry, 94, 175, 245, 318, 408.
Serbia, 463.
Sergeant, Major, 105, 117, 126, 146, 160, 181, 183, 259, 308.
Service, Foreign, 231.
Service of Security, 363.
Service of Security and Information, 363.
Service Schools, 164, 166, 192, 239, 355, 363, 364, 370, 407, 417, 421, 422, 423, 435, 440, 445, 447, 451, 478, 487, 520.
Service Stripe, 82.
Setting-up Exercises, 367.
Seven Days' Battles, 279.
Seventh Cavalry, 321, 337, 338, 346, 365, 366, 455, 456.
Seventh Field Artillery, 371, 387.
Seventh Infantry, 117, 147, 152, 187, 188, 200, 203, 229, 231, 233, 245, 251, 256.
Seven Pines, 277.
Seventeenth Infantry, 147, 303, 373, 455.
Seventy-first, New York, 381, 382.
Sevier, 72.
Shafter, General, 372, 374, 375, 378, 379, 384, 385, 386.
Sha Huo Gate, 409.
Shapley, Captain, 77.
Sharpe, H. G., General, 425.
Sharpe, Major, 382.
Sharpshooter, 240.
Sharp's Rifle, 240.
Shaw, Fort, 326.
Shawnee Indians, 206.
Shay, Daniel, 94.
Shay's Rebellion, 94.
Shelby, 72.
Shelby, Fort, Mississippi, 163.
Sheldon, 67.
Shells, 213, 364, 410.
Shell-shock, 311.
Shelters, 15, 50, 52, 64, 65, 69, 84, 126, 200, 232, 269.
Shenandoah, Department of, 276, 277, 279.
Shenandoah Valley, 257, 278, 287, 293, 294.
Sheperdstown, 287, 293.
Sheridan, Fort, Illinois, 452.
Sheridan, Philip, 152, 290, 291, 293, 294, 295, 296, 299, 303, 304, 305, 312, 319, 321, 326, 330, 331, 335, 350, 351.
Sherman, Thomas, General, 177.
Sherman, W. T., 152, 218, 273, 279, 287, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 303, 305, 309, 312, 325, 331, 350, 355.
Shields, General, 220, 222, 298.
Shiloh, 244, 277.
Shipp, Camp, 376.
Ships, 76, 235, 243, 275, 276, 417, 428.
Shooting, 9, 33, 81, 113, 146. 169.
Shoshone Indians, 337, 342.
Shotguns, 442.
Shot, Hot, 125.
Shoulder Strap, 106, 160, 179, 233, 239.
Shrapnel, 204.
Shrieve, Colonel, 73.
Shrubrick, Captain, 67.
Siberia, 482.
Sibert, Wm. L., General, 429, 451, 476.
Sibley, General, 299, 300.
Siboney, Cuba, 378, 380.
Sickles, General, 312.
Sickness, 15, 23, 45, 53, 133, 167, 168, 171, 177, 179, 185, 189,

200, 201, 206, 207, 209, 214, 219, 220, 225, 227, 230, 234, 256, 269, 278, 297, 377, 380, 391, 393, 401, 404, 406, 415, 416.
Siege Artillery, 233, 234, 266.
Sierra Madres, 329, 330, 349, 360, 362.
Sigel, General, 269.
Sight, Buffington's, 361.
Signal Corps, 271, 284, 308, 374, 444, 448, 449, 452, 483.
Signal Officer, Chief, 372. *See* Appendix A, p. 498.
Signal School, 425.
Signal Unit, 271, 452, 454.
Sill, Fort, Oklahoma, 440, 447, 452.
Silliman, 40.
Simcoe, Fort, 242.
Simonds, Captain, 425.
Sioux Indians, 240, 299, 309, 335, 337, 350, 357, 365.
Sitka, Alaska, 318.
Sitting Bull, 336, 341, 349, 350, 357, 365.
Sixteen Mile Pond, 245.
Sixteenth Infantry, 147, 228, 381, 382, 454, 476.
Sixteenth, Pennsylvania, 386, 388.
Sixth Cavalry, 268, 303, 333, 360, 366, 387, 409, 424, 454.
Sixth Corps, 280.
Sixth Field Artillery, 371, 454.
Sixth Illinois, 385, 386.
Sixth Infantry, 117, 147, 154, 159, 163, 166, 168, 170, 171, 172, 174, 178, 180, 181, 186, 187, 190, 197, 229, 239, 240, 241, 242, 245, 256, 351, 381, 382, 424, 454, 456.
Sixth Massachusetts, 385, 386.
Skippack Creek, 44, 48.
Skirmishes, 179, 246, 267, 285, 317.
Skirmish Line, 179, 246.
Skulking, 381, 382.
Slashes, 180.
Slavery, 238, 244.
Sledges, 126.
Small Arms. *See* Arms, Small.
Smallpox, 15, 45, 168, 218, 326.
Smith, Fort, 192.
Smith, C. S., Fort, 315.
Smith, General, 400, 402.
Smith, General (Union), 286.
Smith, J. L., 176.
Smith, Justin, 205.
Smith, E. Kirby, General, 202, 280, 296.
Smith, Persifer F., 210, 222, 224, 232.
Smithville, North Carolina, 162.
Smoke Screen, 203.
Smythe, General, 124, 125, 126.
Snelling, Fort, 168, 188, 196, 394.
Soldiers' Home, 302.
Solomon River, 240.
Somerset Court House, 37.
Sonora, 216.
Sorel River, 136.
Soto, Colonel, 387.
South, 245, 248, 250, 252, 253, 254, 259, 268, 271, 273, 275, 276, 278, 289, 296, 301, 305.
South Carolina, 147, 171, 184, 217, 222, 247, 248, 277, 279.
South Dakota, 427.
South, Division of, 151.
Southwest Territory, 101.
Spain, 110, 111.
Spain, War with, 361, 370, 385, 394, 395, 397, 399, 400, 403, 413, 416, 417, 423, 460.
Spanish, 92, 111, 151, 371, 375, 376, 378, 379, 380, 384, 385, 386, 389, 390, 392.
Spanish American War, 361, 394, 395, 397, 399, 400, 403, 413, 416, 417, 423, 460.
Sparta, Wisconsin, 435.
Spatula, 155.
Spears, 408.
Spencer, Christopher, 247.
Spencer, General, 28.
Spencer Rifle, 247, 315, 319.
Splints, 155.
Spokane River, 242.
Spotted Tail Agency, 342.
Spottsylvania Court House, 292.
Sprague, General, 188.
Springfield Armory, 367.
Springfield Arsenal, Massachusetts, 153, 161, 190, 191, 264, 367.
Springfield, Ohio, 70, 94.
Springfield Rifle, 310, 334, 361, 433.
Spy, 72, 111, 181, 228.
Squad, 55, 317, 390, 421.
Squadron, 161, 165, 190, 417, 454.
Squier, Colonel, 423.
Squirrel Rifle, 161.
Staff, Chief of, 418, 437, 440, 457, 481, 489. *See* Appendix A, p. 493.
Staff College, 421, 423.
Staff Corps. *See* Staff, general.
Staff, General, 103, 107, 149, 153, 357, 419, 421, 423, 426, 433,

436, 437, 444, 457, 464, 465, 468, 477, 481, 483, 486, 489.
Stagecoach, 321.
Stanton, Secretary of War, 273, 274, 279.
Stark, 49.
Stars and Stripes, 210, 212, 225.
Star Spangled Banner, 193.
State Department, 304.
Staten Island, 28, 40.
States Rights, 275.
Staunton, Virginia, 294.
Stedman, Fort, 295.
Steele, Fort, 350.
Steele, General, 312.
Steilacoom, Fort, 242.
Step, Deploy, 143.
Stephens, 39, 44.
Stephenson, Fort, 132.
Step, Length of, 144, 237, 285.
Step, Lock, 143.
Step, Oblique, 143, 164.
Sterling, 29, 35, 39.
Sternburg, General, 372.
Steuben, Von, 42, 52, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 70, 72, 75, 78, 82, 83, 85, 103, 112, 114, 116, 128, 143, 144, 151, 168, 237, 317, 328.
Stevens, Colonel, 223.
Stevens (Engineer), 429.
Steward, Hospital, 259, 278, 307.
Stimson, Secretary of War, 445.
Stockade, 93, 117, 132, 147, 177, 185, 194, 195, 206, 232, 309, 310, 319, 424.
Stockbridge Indians, 3.
Stockton, Commodore, 213, 226.
Stock-trail, 175.
Stokes Mortar, 475.
Stone, General, 272.
Stoney Brook, 37.
Stony Point, New York, 68.
Straps, Shoulder, 106, 160, 179, 233, 239.
Strasburg, 293.
Strategy, 423.
Straw, 50.
Strength, Confederate, 248, 249.
Strength of Army, 4, 15, 17, 21, 24, 27, 29, 31, 35, 40, 41, 45, 53, 63, 64, 66, 68, 69, 70, 72, 74, 76, 80, 88, 92, 93, 95, 100, 101, 107, 108, 111, 113, 116, 120, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 132, 133, 135, 137, 141, 152, 157, 171, 176, 177, 178, 181, 196, 199, 200, 202, 203, 204, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 216, 217, 220, 221, 226, 229, 238, 244, 256, 267, 270, 271, 273, 276, 277, 280, 282, 286, 287, 288, 290, 293, 294, 300, 302, 305, 307, 309, 321, 322, 349, 370, 371, 379, 385, 386, 387, 393, 394, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 405, 407, 411, 413, 419, 421, 427, 428, 444, 446, 449, 452, 453, 457, 458, 476, 489.
  British, 29, 35, 40, 44, 48, 53, 64, 75, 130, 134, 142.
  French, 76.
Strikes, 500.
Stripe, Service, 82.
Stromboli, 38.
Strother, Fort, 134.
Stuart, J. E. B., 273, 287, 292.
Stubbs, Corporal, 123, 137.
Sturgis, General, 286, 346.
Subig, Philippine Islands, 405.
Sublegion, 99, 100, 101, 103.
Submarine Mines, 433.
Subsistence, 13, 15, 51, 80, 84, 95, 97, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 112, 118, 122, 153, 207, 305, 447.
Subsistence, Commissary of, 261.
Subsistence Department, 153, 308, 425, 445.
Substitute, 141, 284.
Substitution, 141, 284, 288.
Sugar Point, 394.
Sullivan, Fort, 303.
Sullivan, General, 28, 29, 35, 41, 42, 43, 49, 64, 65.
Sullivan's Island, South Carolina, 192.
Sully, General, 299, 300.
Sultan of Baccalod, 418.
Sulu, Philippine Islands, 401, 415.
Sumner, General, 380.
Sumner, Major, 213.
Sumter, Fort, 248, 249, 250, 275.
Sumter, General, 69, 75.
Superintendent Military Academy, 109, 151, 188, 231, 234, 242, 306. *See* Appendix A, p. 500.
Superintendent of Finance, 76.
Supplies, 6, 15, 21, 23, 33, 34, 40, 49, 50, 61, 79, 93, 118, 121, 127, 149, 177, 180, 208, 209, 210, 216, 220, 221, 224, 239, 241, 256, 271, 281, 294, 295, 301, 304, 319, 323, 340, 341, 342, 343, 352, 375, 378, 380, 389, 407, 426, 455.
Supply Camp, 321, 323.

Supply Company, 457.
Support Arms, 145.
Surgeon-general, 152, 278, 308, 372, 431. *See* Appendix A, p. 496.
Surgeons, 95, 96, 104, 105, 117, 146, 175, 186, 259, 261, 278, 284, 362, 384, 393, 399, 431, 439.
Surgeon's Mate, 96, 104, 117, 146.
Surigao, Philippine Islands, 407.
Surrender, 77, 128, 131, 203, 248, 270, 323, 342, 357, 385, 389, 390, 402, 420, 423, 424, 442.
Surveys, 110, 111, 150, 154, 156, 164, 185, 232, 234, 235, 240, 369, 451.
Susquehanna, 65.
Sutler, 172, 250, 259, 308, 353.
Swamp, Black, 127.
Swift, Joseph G., 113, 116, 133, 143, 197.
Swift Run Gap, 278.
Sword, 7, 8, 99, 101, 104, 107, 108, 161, 165, 208, 267.
Sword, Master of, 121, 137.
System of Discipline, New, 128.
System of Exercise and Instruction of Field Artillery, A, 169.

Tables of Organization, 448.
Tactical Unit, 285.
Tactics, 188, 220, 224, 247, 266, 285, 317, 355, 360, 363, 366, 385, 392, 422, 423, 447, 464, 488.
Tactics and Regulations for the Militia, 179.
Tactics, Artillery, 128.
Tactics, Cavalry, 161, 165, 190.
Tactics, Cavalry, (Cook's), 360.
Tactics, Cooper's and Macomb's, 236.
Tactics for Infantry, Abridged, 166.
Tactics, Hardee's Rifle and Light Infantry, 237.
Tactics, Infantry, 164, 169.
Tactics, Infantry, Casey's, 285.
Tactics, Infantry School of, 166.
Tactics, Infantry, Upton's, 317.
Tacubaya, 223.
Taft Board, 428.
Taft, Wm. H., 415, 422, 436, 468.
Tagologs, 398.
Taguig, Philippine Islands, 400.
Taku, China, 408, 409.
Talavera, Philippine Islands, 403.
Talladega, 134.
Tallasahatchee, 134.
Tampa Bay Depot, 190.
Tampa, Florida, 177, 190, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 386.
Tampico, 215, 217.
Tangandan Mountains, 405.
Tank Corps, Chief of. *See* Appendix A, p. 499.
Tapeon, 155.
Tappan, N. Y., 70.
Taps, 194.
Taraca Moros, 419.
Tar-bucket, 130, 160, 165.
Target Practice, 81, 146, 169, 266, 268, 332, 350, 417, 440, 447, 466.
Targets, 146, 169, 332, 350, 378.
Tarlac, Philippine Islands, 403, 404.
Tarleton, 72, 74.
Tartar Wall, 409, 410.
Tassels, 147, 160.
Tattoo, 58, 194.
Tavern, Fraunces, 88.
Tax, War, 107.
Taylor, Colonel, 286.
Taylor System, 441.
Taylor, Zachary, 181, 182, 185, 188, 193, 195, 197, 199, 200, 202, 203, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 213, 214, 215, 217, 218, 226.
Teachers, 109, 119, 151.
Tecumseh, 113, 132.
Telegraph, 271, 280, 284, 309, 346, 426, 453.
Telephone, 426, 427.
Temple, 86.
Ten Eyck, 310.
Tennessee, 124, 133, 152, 209, 213, 215, 275, 279, 281.
Tennessee, Department of the, 279, 282.
Tennessee, Division of the, 303.
Tennessee River, 380, 394.
Tenth Cavalry, 307, 378, 383, 447, 454, 455, 459.
Tenth Infantry, 147, 228, 238, 240, 241, 245, 246, 303, 413.
Tenth Military District, 139.
Tenth Pennsylvania, 385, 389.
Tents, 126, 293, 200, 233, 271, 300, 311, 312, 319, 323, 337, 393.
Tepees, 322, 338, 342, 365.
Terry, General, 312, 337, 339, 350.
Terwaw, Fort, 242.
Teton Indians, 111.
Teton Pass, 369.
Texas, 188, 193, 199, 202, 205, 210, 213, 230, 233, 239, 240, 242, 245, 248, 298, 303, 305, 312, 439, 440, 443, 444, 456, 464.

Texas City, 446, 447, 449.
Texas, Department of, 331.
Texas Rangers, 200, 210.
Thacher, James, 51.
Thames River, 132.
Thatcher, Maurice H., 429.
Thayer, Sylvanus, 116, 151, 163, 179, 188, 199, 363.
Thimbleriggers, 227.
Third Cavalry, 206, 323, 330, 336, 339, 341, 360, 367, 404.
Third Dragoons, 228, 230, 233, 236, 245, 267.
Third Field Artillery, 137, 159, 167, 176, 178, 180, 184, 188, 200, 229, 233, 235, 238, 239, 242, 245, 246, 303, 386, 389, 406.
Third Illinois, 387, 389.
Third Infantry, 117, 147, 165, 166, 170, 180, 188, 192, 199, 200, 222, 229, 234, 236, 239, 240, 242, 245, 256, 303, 394, 395, 456.
Third Wisconsin, 388.
Thirteenth Cavalry, 413. 443, 453, 454, 455.
Thirteenth Corps, 299.
Thirteenth Infantry, 147, 228, 382.
Thirteenth Minnesota, 386.
Thirtieth Infantry, 147, 412, 456.
Thirty-first Infantry, 147.
Thirty-second Infantry, 147.
Thirty-third Infantry, 147.
Thirty-fourth Infantry, 147.
Thirty-fifth Infantry, 147.
Thirty-sixth Infantry, 147.
Thirty-seventh Infantry, 147, 323.
Thirty-eighth Infantry, 147.
Thirty-ninth Infantry, 147.
Thirty-seven M.M. Gun, 475.
Thirty-third Michigan, 379.
Thirty-fourth Michigan, 379, 380.
Thomas, Camp, Georgia, 373, 375, 393, 394.
Thomas, Dr., 333.
Thomas, General, 22, 28, 218, 251, 290, 294, 312.
Thompkins, Frank, Major, 455.
Thompson (Historian), 126.
Thompson, Lieutenant Colonel, 181.
Thornburg, Major, 350, 354.
Thornton, Captain, 203.
Three Bells, 235.
Ticonderoga, 15, 18, 45.
Tientsin, China, 409.
Tila Pass, 405.
Timber, Fallen, 101.
Tinis, 407.
Tippecanoe River, 113.
Toasts, 81.
Tobyhanna, Pennsylvania, 447, 450.
Tomachie, Mexico, 456.
Tomahawk, 7, 65, 94, 96, 195, 300.
Tomes, 139.
Tongue River, 336, 337, 341, 343.
Tonto Basin, 330.
Topographical Engineers, 149, 170, 183, 185, 196, 232, 261, 284.
Toral, General, 384.
Tories, 69.
Toronto, 129.
Torpedoes, 422.
Torpedo Gun, 364.
Torrejon, General, 202.
Tory-baiting, 26.
Totten, 116.
Touch-hole, 155.
Tower, Colonel, 220.
Townshend, Fort, 242.
Training, 54, 56, 58, 61, 62, 63, 78, 81, 82, 99, 100, 101, 104, 105, 114, 127, 129, 134, 135, 137, 146, 151, 157, 163, 165, 186, 190, 191, 192, 193, 196, 204, 221, 222, 224, 225, 226, 239, 245, 253, 256, 264, 267, 268, 271, 273, 288, 297, 313, 326, 379, 383, 393, 413, 420, 422, 427, 435, 436, 453, 463, 465, 472, 484.
Training Camps, 99, 186, 205, 313, 417, 433, 447, 449, 450, 453, 466, 467, 469, 471, 474, 490.
Training, Vocational, 457.
Train, pack, 454.
Trains, 204, 227, 241, 271, 321, 336, 341, 454.
Trajectory, 9.
Transportation, 50, 93, 126, 133, 154, 171, 180, 203, 204, 209, 220, 295, 375, 426, 450, 454, 460, 477.
Transports, 154, 318, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 389, 428.
Travois, 339.
Treason, 42, 70.
Treasury, Board of, 76.
Treasury, Secretary of, 120, 140, 251, 252.
Treaties, 227, 234, 391, 396, 398.
Treatise on Military Art, 103.
Treaty of Guadalupe, 227.
Treaty of Paris, 396, 398.
Trenches, 271, 346, 389, 390.
Trenton, New Jersey, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 48, 186, 282.

Trevino, 456.
Troop, 190, 360, 367, 417.
Trout Creek, 50.
Troy, New York, 192.
Truce, 296.
Truckee River, 246.
Trucks, 454, 467.
Trueman, Lieutenant Colonel, 98.
Trumbull, 49, 52.
Trumbull, Fort, 303.
Trumpeters, 137.
Trunnions, 91, 155.
Tryon, 40.
Tucson, 216.
Tullahoma, Tennessee, 449.
Tullifiny, 67.
Tung Pien Gate, 409.
Twelfth Cavalry, 414.
Twelfth Infantry, 149, 222, 228, 333, 370.
Twentieth Infantry, 147, 337, 454.
Twenty-first Infantry, 147, 326, 330, 345, 349, 364, 366, 456.
Twenty-second Infantry, 138, 147, 343, 423, 424.
Twenty-third Infantry, 147, 318, 341, 385, 386, 390, 400, 402.
Twenty-fourth Infantry, 147, 307, 454.
Twenty-fifth Infantry, 147, 307, 369, 434.
Twenty-sixth Infantry, 147, 412, 459, 576.
Twenty-seventh Infantry, 147, 412.
Twenty-eighth Infantry, 147, 412, 476.
Twenty-ninth Infantry, 147, 412.
Twenty-fifth Corps, 299.
Twenty-sixth Division, 477.
Twiggs, General, 197, 201, 210, 215, 217, 220, 222, 223, 229, 248.
Tyler, 257, 258, 270.
Typhoid, 168, 269, 393.
Typhoons, 402.

Uintah Reservation, 427.
Umatilla Agency, 349.
Uniform:
  Revolutionary, 3, 20, 25, 26, 31, 34, 45, 52, 68, 73, 82, 88.
  Post-Revolutionary, 95, 101, 105, 110.
  War of 1812, 112, 117, 130.
  1816. 149.
  1821. 160.
  1825. 165.
  1833. 172.
  1836. 179.
  Mexican War, 201, 210.
  1855. 238.
  1857. 239.
  Civil War, 248, 265, 285.
  1872. 331.
  1884. 361.
  1899. 406.
Union, 250, 251, 255, 256, 264, 265, 270, 275, 279, 280, 284, 286, 287, 290, 292, 295, 297, 299, 301, 459.
Union Pacific R.R., 325.
U. S. Disciplinary Barracks, 451.
U. S. Marine Corps, 139, 141, 222, 256, 419, 449, 476.
Universal Militia Law, 98.
Unkpapa Indians, 341.
Unpopularity, 79, 85, 90, 114, 158, 438.
Upton, Emory, General, 317, 357, 412, 418, 469.
Upton's Infantry Tactics, 317.
Upton's Military Policy, 357, 418.
Urbana, Ohio, 119.
Utah, 229, 232, 240, 241, 245, 246, 385, 389.
Ute Indians, 300, 334, 347, 350, 351, 427, 431.
Utuado, Porto Rico, 388.

Vaccination, 45.
Valet, 53.
Valley Campaign, 278.
Valley Creek, 50.
Valley Forge, 38, 48, 49, 50, 54, 58, 64, 69, 116, 151, 207.
Valverde, 214.
Vancouver Barracks, Washington, 235, 245.
Vancouver, Fort, 242.
Vancouver Island, 242.
Van Horn, Colonel, 378.
Van Rensselaer, Stephen, 122.
Vera Cruz, 205, 214, 216, 218, 219, 220, 222, 228, 449.
Verde River, 456.
Vermont, 18, 45.
Vernon, Mount, 107, 190.
Verplank's Point, 84.
Veteran Reserve Corps, 307.
Veterinary Corps, 457.
Vicksburg, 282, 287, 288, 289.
Victoria, Mexico, 215.
Victoria, Texas, 299.
Vidette, 257, 267.
Villa, Pancho, 446, 453, 454, 455, 456, 460.
Vincennes, 64, 93.

Virginia, 10, 14, 28, 34, 55, 75, 78, 124, 126, 139, 150, 255, 268, 276, 277, 282, 289, 293, 296, 420.
Virginia, Army of, 279.
Virginia, Central R.R. of, 295.
Virginia, Northern Army of, 271.
Visajas, Philippine Islands, 402, 407.
Vocational Training, 457.
Volleys, 74, 143, 166, 174, 175.
Voltigeurs, 217, 222, 228.
Volunteers, 69, 105, 118, 121, 122, 125, 130, 135, 161, 171, 172, 176, 177, 178, 181, 191, 200, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 220, 222, 225, 227, 229, 234, 238, 242, 248, 251, 252, 253, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 265, 268, 276, 285, 289, 293, 300, 301, 303, 307, 309, 313, 372, 373, 374, 376, 380, 381, 382, 385, 386, 387, 388, 391, 392, 394, 398, 399, 401, 402, 406, 407, 413, 416, 438, 448, 452, 457, 470.

Wabash, 98, 113, 122.
Wade, General, 372.
Wadsworth, General, 276.
Wadsworth, Jeremiah, 63, 65.
Wagner, 259, 307.
Wagner, Arthur L., 363, 422.
Wagons, 203, 204, 208, 216, 220, 257, 271, 295, 321, 322, 336, 337, 341, 343, 351, 380.
Wahoo Swamps, 178.
Waiters, 137, 175.
Walback, 197.
Wallace (Engineer), 429.
Wallace, Fort, 320.
Wallace, Lew, General, 293.
Wallawa, 344.
Walla Walla, Fort, 239, 242.
War, Articles of, 31, 129.
War, Board of, 72.
War College, 407, 417, 418, 419, 421, 423, 444, 465.
War, College Division, G. S., 444.
War Commission, 393.
War, Council of, 77, 125.
Ward, Artemas, 1, 2, 6.
War, Declaration of, 120, 203, 205, 372.
War Department, 27, 133, 150, 151, 163, 169, 177, 190, 233, 239, 251, 318, 328, 366, 372, 375, 419, 431, 433, 435, 441, 465, 467, 471, 474, 475, 477, 489.
Warmouth, Governor, 330.
War Office, 129.
War Orders, 273.
Warren, General, 295.
War, Secretary of, 92, 120, 133, 136, 139, 140, 143, 150, 151, 152, 156, 169, 170, 197, 202, 214, 215, 234, 235, 242, 243, 248, 250, 251, 260, 273, 274, 275, 276, 279, 285, 287, 317, 324, 357, 381, 415, 418, 419, 422, 426, 428, 435, 436, 437, 445, 449, 452, 457, 485, 489.
War Tax, 107, 313.
Warwick Tavern, 43.
War with Mexico, 205.
Washington Arsenal, 190.
Washington Barracks, Maryland, 162, 417.
Washington Camp, 205.
Washington, Captain J. M. (battery), 218.
Washington, D. C., 139, 141, 168, 205, 214, 243, 249, 250, 253, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 264, 268, 271, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 286, 288, 332, 333, 349, 371, 372, 373, 375, 376, 384, 385, 401, 407, 417, 418, 426, 445, 454, 465, 466.
Washington Elm, 3.
Washington, Fort, Maryland, 162, 417.
Washington, Fort, New York, 33, 48.
Washington, George.
  Ability, 37, 39, 89, 107.
  Assumes Command, 3.
  At Valley Forge, 50.
  At Yorktown, 76.
  Capture of Boston, 23.
  Commendation, 81, 82, 89, 336.
  Condemnation, 81.
  Death, 107, 114.
  Discouragements, 15, 26, 39, 72, 180, 320.
  Elected Commander-in-Chief, 1, 2.
  Farewell to Officers, 88.
  In Boston, 1775, 1.
  Indian Troubes, 100.
  Leadership, 35, 36, 86, 89, 107.
  Patriotism, 36, 86, 89.
  Plots Against, 6, 34, 38, 49.
  President, 95, 96.
  Tactics, 16, 37, 50, 67.

Washington, George.
  Views on Preparedness, 115, 143.
Washington (State), 235, 238, 239, 246, 420, 436.
Washita Mountains, 323.
Washita River, 322.
Water, 64, 65, 69, 200, 202, 207, 209, 215, 230, 241, 257, 377, 393, 394, 416, 449.
Waterloo, 141.
Watertown Arsenal, 150, 190, 364, 441.
Watervliet Arsenal, 141, 190, 364.
Wayne, Anthony, 44, 49, 67, 73, 75, 79, 100.
Wayne, Fort, 147, 303.
Waynesboro, 295.
Wellington, Duke of, 142.
Wells, H. G., 89.
Wenache River, 239.
West Brownsville, Texas, 451.
Western Department, 177.
Western Front, 480.
Westfield, Massachusetts, 10.
West Indies, 79, 416, 426.
Weston, Colonel, 340.
West Point, 65, 69, 71, 72, 73, 81, 90, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 133, 147, 151, 152, 153, 162, 163, 164, 173, 179, 184, 188, 192, 197, 206, 225, 231, 234, 235, 242, 247, 248, 250, 262, 306, 399, 416, 417, 427, 435, 436, 438, 439, 457, 483, 500.
West Point, Virginia, 277.
West Virginia, 254, 255, 256, 270.
Wheaton, General, 400, 402, 404, 406.
Wheeler, Camp, 376.
Wheeler, General, 378, 379, 380, 403.
Whig, 21, 29, 69, 72, 228.
Whipping, 129, 173, 262.
Whipple, Captain, 235, 245, 345.
Whiskers, 110, 180.
Whiskey, 172.
Whitby, 38.
White Bird Cañon, 345.
White Flag, 270, 347, 391.
White, General, 134.
Whitehall Ferry, 89.
White, John, 30.
Whitemarsh, 48.
White Oaks Swamp, 279.
White Plains, 32, 33, 48, 65.
White River Agency, 350, 351.
White Stone Hill, 300.
Whitney, Lieutenant, 12.
Wier, Lieutenant, 351.
Wigs, 83, 101.
Wigwams, 342.
Wikoff, Camp, 375.
Wilderness Tavern, 292.
Wilkins, Camp, Louisiana, 193.
Wilkinson, Captain, 394, 395.
Wilkinson, General, 110, 111, 128, 132, 134, 135, 136, 137.
Willcox, Fort, 360.
Williamsburg, 75, 134, 277.
Williams, Jonathan, 109.
Williamsport, 287.
Wilson, General, 296, 372, 388, 389.
Wilson, R. H., Colonel, 189, 208.
Wilson's Creek, 269.
Wiltz, 335.
Winchester, General, 126, 127.
Winchester, Virginia, 278, 293, 447.
Winder, General, 128, 131, 139, 140, 141.
Wingate's *Manual of Rifle Practice*, 332.
Wings, 160.
Winnebago, Fort, 147, 168, 170.
Winnebago Indians, 187, 188.
Winning of the West, 64.
Wisconsin, 187, 386, 388, 435.
Wisconsin River, 172.
Withlacoochee River, 176, 178.
Wolf Creek, Oklahoma, 321.
Wood, Leonard, 362, 378, 381, 383, 397, 398, 413, 415, 416, 430, 440, 453.
Wool, General, 197, 213, 214, 215, 217, 226, 250, 276.
Wooster, 28, 40.
World War, 60, 179, 233, 253, 276, 296, 302, 311, 325, 395, 423, 433, 450, 451, 460, 471, 478, 480, 490.
Worth, General, 188, 190, 191, 201, 211, 212, 214, 216, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 228.
Wounded Knee Creek, 365.
Wounds, 278.
Wright Brothers, 433.
Wright, Captain, 234.
Wyoming, 232, 363, 368, 386, 427.

Xenophon, 22.

Yamhill, Fort, 242.
Yancton Indians, 111.
Yang Ts'un, 409.
Yarmouth, Maine, 161.
Yauco, Porto Rico, 386, 388.

Yellow Fever, 167, 168, 220, 384, 392, 415, 416, 430.
Yellowstone Expeditions, 347.
Yellowstone River, 337, 343, 346, 349.
York, 43, 129.
Yorktown, 75, 76, 77, 79, 277.
Young Joseph, Chief, 345, 346, 347.
Youngs, Joseph, Lieutenant, 18.
Young, S. M. B., General, 378, 403, 404, 405, 419.
Youngstown, New York, 135.
Young, W. C., 179.
Yreka, 332.
Yukon, 369.
Yuma, Arizona, 235.
Yuma, Fort, 232, 242, 244.
Yuma Indians, 232.

Zapote River, Philippine Islands, 402.
Zepata, 446.
Zone, Canal, 429, 445, 452.
Zouaves, 249, 265, 267.
Zuni, 232.

(1)

MILITARY BOOKS OF INTEREST

THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY
By MAJOR W. A. GANOE
A full account of the soldier's work in war and peace, and the place of the army in our national life from 1776 to 1923.

THE PROFESSION OF ARMS
By CAPTAIN ELBRIDGE COLBY
Opportunities and character of the Army as a career.

PRACTICAL MINOR TACTICS
By COLONEL JENS BUGGE
An elementary study of the tactical situations with which minor officers are confronted.

THE COMPLETE NEW INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS
Authorized edition with latest revisions.

MANUAL OF INTERIOR GUARD DUTY FOR THE UNITED STATES ARMY
Approved by the Secretary of War. Latest revisions.

FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS, U.S.A.
With latest revisions and corrections.

MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION IN MILITARY SIGNALING
By MAJOR HOWARD A. GIDDINGS
Full information; brought up to date.

MANUAL OF MILITARY MAP MAKING AND READING
By LIEUT.-COL. J. M. HUTCHINSON and
CAPT. A. J. McELROY
A clear, concise and elementary treatise.

MANUAL FOR NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND PRIVATES OF INFANTRY
in the Army of the United States. With War Department corrections.

INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION IN RIFLE PRACTICE
By LIEUT.-COL. A. J. MacNAB, Jr.
Manual for officers and privates, written by an expert and endorsed by U. S. Government officials.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
New York **London**

E181.G17
The history of the United States Army
WITHDRAWN
3 0629 0207901 4

E
181
G17